

---

---

# Cherokee Nation Entertainment TAHLEQUAH CASINO

Tahlequah, Oklahoma

---

---

May 03, 2018



JAMES R. CHILDERS ARCHITECT, INC.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### DIVISION 6 –WOODS, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES

06 2000	FINISH CARPENTRY
06 4100	ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK
06 8300	HIGH PRESSURE DECORATIVE LAMINATES

### DIVISION 8 –OPENINGS

08 1416	FLUSH WOOD DOORS
08 3100	ACCESS DOORS & PANELS
08 3313	COILING COUNTER DOORS
08 3323	OVERHEAD COILING DOORS

### DIVISION 9 –FINISHES

09 3050	TILE
09 6500	RESILIENT FLOORING & BASE
09 6813	TILE CARPETING
09 6900	ACCESS FLOORING
09 9100	PAINTS AND COATINGS
09 9600	RESINOUS FLOOR COATINGS

### DIVISION 10 –SPECIALTIES

10 2113.19	PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS
10 2601	WALL AND CORNER GUARDS
10 2615	HIGH IMPACT WALL COVERING
10 2800	TOILET ACCESSORIES
10 4400	FIRE PROTECTION SPECIALTIES
10 5100	LOCKERS

### DIVISION 11 –EQUIPMENT

11 4000	FOODSERVICE EQUIPMENT
---------	-----------------------

### DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

22 05 13	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT
22 05 16	EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 05 17	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 05 18	ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 05 19	METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 05 23	GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 05 29	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
22 05 48	VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
22 05 53	IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
22 07 16	PLUMBING EQUIPMENT INSULATION

22 07 19	PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION
22 08 00	COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING SYSTEMS
22 11 16	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
22 11 19	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALITIES
22 11 23	DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS
22 13 16	SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING
22 13 19	SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALITIES
22 42 13.13	COMMERICAL WATER CLOSETS
22 42 13.16	COMMERICAL URINALS
22 42 16.13	COMMERICAL LAVATORIES
22 42 16.16	COMMERICAL SINKS
22 47 16	PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

**DIVISION 23 – HEATING VENTILATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC)**

23 00 01	HVAC GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
23 00 02	BASIC HVAC MATERIALS AND METHODS
23 05 16	PIPE EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS
23 05 18	ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING
23 05 19	HVAC METERS AND GAGES
23 05 23	VALVES
23 05 29	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS
23 05 48	HVAC VIBRATION CONTROLS
23 05 53	MECHANICAL IDENTIFICATION
23 05 93	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING
23 07 13	DUCT INSULATION
23 07 17	EQUIPMENT INSULATION
23 07 19	HVAC PIPE INSULATION
23 08 00	COMMISSIONING OF HVAC SYSTEMS
23 09 00	AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL SYSTEMS
23 09 93	SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS
23 21 13	HYDRONIC PIPING
23 21 23	HYDRONIC PUMPS
23 23 00	REFRIGERANT PIPING
23 25 00	HVAC WATER TREATMENT
23 31 13	HVAC DUCTS
23 33 00	DUCT ACCESSORIES
23 34 23	HVAC POWER VENTILATORS
23 36 00	AIR TERMINAL UNITS
23 37 13	DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES
23 51 00	BREECHINGS, CHIMNEYS, AND STACKS
23 52 16	CONDENSING BROILERS
23 64 18.1	MODULAR CENTRAL PLANT
23 65 00	CLOSED CIRCUIT COOLERS
23 73 13	AIR-HANDLING UNIT
23 73 13.1	AIR HANDLING UNIT / DEDICATED OUTDOOR AIR SYSTEM / ENERGY RECOVERY UNIT
23 82 19	FAN -COIL UNITS
23 82 39	UNIT HEATERS

## **DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL**

26 05 19	LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
26 05 26	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 05 29	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 05 33	RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 05 43	UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 05 44	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING
26 05 53	IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 05 72	OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY
26 05 73	OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY
26 05 74	OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE ARC-FLASH STUDY
26 22 00	LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS
26 24 13	SWITCHBOARDS
26 24 16	PANELBOARDS
26 27 26	WIRING DEVICES
26 28 13	FUSES
26 28 16	ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS
26 29 13.03	MANUAL AND MAGNETIC MOTOR CONTROLLERS
26 32 13.13	DIESEL EMERGENCY ENGINE GENERATORS
26 33 53	STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY
26 36 00	TRANSFER SWITCHES
26 41 13	LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES
26 51 19	LED INTERIOR LIGHTING
26 52 19	EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING
26 56 13	LIGHT POLES AND STANDARDS
26 56 19	LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

## **DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

28 31 11	DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE ALARM AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM
----------	---

**SECTION 06 2000  
FINISH CARPENTRY**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Finish carpentry items.
- B. Hang wood doors and installation of door hardware.
- C. Wood door frames, glazed frames.
- D. Wood casings and moldings.
- E. Hardware and attachment accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06067 - High Pressure Decorative Laminates: Install plastic laminate covered window stools.
- B. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Support framing, grounds, and concealed blocking.
- C. Section 08211 - Flush Wood Doors: Hang wood doors.
- D. Section 08710 - Door Hardware: Install door hardware.
- E. Section 09900 - Paints and Coatings: Painting and finishing of finish carpentry items.
- F. Section 096813 Tile Carpeting
- G. Section 099100 Paints and Coatings
- H. Section 079000 Joint Sealers
- I. Section 092116 Gypsum Board Assemblies
- J. Section 099710 Chemmically Etched Concrete

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2017.
- B. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards; 2014, with Errata (2016).

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data:
  - 1. Provide data on fire retardant treatment materials and application instructions.
  - 2. Provide instructions for attachment hardware, finish hardware, and accessories.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Perform work in accordance with AWI Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated, Custom grade.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: Company specializing in fabricating the products specified in this section with minimum five years of documented experience.

**1.06 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Conform to applicable code for fire retardant requirements.

**1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect work from moisture damage.

**1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Sequence installation to ensure utility connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.
- B. Coordinate the work with installation of associated and adjacent components.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 FINISH CARPENTRY ITEMS**

- A. Quality Grade: Unless otherwise indicated provide products of quality specified by AWI/AWMAC/WI Architectural Woodwork Standards for Premium Grade.

### **2.02 WOOD-BASED COMPONENTS**

- A. Wood fabricated from old growth timber is not permitted.

### **2.03 LUMBER MATERIALS**

- A. Hardwood Lumber: Red Oak species, smooth sawn, maximum moisture content of 6 percent; with vertical grain, of quality suitable for transparent finish.

### **2.04 FASTENINGS**

- A. Fasteners: Of size and type to suit application.

### **2.05 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Lumber for Shimming, Blocking: Softwood lumber of S/P/F species.
- B. Wood Filler: Solvent base, tinted to match surface finish color.

### **2.06 WOOD TREATMENT**

- A. Fire Retardant Treatment (FR-S Type): Chemically treated and pressure impregnated; capable of providing flame spread index of 25, maximum, and smoke developed index of 40, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- B. Provide identification on fire retardant treated material.
- C. Kiln dry wood after pressure treatment to maximum 15 percent moisture content.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.
- B. Verify mechanical, electrical, and building items affecting work of this section are placed and ready to receive this work.
- C. See Section 06114 - Wood Blocking and Curbing for installation of recessed wood blocking.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI Architectural Woodwork Standards requirements for grade indicated.
- B. Set and secure materials and components in place, plumb and level.
- C. Carefully scribe work abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch (1 mm). Do not use additional overlay trim to conceal larger gaps.
- D. Install hardware supplied by Section 08710 - Door Hardware in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.03 PREPARATION FOR SITE FINISHING**

- A. Set exposed fasteners. Apply wood filler in exposed fastener indentations. Sand work smooth.
- B. Site Finishing: See Section 09 9000.

### **3.04 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation from True Position: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
- B. Maximum Offset from True Alignment with Abutting Materials: 1/32 inch (0.7 mm).

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 4100**  
**ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Cabinet units.
- B. Countertops.
- C. Cabinet hardware.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06067 - High Pressure Decorative Laminates: Laminates for cabinet units.
- B. Section 033000 Cast in Place Concrete
- C. Section 092116 Gypsum Board Assemblies
- D. Section 07900 Joint Sealers
- E. Section 06114 - Wood Blocking and Curbing: Concealed wood blocking for wall cabinets.
- F. Section 06 6100 - Simulated Stone Fabrications: Cast plastic countertops.
- G. Section 08 8000 - Glazing: Glass for casework.
- H. Section 15400 - Plumbing: Cutouts for plumbing fixtures.
- I. Section 16000 - Electrical: Coordination of installation of electrical, communications, nurse call and fire alarm devices.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards; 2014, with Errata (2016).
- B. AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) - North American Architectural Woodwork Standards, U.S. Version 3.1; 2016, with Errata (2017).
- C. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards; 2009.
- D. AWI/AWMAC (QSI) - Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated; Architectural Woodwork Institute and Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; 2005, 8th Ed., Version 2.0.
- E. GSA CID A-A-1936 - Adhesive, Contact, Neoprene Rubber; Federal Specifications and Standards; Revision A, 1996.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, component profiles and elevations, assembly methods, joint details, fastening methods, accessory listings, hardware location and schedule of finishes.
- C. Product Data: Provide data for hardware accessories.
- D. Samples: Submit actual samples of architectural cabinet construction, minimum 12 inches (300 mm) square, illustrating proposed cabinet substrate and finish.
- E. Samples: Submit actual sample items of proposed pulls and hinges, demonstrating hardware design, quality, and finish.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Company specializing in fabricating the products specified in this section with minimum five years of documented experience.
  - 1. Accredited participant in the specified certification program prior to the commencement of fabrication and throughout the duration of the project.
- B. Quality Certification:

1. Provide labels or certificates indicating that the installed work complies with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) requirements for grade or grades specified.
  2. Provide designated labels on shop drawings as required by certification program.
  3. Provide designated labels on installed products as required by certification program.
  4. Submit certifications upon completion of installation that verifies this work is in compliance with specified requirements.
  5. Replace, repair, or rework all work for which certification is refused.
- C. Perform work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated, Custom quality for "Laminate Clad Cabinets", AWI Section 400 and its Division 400B.

#### **1.06 MOCK-UP**

- A. Provide mock-up of typical base cabinet and wall cabinet, including hardware.
- B. Locate where directed.
- C. Mock-up may remain as part of the Work.

#### **1.07 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETING**

- A. Convene not less than one week before starting work of this section.

#### **1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect units from moisture damage.

#### **1.09 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. During and after installation of custom cabinets, maintain temperature and humidity conditions in building spaces at same levels planned for occupancy.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 CABINETS**

- A. Quality Grade: Unless otherwise indicated provide products of quality specified by AWI//AWMAC/WI Architectural Woodwork Standards for Premium Grade.

#### **2.02 WOOD-BASED COMPONENTS**

- A. Wood fabricated from old growth timber is not permitted.

#### **2.03 LUMBER MATERIALS**

- A. Hardwood Lumber: NHLA; Graded in accordance with AWI/AWMAC Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated, Grade III/Economy; average moisture content of 4-9 percent; species as follows:
  1. Cabinet Frame: Species as selected by architect, Grade as selected by architect as allowed by AWI 400B Custom Grade. All exposed surfaces and other surfaces indicated to be plastic laminate covered.
  2. Exposed Surfaces: Species Plastic Laminate.
  3. Semi-Exposed Surfaces: Species Plastic Laminate.
  4. Concealed Surfaces: Species as selected by architect.

#### **2.04 PANEL MATERIALS**

- A. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1; medium density industrial type as specified in AWI/AWMAC Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated, composed of wood chips bonded with moisture resistant adhesive under heat and pressure; sanded faces; thickness as required; use for components indicated on drawings.

#### **2.05 LAMINATE MATERIALS**

- A. See section - 06 8300 - High Pressure Decorative Laminates
- B. See other sections as required for facings

#### **2.06 COUNTERTOPS**

- A. Cultured Marble Surfacing: Specified in Section 06 6100.



## 2.07 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: GSA CID A-A-1936 contact adhesive.
- B. Aluminum Drop Box Security Doors
  - 1. Manufacturer: P. Riopel Inc., [www.riopel.net](http://www.riopel.net), 1.514.934.1732
  - 2. Product: Model R213, Chute, Door & Frame
  - 3. Color: to be selected by Architect
  - 4. Size: 9 inches x 12 inches
- C. Polyvinyl Chloride Edge Trim: Extruded convex shaped; smooth finish; hotmelt thermoplastic adhesive applied; color as selected.
  - 1. 1 mm thick at cabinet drawers and cabinet doors.
  - 2. 3 mm thick at countertops.
  - 3. Manufacturer: Charter Industries, Color: W7945 Xanadu
- D. Steel: provide primer pipe steel as required.
  - 1. See Millwork drawings for locations (support at beverage stations)
  - 2. Tube Steel shall be 2 inch width 2 inch depth 1/4 inch wall
  - 3. Tube steel shall be factory primed and field painted flat black
- E. Glass: Type A as specified in Section 08810.
- F. Fasteners: Size and type to suit application.
- G. Concealed Joint Fasteners: Threaded steel.
- H. Grommets: Standard plastic grommets for cut-outs, in color to match adjacent surface. Coordinate locations with owner requirements and provide.

## 2.08 HARDWARE

- A. Adjustable Shelf Supports: Standard side-mounted system using 32 mm in-line bore system and coordinated self rests, polished chrome finish, for nominal 1 inch (25 mm) spacing adjustments.
- B. Drawer and Door Pulls: 8 mm wire "U" shaped wire pull, steel with satin finish, 4 inch centers ("U" shaped wire pull, steel with satin finish, 100 mm centers).
- C. Sliding Door Pulls: Circular shape for recessed installation, steel with satin finish.
- D. Cabinet Locks: Keyed cylinder, two keys per lock, master keyed, steel with satin finish.
- E. Catches: Magnetic.
- F. Drawer Slides: Galvanized steel construction, ball bearings separating tracks, full extension type. Standard drawer, support 100 lb., file drawer support 150 lb. with full extension.
  - 1. Type: Full extension.
  - 2. Mounting: Side mounted.
  - 3. Products:
    - a. Accuride International, Inc: [www accuride.com](http://www accuride.com).
    - b. Grass America Inc: [www.grassusa.com](http://www.grassusa.com).
    - c. Knap & Vogt Manufacturing Company: [www.knapeandvogt.com](http://www.knapeandvogt.com).
    - d. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.
- G. Hinges: Button Tip/Loose Pin Institutional Hinges for Flush Doors type, Dull Chrome Finish.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. a.Stanley Hardware; Product SH1587-26D.
  - 2. Other Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Grass America Inc: [www.grassusa.com](http://www.grassusa.com).
    - b. Hardware Resources: [www.hardwareresources.com](http://www.hardwareresources.com).
    - c. Julius Blum, Inc: [www.blum.com](http://www.blum.com).
    - d. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.
- H. Sliding Door Track Assemblies: Upper and lower track of satin anodized aluminum, with matching shoe equipped with nylon rollers.

## **2.09 FABRICATION**

- A. Assembly: Shop assemble cabinets for delivery to site in units easily handled and to permit passage through building openings.
- B. Door and Drawer Fronts: 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick; flush style.
- C. Fitting: When necessary to cut and fit on site, provide materials with ample allowance for cutting. Provide matching trim for scribing and site cutting.
- D. Plastic Laminate: Apply plastic laminate finish in full uninterrupted sheets consistent with manufactured sizes. Fit corners and joints hairline; secure with concealed fasteners. Slightly bevel arises. Locate counter butt joints minimum 2 feet (600 mm) from sink cut-outs.
- E. Apply laminate backing sheet to reverse side of plastic laminate finished surfaces.
- F. Provide cutouts for plumbing fixtures. Verify locations of cutouts from on-site dimensions. Seal cut edges.
- G. Shop glaze glass materials using the Interior Dry method specified in Section 08 8000.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.
- B. Verify location and sizes of utility rough-in associated with work of this section.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Set and secure custom cabinets in place, assuring that they are rigid, plumb, and level.
- B. Use fixture attachments in concealed locations for wall mounted components.
- C. Use concealed joint fasteners to align and secure adjoining cabinet units.
- D. Carefully scribe casework abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch (1 mm). Do not use additional overlay trim for this purpose.
- E. Secure cabinets to floor using appropriate angles and anchorages.
- F. Countersink anchorage devices at all locations. Conceal with solid plugs to match surrounding finish.

### **3.03 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust installed work.
- B. Adjust moving or operating parts to function smoothly and correctly.

### **3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Clean casework, counters, shelves, hardware, fittings, and fixtures.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 6100**  
**SIMULATED STONE FABRICATIONS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Cast plastic washroom vanities, counter top, and windowsills & door thresholds.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section - Equipment Wiring: Electrical attachment to bathtub circulating pump.
- B. Section 079000 Joint Sealers

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2017.
- B. UL (EAUED) - Electrical Appliance and Utilization Equipment Directory; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; current edition.

**1.04 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Design all items with sufficient strength for handling and placement stresses.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions, thicknesses, required clearances, tolerances, materials, colors, finishes, fabrication details, field jointing, adjacent construction, design load parameters, methods of support, integration of plumbing components, and anchorages.
- C. Product Data: Provide data on specified component products, electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples representative of vanity top, 2"x2" inch (\_\_\_\_x\_\_\_\_ mm) in size, illustrating color, texture, and finish.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate preparation of opening required, rough-in sizes; provide templates for cast-in or placed frames or anchors; tolerances for item placement, temporary bracing of components .

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.
- B. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by UL, as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

**1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Correct defective Work within a five year period after Date of Substantial Completion.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Cast Plastic Fabrications:
- B. Products:
- C. SS (Solid Surface)
  - 1. Manufacturer: LG Hausys
  - 2. [www.lghimacsusa.com](http://www.lghimacsusa.com)
    - a. Product: Hi-Macs Solid Surface
    - b. Color: see Color and Finish Schedule

## **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Provide finished products having flame spread index of 35 and smoke developed index of 15, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 in thickness of 3/4 inch (19 mm).
- B. Resin: Polyester type, with integral coloring, stain resistant to domestic chemicals and cleaners.
- C. Polishing Cream: Compatible polishing cream to achieve specified sheen to gel coat.

## **2.03 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabricate components by mold to achieve shape and configuration.
- B. Gel coat the finish exposed surfaces smooth and polish to a gloss sheen.
- C. Radius corners and edges.
- D. Cure components prior to shipment, except sheet materials requiring site handling.

## **2.04 FINISH**

- A. Color: See Color and Finish Schedule color .
- B. Exposed to View Surface Visual Texture: Marbleized design.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that joint preparation and affected dimensions are acceptable.
- B. Verify mechanical, electrical, and building items affecting work of this section are placed and ready to receive this work.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Provide anchoring devices for installation and embedding.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install components in accordance with shop drawings and manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Align work plumb and level.
- C. Rigidly anchor to substrate to prevent misalignment.

### **3.04 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation From True Dimension: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- B. Maximum Offset From True Position: 1/8 inch (3 mm).

### **3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Clean and polish surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not permit construction near unprotected surfaces.

### **3.07 SCHEDULES**

- A. See Drawings

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 8300**  
**HIGH PRESSURE DECORATIVE LAMINATES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. High pressure decorative laminate for vertical and horizontal surfaces of cabinets, countertops, and paneling.
- B. Plastic Panels

**1.02 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Section 06 2000 - Finish Carpentry.
- B. Section 06100 Rough Carpentry
- C. Section 06410 - Custom Cabinets.
- D. Section 06100 Rough carpentry
- E. Section 06620 Cast plastic fabrications
- F. Section 079000 Joint Sealers
- G. Section 09260 Gypsum board assemblies

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's catalog data, detail sheets, and specifications.
- C. Samples: Minimum 2 inches by 2 inches (50 mm by 50 mm) samples indicating full range of color and pattern variation.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. PLastic Laminate, Wilson Art; [www.wilsonart.com](http://www.wilsonart.com).
  - 1. PL
    - a. Manufacturer: WilsonArt
- B. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.
- C. Provide all high pressure decorative laminates from a single manufacturer.

**2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate for Vertical Surfaces: Wilson Art; [www.wilsonart.com](http://www.wilsonart.com).
  - 1. Thickness: 0.028 plus/minus 0.004 inch (0.7 plus/minus 0.10 mm).
  - 2. Color/Pattern: see finish schedule.
- B. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate for Horizontal Surfaces: Wilson Art; [www.wilsonart.com](http://www.wilsonart.com).  
H-5 (HGS):
  - 1. Thickness: 0.048 plus/minus 0.005 inch (1.2 plus/minus 0.12 mm).
  - 2. Color/Pattern: see finish schedule.

**2.03 FABRICATION**

- A. Bond plastic laminate to core material using adhesives and techniques recommended by adhesive manufacturer and ANSI A161.2.
- B. Take care that moisture imbalance does not exist between plastic laminate and substrate before fabrication.
- C. Provide minimum radius of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at inside corners of cut-outs; file edges smooth to prevent stress cracking.
- D. Curved Surfaces: Use post forming grade plastic laminate only.
  - 1. Inside Radius (Surface in Compression): Minimum 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - 2. Outside Radius (Surface in Tension): Minimum 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).

- E. Saw, drill, edge file, sand, and rout plastic laminate with decorative side up to prevent cracking or chipping of laminate surface.
  - 1. Use carbide tipped cutting edges on saws, drills, and routers.
  - 2. Drill plastic laminate with a wood backing to prevent "breakout" at bottom of drilled holes.
  - 3. Cut curved edges slightly oversize and finish by sanding, filing, or routing for smooth edges.
- F. PVC EDGING
  - 1. see color and finish schedule

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED UNITS**

- A. See Section 06410.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 1416**  
**FLUSH WOOD DOORS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Flush wood doors; flush and flush glazed configuration; fire rated and non-rated.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 2000 - Finish Carpentry.
- B. Section 08 1113 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
- C. Section 08 7100 - Door Hardware.
- D. Section 08 8000 - Glazing.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AWI/AWMAC (QSI) - Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated; Architectural Woodwork Institute and Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; 2005, 8th Ed., Version 2.0.
- B. ICC (IBC) - International Building Code; 2012.
- C. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives; 2016.
- D. UL (BMD) - Building Materials Directory; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; current edition.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Indicate door core materials and construction; veneer species, type and characteristics.
- C. Specimen warranty.
- D. Shop Drawings: Illustrate door opening criteria, elevations, sizes, types, swings, undercuts required, special beveling, special blocking for hardware, factory machining criteria, factory finishing criteria, identify cutouts for glazing and louvers.
- E. Samples: Submit two samples of door veneer, 3x3 inch (\_\_\_\_x\_\_\_\_ mm) in size illustrating wood grain, stain color, and sheen.
- F. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special installation instructions.
- G. Warranty, executed in Owner's name.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Maintain one copy of the specified door quality standard on site for review during installation and finishing.
- B. Installed Fire Rated Door Assembly: Conform to NFPA 80 for fire rated class as indicated.

**1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Package, deliver and store doors in accordance with specified quality standard.
- B. Accept doors on site in manufacturer's packaging. Inspect for damage.
- C. Protect doors with resilient packaging sealed with heat shrunk plastic. Do not store in damp or wet areas; or in areas where sunlight might bleach veneer. Seal top and bottom edges with tinted sealer if stored more than one week. Break seal on site to permit ventilation.

**1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Coordinate the work with door opening construction, door frame and door hardware installation.

**1.08 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Interior Doors: Provide manufacturer's warranty for the life of the installation.

- C. Provide warranty for the following term:
  - 1. Interior Doors: Life of installation.
- D. Include coverage for delamination of veneer, warping beyond specified installation tolerances, defective materials, and telegraphing core construction.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Wood Veneer Faced Doors:
  - 1. Masonite Architectural, [www.masonite.com](http://www.masonite.com)
    - a. Product: Aspiro Series,
    - b. Color / Style: See Color and Finish Schedule
  - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

### **2.02 DOORS ALL**

- A. All Doors: See drawings for locations and additional requirements.
  - 1. Quality Level: Premium Grade with A grade veneer, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated, Section 1300.
- B. Interior Doors: 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) thick unless otherwise indicated; flush construction.
  - 1. Provide solid core doors at all locations .
  - 2. Fire Rated Doors: Tested to ratings indicated on drawings in accordance with International Building Code ("positive pressure"); UL labeled without any visible seals when door is open.
  - 3. Smoke and Draft Control Doors: Tested to ratings indicated on drawings in accordance with International Building Code; UL labeled if required by applicable code; provide gasketing as specified by listing.

### **2.03 DOOR AT KITCHEN & FOOD SERVICE AREAS**

- A. Eliason, ENG-1,
  - 1. 1.5" thick polymer core
  - 2. Intergal gravity operated hardware
  - 3. decorative high pressure laminate both sides
  - 4. 9"x14" flush window - clear acrylic - double glazed

### **2.04 DOOR AND PANEL CORES**

- A. Non-Rated Solid Core and 20 Minute Rated Doors: Type particleboard core (PC), plies and faces as indicated above.
- B. Fire Rated Doors: Mineral core, Type FD, plies and faces as indicated above; with core blocking as required to provide adequate anchorage of hardware without through-bolting.

### **2.05 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Glazing Stops: Wood, of same species as door facing, mitered corners; prepared for countersink style screws.
- B. Astragals for Fire Rated Double Doors: Steel, T shaped, overlapping and recessed at face edge, specifically for double doors.

### **2.06 DOOR CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Fabricate doors in accordance with door quality standard specified.
- B. Cores Constructed with stiles and rails:
- C. Provide solid blocks at lock edge and top of door for closer for hardware reinforcement.
  - 1. Provide solid blocking for other throughbolted hardware.
- D. Fit door edge trim to edge of stiles after applying veneer facing.
- E. Vertical Exposed Edge of Stiles - Veneer Faces: Of same species as veneer facing.
- F. Fit door edge trim to edge of stiles after applying veneer facing.



- G. Factory machine doors for hardware other than surface-mounted hardware, in accordance with hardware requirements and dimensions.
- H. Factory fit doors for frame opening dimensions identified on shop drawings, with edge clearances in accordance with specified quality standard.
- I. Provide edge clearances in accordance with the quality standard specified.
- J. Provide edge clearances in accordance with AWI Quality Standards Illustrated Section 1700.

## **2.07 FACTORY FINISHING - WOOD VENEER DOORS**

- A. Factory finish doors in accordance with approved sample.

## **2.08 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Glazing Stops: Wood, of same species as door facing, butted corners; prepared for countersink style tamper proof screws.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- C. Do not install doors in frame openings that are not plumb or are out-of-tolerance for size or alignment.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install doors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and specified quality standard.
  - 1. Install fire-rated doors in accordance with NFPA 80 requirements.
- B. Factory-Finished Doors: Do not field cut or trim; if fit or clearance is not correct, replace door.
- C. Trim door height by cutting bottom edges to a maximum of 3/4 inch (19 mm).
- D. Use machine tools to cut or drill for hardware.
- E. Coordinate installation of doors with installation of frames and hardware.
- F. Coordinate installation of glazing.

### **3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Conform to specified quality standard for fit and clearance tolerances.
- B. Conform to specified quality standard for telegraphing, warp, and squareness.
- C. Maximum Diagonal Distortion (Warp): 1/8 inch (3 mm) measured with straight edge or taut string, corner to corner, over an imaginary 36 by 84 inches (915 by 2130 mm) surface area.
- D. Maximum Vertical Distortion (Bow): 1/8 inch (3 mm) measured with straight edge or taut string, top to bottom, over an imaginary 36 by 84 inches (915 by 2130 mm) surface area.
- E. Maximum Width Distortion (Cup): 1/8 inch (3 mm) measured with straight edge or taut string, edge to edge, over an imaginary 36 by 84 inches (915 by 2130 mm) surface area.

### **3.04 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust doors for smooth and balanced door movement.
- B. Adjust closers for full closure.

### **3.05 SCHEDULE - SEE DRAWINGS**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 3100**  
**ACCESS DOORS & PANELS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Wall access door and frame units.
- B. Ceiling access door and frame units.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 09 9000 - Painting and Coating: Field paint finish.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products; current edition.
- B. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory; Current Edition.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide sizes, types, finishes, hardware, scheduled locations, and details of adjoining work.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate exact position of all access door units.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate installation requirements.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 ACCESS DOOR AND PANEL APPLICATIONS**

- A. Walls, Unless Otherwise Indicated:
  - 1. Material: Steel.
  - 2. Size: see drawings
  - 3. Standard duty, hinged door.
  - 4. Tool-operated spring or cam lock; no handle.
  - 5. In All Wall Types: Surface mounted face frame and door surface flush with frame surface.
  - 6. In Gypsum Board: Drywall bead frame with door surface flush with wall surface.
  - 7. In Masonry: Frameless with door surface recessed for infill with wall finish.
- B. Walls in Wet Areas:
  - 1. Material: Steel, hot-dipped zinc or zinc-aluminum-alloy coated.
  - 2. Size: see drawings
  - 3. Standard duty, hinged door.
  - 4. Tool-operated spring or cam lock; no handle.
  - 5. In All Wall Types: Surface mounted face frame and door surface flush with frame surface.
  - 6. In Gypsum Board: Drywall bead frame with door surface flush with wall surface.
- C. Fire Rated Walls: See drawings for wall fire ratings.
  - 1. Material: Steel.
  - 2. Size: see drawings
  - 3. Uninsulated, single thickness door panel.
  - 4. Tool-operated spring or cam lock; no handle.
- D. Ceilings, Unless Otherwise Indicated: Same type as for walls.
  - 1. Size: see drawings
  - 2. Standard duty, hinged door.
  - 3. Tool-operated spring or cam lock; no handle.
- E. Removable Access Panels: Where indicated.
  - 1. Material: Steel.
  - 2. Size: see drawings
  - 3. Tool-operated catches.

## 2.02 WALL AND CEILING UNITS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Acudor Products Inc: [www.acudor.com](http://www.acudor.com).
    - a. Units in Walls, Unless Otherwise Indicated: ACUDOR ADWT.
    - b. Units in Fire-Rated Walls Rated 2 Hours and Less: ACUDOR FB-5015.
  2. Cendrex, Inc: [www.cendrex.com](http://www.cendrex.com).
    - a. Units in Walls, Unless Otherwise Indicated: Cendrex CTA, contoured cover concealing frame, hingeless with magnetic cover attachments, adjustable frame size.
    - b. Units in Fire-Rated Walls Rated 2 Hours and Less: Cendrex PFI series, insulated.
    - c. Units in Fire-Rated Ceilings: Cendrex PFI series, downward opening.
    - d. Units with Recess for Wall Finish: Cendrex AHA, AHA-GYP, or AHA-PLY, as appropriate.
    - e. Units Marked "Security": Cendrex MDS, medium security.
    - f. Double Leaf Units: Cendrex LHD-180.
    - g. Units Marked "Heavy Duty": Cendrex LHD.
    - h. Removable Panels (No Hinge): Cendrex RMD, metal.
  3. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Access Doors: Factory fabricated door and frame units, fully assembled units with corner joints welded, filled, and ground flush; square and without rack or warp; coordinate requirements with assemblies units are to be installed in.
1. Door Style: Single thickness with rolled or turned in edges.
  2. Frames: 16 gage, 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm), minimum.
  3. Heavy Duty Frames: 14 gage, 0.0747 inch (1.89 mm), minimum.
  4. Single Thickness Steel Door Panels: 0.070 inch (1.8 mm), minimum.
  5. Heavy Duty Single Thickness Steel Door Panels: 14 gage, 0.0747 inch (1.89 mm), minimum.
  6. Double-Skinned Hollow Steel Door Panels: 16 gage, 0.059 inch (1.52 mm), minimum, on both sides and all edges.
  7. Door Panels to Receive Wall/Ceiling Finish: Surface recessed 0.625 inch (15.87 mm) back from wall face.
  8. Insulation: Non-combustible mineral or glass fiber.
  9. Units in Fire Rated Assemblies: Fire rating as required by applicable code for the fire rated assembly in which they are to be installed.
    - a. Provide products listed and labeled by UL or ITS (Warnock Hersey) as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.
    - b. Provide certificate of compliance from authority having jurisdiction indicating approval of fire rated doors.
  10. Steel Finish: Primed.
  11. Primed Finish: Polyester powder coat; manufacturer's standard color.
  12. Hardware:
    - a. Hardware for Fire Rated Units: As required for listing.
    - b. Hinges for Non-Fire-Rated Units: Concealed, constant force closure spring type.
    - c. Handle: Fixed.
    - d. Latch/Lock: Screw driver slot for quarter turn cam latch.
    - e. Number of Locks/Latches Required: As recommended by the manufacturer for the size of the unit.
    - f. Inside Latch Release: Mechanism that allows the panel to be opened from the inside.
    - g. Gasketing: Extruded neoprene, around the perimeter of the door panel.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that rough openings are correctly sized and located.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install frames plumb and level in openings. Secure rigidly in place.
- C. Position units to provide convenient access to the concealed work requiring access.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 3313  
COILING COUNTER DOORS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Non-fire-rated coiling counter doors and operating hardware.
- B. Fire-rated coiling counter doors and operating hardware.
- C. Electric motor operation; wiring from electric circuit disconnect to operator to control station.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Openings.
- B. Section 08 7100 - Door Hardware: Cylinder cores and keys.
- C. Section 09 2116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Openings.
- D. Section 09 9000 - Painting and Coating: Field paint finish.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2014.
- B. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2015.
- C. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.
- D. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; 2014.
- E. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes [Metric]; 2013.
- F. NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators; 2017.
- G. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives; 2016.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's standard literature showing materials and details of construction and finish. Include data on electrical operation.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate rough and actual opening dimensions, anchorage methods, hardware locations, and installation details.
- D. Samples: Submit two slats, 4 inches long (100 mm long) illustrating shape, color and finish texture.
- E. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation sequence and installation, adjustment, and alignment procedures.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: Indicate modes of operation, lubrication requirements and frequency, and periodic adjustments required.
- G. Project Record Documents: Include as-built electrical diagrams for electrical operation and connection to fire alarm system.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Coiling Counter Doors:
  - 1. Alpine Overhead Doors, Inc; Product Alpines Counter Shutters: [www.alpinedoors.com](http://www.alpinedoors.com).
  - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

**2.02 COILING COUNTER DOORS**

- A. Coiling Counter Doors, Non-Fire-Rated: Aluminum slat curtain.

1. Mounting: Exterior face mounted.
  2. Nominal Slat Size: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide.
  3. Slat Profile: Flat, perforated.
  4. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  5. Guides: Formed track; same material and finish unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Manual hand chain lift operation.
- B. Coiling Counter Doors, Fire-Rated: Galvanized steel slat curtain.
1. Mounting: Exterior face mounted.
  2. Fire Rating: 3/4 hour; comply with NFPA 80.
  3. Nominal Slat Size: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide.
  4. Slat Profile: Flat.
  5. Finish: Factory baked enamel.
  6. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
  7. Guides: Formed track; same material and finish unless otherwise indicated.
  8. Manual hand chain lift operation.
  9. keyed and locked - coordinate with owner.

### **2.03 MATERIALS**

- A. Curtain Construction: Interlocking, single thickness slats.
1. Slat Ends: Alternate slats fitted with end locks to act as wearing surface in guides and to prevent lateral movement.
  2. Curtain Bottom: Fitted with angles to provide reinforcement and positive contact in closed position.
  3. Steel Slats: ASTM A653/A653M galvanized steel sheet, with minimum G90/Z275 coating; minimum thickness 22 gage, 0.03 inch (0.76 mm).
  4. Aluminum Slats: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), aluminum alloy Type 6063; minimum thickness 0.05 inch (1.3 mm).
- B. Guide Construction: Continuous, of profile to retain door in place, with mounting brackets of same metal.
1. Aluminum Guides: Extruded aluminum channel, with wool pile runners along inside.
- C. Lock Hardware:
- D. Latching Mechanism: Inside mounted, adjustable keeper, spring activated latch bar feature to keep in locked or retracted position.
- E. Roller Shaft Counterbalance: Steel pipe and torsion steel spring system, capable of producing torque sufficient to ensure smooth operation of curtain from any position and capable of holding position at mid-travel; with adjustable spring tension; requiring 25 lb (10 kg) nominal force to operate.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that opening sizes, tolerances and conditions are acceptable.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. In addition, install fire-rated doors in accordance with NFPA 80.
- C. Use anchorage devices to securely fasten assembly to wall construction and building framing without distortion or stress.
- D. Securely and rigidly brace components suspended from structure. Secure guides to structural members only.
- E. Fit and align assembly including hardware; level and plumb, to provide smooth operation.

### **3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maintain dimensional tolerances and alignment with adjacent work.

- B. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
- C. Maximum Variation From Level: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
- D. Longitudinal or Diagonal Warp: Plus or minus 1/8 inch per 10 ft (3 mm per 3 m) straight edge.

**3.04 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust operating assemblies for smooth and noiseless operation.

**3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Clean installed components.
- B. Remove labels and visible markings.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 09 3050

### TILE

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Tile for wall applications.
- B. Cementitious backer board as tile substrate.
- C. Stone thresholds.
- D. Ceramic accessories.
- E. Ceramic trim.
- F. Grout

##### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 07 9005 - Joint Sealers.
- B. Section 092116 Gypsum Board Assemblies
- C. Section 06 4100 Architectural Wood Casework
- D. Section 06 6100 Simulated Stone Fabrications
- E. Section 08 8300 Mirrors
- F. Section 10 2800 Toilet Accessories
- G. Section 09 9100 Paints and Coatings

##### 1.03 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI A108 Series/A118 Series/A136.1 - American National Standard Specifications for the Installation of Ceramic Tile (Compendium); 1999.
- B. TCA (HB) - Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation; Tile Council of America, Inc.; 2005.

##### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Selection Samples: Color charts illustrating full range of colors and patterns.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate tile layout, patterns, color arrangement, perimeter conditions, junctions with dissimilar materials, control and expansion joints, thresholds, ceramic accessories, and setting details.
- D. Product Data: Provide instructions for using grouts and adhesives.
- E. Maintenance Data: Include recommended cleaning methods, cleaning materials, stain removal methods, and polishes and waxes.

##### 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Maintain one copy of TCA Handbook and ANSI A108 Series/A118 (current editions) Series on site.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum 10 years of experience.

##### 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect adhesives from freezing or overheating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

##### 1.07 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not install adhesives in an unventilated environment.
- B. Maintain ambient and substrate temperature of 50 degrees F (10 degrees C) during installation of mortar materials.



## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. See ceramic tile below:
- B. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

### **2.02 TILE WALL**

- A. PTW
  - 1. Manufacturer: Concept Surfaces
  - 2. Collection: Passages
    - a. See Color and Finish Schedule

### **2.03 TRIM AND ACCESSORIES**

- A. Thresholds: to match tile or solid surface, honed finish; 2 inches (50 mm) wide by full width of wall or frame opening; 1/2 inch (12 mm) thick thick; beveled one long edge with radiused corners on top side; without holes, cracks, or open seams; provide at the following locations:
  - 1. At doorways where tile terminates.

### **2.04 SETTING MATERIALS**

- A. Organic Adhesive: ANSI A136.1, thinset bond type; use Type I in areas subject to prolonged moisture exposure.
- B. Epoxy Adhesive: ANSI A118.3, thinset bond type.
- C. Mortar Bed Materials: Portland cement, sand, latex additive and water.
- D. Mortar Bond Coat Materials:
  - 1. Dry-Set Portland Cement type: ANSI A118.1.
  - 2. Latex-Portland Cement type: ANSI A118.4.
  - 3. Epoxy: ANSI A118.3.
  - 4. Furan: ANSI A118.5.
- E. Grout
  - 1. G-1
    - a. Manufacturer: Custom Building Products
    - b. Color: Linen
    - c. Product Number: 122
      - 1) G-1 to be used with CTF-1- & CTW-1
  - 2. G-2
    - a. Manufacturer: Custom Building Products
    - b. Color: Saddle Brown
    - c. Product Number: 59
      - 1) G-2 to be used with CTW-2, CTF-4
  - 3. G-3
    - a. Manufacturer: Custom Building Products
    - b. Color: Anitque Linen
    - c. Product Number: 127
      - 1) G-3 to be used with CTB-1, CTW-3, CTW-4, CTW-5, CTF-3
  - 4. G-4
    - a. Manufacturer: Custom Building Products
    - b. Color: Anitque Sable Brown
    - c. Product Number: 95
      - 1) G-4 to be used with CTF-2
  - 5. G-5
    - a. Manufacturer: Custom Building Products
    - b. Color: Bonsai
    - c. Product Number: 312
      - 1) G-4 to be used with GT-1

- F. Cleavage Membrane: No. 15 (6.9 kg) asphalt saturated felt.
- G. Cementitious Backer Board: ANSI A118.9; High density, cementitious, glass fiber reinforced, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick; 2 inch (50 mm) wide coated glass fiber tape for joints and corners.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within tolerances specified in Section 09 2116, are dust-free, and are ready to receive tile.
- B. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are dust-free, and free of substances which would impair bonding of setting materials to sub-floor surfaces.
- C. Verify that concrete sub-floor surfaces are ready for tile installation by testing for moisture emission rate and alkalinity; obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by tile manufacturer and setting materials manufacturer.
- D. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.

#### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect surrounding work from damage.
- B. Vacuum clean surfaces and damp clean.
- C. Seal substrate surface cracks with filler. Level existing substrate surfaces to acceptable flatness tolerances.
- D. Install cementitious backer board in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and board manufacturer's instructions. Tape joints and corners, cover with skim coat of dry-set mortar to a feather edge.
- E. Prepare substrate surfaces for adhesive installation in accordance with adhesive manufacturer's instructions.

#### **3.03 INSTALLATION - GENERAL**

- A. Install tile and grout in accordance with applicable requirements of ANSI A108.1 through A108.13, manufacturer's instructions, and TCA Handbook recommendations.
- B. Lay tile to pattern indicated. Do not interrupt tile pattern through openings.
- C. Cut and fit tile to penetrations through tile, leaving sealant joint space. Form corners and bases neatly. Align floor joints.
- D. Place tile joints uniform in width, subject to variance in tolerance allowed in tile size. Make joints watertight, without voids, cracks, excess mortar, or excess grout.
- E. Form internal angles square and external angles bullnosed.
- F. Install thresholds where indicated.
- G. Sound tile after setting. Replace hollow sounding units.
- H. Keep expansion joints free of adhesive or grout. Apply sealant to joints.
- I. Allow tile to set for a minimum of 48 hours prior to grouting.
- J. Grout tile joints. Use standard grout unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Apply sealant to junction of tile and dissimilar materials and junction of dissimilar planes.

#### **3.04 INSTALLATION - FLOORS - THIN-SET METHODS (UPPER FLOORS)**

- A. Over exterior concrete substrates, install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method F102, with standard grout.
- B. Over interior concrete substrates, install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method F113, dry-set or latex-portland cement bond coat, with standard grout, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Where waterproofing membrane is indicated, install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method F122, with latex-portland cement grout.
  - 2. Where epoxy bond coat and grout are indicated, install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method F131.

3. Where furan bond coat and grout are indicated, install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method F133.
4. Where epoxy or furan grout is indicated, but not epoxy or furan bond coat, install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method F115.

### **3.05 INSTALLATION - FLOORS - MORTAR BED METHODS (GROUND FLOOR)**

- A. Over interior concrete substrates, install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method F111, with cleavage membrane, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Where waterproofing membrane is indicated, with standard grout or no mention of grout type, install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method F121.
- B. Cleavage Membrane: Lap edges and ends.
- C. Waterproofing Membrane: Install as specified in ANSI A108.13.
- D. Mortar Bed Thickness: 1 1/2 inch, unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.06 INSTALLATION - WALL TILE**

- A. Over cementitious backer units install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method W223, organic adhesive.

### **3.07 CLEANING**

- A. Clean tile and grout surfaces.

### **3.08 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK**

- A. Do not permit traffic over finished floor surface for 4 days after installation.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 6500**  
**RESILIENT FLOORING & BASE**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Vinyl Composition Flooring
- B. Resilient base.
- C. Installation accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Restrictions on curing compounds for concrete slabs and floors.
- B. Section 03300 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete substrate.
- C. Section 26 0500 - Basic Electrical Materials and Methods
- D. Section 26 2726 - Wiring Devices and and Sensors
- E. Section 27 1500 - Voice and Data Communications

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM E648 - Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source; 2014c.
- B. ASTM F1066 - Standard Specification for Vinyl Composition Floor Tile; 2004 (Reapproved 2014).
- C. ASTM F1861 - Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base; 2008 (Reapproved 2012).
- D. NFPA 253 - Standard Method of Test for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source; 2015.
- E. ASTM E413 Classification for Rating Sound Insulation.
- F. ASTM C518 Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus.
- G. ASTM D395 Standard Test Methods for Rubber Property - Compression Set.
- H. ASTM D412 Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Rubbers and Thermoplastic Elastomers - Tension.
- I. ASTM D297 Standard Practice for Rubber Products - Chemical Analysis.
- J. ASTM D2047 Test Method for Static Coefficient of Friction of Polish-Coated Floor Surfaces as measured by the James Machine.
- K. ASTM D3676 Standard Specification for Rubber Cellular Cushion used for Carpet or Rug Underlay.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; including sizes, patterns and colors available; and installation instructions.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate seaming plan.
- D. Selection Samples: Submit manufacturer's complete set of color samples for Architect's initial selection.
- E. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommended maintenance materials, and suggested schedule for cleaning, stripping, and re-waxing.

**1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect roll materials from damage by storing on end.

## 1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain temperature in storage area between 55 degrees F (13 degrees C) and 90 degrees F (72 degrees C).

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 TILE FLOORING

- A. Vinyl Composition Tile: Homogeneous, with color extending throughout thickness, and:
  - 1. Minimum Requirements: Comply with ASTM F1066, of Class corresponding to type specified.
  - 2. Critical Radiant Flux (CRF): Minimum 0.45 watt per square centimeter, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253.
  - 3. Size: 12 x 12 inch (305 x 305 mm).
  - 4. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
  - 5. Pattern: Multi-Colored.
  - 6. Manufacturers:
    - a. Armstrong
    - b. PRODUCTS
      - 1) VCT - Armstrong

### 2.02 RESILIENT BASE, TRIM & CHAIR RAILS

- A. RB-1 & RB-2
  - 1. Manufacturer: Roppe, [www.roppe.com](http://www.roppe.com)
  - 2. Color: Black Brown 193
  - 3. Resilient Base: ASTM F1861, Type TP, rubber, thermoplastic; top set Style B, Cove, and as follows:
  - 4. Critical Radiant Flux (CRF): Minimum 0.45 watt per square centimeter, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253.
  - 5. Height: 4 inch and 6 inch inch (\_\_\_) mm.
    - a. RB1 = 6 inch
    - b. RB2 = 4 inch
  - 6. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) thick.
  - 7. Finish: Satin.
  - 8. Length: Roll.
  - 9. Color: see color and finish schedule.
  - 10. Accessories: Premolded external corners, internal corners, and end stops.

### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Subfloor Filler: White premix latex; type recommended by adhesive material manufacturer.
- B. Primers, Adhesives, and Seaming Materials: Waterproof; types recommended by flooring manufacturer.
- C. Moldings, Transition and Edge Strips: see below.
  - 1. TH1 - Manufacturer: Metal Threshold, see color and finish schedule
  - 2. TH2 - Manufacturer: MSI Stone, see color and finish schedule
- D.
  - 1. T1 - Manufacturer: Schluter Systems, see color and finish
- E. Filler for Coved Base: Plastic.
- F. Sealer and Wax: Types recommended by flooring manufacturer - installed by CM.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are flat to tolerances acceptable to flooring manufacturer, free of cracks that might telegraph through flooring, clean, dry, and free of curing compounds, surface hardeners, and other chemicals that might interfere with bonding of flooring to substrate.

- B. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive resilient flooring.
- C. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive resilient base.
- D. Cementitious Sub-floor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are dry enough and ready for resilient flooring installation by testing for moisture and pH.
  - 1. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by resilient flooring manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.
- E. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are dust-free and free of substances which would impair bonding of adhesive materials to sub-floor surfaces.
- F. Verify that concrete sub-floor surfaces are dry enough and ready for resilient flooring installation by testing for moisture emission rate and alkalinity in accordance with ASTM F710; obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by resilient flooring manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.
- G. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.
- H. Verify that all slab and underslab moisture requirements are met prior to installation. Contractor shall conform with all Manufacturers requirements and provide all necessary test results to the Architect and owner prior to installation

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove sub-floor ridges and bumps. Fill minor low spots, cracks, joints, holes, and other defects with sub-floor filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface.
- B. Prohibit traffic until filler is cured.
- C. Clean substrate.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Starting installation constitutes acceptance of sub-floor conditions.
- B. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Spread only enough adhesive to permit installation of materials before initial set.
- D. Fit joints tightly.
- E. Set flooring in place, press with heavy roller to attain full adhesion.
- F. Where type of floor finish, pattern, or color are different on opposite sides of door, terminate flooring under centerline of door.
- G. Install edge strips at unprotected or exposed edges, where flooring terminates, and where indicated.
- H. Scribe flooring to walls, columns, cabinets, floor outlets, and other appurtenances to produce tight joints.

### **3.04 TILE FLOORING**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Mix tile from container to ensure shade variations are consistent when tile is placed, unless manufacturer's instructions say otherwise.
- C. Spread only enough adhesive to permit installation of materials before initial set.
- D. Set flooring in place, press with heavy roller to attain full adhesion.
- E. Lay flooring with joints and seams parallel to building lines to produce symmetrical tile pattern.
- F. Install tile to ashlar pattern. Allow minimum 1/2 full size tile width at room or area perimeter.
- G. Where floor finishes are different on opposite sides of door, terminate flooring under centerline of door.

- H. Install edge strips at unprotected or exposed edges, where flooring terminates, and where indicated. Before installation of flooring, secure metal strips with stainless steel screws.
- I. Scribe flooring to walls, columns, cabinets, floor outlets, and other appurtenances to produce tight joints.
- J. Install flooring in recessed floor access covers. Maintain floor pattern.

### **3.05 RESILIENT BASE**

- A. Fit joints tightly and make vertical. Maintain minimum dimension of 8'-0" inches (\_\_\_\_ mm) between joints.
- B. At internal corners use premolded units. At external corners, use premolded units. At exposed ends, use premolded units.
- C. Install base on solid backing. Bond tightly to wall and floor surfaces.
- D. Scribe and fit to door frames and other interruptions.
- E. Add filler strip at space between gypsum wall board and floor slab prior to installing base

### **3.06 CLEANING**

- A. Remove excess adhesive from floor, base, and wall surfaces without damage.
- B. Clean in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Clean, seal, and wax resilient flooring products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.07 PROTECTION**

- A. Prohibit traffic on resilient flooring for 48 hours after installation.

### **3.08 SCHEDULE: SEE DRAWINGS.**

### **3.09 ATTIC STOCK**

- A. CM shall provide the owner with the following attic stock per the requirements below:
  - 1. One full box of each flooring & base type specified in this section
  - 2. Each box shall be turned over to the owner at project closeout unopened and clearly labeled

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 6813  
TILE CARPETING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Carpet tile, fully adhered.
- B. Custom Carpet Tile (Owner Provided)

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Restrictions on curing compounds for concrete slabs and floors.
- B. Section 09300-Tile: Marble Thresholds.
- C. Section 09650-Resilient Flooring: Base and transition finish.
- D. Section 07900 Joint sealers
- E. Section 09260 Gypsum board assemblies
- F. Section 09900 Paints and coatings
- G. Section 26 0500 - Basic Electrical Materials and Methods
- H. Section 26 2726 - Wiring Devices and Sensors
- I. Section 27 1500 - Voice and Data Communication Cabeling

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. CRI (CIS) - Carpet Installation Standard; Carpet and Rug Institute; 2009.
- B. CRI 104 - Standard for Installation of Commercial Textile Floorcovering Materials; Carpet and Rug Institute; 2002.
- C. CRI (GLA) - Green Label Testing Program - Approved Adhesive Products; Carpet and Rug Institute; Current Edition.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate layout of joints, direction of carpet pile, and location of edge moldings.
- C. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; sizes, patterns, colors available, and method of installation.
- D. Samples: Submit two carpet tiles illustrating color and pattern design for each carpet color selected.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommended maintenance materials, and suggested schedule for cleaning.

**1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Store materials in area of installation for minimum period of 24 hours prior to installation.

**1.06 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
- B. Provide 5 boxes of carpet tiles of each color and pattern selected.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS:**

- A. Back of House
  - 1. Shaw, see color and finish schedule
- B. Gaming Floor



1. Milliken, see color and finish schedule

## 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Manufacturer: Shaw Contract Group
  1. CPT-1
    - a. Pattern / Collection: see color and finish schedule
    - b. Color: see color and finish schedule
    - c. Product Number: see color and finish schedule
    - d. Size: see color and finish scheule
- B. Milliken
  1. CPT-2: Miliken (custom carpet)

## 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Carpet Cushion
  1. Manufacturer: Shaw Hospitality Group, [www.shawhospitalitygroup.com](http://www.shawhospitalitygroup.com), 866.758.3289
  2. Product: Endurance II Cushion, F7010 / F7011
  3. Specifications:
    - a. Roll Width: 6 feet / 12 feet
    - b. Weight: 32 oz.
    - c. Thickness: .300 inches
    - d. Density (lbs. cu/ft): 8.9
    - e. Roll Length: 60 feet
    - f. Square Yards per Roll: 40 / 80
    - g. Average Roll Diameter: 19 inches
    - h. Roll Weight: 80 / 160 lbs
    - i. R-Value: 2.1
    - j. Tensile Strength ASTM D2646: Min = L30 lb / W30 lb - All Weights
    - k. Tear Strength ASTM D2262: Min = L20 lb / W20 lb - All Weights
    - l. PIII Test: DOC -FF-1-70 All Weights Passed
    - m. Radiant Panel: ASTM - E-648 All Weights Class
- B. Sub-Floor Filler: White premix latex; type recommended by flooring material manufacturer.
- C. Edge Strips: varies, see floor covering plan, architect to select color.
- D. Adhesives: Acceptable to carpet tile manufacturer, compatible with materials being adhered; maximum VOC of 50 g/L; CRI Green Label certified; in lieu of labeled product, independent test report showing compliance is acceptable.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are smooth and flat within tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive carpet tile.
- B. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are dust-free and free of substances that could impair bonding of adhesive materials to sub-floor surfaces.
- C. Verify that concrete sub-floor surfaces are ready for carpet tile installation by testing for moisture emission rate and alkalinity; obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by carpet tile manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.
- D. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove sub-floor ridges and bumps. Fill minor or local low spots, cracks, joints, holes, and other defects with sub-floor filler.
- B. Apply, trowel, and float filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface. Prohibit traffic until filler is cured.
- C. Vacuum clean substrate.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Starting installation constitutes acceptance of sub-floor conditions.
- B. Install carpet tile in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and CRI Carpet Installation Standard.
- C. Install carpet tile in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and CRI 104.
- D. Blend carpet from different cartons to ensure minimal variation in color match.
- E. Cut carpet tile clean. Fit carpet tight to intersection with vertical surfaces without gaps.
- F. Lay carpet tile in square pattern, with pile direction alternating to next unit, set parallel to building lines.
- G. Locate change of color or pattern between rooms under door centerline.
- H. Fully adhere carpet tile to substrate.
- I. Trim carpet tile neatly at walls and around interruptions.
- J. Complete installation of edge strips, concealing exposed edges.

### **3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Remove excess adhesive without damage, from floor, base, and wall surfaces.
- B. Clean and vacuum carpet surfaces.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 6900**  
**ACCESS FLOORING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Work of this section includes, but is not limited to: access floor panels, floor coverings, understructure and various electrical, data and communication accessories.

**1.02 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Concrete sealer shall be compatible with pedestal adhesive, see Division 3.
- B. See Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for connection to ground of access flooring understructure. Note: The electrical engineer or contractor shall determine requirements for grounding and the electrical contractor shall provide the necessary labor and materials to electrically connect the access flooring to the building ground if it is required.

**1.03 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS FOR STORAGE AND INSTALLATION**

- A. Area to receive and store access floor materials shall be enclosed and maintained at ambient temperatures between 35° to 95° F and relative humidity levels between 20% to 80%. All floor panels shall be stored at ambient temperature between 50° to 90° F for at least 24 hours before installation begins. All areas of installation shall be enclosed and maintained at ambient temperature between 50° to 90° F and at relative humidity levels between 20% to 80%, and shall remain within these environmental limits throughout occupancy.

**1.04 REFERENCES**

- A. CISCA (Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association) - "Recommended Test Procedures for Access Floors" shall be used as a guideline when presenting load performance product information.

**1.05 PERFORMANCE CERTIFICATION**

- A. Product tests shall be witnessed and certified by independent engineering and testing laboratory based in the U.S. with a minimum of five years experience testing access floor components in accordance CISCA "Recommended Test Procedures for Access Floors".

**1.06 COUNTRY-OF-ORIGIN AND PRODUCT MARKING**

- A. Access floor materials shall comply with the provisions outlined in FAR Subpart 25.2 - Buy American Act - Construction Materials.
- B. Floor panels shall be permanently marked with manufacturer's name, product identification, manufacturing date and country-of-origin. Removable Product ID stickers are not acceptable.

**1.07 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Design Load (Allowable Load): Panel supported on actual understructure system shall be capable of supporting a load point of 2500 lbs. applied on one square inch area at any location on the panel without experiencing permanent set as defined by CISCA. The loading method used to determine design (allowable) load shall be in conformance with CISCA Concentrated Load test method but with panel tested on actual understructure instead of steel blocks.
- B. Safety Factor: Panel supported on actual understructure system shall withstand a point load of no less than (2) two times its design load rating on a one square inch area anywhere on the panel without failure when tested in accordance with CISCA A/F, Section 2, "Ultimate Loading". Failure is defined as the point at which the system will no longer accept the load.
- C. Ultimate Load: Panel supported on actual understructure system shall be capable of supporting a point load of at least 5000 lbs. applied through a load indenter on a one square inch area at any location on the panel without failure (i.e. minimum safety factor if 2) when tested in accordance with CISCA A/F, Section 2, "Ultimate Loading".
- D. Rolling Load: Panel supported on actual understructure system shall be able to withstand the following rolling loads at any location on the panel without developing a local and overall surface

deformation greater than 0.040 inches when tested in accordance with CISC A/F Section 3, "Rolling Loads". Note: wheel 1 and wheel 2 tests shall be performed on two separate panels.

1. CISC A Wheel 1:           Size: 3" dia x 1 13/16" wide                   Load: 2000 lbs. Passes: 10
  2. CISC A Wheel 2\*:       Size: (A) 6" dia x 2" wide                   Load: 2000 lbs. Passes: 10,000
    - a. (B) 10" dia. X 4" wide
  3. \*Note: For loads up to 1500 lbs., specify Wheel 2 (A). For loads greater than 1500 lbs.,
    - a. Specify Wheel 2 (B).
- E. Impact Load: Panel and supporting understructure (the system) shall be capable of supporting an impact load of 150 lbs. dropped from a height of 36 inches onto a one square inch area (using a round or square indenter) at any location on the panel when tested in accordance with CISC A/F, Section 8, "Drop Impact Load Test".
- F. Panel Drop Test: Panel shall be capable of being dropped face up onto to a concrete slab from a height of 36", after which it shall continue to meet all load performance requirements as previously defined.
- G. Panel Cutout: Panel with an 8" diameter interior cutout supported on actual understructure shall be capable of maintaining its design load strength with a minimum safety factor of 2 anywhere on the panel without the use of additional supports.
- H. Flammability: System shall meet Class A Flame spread requirements for flame spread and smoke development. Tests shall be performed in accordance with ASTM-E84-1998, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics for Building Materials.
- I. Combustibility: All components of the access floor system shall qualify as non-combustible by demonstrating compliance with requirements of ASTM E 136, Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 deg C.
- J. Recycled Content: Panel and understructure system shall be required to have a minimum post-consumer recycled content of 18% and a minimum total recycled content of 49%.
- K. Axial Load: Pedestal support assembly shall provide a 6000 lb. axial load without permanent deformation when tested in accordance with CISC A/F, Section 5, "Pedestal Axial Load Test".
- L. Overturning Moment: Pedestal support assembly shall provide an average overturning moment of 1000 in-lbs. when glued to a clean, sound, uncoated concrete surface when tested in accordance with CISC A/F, Section 6, "Pedestal Overturning Moment Test". ICBO number for the specific system or structural calculations shall be required attesting to the lateral stability of the system under seismic conditions.
- M. Stringer Concentrated Load: Stringer shall be capable of withstanding a concentrated load of 450 lbs. placed in its midspan on a one square inch area using a round or square indenter without exceeding a permanent set of 0.010" after the load is removed when tested in accordance with CISC A/F, Section 4, "Stringer Load Testing".

#### **1.08 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS:**

- A. Access floor system, where indicated on the design documents, shall consist of modular and removable fully encased cementitious filled welded steel panels supported on all four edges by structural steel members which are designed to bolt onto adjustable height pedestal assemblies forming a modular grid pattern.
- B. Panel shall be easily removed by one person with a suction cup lifting device and shall be interchangeable except where cut for special conditions.
- C. Quantities, finished floor heights (FFH) and location of accessories shall be as specified on the contract drawings.

#### **1.09 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW**

- A. Detail sheets, for each proposed product type, which provide the necessary information to describe the product and its performance.

- B. Test reports, certified by an independent testing laboratory with a minimum of five years experience testing access floor components in accordance with Cisca Recommended Test Procedures, certifying that component parts perform as specified.

#### **1.10 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION**

- A. Manufacturer's installation instructions and guidelines.
- B. Manufacturer's Owner Manual outlining recommended care and maintenance procedures.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Access floor system shall be as manufactured by Tate Access Floors, Inc. and shall consist of ConCore<sup>®</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ access floor panel supported by a bolted stringer understructure system.
- B. Alternative products shall meet or exceed all requirements as indicated herein and must receive prior written approval by the architect or designer.
- C. Access floor manufacture shall be ISO9001: 2000 certified demonstrating it has a robust and well documented quality management system with continuous improvement goals and strategies.
- D. Access floor manufacturer's facilities shall be ISO14001:2004 certified demonstrating that they maintain an environmental management system.
- E. Access floor manufacturer's facilities shall be OHSAS 18001:2007 certified demonstrating that they maintain an Occupational Health and Safety Management system.

#### **2.02 SUPPORT COMPONENTS**

- A. Pedestals:
  - 1. Pedestal assemblies shall be corrosive resistant, all steel welded construction, and shall provide an adjustment range of +/- 1" for finished floor heights 6" or greater. Zinc electroplating shall be prohibited on all pedestal components, including head plate, threaded rod, adjustment nut, pedestal tube, base plate, and all fasteners.
  - 2. Pedestal assemblies shall provide a means of leveling and locking the assembly at a selected height, which requires deliberate action to change height setting and prevents vibration displacement.
  - 3. Hot dip galvanized steel pedestal head shall be welded to a threaded rod which includes a specially designed adjusting nut. The nut shall provide location lugs to engage the pedestal base assembly, such that deliberate action is required to change the height setting.
  - 4. Hot dip galvanized pedestal base assembly shall consist of a formed steel plate with no less than 16 inches of bearing area, welded to a 7/8" square steel tube and shall be designed to engage the head assembly.

#### **2.03 STRINGERS:**

- A. Stringers shall support each edge of panel.
- B. Steel stringer shall have conductive galvanized coating. Zinc electroplating shall be prohibited on stringers and stringer fasteners.
- C. Stringers shall be individually and rigidly fastened to the pedestal with one machine screw for each foot of stringer length. Bolts shall provide positive electrical contact between the stringers and pedestals. Connections depending on gravity or spring action are unacceptable.
- D. Stringer grid shall be 4' stringers in a basketweave configuration ensuring maximum lateral stability in all directions. (Also available in 2' x 4' and 2' x 2' grid patterns)

#### **2.04 PANEL COMPONENTS**

#### **2.05 FLOOR PANELS:**

- A. Panels shall consist of a top steel sheet welded to a formed steel bottom pan filled internally with a lightweight cementitious material. Mechanical or adhesive methods for attachment of the steel top and bottom sheets are unacceptable.

- B. Floor panels shall be protected from corrosion by electro-deposited epoxy paint. The use of zinc electroplating shall be prohibited.
- C. Cementitious fill material shall be totally encased within the steel welded shell except where cut for special conditions. Note: This greatly reduces the potential for dust in the environment from exposed cement materials.
- D. Perforated Airflow Panels: Perforated steel airflow panels designed for static loads of [1000] [1250] lbs. shall be interchangeable with standard field panels and shall have 25% open surface area with the following air distribution capability:
  - 1. Panel without damper: 746 cfm at 0.1-inch of H<sub>2</sub>O (static pressure).
  - 2. Panel with damper at 100% open position: 515 cfm at 0.1-inch of H<sub>2</sub>O (static pressure).
- E. Perforated Directional Airflow Panels: Perforated steel airflow panels designed for static loads of [1000] [1250] lbs. shall be interchangeable with standard field panels and shall have 25% open surface area with the following air distribution capability without a damper: 765 cfm at 0.1-inch of H<sub>2</sub>O (static pressure). The panel shall be equipped with directional vanes for angular air flow across the entire face of a typical 78" high IT rack, providing a rack Total Air Capture (TAC) index of 93%. Perforated panels shall have the following load bearing capacities:
  - 1. Design Load: Panel supported on actual understructure shall be capable of supporting a safe working or design load of [1000] [1250] lbs. placed on a one square inch area, using a round or square indenter, at any location on the panel without yielding.
  - 2. Safety Factor: (2) Times Design Load
  - 3. Impact load: 150 lbs.
- F. Grate Airflow Panels: Die cast aluminum grate panels designed for static and rolling loads shall be interchangeable with standard field panels. Grate panels shall have 56% open area with the following air distribution capability without a damper: 2096 cfm at 0.1-inch of H<sub>2</sub>O (static pressure). Grate panels shall have the following load bearing capacities:
  - 1. Design Load: Panel supported on actual understructure shall be capable of supporting a safe working or design load of 1000 lbs. placed on a one square inch area, using a round or square indenter, at any location on the panel without yielding.
    - a. Safety Factor: (2) Times Design Load
    - b. Rolling Load: Grate panel and supporting understructure shall be able to withstand the following rolling loads at any location on the panel without developing a local and overall surface deformation greater than 0.040 inches. Note: wheel 1 and wheel 2 tests shall be performed on two separate panels.
 

1) Wheel 1:	Size: 3" dia x 1 13/16" wide	Load: 1000 lbs.
	Passes: 10	
2) Wheel 2:	Size: 6" dia x 2" wide	Load: 800 lbs.
	Passes: 10,000	
    - c. Impact load: 100 lbs.
- G. Directional Airflow Panels: Welded steel airflow panel design for static and rolling loads shall be interchangeable with standard field panels. Directional airflow panels shall have 68% open area with the following air distribution capability without a damper: 2594 CFM at 0.1-inch of H<sub>2</sub>O (static pressure). The panel shall be equipped with directional vanes equipped with pressure equalizing perforation for even flow and also produces an angular air flow across the entire face of a typical 78" high IT rack, providing a rack Total Air Capture (TAC) index of 93%. Directional airflow panels shall have the following load bearing capacities, and shall be installed with all four perimeter edges fully supported on a steel roll formed stringer:
  - 1. Design Load: Directional airflow panel supported on actual understructure shall be capable of supporting a safe working or design load of 2500 lbs. placed on a one square inch area, using a round or square indenter, at any location on the panel without yielding.
    - a. Safety Factor: (2) two Times Design Load
    - b. Rolling Load: Directional airflow panel supported on actual understructure shall be capable of withstanding the following rolling loads at any location on the panel without developing a local and overall surface deformation greater than 0.040 inches. Note: wheel 1 and wheel 2 tests shall be performed on two separate panels.

- 1) Wheel 1: 3" dia x 1 13/16" wide Load: 2000 lbs. Passes: 10
- (a) Wheel 2: 10" dia x 4" wide Load: 2000 lbs. Passes: 10,000
- c. Impact Load: 200 lbs.

## 2.06 ACCESSORIES

- A. Under floor Air Terminal
  - 1. Manufacturer: Johnson Controls; www.johnsoncontrols.com
  - 2. Product: Underfloor Air Terminal - Constant Volume
  - 3. Model Number: Elan-10R-360 (personal comfort diffuser)
  - 4. Size: 10 inch nominal diameter
  - 5. Color: Black
  - 6. Cast Aluminum
  - 7. Conforms with NFPA 90a
  - 8. 1250 - 2000 lbs load strength
  - 9. Noise Criteria: below NC-17 at all flow conditions
  - 10. Floor Cut: 10.6875 inch diameter (271mm) +.125/-.00
- B. Air sealing grommet shall be installed in the interior or on the edge of a factory placed cutout located in the one of the two following position in the panel.
- C. OPTION A (Interior Cutout)
  - 1. 1. 4.075" from the left edge of the panel
  - 2. 2. 7.375" from the top and bottom edge of the panel
    - a. a. The cutout in the panel shall measure 6.75"x9.25" and shall be a punched penetration, saw cutting is not acceptable
    - b. b. The cutout location shall allow the air sealing grommet to be located in such a way that regardless of rack position or overall dimensions, that the unit will be position beneath the rack allowing for cable penetrations to enter the rack footprint.
  - 3. OPTION B (Perimeter Edge Cutout)
    - a. 1. The flange shall align with the left edge of the panel
    - b. 2. 7.75" from the top edge and bottom edge of the panel
      - 1) a. The cutout in the panel shall measure 7.875"x9.25" and shall be a punched penetration, saw cutting is not acceptable.
- D. Provide manufacturer's standard steps, ramps, fascia plate, perimeter support, and grommets where indicated on the contract drawings.
- E. Provide(quantity - coordinate with owner) spare floor panels and (quantity - coordinate with owner) square feet of understructure systems for each type used in the project for maintenance stock. Deliver to project in manufacturer's standard packaging clearly marked with the contents.
- F. Provide 5 panel lifting devices.
- G. When applicable provide manufacturer's standard underfloor air systems components (including, grilles, diffusers and perforated floor panels) where indicated on the contract drawings.

## 2.07 FINISHES

- A. Finish the surface of floor panels with floor covering material as indicated on the contract drawings. Where floor coverings are by the access floor manufacturer, the type, color and pattern shall be selected from manufacturer's standard. All areas to be furnished with laminated floor panels must be maintained at ambient temperature between 50° to 90° F and at humidity level between 20% to 80% relative and shall remain within these ranges through installation and occupancy.
- B. High-pressure laminate floor covering shall meet requirements of NEMA LD3, and shall conform with one of the following grades: Grade HDH (1/8"/ 3.0mm) or Grade HDM (1/16"/ 1.5mm).
- C. High-pressure laminate floor coverings shall have an edge condition that is integral to the tile. Separate edge trim pieces are not acceptable.

- D. All other tile coverings that require trim edge shall be applied to the panel's top surface and shall not wrap around the panel's edge.
- E. Surface to Ground Resistance of Standard High Pressure Laminate Anti-Static Covering: Average test values shall be within the range of 1,000,000 ohms ( $1.0 \times 10^6$ ) to 20,000 megaohms ( $2.0 \times 10^{10}$  ohms), as determined by testing in accordance with the test method for conductive flooring specified in Chapter 3 of NFPA 99, but modified to place one electrode on the floor surface and to attach one electrode to the understructure. Resistance shall be tested at 500 volts.
- F. Surface to Ground Resistance of Conductive Laminate Covering: Not less than 25,000 ohms ( $2.5 \times 10^4$ ), nor more than 1,000,000 ohms ( $1.0 \times 10^6$ ), as determined by testing in accordance with the test method for conductive flooring specified in Chapter 3 of NFPA 99, but modified to place one electrode on the floor surface and to attach one electrode to the understructure. Resistance shall be tested at 500 volts.

## 2.08 FABRICATION TOLERANCES

- A. Floor panel flatness measured on a diagonal: +/- 0.035"
- B. Floor panel flatness measured along edges: +/- 0.025"
- C. Floor panel width or length of required size: +/- 0.010"
- D. Floor panel squareness tolerance: +/- 0.015"

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Examine structural subfloor for unevenness, irregularities and dampness that would affect the quality and execution of the work. Do not proceed with installation until structural floor surfaces are level, clean, and dry as completed by others.
- B. Concrete sealers, if used, shall be identified and proven to be compatible with pedestal adhesive. Verify that adhesive achieves bond to slab before commencing work.
- C. Verify dimensions on contract drawings, including level of interfaces including abutting floor, ledges and doorsills.
- D. The General Contractor shall provide clear access, dry subfloor area free of construction debris and other trades throughout installation of access floor system.
- E. Area to receive and store access floor materials shall be enclosed and maintained at ambient temperatures between 35° to 95° F and relative humidity levels between 20 to 80%. At least 24 hrs. before installation begins, all floor panels shall be stored at ambient temperatures between 50° to 90° F and relative humidity levels between 20% to 80% and shall remain within these environmental limits throughout occupancy.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Pedestal locations shall be established from approved shop drawings so that mechanical and electrical work can be installed without interfering with pedestal installation.
- B. Installation of access floor shall be coordinated with other trades to maintain the integrity of the installed system. All traffic on access floor shall be controlled by access floor installer. No traffic but that of access floor installers shall be permitted on any floor area for 24 hours to allow the pedestal adhesive to set. Access floor panels shall not be removed by other trades for 72 hours after their installation.
- C. Floor system and accessories shall be installed under the supervision of the manufacturer's authorized representative and according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- D. No dust or debris producing operations by other trades shall be allowed in areas where access floor is being installed to ensure proper bonding of pedestals to subfloor.
- E. Access floor installer shall keep the subfloor broom clean as installation progresses.



- F. Partially complete floors shall be braced against shifting to maintain the integrity of the installed system where required.
- G. Additional pedestals as needed shall support panels where floor is disrupted by columns, walls, and cutouts.
- H. Understructure shall be aligned such that all uncut panels are interchangeable and fit snugly but do not bind when placed in alternate positions.
- I. Finished floor shall be level, not varying more than 0.062" in 10 feet or 0.125" overall.
- J. Inspect system prior to application of floor covering and replace any floor panels that are cracked, broken and structurally damaged and do not comply with specified requirements.
- K. Acceptance: General contractor shall accept floor in whole or in part prior to allowing use by other trades.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **4.01 ACCESS FLOORING**

- A. Access Flooring: Factory-fabricated system consisting of removable floor panels and supporting structure that allows access to each space below floor without requiring removal of panels other than the one directly above the space to which access is needed; provide all components and accessories required for complete installation and as indicated.
  - 1. Configuration: Stringerless system.
  - 2. Finished Floor Elevation: Top of access floor \_\_\_\_ inches (\_\_\_\_ mm) nominal height above building structural floor.
  - 3. Floor Panel Size: 24 x 24 inches (600 x 600 mm).
- B. Performance Requirements:
  - 1. Pedestals:
    - a. Maximum Axial Load: 5,000 lb (2,268 kg) without permanent deformation.
    - b. Ultimate Strength: Not less than twice design load.
  - 2. Floor Panels: Conform to the following:
    - a. Live Load: 250 lb/sq ft (11.9 kPa).
    - b. Maximum Deflection: 0.04 inch (1 mm).
    - c. Concentrated Load: 1,000 lb on 1 sq in (500 kg on 710 sq mm) at any location with maximum deflection of 0.08 inch (2 mm).
    - d. Permanent Deformation: 0.02 inch (0.5 mm) maximum at design load.
    - e. Ultimate Strength: Not less than twice design load.
    - f. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25, maximum; smoke developed index of 450, maximum; when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 3. Lateral Stability: Design system for lateral stability in all directions, with or without panels in place.
  - 4. Surface Electrical Resistance: Maximum 1 ohm per panel.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 9600**  
**RESINOUS FLOOR COATINGS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. This section includes the following:
  - 1. Resinous flooring system at food prep areas as shown on the drawings and in schedules.
- B. Related sections include the following:
  - 1. 1. Cast-in-Place Concrete, section 03 30 00

**1.03 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- A. The work shall consist of preparation of the substrate, the furnishing and application of a cementitious urethane based self-leveling seamless flooring system with flintshot quartz aggregate broadcast and urethane topcoat.
- B. The system shall have the color and texture as specified by the Owner with a nominal thickness of 1/4 inch. It shall be applied to the prepared area(s) as defined in the plans strictly in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Cove base (if required) to be applied where noted on plans and per manufacturers standard details unless otherwise noted

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Latest edition of Manufacturer's literature including performance data and installation procedures.
- B. Manufacturer's Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) for each product being used.
- C. Samples: A 3 x 3 inch square sample of the proposed system. Color, texture, and thickness shall be representative of overall appearance of finished system subject to normal tolerances.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. The Manufacturer shall have a minimum of 10 years experience in the production, sales, and technical support of epoxy and urethane industrial flooring and related materials.
- B. The Applicator shall have experience in installation of the flooring system as confirmed by the manufacturer in all phases of surface preparation and application of the specified product.
- C. No requests for substitutions shall be considered that would change the generic type of the specified System.
- D. System shall be in compliance with requirements of United States Department of Agriculture (USDA),
- E. Food, Drug Administration (FDA), and local Health Department.
- F. A pre-installation conference shall be held between Applicator, General Contractor and the Owner to review and clarification of this specification, application procedure, quality control, inspection and acceptance criteria and production schedule.

**1.06 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Packing and Shipping
  - 1. All components of the system shall be delivered to the site in the Manufacturer's packaging, clearly identified with the product type and batch number.
- B. Storage and Protection
  - 1. The Applicator shall be provided with a dry storage area for all components. The area shall be between 60 F and 85 F, dry, out of direct sunlight and in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations and relevant health and safety regulations.

2. Copies of Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for all components shall be kept on site for review by the Engineer or other personnel.
- C. Waste Disposal
1. The Applicator shall be provided with adequate disposal facilities for non-hazardous waste generated during installation of the system.

### **1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Site Requirements
1. Application may proceed while air, material and substrate temperatures are between 60 F and 85 F providing the substrate temperature is above the dew point. Outside of this range, the Manufacturer shall be consulted.
  2. The relative humidity in the specific location of the application shall be less than 85 % and the surface temperature shall be at least 5 F above the dew point.
  3. The Applicator shall be supplied with adequate lighting equal to the final lighting level during the preparation and installation of the system.
- B. Conditions of new concrete to be coated with cementitious urethane material.
1. Concrete shall be moisture cured for a minimum of 7 days and have fully cured for 14 days in accordance with:
    - a. ACI-308 prior to the application of the coating system pending moisture tests.  
Outside of these parameters manufacturer shall be consulted
  2. Concrete shall have a flat rubbed finish, float or light steel trowel finish (a hard steel trowel finish is neither necessary or desirable).
  3. Sealers and curing agents should not to be used.
  4. Concrete surfaces on grade shall have been constructed with a vapor barrier to protect against the effects of vapor transmission and possible delamination of the system.
- C. Safety Requirements
1. The Owner shall be responsible for the removal of foodstuffs from the work area.
  2. Non-related personnel in the work area shall be kept to a minimum.

### **1.08 WARRANTY**

- A. Dur-A-Flex, Inc. warrants that material shipped to buyers at the time of shipment substantially free from material defects and will perform substantially to Dur-A-Flex, Inc. published literature if used in accordance with the latest prescribed procedures and prior to the expiration date.
- B. Dur-A-Flex, Inc. liability with respect to this warranty is strictly limited to the value of the material purchase.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 FLOORING**

- A. Dur-A-Flex, Inc, Poly-Crete MDB (self leveling broadcast quartz), Urethane topcoat seamless flooring system.
1. System Materials:
    - a. Topping: Dur-A-Flex, Inc, Poly-Crete MD resin, hardener and aggregate.
    - b. The aggregate shall be Dur-A-Flex, Inc. flintshot quartz aggregate.
    - c. Topcoat: Dur-A-Flex, Inc. Poly-Crete Color-Fast resin, hardener and powder aggregate.
  2. Patch Materials
    - a. Shallow Fill and Patching: Use Dur-A-Flex, Inc. Poly-Crete MD (up to ¼ inch).
    - b. Deep Fill and Sloping Material (over ¼ inch): Use Dur-A-Flex, Inc. Poly-Crete WR.

### **2.02 MANUFACTURER**

- A. Dur-A-Flex, Inc., 95 Goodwin Street, East Hartford, CT 06108, Phone: (860) 528-9838, Fax: (860) 528-2802
- B. Manufacturer of Approved System shall be single source and made in the USA.

## 2.03 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Topping
  - 1. Percent Reactive 100%
  - 2. VOC 0 g/l
  - 3. Bond Strength to Concrete ASTM D 4541 400 psi, substrates fails
  - 4. Compressive Strength, ASTM C 579 7,400 psi
  - 5. Tensile Strength, ASTM D 638 1800 psi
  - 6. IMpact Resistance @ 125 mils, MIL D 3134, >160 inch lbs
- B. Topcoat
- C. Percent Solid 100%
- D. voc 0 G/L
- E. Compressive Strength, ASTM C 579 7800 psi
- F. Tensile Strength ASTM D 638 4,200 psi
- G. Flexural Strength ASTM D 790 1,000 psi
- H. Abrasion Resistance, ASTM D 4060 CS-17 Wheel, 1,000 gm load, 1,000 cycles, 30 mg loss
- I. Impact Resistance, ASTM D 1709 160 in. lbs
- J. Shore D Hardness, ASTM D 2240 65
- K. Gloss, ASTM D 523, 60 semi gloss appearance

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, installation tolerances and other conditions affecting flooring performance.
  - 1. Verify that substrates and conditions are satisfactory for flooring installation and comply with requirements specified.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. General
- B. New and existing concrete surfaces shall be free of oil, grease, curing compounds, loose particles, moss,
  - 1. algae growth, laitance, friable matter, dirt, and bituminous products.
  - 2. Moisture Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and as follows.
  - 3. a. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 99% relative humidity level measurement.
  - 4. If the relative humidity exceeds 99% then the Owner and/or Engineer shall be notified and advised of additional cost for the possible installation of a vapor mitigation system that has been approved by the manufacturer or other means to lower the value to the acceptable limit.
  - 5. If the vapor drive exceeds 99% relative humidity or 20 lbs/1,000 sf/24 hrs then the Owner and/or Engineer shall be notified and advised of additional cost for the possible installation of a vapor mitigation system that has been approved by the manufacturer or other means to lower the value to the acceptable limit.
- C. Mechanical surface preparation
  - 1. Shot blast all surfaces to receive flooring system with a mobile steel shot, dust recycling machine (Blastrac or equal). All surface and embedded accumulations of paint, toppings hardened concrete layers, laitance, power trowel finishes and other similar surface characteristics shall be completely removed leaving a bare concrete surface having a minimum profile of CSP 4-5 as described by the International Concrete Repair Institute.

2. Floor areas inaccessible to the mobile blast machines shall be mechanically abraded to the same degree of cleanliness, soundness and profile using diamond grinders, needle guns, bush hammers, or other suitable equipment.
3. Wherever a free edge will occur, including doorways, wall perimeters, expansion joints, columns, doorways, drains and equipment pads, a ¼ inch deep by 3/16 inch wide keyways shall be cut in.
4. Cracks and joints (non-moving) greater than 1/4 inch wide are to be chiseled or chipped-out and repaired per manufacturer's recommendations.
5. At spalled or worn areas, mechanically remove loose or delaminated concrete to a sound concrete and
6. patch per manufactures recommendations.

### 3.03 APPLICATION

#### A. General

1. The system shall be applied in three distinct steps as listed below:
  - a. Substrate preparation
  - b. Topping/overlay application with quartz aggregate broadcast.
  - c. Topcoat application, with a anti-slip aggregate broadcast if required
2. Immediately prior to the application of any component of the system, the surface shall be dry and any remaining dust or loose particles shall be removed using a vacuum or clean, dry, oil-free compressed air.
3. The handling, mixing and addition of components shall be performed in a safe manner to achieve the desired results in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations.
4. The system shall follow the contour of the substrate unless pitching or other leveling work has been specified by the Architect.
5. A neat finish with well-defined boundaries and straight edges shall be provided by the Applicator.

#### B. Topping

1. The topping shall be applied as a self-leveling system as specified. The topping shall be applied in one lift with a nominal thickness of 3/16 inch.
2. The topping shall be comprised of three components, a resin, hardener and filler as supplied by the Manufacturer.
3. The hardener shall be added to the resin and thoroughly dispersed by suitably approved mechanical means. Aggregate shall then be added to the catalyzed mixture and mixed in a manner to achieve a homogenous blend.
4. The topping shall be applied over horizontal surfaces using a pin rake, trowels or other systems approved by the Manufacturer.
5. Immediately upon placing, the topping shall be degassed with a 15/16 inch spiked roller.
6. Quartz aggregate shall be broadcast to excess into the wet material at the rate of 1 lbs/sf.
7. Allow material to fully cure. Vacuum, sweep and/or blow to remove all loose aggregate.

#### C. Topcoat

1. The topcoat shall be mixed and applied per manufacturer recommended procedure.
2. The topcoat shall be comprised of three components, a resin, hardener and filler as supplied by the manufacturer
3. The topcoat will be applied at the rate of 100 sf per kit (1.1 gal).
4. Non-Skid if required is broadcast at the rate of 1 lb per 100 sf and back rolled into the coating.
5. The finish floor will have a nominal thickness of 1/4 inch.

### 3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Tests, Inspection

#### B. The following tests shall be conducted by the Applicator:

1. Temperature
  - a. Air, substrate temperatures, relative humidity, and, if applicable, dew point.
2. Coverage Rates

- a. Rates for all layers shall be monitored by checking quantity of material used against the area covered.

**3.05 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Cure flooring material in compliance with manufacturer's directions, taking care to prevent their contamination during stages of application and prior to completion of the curing process.
- B. Remove masking. Perform detail cleaning at floor termination, to leave cleanable surface for subsequent work of other sections.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 10 2113.19**  
**PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Solid plastic toilet compartments.
- B. Urinal and vestibule screens.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Blocking and supports.
- B. Section 10 2800 - Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 2015.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate the work with placement of support framing and anchors in walls and ceilings.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate partition plan, elevation views, dimensions, details of wall supports, door swings.
- C. Product Data: Provide data on panel construction, hardware, and accessories.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples of partition panels, 6 x 6 inch (\_\_\_\_x\_\_\_\_ mm) in size illustrating panel finish, color, and sheen.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Solid Plastic Toilet Compartments:
  - 1. HDPE Toilet Partitions:
    - a. Scranton Products (Santana/Comtec/Capital); Product HDPE Toilet Partitions: [www.scrantonproducts.com](http://www.scrantonproducts.com).
  - 2. TP-2 - front of house: see color and finish schedule
  - 3. TP-1 - Back of House: See color and finish schedule
  - 4. Substitutions: Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

**2.02 SOLID PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS**

- A. Toilet Compartments: Factory fabricated doors, pilasters, and divider panels made of solid molded high density polyethylene (HDPE), floor-mounted headrail-braced.
  - 1. TP-1
    - a. Color: See color and finish schedule
    - b. Style: See color and finish schedule.
- B. Doors: Floor Mounted Head Rail Braced
  - 1. Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm).
  - 2. Width: 24 inch (610 mm).
  - 3. Width for Handicapped Use: 36 inch (915 mm), out-swinging.
  - 4. Height: 55 inch (1397 mm).
- C. Panels: Floor Mounted Head Rail Braced
  - 1. Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm).
  - 2. Height: 55 inch (1397 mm).

- 3. Depth: As indicated on drawings.
- D. Pilasters: Floor Mounted Head Rail Braced
  - 1. Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm).
  - 2. Width: As required to fit space; minimum 3 inches (76 mm).
- E. Screens: Without doors; to match compartments; mounted to wall with two panel brackets .

### **2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Pilaster Shoes: Formed chromed steel with polished finish, 3 in (75 mm) high, concealing floor fastenings.
  - 1. Provide adjustment for floor variations with screw jack through steel saddles integral with pilaster.
- B. Head Rails: Hollow anodized aluminum, 1 x 1-1/2 inch (25 x 38 mm) size, with anti-grip profile and cast socket wall brackets.
- C. Pilaster Brackets: Polished stainless steel.
- D. Wall Brackets: Continuous type, polished stainless steel.
- E. Attachments, Screws, and Bolts: Stainless steel, tamper proof type.
- F. Hardware: Polished stainless steel:
  - 1. Pivot hinges, gravity type, adjustable for door close positioning; two per door.
  - 2. Door Latch: Slide type with exterior emergency access feature.
  - 3. Door strike and keeper with rubber bumper; mounted on pilaster in alignment with door latch.
  - 4. Coat hook with rubber bumper; one per compartment, mounted on door.
  - 5. Provide door pull for outswinging doors.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify correct spacing of and between plumbing fixtures.
- C. Verify correct location of built-in framing, anchorage, and bracing.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install partitions secure, rigid, plumb, and level in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Maintain 3/8 to 1/2 inch (9 to 13 mm) space between wall and panels and between wall and end pilasters.
- C. Attach panel brackets securely to walls using anchor devices.
- D. Attach panels and pilasters to brackets. Locate head rail joints at pilaster center lines.
- E. Replace damaged or scratched materials with new materials.

### **3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation From True Position: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- B. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/8 inch (3 mm).

### **3.04 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust and align hardware to uniform clearance at vertical edge of doors, not exceeding 3/16 inch (5 mm).
- B. Adjust hinges to position doors in partial opening position when unlatched. Return out-swinging doors to closed position.
- C. Adjust adjacent components for consistency of line or plane.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 10 2601**  
**WALL AND CORNER GUARDS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Bumper rails.
- B. Corner guards.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 05 5000 - Metal Fabrications: Anchors for attachment of work of this section, concealed in wall.
- B. Section 05 5213 - Pipe and Tube Railings.
- C. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Blocking for wall and corner guard anchors.
- D. Section 09 7200 - Wall Coverings: Terminating wall covering at corner guard.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities; 2017.
- B. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2017.
- C. ASTM E119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials; 2016a.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Indicate physical dimensions, features, anchorage details, and rough-in measurements.
- C. Samples: Submit two sections of bumper rail, 24 inch (600 mm) long, illustrating component design, configuration, color and finish.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Wall and Corner Guards:
  - 1. Construction Specialites, Inc. Acrovyn
    - a. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

**2.02 COMPONENTS**

- A. Wall Guards or Bumper Rails (crash rails): Factory- or shop-fabricated, with preformed end caps and internal and external corners:
  - 1. Manufacturer: CS Acrovyn
  - 2. Product: 4000 Model SCR-50N
  - 3. Color: to be selected by Architect
  - 4. Performance of Installed Assembly:
    - a. Support vertical live load of 100 lb/lineal ft (1,400 N/m) with deflection not to exceed 1/50 of span between supports.
    - b. Resist lateral force of 250 lbs (1112 N) at any point without damage or permanent set.
  - 5. Material: Polyvinyl chloride, color as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
  - 6. Surface Burning Characteristics: Provide assemblies with flame spread index of 25 or less and smoke developed index of 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 7. Mounting: Surface.
  - 8. Return rail to wall.
- B. Corner Guards - Flush Mounted: High impact vinyl with extruded aluminum full height retainer and integral impact absorbing device.
  - 1. Manufacturer: CS Acrovyn

2. Product: 4000 Model FS-20N
3. Performance: Resist lateral impact force of 100 lbs (445 N) at any point without damage or permanent set.
4. Fire Resistance: Where fire rating is specified for the wall in which the guard is mounted, provide assemblies that have been tested in accordance with ASTM E119 for the same rating as the wall.
5. Surface Burning Characteristics: Provide assemblies with flame spread index of 25 or less and smoke developed index of 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
6. Corner: Square.
7. Color: selected by architect .
8. Length: One piece.

### **2.03 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabricate components with tight joints, corners and seams.
- B. Pre-drill holes for attachment.
- C. Form end trim closure by capping and finishing smooth.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that rough openings, concealed blocking, and anchors are correctly sized and located.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on Drawings.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install components in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, level and plumb, secured rigidly in position to wall framing members only.
- B. Coordinate Mounting with drawings

### **3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation From Required Height: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- B. Maximum Variation From Level or Plane For Visible Length: 1/4 inch (6 mm).

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 10 2615**  
**HIGH IMPACT WALL COVERING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. High impact wall covering.
- B. Adhesive, accessories, and trim.

**1.02 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Section 06 2000 - Finish Carpentry.
- B. Section 06 4100 - Architectural Wood Casework.
- C. Section 09 2116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies.
- D. Section 09 7200 - Wall Coverings: Conventional finishes.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's complete and current product information, including installation instructions showing mounting details and recommended adhesives.
- C. Selection Samples: Color charts consisting of actual product pieces, illustrating full range of colors and textures available, for initial color selection.
- D. Verification Samples: 6 by 6 inch (150 by 150 mm) samples, including typical accessory, in each color specified.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A company maintaining certified ISO 9001 quality control procedures.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A company experienced in performing wall covering work, familiar with the installation recommendations of the manufacturer, and maintaining a current copy of the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver to project site in manufacturer's packaging, properly labeled.
- B. Store materials flat in a clean, dry area.

**1.06 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Maintain storage temperature at or above 50 degrees F (10 degrees C).
- B. Acclimatize materials and bring surfaces to receive wall covering to a temperature between 65 and 85 degrees F (18 and 29 degrees C) for not less than 48 hours prior to installation.
- C. Maintain surfaces to receive wall covering at a temperature between 65 and 85 degrees F (18 and 29 degrees C) during installation.
- D. Maintain relative humidity at 80 percent or less during installation.
- E. Do not expose walls to direct sunlight for 48 hours after installation to avoid high temperatures that could cause blistering or distortion.

**1.07 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS**

- A. See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
- B. Provide maintenance materials comprising 5 percent, but not less than two complete sheets of each type of wall covering installed, for use by Owner.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer:

- B. Construction Specialties, C/S Acrovyn; [www.c-sgroup.com](http://www.c-sgroup.com)
  - 1. Style: to be selected by architect
  - 2. Color: to be selected by architect
- C. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

## **2.02 PRODUCTS**

- A. Wall Covering: C/S Acrovyn 4000 .060N Rigid Sheet
  - 1. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25 or less; smoke developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84 or CAN/ULC-S102.2 in 0.06 inch (1.5 mm) thickness using adhesive recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Shear Strength: 4,500 psi (31,026 kPa), when tested in accordance with ASTM D 732.
  - 3. Tensile Strength: 6,000 psi (41,368 kPa, when tested in accordance with ASTM D 638.
  - 4. Chemical and Stain Resistance: Stain resistant when tested in accordance with ASTM D 543.
  - 5. Fungal and Bacterial Resistance: Demonstrated not to support fungal or bacterial growth by testing in accordance with ASTM G 21 and ASTM G 22.
  - 6. Thickness: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm).
  - 7. Sheet Size: Sheet size as indicated on the Drawings.
  - 8. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
  - 9. Color Consistency: Controlled to Delta E not greater than 1.0, measured in accordance with SAE J1545.
- B. Trim: Provide all necessary trim members in the same material as wall covering and in matching colors and color consistency, unless otherwise indicated. Provide the following in standard lengths:
  - 1. Top caps
  - 2. Joint covers
  - 3. Inside corners
  - 4. Outside corners
- C. Adhesives: As recommended or supplied by manufacturer of high impact wall covering.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that walls are in proper condition to receive installation of high impact wall covering.
- B. Verify that environmental conditions specified herein have been achieved and can be maintained.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install high impact wall covering in full compliance with manufacturer's installation instructions; arrange for manufacturer's representative to review installation instructions with installer prior to starting work.
- B. Follow manufacturer's instructions regarding sheet size, use of rolled material, maximum dimension between seams, and adhesive application.
- C. Install panels with expansion gap of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) between sheets, at door frames, baseboards, and other fixed elements. Cut oversized holes when installing fixtures through wall covering.
- D. Install with vertical seams plumb and horizontal seams level.

### **3.03 CLEANING**

- A. Clean wall covering and accessories of adhesive and other surface blemishes, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Remove from project site packaging and debris caused by installation.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 10 2800**  
**TOILET ACCESSORIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Toilet Room Accessories.
- B. Bathroom Mirrors
- C. Utility Room Accessories.

**1.02 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Section 06100 Rough Carpentry
- B. Section 06114 - Wood Blocking and Curbing.
- C. Section 09 2116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies.
- D. Section 09 3000 - Tiling.
- E. Section 10170 Plastic toilet compartments
- F. Section 09900 Paints and coatings
- G. Section 10 2113.13 - Metal Toilet Compartments.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's product data for products specified, indicating selected options and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Plans: Locate each specified unit in project.
  - 2. Elevations: Indicate mounting height of each specified unit in project.
  - 3. Details: Indicate anchoring and fastening details, required locations and types of anchors and reinforcement, and materials required for correct installation of specified products not supplied by manufacturer of products of this section.
- D. Quality Assurance Submittals:
  - 1. Manufacturer's printed installation instructions for each specified product.
  - 2. Documentation of manufacturer's qualifications, specified in QUALITY ASSURANCE Article of this section.
- E. Closeout Submittals: Warranty documents, issued and executed by manufacturer of products of this section, and countersigned by Contractor.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Minimum five (5) years of documented experience producing products of the types specified in this section.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Conform to ADAAG requirements.

**1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Factory-apply strippable protective vinyl coating to sight-exposed surfaces after finishing of products; ship products in manufacturer's standard protective packaging.
- B. Storage and Protection: Store products in manufacturer's protective packaging until installation.

**1.06 SEQUENCING**

- A. Supply locating and sizing templates, and other requirements, to fabricators and installers of products referenced in RELATED SECTIONS Article for building in products of this section.
- B. Supply reinforcing and anchoring devices required for installation of products of this section to fabricators and installers of products referenced in RELATED SECTIONS Article.

## 1.07 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Manufacturer's standard warranty against defects in product workmanship and materials.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturer: ASI-American Specialties, Inc; 441 Saw Mill River Road, Yonkers NY 10701-9986; Telephone (914) 476-9000, FAX (914) 476-0688.
- B. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - 1. Global; [www.globalpartitions.com](http://www.globalpartitions.com).
  - 2. Bobrick; [www.bobrick.com](http://www.bobrick.com).
- C. Substitutions: Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

### 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, 18-8 alloy.
- B. Cabinet Collars: Fabricated from 0.0313 inch (0.79 mm) stainless steel sheet, finish matching cabinet finish; welded corners, finished to match sheet finish.

### 2.03 PROFILE SERIES 9000 CABINET-TYPE ACCESSORIES

- A. Basic Construction Requirements:
  - 1. Doors: Fabricated from single sheet 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) stainless steel, formed 15/16 inch (24 mm) return to wall, with vertical edges eased at 3/4 inch (19 mm) radius; welded corners, finished to match sheet finish.
  - 2. Cabinets: Fabricated from 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) stainless steel sheet, formed 1 inch (25 mm) wide flat perimeter trim four sides; all joints welded, sight-exposed welds finished to match sheet finish.
  - 3. Hinges: Stainless steel piano hinge, 3/16 inch (5 mm) diameter barrel, full length of cabinet; hinge leaves spot-welded to door and cabinet body.
  - 4. Locks: Flat rimless tumbler locks, keyed alike other toilet accessory locks, with two keys for each lock.
  - 5. Cabinet and Door Finish: No.4 satin stainless steel.
- B. Products
  - 1. Single Robe Hook; TA-3, Model 7308
  - 2. Utility Shelf / Mop Strip; TA-07, Model 1308
  - 3. Sanitary Waste Receptacle; TA-09A, Model 20852
  - 4. Sanitary Napkin Disposal; TA-9B, Model 20472
  - 5. Baby Chnaging Station; TA-08, Model 9013
  - 6. Paper Towel Dispenser; TA-11, Model 0215

### 2.04 MIRRORS

- A. Manufacturer: Electric Mirror, [www.electricmirror.com](http://www.electricmirror.com)
- B. Products:
  - 1. Novo Lighted Mirror; TA-6, Model NOV-28.00x36.00
    - a. Size 28 x 36 x 2 inch
    - b. Power: 120 - 277 VAC, .70 - .28 Amps, 78W
    - c. Lamping: 2 x T5HO, 39W
    - d. See drawings for mouting heights & locations

### 2.05 GRAB BARS

- A. Grab Bars - Basic Requirements: Fabricated to comply with ASTM F 446 and to withstand a 900 pound (4 000 N) force, from ASTM A 554 stainless steel tubing, 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), Type 304, 18-8 alloy; formed 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) radius return to wall at each end; each end heliarc-welded to minimum 11 gage stainless steel circular flange; welds finished to match tube finish.

- B. Grab Bars TA-4A (36 inch), TA-4B (42 inch) and TA-4C (18 inch vertical): Series 3100.
  - 1. Peened finish.
  - 2. Concealed fasteners.
  - 3. Sizes and configurations: As indicated on drawings.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification of Conditions:
  - 1. Prepared openings are sized and located in accordance with shop drawings.
  - 2. Reinforcement and anchoring devices are correct type and are located in accordance with shop drawings.
- B. Installer's Examination:
  - 1. Have installer of this section examine conditions under which construction activities of this section are to be performed, then submit written notification if such conditions are unacceptable.
  - 2. Transmit two copies of installer's report to Architect within 24 hours of receipt.
  - 3. Beginning construction activities of this section before unacceptable conditions have been corrected is prohibited.
  - 4. Beginning construction activities of this section indicates installer's acceptance of conditions.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install toilet accessories plumb and level in accordance with shop drawings and manufacturer's printed installation instructions.
- B. Locate toilet accessories at heights specified by Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

#### **3.03 CLEANING**

- A. Remove manufacturer's protective vinyl coating from sight-exposed surfaces 24 hours before final inspection.
- B. Clean surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

#### **3.04 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED PRODUCTS**

- A. Protect products from damage caused by subsequent construction activities.
- B. Field repair of damaged product finishes is prohibited; replace products having damaged finishes caused by subsequent construction activities.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 10 4400**  
**FIRE PROTECTION SPECIALTIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Fire extinguishers.
- B. Fire extinguisher cabinets.
- C. Accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Wood blocking product and execution requirements.
- B. Section 09 9000 - Painting and Coating: Field paint finish.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. NFPA 10 - Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers; 2013.
- B. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; current listings at [database.ul.com](http://database.ul.com).

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate cabinet physical dimensions.
- C. Product Data: Provide extinguisher operational features.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special criteria and wall opening coordination requirements.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include test, refill or recharge schedules and re-certification requirements.

**1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install extinguishers when ambient temperature may cause freezing of extinguisher ingredients.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Fire Extinguishers & Cabinets:
  - 1. Ansul, a Tyco Business; Cleanguard: [www.ansul.com](http://www.ansul.com).
  - 2. Strike First Corporation of America; Water Fire Extinguisher: [www.strikefirstusa.com](http://www.strikefirstusa.com).
  - 3. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Fire Extinguisher Cabinets and Accessories:
  - 1. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

**2.02 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS**

- A. Fire Extinguishers - General: Comply with product requirements of NFPA 10 and applicable codes, whichever is more stringent.
  - 1. Provide extinguishers labeled by UL for the purpose specified and indicated.
- B. Dry Chemical Type Fire Extinguishers: Carbon steel tank, with pressure gage.
  - 1. Class: A:B:C.
  - 2. Size: 2.5 pound (1.13 kg).
  - 3. Finish: bronze.
- C. Wet Chemical Type Fire Extinguishers: Carbon steel tank with pressure gage.
  - 1. Class: K
  - 2. Type 2-A K rated
  - 3. Size: 5 pound
  - 4. Finish polished stainless steel

### **2.03 FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS**

- A. Metal: Formed primed steel sheet; 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) thick base metal.
- B. Cabinet Configuration: Recessed type.
  - 1. Sized to accommodate accessories.
  - 2. Form cabinet enclosure with right angle inside corners and seams. Form perimeter trim and door stiles.
- C. Door: 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) thick, reinforced for flatness and rigidity; latch. Hinge doors for 180 degree opening with two butt hinge. Provide nylon catch.
- D. Door Glazing: Glass, clear, 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick float. Set in resilient channel gasket glazing.
- E. Cabinet Mounting Hardware: Appropriate to cabinet. Pre-drill for anchors.
- F. Weld, fill, and grind components smooth.
- G. Finish of Cabinet, Exterior Trim and Door: Anodized to color as selected.
- H. Finish of Cabinet Interior: White enamel.

### **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Extinguisher Brackets: Formed steel, chrome-plated.
- B. Cabinet Signage: as selected by architect.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify rough openings for cabinet are correctly sized and located.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in accordance with all applicable code & ADA requirements
- C. Coordinate mounting height with architect prior to install
- D. Secure rigidly in place.
- E. Place extinguishers and accessories in cabinets.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 10 5100

### LOCKERS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Phenolic lockers

##### 1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete base construction.
- B. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Wood base construction.

##### 1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2017.

##### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's published data on locker construction, sizes and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate locker plan layout, numbering plan and combination lock code.
- D. Full Size Sample: One full-size locker of each construction specified for evaluation of construction.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate component installation assembly.

##### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect locker finish and adjacent surfaces from damage.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Phenolic Lockers:
  - 1. Columbia Lockers, a division of PSiSC; Phenolic Lockers: [www.psis.com](http://www.psis.com).
  - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

##### 2.02 LOCKER APPLICATIONS

- A. Staff: Z-tier (2 lockers each with a short and long compartment) solid phenolic lockers, wall mounted for base indicated on drawings.
  - 1. Width: 12 inches (300 mm).
  - 2. Depth: 12 inches (300 mm).
  - 3. Height: 72 inches (1,830 m).
  - 4. Fittings: Hat shelf, 2 coat hooks.
  - 5. Locking: Padlock hasps, for padlocks provided by Owner.
  - 6. Provide sloped top.

##### 2.03 PHENOLIC LOCKERS

- A. Lockers: Factory assembled, made of phenolic core panels with mortise and tenon joints and stainless steel mechanical joint fasteners; fully finished inside and out; each locker capable of standing alone.
  - 1. Doors: Full overlay, covering full width and height of locker body; square edges.
  - 2. Panel Core Exposed at Edges: Machine polished, without chips or tool marks; square edge unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Where locker ends or sides are exposed, finish the same as fronts or provide extra panels to match fronts.
  - 4. Ventilation: By holes drilled in tops, bottoms, and intermediate shelves, and by open space between the back of door and locker body.
  - 5. Door Color: To be selected by Architect; allow for 2 different colors.
  - 6. Body Color: Manufacturer's standard white or light color.

7. Fasteners for Accessories and Locking Mechanisms: Tamperproof type.
- B. Component Thicknesses:
  1. Doors: 1/2 inch (13 mm) minimum thickness.
  2. Locker Body: One of the following combinations:
    - a. Tops, bottoms, and shelves 3/8 inch (10 mm); sides and backs 5/16 inch (8 mm); minimum.
    - b. Tops, bottoms, and shelves 1/2 inch (13 mm); sides 3/8 inch (10 mm); backs 1/4 inch (6 mm); minimum.
  3. Sloped Tops: 1/2 inch (13 mm) minimum thickness.
  4. Toe Kick Plates: 1/2 inch (13 mm) minimum thickness.
- C. Phenolic Core Panels: Nonporous phenolic resin and paper core formed under high pressure, with natural colored finished edges, integral melamine surface, matte finish, and uniform surface appearance; glued laminated panels not acceptable.
  1. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 75 or less, and smoke developed index of 450 or less; when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- D. Hinges: Stainless steel, satin finish; minimum of 90 degree opening; either exposed barrel 5-knuckle hinge attached to back of door and inside of body with tamperproof screws, or completely concealed cabinet style hinge attached with tamperproof screws.
- E. Number Plates: Manufacturer's standard, minimum 4-digit, permanently attached with adhesive; may be field installed.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that prepared bases are in correct position and configuration.
- B. Verify bases and embedded anchors are properly sized.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install lockers plumb and square.
- C. Place and secure on prepared base.
- D. Secure lockers with anchor devices to suit substrate materials. Minimum Pullout Force: 100 lb (445 N).
- E. Bolt adjoining locker units together to provide rigid installation.
- F. Install end panels, filler panels, and sloped tops.
- G. Install accessories.
- H. Replace components that do not operate smoothly.

#### **3.03 CLEANING**

- A. Clean locker interiors and exterior surfaces.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 11 4000

### FOODSERVICE EQUIPMENT

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, include General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specifications sections, apply to work of this section. As defined, the coordinating trade shall be solely responsible for assigning and dividing the work among the trades as necessary to accomplish the requirements of the Contract Documents.

##### 1.2 SCOPE

- A. Work in this Section includes furnishing of materials, accessories, and special services necessary to complete foodservice equipment work as Specified herein and where show, scheduled, or reasonably inferred in the Contract Documents.
- B. Provide all labor, materials, services and transportation required to install and complete all Foodservice Equipment indicated on the Contract Documents, ready for final connection by other trades. Include work specified, shown or reasonably implied as part of Foodservice Equipment.
- C. Portions of this work may be sub-contracted to those qualified to do such work, as may be necessary because of jurisdictional trade agreements and restrictions.
- D. Foodservice Equipment Contractor shall submit itemized pricing for each piece of equipment, including separate total prices for delivery and installation. Include all taxes which are applicable to this project as a separate charge. Include all figures in the grand total price of bid proposal.

##### 1.3 RELATED DIVISIONS / SECTIONS

- A. Division 03:
  - 01 Floor depressions, reinforced concrete wearing bed and interior finished floor with coved base at prefabricated cold storage assemblies.
- B. Division 03:
  - 01 Floor depressions shown this Section with smooth-finished, coved trench drain interior, perimeter angle frame and removable grate-sections.
- C. Division 22:
  - 01 PVC conduit with pull-wire and wide-sweep bends for remote beverage dispensing systems.
- D. Division 23:
  - 01 Supply and exhaust fans for foodservice equipment and exhaust hoods.
- E. Division 22:
  - 01 Mechanical and Plumbing roughing-in, inter-connection and final connection to Foodservice Equipment and Cold Storage Assemblies.
- F. Division 26:
  - 01 Electrical roughing-in, inter-connection and final connection to Foodservice Equipment and Cold Storage Assemblies.
- G. Division 06:
  - 01 Millwork fixtures (i.e., front/back bars, service stations, etc.).

##### 1.4 CODES, REGULATIONS AND STANDARDS

- A. Foodservice Equipment and installation work must comply with applicable laws, statutes, building codes, regulations of public authorities and with the following:

- 01 ADA - Americans with Disabilities Act
- 02 AGA - American Gas Association Laboratories.
- 03 ANSI - American National Standards Institute.
- 04 ASHRAE - American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers.
- 05 ASME - American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
- 06 HACCP - Food and Drug Administration Hazard Analysis Critical Control Points Guide lines.
- 07 NEC - National Electric Code.
- 08 NFPA - National Fire Protection Association.
- 09 NSF - National Sanitation Foundation (equipment to bear certification label).
- 10 OSHA - Occupational Safety and Health Administration
- 11 SMACNA - Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractor's National Association.
- 12 UL - Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.(equipment to bear certification label).

- B. Furnish certification of regularly-manufactured equipment listing or classification by Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. with initial submittal.

## 1.5 CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Foodservice Equipment Contractor's qualifications:

- 01 Five (5) years continuous operation under the same name and ownership.
- 02 Successfully completed three (3) similar-size and type of projects within the last five (5) years. Submit list with names and telephone numbers of Owner, Architect, Foodservice Consultant, and General Contractor.
- 03 Technical staff experienced in the preparation of Submittal Data per Article 1.8.
- 04 Technical staff experienced in the procurement and installation of Foodservice Equipment specified in the Contract Documents.
- 05 Manufacturer's authorization to purchase, distribute and install equipment as specified.

- B. Sub-Contractors and Fabricators qualifications:

- 01 Sub-contractors and Fabricators employed by this Contractor shall comply with Paragraph A of this Article.

## 1.6 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Base Bid:

- 01 Shall consist of equipment items, components and accessories identified in the Contract Document .
- 02 No "Alternates" or "Substitutions" will be considered in Base Bid.
- 03 All other manufactures, including any brands which may be listed as "Alternates" or "Approved Equal" must meet or exceed specifications, size, accessories, materials, finishes, etc. of the specified brand.
- 04 Equipment of similar type, group or category ( ranges, ovens, kettles, refrigerators, etc) shall be built by the same manufacturer.

- B. Proposed Substitutions:

- 01 Submit proposed substitutions on bidders letter head no less than 10 calendar days prior to Bid Date.
- 02 Submit proposed substitutions with specification data and/or manufacturer's shop details indicating all features and accessories required to conform with specified equipment.
- 03 Provide a line item list of any deviations from the specified equipment. List of deviations must include equipment description, equipment manufacture's name, model, accessories and features.
- 04 Deviation(s) must be noted for both specified and proposed alternate equipment.
- 05 Equipment without listed deviation(s) will be considered to be furnished as specified.
- 06 Alternate equipment must meet or exceed specifications in size, construction, materials, finishes, function, features, and accessories.
- 07 Above requirements apply during bidding and contact negotiations.
- 08 Requests for approval of proposed substitutions will be responded to by Addendum.

- C. Substitutions with Prior Approval:

- 01 Submit on Bidder's letterhead and attach to Proposal Form.

- 02 Include individual totals with additive or deductive amounts stipulated and the documentation required in Paragraph B-02.
- 03 Owner reserves right to accept or reject any or all substitutions proposals before execution of Contract.
- 04 Provide all design and engineering services required to make adjustments in space, systems, or utilities.
- 05 Contractor will pay all additional costs of utilities, construction or professional services incurred due to acceptance of any substitution.

## 1.7 CLARIFICATION OF DOCUMENTS

- A. Document Verification:
  - 01 Verify and coordinate all items provided in this Section to assure there are no discrepancies or conflicts.
  - 02 Coordinate drawings, specifications, manufactures requirements, submittals, actual site conditions, adjacent items, and associated work.
  - 03 Verification to include, but not limited to, quantities, dimensions, clearances required, direction of operation, door swings, utilities, fabrication details and methods and installation requirements.
- B. Document Discrepancy:
  - 01 Request clarification where discrepancies are discovered between drawings and specifications regarding quality or quantity.
  - 02 Prior to receiving clarification use the higher quality or greater quantity in Base Bid Proposal.
- C. During Bidding:
  - 01 Questions and comments pertaining to Construction Documents' clarity or intent will be responded to by Addendum.
  - 02 Direct all questions and comments to the attention of the Architect.
- D. Subsequent to Award:
  - 01 Confirmation of Construction Document requirements will be provided by Bulletin.
  - 02 Requests For Information Bulletins submitted by Contractor shall contain proposed resolution.

## 1.8 SUBMITTAL DATA

- A. Preliminary Submittal:
  - 01 Three (3) copies of equipment brochures.
  - 02 One (1) reproducible and two (2) prints of all roughing-in and fabrication shop drawings.
  - 03 Submit directly to Architect within four weeks after award of contract or issuance of letter of intent.
  - 04 Prints shall be completely legible with black line and white background.
  - 05 **Partial submittals will not be accepted or processed, without prior approval.**
- B. Electronic Submission:
  - 01 Submittal data can be submitted electronically, in PDF format only, if acceptable to the Architect.
  - 02 Only black line drawings will be accepted.
  - 03 Drawing file names must contain equipment item number(s) and submission date.
  - 04 Submit drawing files separated into the following categories: rough-in drawings, fabrication drawings, walk-in and refrigeration drawings,ventilator drawings and other equipment requiring shop drawings.
  - 05 Drawings submitted with all categories in one (1) file will be rejected.
  - 06 Data must be submitted per requirements specified in this Article and the Contract Documents.
- C. Brochure Format:
  - 01 Cover:
    - a. Front and rear protective cover labeled with project name.
    - b. Front sheet indicating name and address of project, Architect, Foodservice Consultant, General Contractor and Foodservice Equipment Contractor.

- 02 Table of Contents:
    - a. Include table of contents listing Area designation or Room number, item number, quantity, description and manufacturer.
  - 03 Cover Sheet:
    - a. Provide separate cover sheet for EACH ITEM NUMBER, component or equipment.
    - b. Include item number, description, quantity, manufacturer, optional equipment, modifications, special instructions and utility requirements.
    - c. Items of equipment containing, sub-assemblies or components shall have a separate cover sheet for each sub-assembly or component and shall be listed as secondary items in parenthesis beside primary item description.
  - 04 Specification Sheets:
    - a. Submit catalog specification sheet and/or manufacturer's shop drawing with sub-assemblies and components.
    - b. Photocopies are acceptable providing they are completely legible and contain data as shown on original catalog sheet.
  - 05 Shop Drawings:
    - a. Submit manufacture's shop drawings for flight type dishwashers, dishwashing systems, conveyors, soiled tray return systems, roll-in proofers, roll-in ovens, reel ovens, walk-in cold storage assemblies, utility distribution systems, utensil washers and ventilators.
    - b. Submit arrangement drawing (plan view and elevation) for underbar equipment.
  - 06 Certification Letter:
    - a. Submit, upon request, a certification letter of equipment listing or classification by Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc..
  - 07 Samples:
    - a. Submit samples, from manufacture's available colors, for equipment specified to have color.
- D. Rough-In Drawings:
- 01 Document Size:
    - a. Drawing sheet same size as Contract Documents. Drawings are not to be traced, reproduced or reproduced using electronic files.
  - 02 Electronic Drawing Files:
    - a. Contractor's use of electronic files of Contract Drawings for basis of producing submittal drawings is prohibited.
    - b. Contractor's using these files assumes total liability and responsibility for accuracy, conformance and verification with the latest Architectural and Engineering drawings, actual field conditions, and all equipment provided.
    - c. Contractor further assumes responsibility for coordination of their submittals with those of other Contractors and Sub-Contractors.
  - 03 Scale:
    - a. Provide 1/4" scale drawing of foodservice equipment and cold storage assemblies with itemized schedules.
  - 04 Special Condition Location Drawing:
    - a. Floor depressions, cores, sleeves or block-outs.
    - b. Concrete or masonry platforms.
    - c. Pipe sleeves or roof jacks.
    - d. Wall-openings or block-outs for pass-through equipment, recessed panels, in-wall system components, etc.
    - e. Wall blocking grounds or anchor plates required for equipment support/attachment.
    - f. Above-ceiling hanger assemblies for support of exhaust hoods, utensil-racks, etc.
    - g. Access panels in walls or ceiling for servicing equipment.
    - h. Ceiling pockets or recesses for high equipment.
  - 05 Electrical Rough-In Drawing.
  - 06 Plumbing Rough-In Drawing.
  - 07 Mechanical Rough-In Drawing.
  - 08 Required Information:
    - a. Foodservice equipment shown on Contract Drawings.
    - b. Cold storage assemblies and conveyor dishtable assemblies shown on Contract Drawings.
    - c. General-use and convenience utilities or services indicated on Contract Drawings, including those required by or connected to equipment or devices not in this Section.



- d. Rough-ins for equipment shown on Contract Drawings including those labeled Not In Contract, By Owner or Future.
  - e. Rough-in drawings shall be fully dimensioned from finished-room surface to point of stub-up and/or stub-out (not to connection point on equipment ) for all mechanical, electrical and plumbing services.
  - f. Coordinate connection number, tag system, and symbols with Contract Drawings.
- E. Shop Drawings:
- 01 Document Size:
    - a. Drawing sheet same size as Contract Documents. Provide 3/4" scale for plan view and elevations; 1-1/2" scale for sections and construction details.
  - 02 Required Information:
    - a. Include Item Number, description and quantity.
    - b. Illustrate construction details, sections and elevations that reflect requirements of Specifications and Drawings.
    - c. Include all information, details and elevations, necessary for production of product, without additional instruction.
  - 03 Custom Fabricated Equipment:
    - a. Submit shop drawings for flight type dishwashers, dishwashing systems, roll-in ovens, walk-in cold storage assemblies, ventilators and specialized equipment consisting of multiple components including serving lines. Submit arrangement drawing (plan view and elevation) for underbar equipment.
    - b. Indicate manufacture and model numbers of all ancillary components that are part of the fabricated equipment, faucets, drains, drawers, gussets and feet.
    - c. Illustrate floors, walls, columns and equipment where adjacent to the fabricated fixtures. Illustrate ceilings when clearance or interface is critical to the equipment.
    - d. Provide outline of all equipment set on, built into or under the fabricated equipment including trash can, knife holder, carts parked in or under equipment and built-in ice bins whether furnished by Foodservice Equipment Contractor or Owner.
    - e. Coordinate fabrication shop drawings with drawings of ancillary components incorporated into the equipment including food guards. Components are to be indicated on the fabrication shop drawings.
    - f. When production food guards are specified, counter and food guard shop drawings must be coordinated and match design intent. Dimensions should be coordinated, with counter conditions and post locations. Final adjustments can be made during engineering of counter, as long as changes maintain design intent.
    - g. Indicate mechanical or electrical operating components integrated into fabricated fixtures. Include ventilation and service access required or recommended by manufacturer for service. Access panel size and placement is to permit good ventilation, easy access for lubrication, adjustment or replacement of parts.
  - 04 Submit samples for color selection(s), when required.
  - 05 Include plumbing and electrical schematic drawings for exhaust hood fire protection systems, and fabricated fixtures with single electrical or plumbing connection.
- F. Submittal Procedure:
- 01 Approved Submittal:
    - a. Follow routine procedures specified in the General and Supplementary Conditions, General Documents or as directed.
    - b. After return of one copy of preliminary submittal, if all or any part has been rejected, resubmit as instructed for approval.
  - 02 Repetitive Review:
    - a. Contractor is to thoroughly review all data and material for compliance prior to submittal. Repetitive review time incurred by Consultant due to the Contractor's failure to comply with this requirement may be invoiced to this Contractor at Consultant's standard hourly rates.

## 1.9 VERIFICATION AND COORDINATION

- A. Utilities Rough-In Drawings:
  - 01 Within four weeks after award of contract or notice-to-proceed, review Contract Documents and Submittal Data for accuracy and completeness.

- 02 Coordinate work with other sub-contractors and field-check installed utility locations and capacities.
  - 03 Submit written notification to Architect of conflicts and required adjustments.
- B. Review Critical Systems/Components:
- 01 Ventilator - removal/supply air volume, velocity, static pressure, duct collar sizes and location.
  - 02 Refrigeration Systems - compressor, condenser and evaporator.
  - 03 Ventilator Fire Suppression Systems - nozzle locations, air handler, fuel interlocks, piping and distance limitations.
  - 04 Utility Service Lines - gas, water, steam condensate line sizes and manifold configurations.
  - 05 Fabricated Equipment Load Center Panels - individual and total amperage calculations and circuit balance.
  - 06 Submit calculation worksheets for above where applicable with initial submission of Brochure/Rough-In Drawings with all required adjustments noted.
- C. Dimension Responsibility:
- 01 Critical Dimensions:
    - a. Attain actual measurements for proper fit of equipment. When actual measurements for proper fit are not available, in time to meet the required delivery schedule, Contractor must provide, to General Contractor, accurate equipment templates.
    - b. Templates constructed of stable material, for equipment that requires precise area requirements, so building walls and floors can be constructed to accommodate equipment. Mark exact location of front and back edges of toe base on top of template and show dimension of toe base set back. Coordinate template delivery time with General Contractor and provide use instructions for templates.
    - c. Indicate on shop drawings, equipment requiring templates, that templates are being provided.
    - d. Dimensions in Contract Documents are approximate and are as accurate as can be determined. Field-check all measurements and conditions at building prior to fabrication or delivery of equipment.
    - e. Submit written notification to Architect of all conflicts or deviation from dimensions shown.
  - 02 Fabricated Equipment Fit:
    - a. Proper fit of fabricate equipment to walls, adjacent equipment and equipment fitting contour of walls including fitting corners at angle of walls, is a maximum gap of 1/4".
    - b. Failure to obtain proper fit of equipment may result in rejection of equipment.
    - c. Excessive use of trim pieces will not be acceptable.
  - 03 Engineered Stone Fit:
    - a. Proper fit of stone or engineered stone tops with exposed edges to walls, adjacent equipment and tops fitting contour of walls including fitting corners at angle of walls, is maximum gap of 3/32".
    - b. Failure to obtain proper fit of exposed tops and edges may result in rejection of top.
    - c. All sealants used to trim tops to adjacent surfaces and seal joints must be color matching.
- D. Building Access:
- 01 Equipment must be fabricated for passage through finished openings.
  - 02 Schedule construction of walls or partitions prior to delivery of fixed equipment if required to fit through finished openings.
  - 03 Contractor to maintain contact with project and be knowledgeable of all conditions including vertical handling limitations within building and possible hoisting requirements.
  - 04 Coordinate all procedures with General Contractor.
- E. Storage Areas:
- 01 Coordinate dimensions to accommodate scheduled modular shelving sections.
  - 02 Submit written notification to Architect of variance between Contract Documents and actual conditions.
- F. Color/Pattern Selections:
- 01 Submit samples of engineered stone, solid polymer products, plastic laminate, paint or stain finishes and vinyl-coated surface material of equipment for verification and selection by Architect.

- G. Size/Weight Coordination:
  - 01 Verify serviceware size/weight information with Owner.
  - 02 Coordinate information with silverware dispensers, self-leveling dispensers and transport equipment.
- H. Movable Equipment:
  - 01 Mobile equipment required to fit through or into fixed equipment is to be reviewed and coordinated for compatibility at time of submittal preparation. Submit written notification of conflicts and required adjustments.
- I. Relocation of Work:
  - 01 Relocate or re-route work as required to coordinate with construction schedule without charge.

## **1. 10 WARRANTY**

- A. Unless otherwise noted in General provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and General Documents, items furnished are to be fully guaranteed against defects in workmanship, materials, and functionality as follows:
  - 01 One (1) year from date of Substantial Completion
  - 02 Four (4) year extended replacement warranty on all refrigeration compressor units.
  - 03 Warranty periods are from date of Substantial Completion or issue date of Certificate Of Occupancy.
  - 04 Should Temporary Certificate of Occupancy be issued for partial completion of work, items furnished within that designated area are to be under warranty from date of Certificate.
- B. Parts and Labor Warranty:
  - 01 Provide manufacture's written parts and labor warranty, for all equipment furnished in this section.
  - 02 Provide one (1) year service available within twenty-four hours of notification for refrigeration systems and/or equipment. First year labor costs covered by Warranty.
- C. Walk-in Cold Storage Assembly and Refrigeration System(s):
  - 01 One (1) year refrigeration service, at no charge, available within twenty-four hours of notification.
  - 02 Five (5) year manufacture's registered written replacement, warranty certificate, covering compressor bodies. First year labor costs covered by Warranty.
  - 03 Ten (10) year manufacture's registered written replacement/repair, warranty certificate, covering walk-in panels. Warranty to cover defects in material and workmanship. First year labor costs covered by Warranty.
  - 04 One (1) year parts and labor warranty for all components of refrigeration system(s) and walk-in vault(s) not otherwise covered herein.
- D. Non-Warranted Items:
  - 01 Components of equipment subject to replacement prior to one-year's use and items which may fail due to improper or inadequate periodic maintenance are not intended to be included within this warranty.
- E. Service Agencies:
  - 01 Furnish a list of all equipment and its respective local service agent, per Article 3.4 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2. 1 MATERIAL/COMPONENTS**

- A. Stainless Steel Sheets:
  - 01 18-8, Type 304, polished to 180 grit, No. 4 finish.
  - 02 Stainless steel joints and seams:
    - a Heli-arc welded, free of pits, flaws, ground smooth and polished to No. 4 finish.

- 03 Stainless steel horizontal surfaces:
  - a Grain direction is longitudinal including backsplash.
  - b Right-angle corners of fixtures shall be polished to provide a mitered appearance.
  
- B. Galvanized Iron Sheets:
  - 01 Armco copper bearing Zinc Grip or Zinc Grip/Paint Grip.
  - 02 Galvanized iron joint and seams:
    - a Arc-welded, free of pits and flaws and ground smooth.
  - 03 Galvanized sheets or shapes:
    - a Washed with mineral spirits and primed with Rustoleum enamel in color selected by Architect.
  
- C. Sound Deadening:
  - 01 Component Hardware "Tacky Tape" 3/4" wide rope:
    - a Position continuously between all underbracing or frame members and underside of stainless steel surface.
    - b Tighten stud-bolts for maximum compression of sealant and trim excess.
  
- D. Plastic Laminates:
  - 01 Color/pattern as selected by Architect.
  - 02 1/16" thickness for flat surfaces.
  - 03 1/32" thickness for radius surfaces.
  - 04 Plastic laminates and adhesives must be N.S.F. approved and comply with Standard No. 35.
  
- E. Engineered Stone:
  - 01 Fabricator and installer must have attended a manufacture's accredited training seminar for specified product, within the last two (2) years.
  - 02 All cuts must be done with a water jet cutter or router and finger bits. No saw cuts allowed.
  - 03 All joints must be joined with color matched adhesive, manufacture approved, for use with specified product.
  - 04 All joints are to be hairline and flush with adjacent surfaces. Shim stone with metal shims to level surfaces.
  - 05 Stone fabrication and installation must be per manufacture's recommendations.
  - 06 Stone must be installed on underlayment meeting manufacture's recommendations.
  
- F. Casters:
  - 01 Open Base Fixtures:
    - a Provide Jarvis & Jarvis model 5-S40-213GP-19A, 5" dia., stem mounted, NSF approved, ball bearing, 300lb. capacity, swivel casters with stainless steel yokes, polyolefin wheels and grey polyurethane tires.
    - b Unless otherwise specified provide two (2) casters with model SS-E65 brakes.
    - c Provide all casters with Component Hardware model C60-1012, 7" rolling bumpers with stainless steel top discs.
  - 02 Closed Base Fixtures:
    - a Provide Jarvis & Jarvis model 5-S30-213GP-2, 5" dia., plate mounted, NSF approved, ball bearing, 300lb. capacity, swivel casters with stainless steel yokes, polyolefin wheels and grey polyurethane tires.
    - b Unless otherwise specified provide two (2) casters with model SS-E65 brakes.
  
- G. Cutting Boards:
  - 01 Read Products, Inc. "Richlite" reversible boards, 3/4" thick, size as indicated.
  
- H. Identification Plates:
  - 01 Prohibited Information:
    - a Names of suppliers and contractors.
  - 02 Required Information:
    - a Function or purpose of controls and switches.
  - 03 Plate Construction:
    - a Engraved phenolic plastic, secured to equipment with epoxy cement or stainless steel screws. Furnish samples.

## 2.2 PLUMBING/MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Plumbing Fittings, Trim and Accessories provided this Section:
- 01 Control valves, vacuum breakers, pressure regulators for water, gas, and steam as required for operation of Foodservice Equipment.
  - 02 Plumbing fittings and components to be chrome-plated where exposed.
  - 03 Specialty water-fill faucets or hose assemblies per Contract Documents.
  - 04 Shock absorbers for Foodservice Equipment with quick-opening or solenoid-operated water valves.
  - 05 Piping supports and brackets within fabricated equipment.
  - 06 Open Base Fixtures:
    - a Mount control valves on 14 gauge stainless steel panel with 2-1/2" setback from counter top edge/rim to control handle.
    - b Submit design for approval.
  - 07 Closed Base Fixtures:
    - a Removable 18 gauge stainless steel closure panel mounted under top at plumbing penetrations.
  - 08 Extensions of indirect waste fittings to floor sink and floor drains from sinks, serving counters, and under bar equipment furnished and installed by Division 22.
  - 09 Drain lines painted with aluminum paint where exposed.
- B. Final Plumbing Connections:
- 01 Pre-pipe fabricated equipment containing components, fittings and/or devices required to be connected to building systems.
  - 02 Pre-pipe each component, fitting or device to a utility compartment for final connection. Refer to Utility Connection Plan for capacities.
  - 03 Field-assembled equipment shall have plumbing components completely interconnected under this Section ready for final connection as indicated on Utility Connection Plan.
  - 04 Tag plumbing final connection points of equipment with the following:
    - a Item number.
    - b Name of devices or components.
    - c Type of utility.
- C. Ducts:
- 01 Exhaust Hoods mounted below finished ceiling:
    - a Furnish 18 gauge stainless steel seamless duct risers for final connection to exhaust hoods.
    - b Extend duct risers 6" above finished ceiling.
    - c Trim duct at ceiling with 16 gauge stainless steel angle flange with welded corners.
  - 02 Exhaust Hoods mounted in finished ceiling:
    - a Furnish 18 gauge stainless steel 2" high duct collar for final connection to duct system for exhaust hoods which are furred-in to ceiling.
    - b Trim hood at ceiling with 16 gauge stainless steel angle flange with welded corners.
  - 03 Warewash Equipment:
    - a Furnish 18 gauge stainless steel seamless duct risers for final connection to warewash machines equipped with integral vent cowls or extended hoods.
    - b Extend duct risers 6" above finished ceiling.
    - c Trim duct at ceiling with 16 gauge stainless steel angle flange with welded corners.
  - 04 Ovens/Broilers:
    - a Furnish 16 gauge stainless steel rectangular no-draft flue deflector with a low profile on deck or convection ovens and upright broilers.
    - b Extend diverter forward minimum of 15".
    - c Submit detail for approval.
  - 05 Rotary Oven:
    - a Furnish 18 gauge stainless steel double wall flue pipe for final connection to rotary ovens.
    - b Extend flue pipe 18" above finished ceiling.
    - c Trim flue pipe at ceiling with 16 gauge stainless steel all welded escutcheon.

## 2.3 PLUMBING TRIM

- A. Faucets:
  - 01 Furnish for sinks or equipment specified under this Section requiring open water supply.
  - 02 Faucets furnished under this Section to be lead free and comply with ANSI/NSF Standard 61, Section 9 requirements.
  - 03 Faucets specified in 2.15 FOODSERVICE EQUIPMENT SCHEDULE.
- B. Drains:
  - 01 Furnish for sinks or equipment specified under this Section requiring removal of liquids.
  - 02 Furnish with connected overflows for sinks specified under this Section.
  - 03 Install specified chrome-plated or stainless steel fittings with washers and locknuts in die-stamped opening.
  - 04 Drains specified in 2.15 FOODSERVICE EQUIPMENT SCHEDULE.

## 2.4 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Certification:
  - 01 Certify electrical systems, components and accessories specified under this Section to be in compliance with NEC 70.
- B. Electrical Components:
  - 01 Coordinate foodservice equipment voltage, phase and loads with building system. Confirm existing equipment electrical requirements.
- C. Cord and Caps:
  - 01 Coordinate Foodservice Equipment cord/caps with related receptacles.
  - 02 120 volt equipment shall have Type S0 or SJ0 cord and plug with ground wire fastened to frame/body.
  - 03 Adjust cord lengths on fixed equipment to eliminate loose-hanging excess.
- D. Controls:
  - 01 Provide motor-driven appliance or electrically-heated unit with control switch or starter per Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. with low-voltage and overload protection.
  - 02 Provide NEMA Type 4 enclosure with remote manual starters, magnetic contactors or starters and push-button stations. NEMA Type 1 enclosure only when installed in a closed base body.
  - 03 Provide 208/240 volt and 460/480 volt equipment or devices with integral, pre-wired step-down transformer to supply 120 volt control circuit.
- E. Motors:
  - 01 120 volt motors:
    - a Manual tumbler type starter with thermal overload protection and interchangeable heating elements.
  - 02 208/240 volt and 460/480 volt motors:
    - a Magnetic starter with low-voltage protection and one interchangeable overload relay per phase.
- F. Heating Elements:
  - 01 Electrically-heated equipment:
    - a Thermostatic controls.
  - 02 Water heating equipment:
    - a Equipped with positive low-water shut-off.
- G. Receptacles:
  - 01 Closed Body Base Receptacles:
    - a Mount in Component Hardware model R73-1210 recessed housing.
    - b Pre-wire receptacles in closed body base to a junction box installed within 6" above bottom of utility or compressor compartments.
  - 02 Open Body Base Receptacles:
    - a Mount on 14 gauge stainless steel panel, 12" x 10-1/2" x 4-1/2" deep, with returned ends and sloping recess. Submit design for approval. Secure panel to underbracing of top.

- b Pre-wire receptacles on open body base fixtures, to a junction box, mounted on underside of lower shelf. Install vertical wiring in rigid conduit or within tubular leg.
    - 03 Fabricated Equipment Receptacles:
      - a Hubbell, Inc. assemblies horizontally-mounted in a metal box with stainless steel cover plate installed in/on fabricated equipment.
    - 04 Fabricated Equipment Switches:
      - a Hubbell, Inc. with metal box and Sierra Model NO. C-361 stainless steel cover plate installed in/on fabricated equipment.
- H. Load Centers:
  - 01 Pre-wire load centers installed on fabricated equipment to have all fixture components wired to load center with balanced phase loading.
  - 02 List all breaker/device information, typewritten, on circuit schedule in load center door with enclosed schematic wiring diagram of fixture components.
  - 03 Mount load center(s) within utility compartment(s), per code requirements.
  - 04 Load center wired complete and ready for final connection by Division 26.
- I. Light Fixtures:
  - 01 Fabricated Equipment:
    - a Pre-wire light fixtures with lamps installed in/on fabricated or field-assembled equipment to a junction box for final connection. Install light fixtures in continuous-run when specified.
    - b Display light fixtures installed with stud bolts full-length of display stand and serving shelf. Pre-wire through support posts to an apron-mounted switch.
    - c Heat lamps installed with stud bolts to underside of serving shelf. Provide maximum length lamp chassis, when multiple heat lamps are specified. Install switches and infinite controls remote from lamps.
  - 02 Cold Storage Assembly:
    - a Connect cold storage light fixtures through hub fitting located on top of fixture. Seal hub, airtight at exterior side of walk-in panel.
    - b Install all horizontal conduit above ceiling panels. Install plastic sleeve through ceiling panels for electrical conduit. Seal sleeved penetrations airtight at both sides of panel.
  - 03 Lamps:
    - a Install bulbs in Foodservice Equipment containing a light fixture.
    - b Provide G.E. Model No. 40A15 appliance bulbs for refrigerated and heated cabinets.
    - c Provide Shat-R-Shield lamps or standard lamps sleeved with end caps for exposed fluorescent or LED lamps within a food zone.
- J. Final Electrical Connection:
  - 01 Fabricated Equipment:
    - a Pre-wire fabricated equipment containing electrically-operated components, fittings and/or devices which are direct-connected to building systems. Pre-wire each component, fitting or group thereof to a junction box for final connection. Refer to drawings for circuit loading.
    - b Fabricated equipment containing electrically-operated components and/or devices indicated to have a circuit-breaker load center shall have each component or device pre-wired to a separate circuit breaker for balanced phase loading and single final connecting point.
  - 02 Field-Assembled Equipment:
    - a Pre-wire electrical components completely to single connecting point(s) as indicated on Utility Connection Drawings.
  - 03 Cold Storage Assembly:
    - a Prewire electrical devices of cold storage assembly to a top-mounted junction box for final connection per compartment grouping.
    - b Light fixtures, switches and heated pressure-relief vent.
    - c Door/jamb heaters and temperature monitors/alarms.
  - 04 Tag electrical final connection points of equipment with the following:
    - a Item number.
    - b Name of devices on circuit.
    - c Total electrical load.
    - d Voltage and phase.

## 2.5 FABRICATED EQUIPMENT AND FIXTURES

### A. Approved manufacturers of fabricated food service equipment:

Jero Manufacturing, Inc.  
5117 South 100<sup>th</sup> E. Ave.  
Tulsa, Oklahoma 74145

Keas Stainless Steel Fabricators, Inc.  
4312 S.E. 31st  
Del City, Oklahoma 73115

Kemlee Manufacturing, Inc.  
1404 Industrial Park  
Galena, Kansas 66739

Complete Restaurant Services  
2668 Myrtle Springs Avenue  
Dallas, Texas 75220

- B. All fixtures within this Section are to be constructed by single manufacturer and of uniform design and finish.
- C. All custom fabricated equipment must be built in NSF approved shop and bear NSF label.
- D. All custom fabricated refrigerated equipment must be built in NSF approved shop, meet NSF-7 standards and bear NSF label.
- E. All custom fabricated equipment with electrical and/or plumbing components must be built in U.L. approved shop and bear U.L. mark, manufacture's name, word "LISTED", product name and control number. U.L. mark must be U.L. approved label with manufacture's name, U. L. identification, address and electrical characteristics pre-printed on label. Install label where accessible for viewing but not where it will receive abuse. Fabricated equipment electrical systems must comply with federal, state and local codes and regulations.
- F. Pre-wire counter and components to circuit breaker load centers in utility compartment. Square D QO series, circuit breaker load center with main breaker, cover, ground bar kit and Visi-trip breakers. Load center to have 20% spare capacity.

## 2.6 FIELD JOINTS

### A. Field Joints:

- 01 Provide field joints only when equipment size must be limited for access into building.
- 02 Stainless steel surfaces (tops, edges, splashes) must be fully welded, ground and polished to match finish of adjacent surface.
- 03 Note field joint type and location on shop drawings.

### B. Vertical Joints:

- 01 Terminate field weld 1" above horizontal cove at inaccessible vertical field joints in backsplash of fixture.
- 02 Remaining height of field joint is to be a hairline butt joint with rear mounted offset draw-angles.

### C. Closed Body Base:

- 01 Joints shall be draw-type with hairline seams fully field-welded.

### D. Plastic Laminate:

- 01 Joints shall be doweled, glued and draw-bolted with fasteners.
- 02 Carefully match laminate patterns.



## 2.7 HOT FOOD WELLS

- A. Vertical Mounted Controls:
  - 01 Remote mount hot food well controls in vertical recessed apron panel.
  - 02 Apron panel is recessed 2" from body line.
  - 03 Mount apron panel on concealed piano hinge at bottom edge; secure with screws at upper corners.
  
- B. Installation:
  - 01 Bottom mount hot food wells into 12" x 20" die-stamped top openings.
  - 02 Turn top flange down into hot food well.
  - 03 Apply high temperature Silicone sealant around hot food well and flange forming complete seal and thermal break.
  - 04 Sealant must have minimum 450°F rating.
  - 05 Install wells per manufactures recommendation.
  
- C. Automatic Water Fill:
  - 01 Inter-connect hot food well drain lines to share "AutoFill" option where specified.
  
- D. Drains:
  - 01 Manifold hot food well drains and extend to within utility compartment for indirect waste connection.
  - 02 Install valve in drain line and extend handle through compartment door or as specified in this Section.
  - 03 Provide individual brass or hi-temp plastic "pull-out" drain plugs for each food well.
  
- E. Enclosure:
  - 01 Enclose underside of hot food wells with removable 18 gauge stainless steel louvered panel. Louver panel with 10% open area per lineal foot.
  
- F. Plate Shelf:
  - 01 Provide 14 gauge stainless steel 9" deep plate shelf full-length of hot food station, per detail.
  - 02 Set shelf 10" below counter top with rear panel coved up to underside of counter top.
  - 03 Turn end panels up square.
  - 04 Turn front of shelf down 1" and return under for closure panel attachment.

## 2.8 VENTILATOR FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEM

- A. Installation:
  - 01 Install fire suppression system(s) in ventilators specified in this section.
  - 02 Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and applicable codes or standards.
  - 03 Submit installation certification to Architect.
  
- B. Automatic Chemical System:
  - 01 Install automatic chemical system in each filtered exhaust hood and duct assembly.
  - 02 Provide surface protection above/in all equipment required by NFPA Bulletin No. 96 and local Fire Marshall's regulations.
  - 03 Refer to Contract Drawings for quantity of exhaust fan units serving single or multiple exhaust hoods and coordinate with hood/fan controls.
  
- C. Cylinder Location:
  - 01 Locate chemical cylinders as indicated on drawings.
  - 02 Install piping to exhaust hood(s) in totally-concealed manner.
  - 03 Set top of cylinder cabinet flush with finished ceiling.
  - 04 Provide polished chrome plated tubing piping and fittings, where exposed at cylinder cabinet and interior of exhaust ventilator.
  - 05 Exposed pipe threads are not allowed in or above food zone

- D. System Components:
  - 01 Ansul Model No. "PIRANHA", system assemblies, in system increments required by dimensions and configuration of foodservice equipment and ventilators.
  - 02 System to comply with U.L. 300 test standards and bear label.
- E. Remote Release:
  - 01 Remote manual release located in path of egress from protected exhaust hood area.
  - 02 Install all conduit and remote pull so only face of pull is visible in wall.
- F. Control System:
  - 01 Ansul Automan cylinder control assembly with four (4) snap-action electric switches.
- G. Fusible Links:
  - 01 Fusible links installed each duct collar of filtered hood/ducts.
  - 02 Fusible links located directly above each cooking appliance required by Code, in quantity required by length of protected appliance.
- H. Discharge Nozzles:
  - 01 Provide High Proximity nozzles above each cooking appliance required by Code.
  - 02 Provide nozzle model P34 / P41 per manufacturers recommendations.
  - 03 Minimize length of drop piping to nozzle.
- I. Fitting Adaptor:
  - 01 Provide "Quik-Seal" adaptor fitting at all ventilator penetrations for distribution pipes or detection lines.
- J. Gas Valves:
  - 01 Provide required quantity and sizes of mechanically-operated gas valves.

## **2.9 COLD STORAGE ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Sectional Assemblies:
  - 01 Provide sectional assemblies in size/shape as indicated on drawings, 8'-6" AFF unless otherwise specified.
  - 02 Door locations and size per Contract Documents.
- B. Panel Insulation:
  - 01 Class 1 Urethane with vapor barrier, 4" thickness with minimum of R-32 rating.
    - a Insulation shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less and smoke development index of not more than 450.
- C. Panel Material/Finish:
  - 01 .040" thick stucco-embossed aluminum interior walls and exterior panel surfaces.
- D. Ceiling Material/Finish:
  - 01 24 gauge smooth galvanized steel with baked white polyester finish on interior ceilings.
- E. Panel Protection:
  - 01 Provide protective covering on walls during installation of concrete in or around cold storage assembly.
  - 02 Door(s) must be left open to ventilate interior when concrete is installed in cold storage assembly.
  - 03 Protect exposed surface of panels from damage resulting from other work during installation.
- F. Wherever compartment dimension exceed clear-span ability of ceiling panels, provide I-beam support on exterior of ceiling or spline-hangers. Install ½" diameter steel rods through beam/hangers and secure to structure above. Hanger spacing per manufacturer's recommendation. Beams or posts within compartments are not acceptable.

- G. Floorless Assemblies:
  - 01 6 mil polyethylene sheets in slab recess with all joints lapped 6 inches and sealed to form a watertight seal.
  - 02 Level, square and anchor prefabricated perimeter screeds and partition wall panels to slab recess.
  - 03 2" thick rigid polyurethane board insulation set in mastic with staggered joints. Refer to detail.
    - a Two (2) layers for cooler storage assemblies only.
    - b Three (3) layers for freezers and combination cooler/freezer storage assemblies.
  - 04 15# felt slip sheet over insulation with 6" lapped joints flashed up height of finished floor base.
  
- H. Dial Thermometer:
  - 01 2 1/2" diameter chrome-plated, flush mounted, dual reading, adjustable dial thermometer with recalibration.
  - 02 Thermometers furnished with sufficient length of capillary tubing to extend from exterior front of cold storage assembly to a mounting position of sensor bulb within evaporator return air-stream with tubing clipped to panel at 36" o.c.
  
- I. Temperature Alarm:
  - 01 Modularm Corporation model 75LC flush mount temperature monitor/alarm with dry contacts for connection to remote alarm.
  - 02 Probe Cord:
    - a Provide length required to extend from exterior front of assembly to mounting position of sensor within evaporator return air-stream.
    - b Run probe cord, out through cold storage assembly roof, then above roof to behind evaporator then back through roof and drop into return air stream.
    - c Pre-wire to common connecting point on cold storage assembly roof.
    - d No exposed conduit on interior ceiling.
    - e Seal penetrations at interior and exterior of cold storage assembly.
  - 03 Connection to remote alarm by Division 26.
  
- J. Light Fixtures:
  - 01 Pre-wire switch in door panel and lights to common connecting point on cold storage assembly roof.
  - 02 Installation:
    - a Connect ceiling light fixture through hub fitting located on top of fixture.
    - b Seal hub and conduit interior, airtight at exterior side of walk-in panel.
    - c No exposed conduit on interior ceiling.
    - d Install all horizontal conduit above ceiling panels.
    - e Install plastic sleeve through ceiling panels for electrical conduit. Seal sleeved penetrations airtight at both sides of panel.
  
- K. Panel Sealant:
  - 01 Seal penetrations of panels with Dow Corning 3-6548 silicone RTV foam, full-depth of panel. Trim excess flush.
  - 02 Provide stainless steel escutcheon at sealed area.
  
- L. Closure Panels:
  - 01 Closure material same as wall panels, unless specified otherwise. Refer to detail for materials, panel construction and method of attachment.
  - 02 Install trim strips to building walls and ceiling with concealed attachment.
  
- M. Compartment Doors:
  - 01 36" x 78" nominal clearance unless specified otherwise.
  - 02 Door(s) mounted on three (3) adjustable, spring loaded, lift-off cam hinges.
  - 03 Door(s) swing as indicated on drawings.
  - 04 Reinforce wall panels to rigidly-support door assemblies.
  - 05 Provide replaceable, heater cable at all door opening perimeters. Install 16 gauge stainless steel hat-channel wire chase, full-width of jamb with 1/8" stainless steel removable flush sill, secured with stainless steel screws and sealed watertight to channel.
  - 06 Thermostat control for heater cable at door perimeters.

- 07 1/8" aluminum diamond tread kickplates 36" high each side of door.
- 08 14" x 24" three-panel glass view window with heater and molded non-metallic inner and outer frame.
- 09 Padlock provisions in door latch with interior safety release.
- 10 Foot treadle door opener.
  
- 11 Door(s) material/finish same as panel finish unless specified otherwise.

N. Compartment Identification Sign:

- 01 12" x 2" engraved phenolic, black plastic compartment identification sign with 1" high white letters.
- 02 Mount sign centered on compartment door 2" above window.

O. Custom sized panels must be constructed same as standard panels with like edges, locks and other features.

## 2.10 REFRIGERATED EQUIPMENT SYSTEMS

A. Refrigeration systems shall be furnished complete with necessary controls and accessories required for proper operation of a working system.

B. Refrigerants:

- 01 Refrigerants and associated components must comply with the requirements of current codes and regulations.
- 02 Refrigerants must be non-ozone depleting type and comply with the Montreal Protocol Agreement.

C. Check and adjust self-contained or factory-installed condensing unit to proper operating temperature. Operating temperature to comply with FDA and HACCP guidelines.

## 2.11 COLD STORAGE REFRIGERATION SYSTEMS

A. Evaporator Coils:

- 01 Specified quantity and model, ceiling-hung by 1/2" o.d. nylon bolts with stainless steel washers and nuts.
- 02 Insert hanger bolts through plastic sleeve and seal penetration airtight.

B. Evaporator Drain Lines:

- 01 Install evaporator drain lines as indicated on drawings.
- 02 Install cast tee-fittings on drain pan outlet with union and cleanout plug and extend 1" Type K copper drain line through wall panel to air-gap fitting or floor drain.
- 03 Slope drain line 1/2" per foot, trap at exterior of assembly and turn down into drain. Set lines 1" clear from adjacent surfaces.
- 04 Manifold drain lines of adjacent compartments wherever possible. Minimize line runs in rooms below 32°F.
- 05 Install plastic sleeve through compartment wall, seal around drain line and install stainless steel escutcheon with set screws.
- 06 Provide Chromalox "Safe-T-Warp" self-regulating electric heater cable on all drain lines from evaporators in room(s) operating below 36°F.
  - a Install cable from evaporator drain line fitting to wall penetration.
  - b Install cable in accordance with manufacture's recommendations to provide adequate heat on drain line.
  - c Inter-wire cable to unit cooler for continuous operation.
- 07 Cover drain line(s) with 1/2" wall, Armstrong "Armaflex" pipe insulation.
  - a Fully seal all butt joints or mitered joints with factory approved adhesive.
  - b Install "Armaflex" per manufactures recommendations.
- 08 Pre-Assembled Evaporator Coil Components:
  - a Sporlan thermostatic expansion valve with external equalizer.
  - b Eco-Smart demand defrost controller with three (3) temperature sensors.
  - c Manual-lift stem solenoid valve.

- d Electrical disconnect switch in NEMA 4 enclosure.
- C. Rack-Mounted Compressor/Condensing Unit (scroll unless otherwise specified) Assemblies:
- 01 Air-cooled units, each fitted with the following accessories and electrical components pre-wired to control panel.
    - a Suction and discharge line vibration eliminators on semi-hermetic/discus compressors.
    - b Shut-off valve at condensing unit inlet and outlet.
    - c Sporlan "Catch-all" refrigerant filter/dehydrator at condensing unit outlet with "See-all" sight glass and cover.
  - 02 Condensing Units Requiring Oil Separator:
    - a Condensing units suppling multi-fixtures.
    - b Located 45' higher than evaporator coil.
    - c Located more than 100' from evaporator coil.
    - d Pipe oil to suction line return of condensing unit with shut-off valve mounted in line.
  - 03 Exterior Mounted Condensing Units:
    - a Compressor/condensing units installed in an area subject to weather conditions or low ambient temperatures furnished with winter controls and type 304 stainless steel enclosure.
    - b Enclosure to include removable louver front outlet for servicing, protective inlet screen and interior baffles to condenser to prevent air flow bypass.
- D. Refrigerant System Installation:
- 01 Refrigerant Lines:
    - a Type "L" or ARC hard copper tubing.
    - b Wrought copper or brass fittings designed for use with high temperature solder.
    - c Piping joints made with silver solder (Sil-Fos).
    - d Piping properly suspended from and anchored to structure with adjustable hangers 6" o.c. maximum.
    - e Suction lines sized to have maximum pressure drop of two pounds in medium temperature systems.
    - f Suction lines sized to have maximum pressure drop of one pound in low temperature systems.
    - g Liquid lines sized to give maximum pressure to prevent trapping of oil.
  - 02 Suction Lines:
    - a Cover all medium temperature suction lines with 3/4" thick wall, Armstrong "Armaflex" pipe insulation.
    - b Cover all low temperature suction lines with 1" thick wall, Armstrong "Armaflex" pipe insulation.
    - c Fully seal all butt joints or mitered joints with factory approved adhesive.
    - d Install "Armaflex" per manufactures recommendations.
  - 03 Refrigerant lines in PVC or EMT conduit:
    - a Sealed at both ends with Dow Corning 3-6548 silicone RTV foam.
- E. Evacuation and Charging:
- 01 Evacuation:
    - a After completion of pressure test, system shall be evacuated using an approved auxiliary vacuum pump.
    - b Connections for evacuation to be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 02 Charging:
    - a Charging subsequent to initial charge which is contained in condensing unit is to be given through charging valve in high side passing all liquid refrigerant through a charging dehydrator.
    - b All charging lines and gauges to be purged of air prior to connection with system.
    - c Refrigerant to be new (no prior use) and shall be delivered in clean containers.
    - d After system is fully charged, start and place in full operation.
- F. Start-Up Temperature Reduction:
- 01 When starting refrigeration system(s), reset refrigerated room thermostats daily for maximum temperature drop of 15°F. per day, down to 36°F. and maximum of 10°F. per day between 36°F. and operating temperature.

## **2. 12 REGULARLY MANUFACTURED EQUIPMENT**

- A. Regularly manufactured equipment and components must be built to NSF standards and bear NSF label.
- B. Provide standard finishes and accessories unless otherwise specified per Contract Documents.
- C. Provide manufacture's most current model, version and style of specified equipment. When primary model has been discontinued provide manufacture's subsequent model with size, function, finish, features, accessories and approvals as specified equipment.
- D. Equipment of like categories shall be the same brand and manufacturer unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documents.

## **2. 13 FABRICATED AND FIELD-ASSEMBLED EQUIPMENT**

- A. Provide equipment in arrangement and configuration as shown on Plans, Elevations and Detail Drawings.
- B. Field welding and assembly of fabricated equipment to be performed by manufacturer of equipment.

**2. 14** Refer to **PART 2 - PRODUCTS** for components, fittings, accessories, and requirements related to manufactured and fabricated equipment listed.

## **2. 15 FOODSERVICE EQUIPMENT SCHEDULE**

### **COMPLIMENTARY BEVERAGE STATIONS**

#### **ITEM NO. 01BV BEVERAGE COUNTER**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per drawings and details.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Work surface 34" AFF.
  - 02 Engineered stone top and splash constructed per details. Stone selected, by Architect, from manufacture's standard colors.
  - 03 Splash where adjacent to walls.
  - 04 Cut and polish hole(s) in top for carbonated beverage lines. Coordinate size/location with Ice & Carbonated Beverage Dispenser. Polish hole(s) in top for extending beverage lines, cord and plug to services below top. Coordinate size/location with Ice & Carbonated Beverage Dispenser.
  - 05 Cut and polish hole(s) in top for trash chute to receptacle below. Coordinate hole location with trash chute and trash receptacle.
  - 06 Cut and polish hole(s) in top for Base Outlet.
  - 07 Closed body base with plastic laminate covered front, per details. Plastic laminate selected, by Architect, from manufacture's standard colors. Stainless steel ends.
  - 08 Trash receptacle space. Receptacle shelf enclosed with hinged door.
  - 09 Carbonator storage compartment. 14 ga. stainless steel pan per details. Removable pan recessed into toe base, per details and drawings. Storage compartment enclosed with hinged door.
  - 10 Bottom shelf enclosed with hinged doors.
  - 11 Plastic laminate doors per details. Each door with lock, keyed alike.
  - 12 Utility compartment located per drawings.
  - 13 Pre-pipe brass gate valve, below top, to each base outlet.
  - 14 Pre-pipe Base Outlets to a common connection point in utility compartment.
  - 15 Extend drain lines to utility compartment and terminate at opening above floor drain.
  - 16 120V-1ph, 20A receptacle in base with stainless steel cover for connecting Carbonator.

- 17 120V-1ph, 20A receptacle in base with stainless steel cover for connecting Ice & Carbonated Beverage Dispenser.
- 18 14 ga. stainless steel, channel shaped, toe base per details. Set base in continuous bead of clear silicone sealant at floor. Notch base at floor drain and seal base to floor. Floor drain must be accessible when panel is removed.
- 19 Pre-wire and pre-pipe counter with U.L. components per Article 2.6 Fabricated Equipment and Fixtures this Section.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Tomlinson Industries model 1920107, 9" diameter stainless steel chute. Modify length of chute to be 3 1/4" O.A.
- 02 Two (2) Component Hardware, model K50-X125 base with KL50-X122 adapter, deck mount, base outlet.
- 03 Rubbermaid, model FG294700, gray, trash receptacle.

D Special instructions:

- 01 Install base outlet behind coffee maker and iced tea brewer.
- 02 Brace top to support counter mounted equipment.
- 03 Coordinate toe base with location of beverage lines.

**ITEM NO. 02BV CUP DISPENSER**

A Seven (7) - Dispense-Rite, model CTC-R-4SS.

B To Include:

- 01 Stainless steel finish.
- 02 Counter mount.

C Special Instructions:

- 01 Verify Owner's cup size(s).
- 02 Adjust cup dispensers to accommodate Owner's cups.
- 03 Install two (2) on Item No. 01BV, Beverage Counter.
- 04 Install five (5) on Item No. 09BV, Beverage Counter.

**ITEM NO. 03BV ICE & CARBONATED BEVERAGE DISPENSER**

A Three (3) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 04BV CARBONATOR**

A Three (3) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 05BV ICED TEA BREWER**

A Three (3) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 06BV CONDIMENT DISPENSER**

A Three (3) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 07BV LID & STRAW TRAY**

A Two (2) - Dispense-Rite, model WLO-1B.

B To Include:

- 01 Counter mount.
- 02 Removable dividers.

C Special Instructions:

- 01 Install one (1) on Item No. 01BV, Beverage Counter.

02 Install one (1) on Item No. 09BV, Beverage Counter.

**ITEM NO. 08BV COFFEE MAKER**

A Three (3) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 09BV BEVERAGE COUNTER**

A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per drawings and details.

B To Include:

- 01 Work surface 34" AFF.
- 02 Engineered stone top and splash constructed per details. Stone selected, by Architect, from manufacture's standard colors.
- 03 Splash where adjacent to walls.
- 04 Cut and polish hole(s) in top for carbonated beverage lines. Coordinate size/location with Ice & Carbonated Beverage Dispenser. Polish hole(s) in top for extending beverage lines, cord and plug to services below top. Coordinate size/location with Ice & Carbonated Beverage Dispenser.
- 05 Cut and polish hole(s) in top for trash chute to receptacle below. Coordinate hole location with trash chute and trash receptacle.
- 06 Cut and polish hole(s) in top for Base Outlet.
- 07 Closed body base with plastic laminate covered front, per details. Plastic laminate selected, by Architect, from manufacture's standard colors. Stainless steel ends.
- 08 Trash receptacle space. Receptacle shelf enclosed with hinged door.
- 09 Carbonator storage compartment. 14 ga. stainless steel pan per details. Removable pan recessed into toe base, per details and drawings. Storage compartment enclosed with hinged door.
- 10 Bottom shelf enclosed with hinged doors.
- 11 Plastic laminate doors per details. Each door with lock, keyed alike.
- 12 Utility compartment located per drawings.
- 13 Pre-pipe brass gate valve, below top, to each base outlet.
- 14 Pre-pipe Base Outlets to a common connection point in utility compartment.
- 15 Extend drain lines to utility compartment and terminate at opening above floor drain.
- 16 Two (2) 120V-1ph, 20A receptacle in base with stainless steel cover for connecting Carbonator.
- 17 Two (2) 120V-1ph, 20A receptacle in base with stainless steel cover for connecting Ice & Carbonated Beverage Dispenser.
- 18 14 ga. stainless steel, channel shaped, toe base per details. Set base in continuous bead of clear silicone sealant at floor. Notch base at floor drain and seal base to floor. Floor drain must be accessible when panel is removed.
- 19 Pre-wire and pre-pipe counter with U.L. components per Article 2.6 Fabricated Equipment and Fixtures this Section.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Two (2) Tomlinson Industries model 1920107, 9" diameter stainless steel chute. Modify length of chute to be 3 1/4" O.A.
- 02 Four (4) Component Hardware, model K50-X125 base with KL50-X122 adapter, deck mount, base outlet.
- 03 Two (2) Rubbermaid, model FG294700, gray, trash receptacle.

D Special instructions:

- 01 Install base outlet behind coffee maker and iced tea brewer.
- 02 Brace top to support counter mounted equipment.
- 03 Coordinate toe base with location of beverage lines.

**CASINO BAR**



**ITEM NO. 01CB STORAGE SHELVING**

- A One (1) lot - Eagle Group, "Quad-Adjust" with "EAGLEgard" epoxy finish. Each section free standing with five (5) shelves and four (4) 86" posts.
- B Each section to include:
  - 01 Two (2) QuadTruss shelves.
  - 02 Three (3) Quad-Adjust shelves.
  - 03 Four (4) posts.
- C Sections:
  - 01 One (1) 21" x 36"
  - 02 Five (5) 21" x 48".
- D Special instructions:
  - 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF. Set additional shelves 17" O.C.
  - 02 Set QuadTruss shelves top and bottom. Remaining shelves Quad-Adjust.

**ITEM NO. 02CB LIQUOR SYSTEM**

- A Three (3) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 03CB WALL SHELF**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To Include:
  - 01 16 ga. stainless steel, fully welded, wall mounted shelf on cantilever brackets.
- C Section:
  - 01 One (1) 18" x 90"
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Coordinate mounting height of shelf with Item No. 04CB, Bag Rack.

**ITEM NO. 04CB BAG RACK**

- A Nine (9) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 05CB CARBONATOR**

- A Nine (9) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 06CB NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 07CB BACK-BAR**

- A One (1) - By Division 06.

**ITEM NO. 08CB BACK-BAR REFRIGERATOR**

- A Two (2) - Glastender, model BB84, self-contained.
- B To include:
  - 01 Stainless steel top.
  - 02 Stainless steel finish on front and door.
  - 03 Black vinyl finish on sides.
  - 04 Stainless steel interior finish.

- 05 Hinge door per drawing.
- 06 Door lock. Key all locks alike.
- 07 Compressor location per drawing.
- 08 4" dia. caster set.

C Special Instructions:

- 01 Coordinate caster height with construction of Item No. 07CB, Back-Bar.
- 02 Install into base of Item No. 07FB, Back-Bar.
- 03 Coordinate installation with Millwork Contractor.

**ITEM NO. 09CB BACK-BAR REFRIGERATOR**

- A Two (2) - Glastender, model BB60, self-contained.

B To include:

- 01 Stainless steel top.
- 02 Stainless steel finish on front and door.
- 03 Black vinyl finish on sides.
- 04 Stainless steel interior finish.
- 05 Hinge door per drawing.
- 06 Door lock. Key all locks alike.
- 07 Compressor location per drawing.
- 08 4" dia. caster set.

C Special Instructions:

- 01 Coordinate caster height with construction of Item No. 07CB, Back-Bar.
- 02 Install into base of Item No. 07FB, Back-Bar.
- 03 Coordinate installation with Millwork Contractor.

**ITEM NO. 10CB WALL SHELF**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.

B To Include:

- 01 16 ga. stainless steel, fully welded, wall mounted shelf on cantilever brackets.

C Section:

- 01 One (1) 18" x 90"

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Coordinate mounting height of shelf with Item No. 04CB, Bag Rack.

**ITEM NO. 11CB MUG CHILLER**

- A Two (2) - Glastender, model MF36-S2 .

B To include:

- 01 Stainless steel exterior finish.
- 02 Stainless steel interior finish.
- 03 Two (2) wire shelves.
- 04 Cord and plug.
- 05 3-1/2" dia. caster set.

**ITEM NO. 12CB GLASS RINSER**

- A One (1) lot - Chill-Rite. Included in Item No. 13CB, Beer System.

B Special Instructions:

- 01 Install into top of Item No. 07CB, Back-Bar.
- 02 Install drip tray per manufactures recommendations.

- 03 Coordinate installation with Item No. 13CB, Beer System, dispensing towers.
- 04 Coordinate installation with Millwork Contractor.

**ITEM NO. 13CB BEER SYSTEM**

- A One (1) lot - Chill-Rite, "Millennium" beer system.
- B To include:
  - 01 Two (2) Model MLN-75, 1/3 h.p., air cooled, glycol chiller.
  - 02 Floor mounted chiller stand.
  - 03 Chill-Rite glycol jumper.
  - 04 ST-.5" trunk line housing with eight (8) product lines and two (2) coolant lines. Trunk line NSF-51/NSF-61 compliant. Length as required for complete installation.
  - 05 Twelve (12) beer "Y"s.
  - 06 Six (6) dual beer pump plate assembly with FOB's and locking regulators.
  - 07 Two (2) model Pirogue - 6 stainless steel beer dispensing tower. Each tower to include six (6) faucets with black handles (Casino Bar).
  - 08 Two (2) counter mounted drip pan with rinser (Casino Bar).
  - 09 Model THT-6-SS stainless steel beer dispensing tower. Tower to include six (6) faucets with black handles (Fine Dining Bar).
  - 10 Model THT-6-DP-stainless steel drip pan (counter mounted) with rinser (Fine Dining Bar)..
  - 11 High pressure CO2 regulator.
  - 12 USP Food Grade Propylene Glycol. Quantity as required for complete installation.
  - 13 Parts, accessories, and fittings for complete installation.
- C Special instructions:
  - 01 Provide factory or factory authorized installation.
  - 02 Install beer system with components, completely connected and operational.
  - 03 Mount Pirogue Beer Dispensing Towers on Item No. 07CB, Back-Bar.
  - 04 Mount THT Beer Dispensing Tower on Item No. 08FB, Back-Bar
  - 05 Tapping equipment by Owner.

**ITEM NO. 14CB BAR**

- A One (1) - By Division 06.

**ITEM NO. 15CB CASHIER'S STAND**

- A Three (3) - Glastender, model PCB-24 .
- B To include:
  - 01 Hinge door per drawings.

**ITEM NO. 16CB CASH REGISTER**

- A Three (3) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 17CB BAR STATION**

- A One (1) - Glastender, bar station, configuration per drawings. Consisting of the following components.
- B To include:
  - 01 Model DBA-18 drainboard.
  - 02 Model IBA-24-CP10, ice chest with built-in ten (10) circuit cold plate.
  - 03 Two (2) BW3 bottle wells with sliding cover.
  - 04 Model DBA-6 drainboard.
  - 05 Model DBG-24-RS glass rack storage with drainboard top and sliding intermediate and bottom shelves.
  - 06 Model SSR-18 speed rail.
  - 07 Model SSR-30 speed rail.

- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Join sections together as one unitized integral bar station per drawings.
  - 02 Assemble sections, as shown on drawings, into single unit using common leg. Minimize number of legs.
  - 03 Submit shop drawing of single unit bar station. Coordinate drawing with bar die and top.

**ITEM NO. 18CB BAR STATION**

- A One (1) - Glastender, bar station, configuration per drawings. Consisting of the following components.
- B To include:
  - 01 Model BSA-12, blender station with sink, drain and junction box for duplex GFI receptacle.
  - 02 Model DBA-18 drainboard.
  - 03 Model IBA-24-CP10, ice chest with built-in ten (10) circuit cold plate.
  - 04 Two (2) BW3 bottle wells with sliding cover.
  - 05 Model DBA-18 drainboard.
  - 06 Model HSA-12-D hand sink with soap dispenser, towel dispenser and drain.
  - 07 Two (2) Model SSR-30 speed rail.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Two (2) Component Hardware, model KL45-4006-SE1, splash mount, faucet with 6" swing spout.
  - 02 Mount 120V-1ph, 20A, GFI duplex receptacle into junction box below blender shelf.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Join sections together as one unitized integral bar station per drawings.
  - 02 Assemble sections, as shown on drawings, into single unit using common leg. Minimize number of legs.
  - 03 Submit shop drawing of single unit bar station. Coordinate drawing with bar die and top.

**ITEM NO. 19CB BAR STATION**

- A One (1) - Glastender, bar station, configuration per drawings. Consisting of the following components.
- B To include:
  - 01 Model DBGR-24-RS glass rack storage with drainboard top and sliding intermediate and bottom shelves.
  - 02 Model DBA-12 drainboard.
  - 03 Model IBA-24-CP10, ice chest with built-in ten (10) circuit cold plate.
  - 04 Two (2) BW3 bottle wells with sliding cover.
  - 05 Model DBA-24 drainboard.
  - 06 Model BSA-12, blender station with sink, drain and junction box for duplex GFI receptacle.
  - 07 Two (2) Model SSR-30 speed rail.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Component Hardware, model KL45-4006-SE1, splash mount, faucet with 6" swing spout.
  - 02 Mount 120V-1ph, 20A, GFI duplex receptacle into junction box below blender shelf.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Join sections together as one unitized integral bar station per drawings.
  - 02 Assemble sections, as shown on drawings, into single unit using common leg. Minimize number of legs.
  - 03 Submit shop drawing of single unit bar station. Coordinate drawing with bar die and top.

**ITEM NO. 20CB NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 21CB SPEED GUN**

- A Six (6) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 22CB GLASSWASHER**

- A Two (2) - Champion, model CG. One (1) Clockwise rotation. One (1) Counter Clockwise rotation.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel top, front and side panels.
  - 02 Front access door.
  - 03 Fully automatic.
  - 04 Regulated electric heat (3.0KW).
  - 05 Detergent, sanitizer and rinse aid pumps.
  - 06 Drain tray and waste collector.
  - 07 Water pressure reducing valve.
  - 08 Water hammer arrestor.
  - 09 Eighteen (18) months parts and labor warranty from date of start-up. Warranty to include round trip drive time to jobsite.

**ITEM NO. 23CB BAR STATION**

- A One (1) - Glastender, bar station, configuration per drawings. Consisting of the following components.
- B To include:
  - 01 Model BSA-12, blender station with sink, drain and junction box for duplex GFI receptacle.
  - 02 Model HSA-12-D hand sink with soap dispenser, towel dispenser and drain.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Two (2) Component Hardware, model KL45-4006-SE1, splash mount, faucet with 6" swing spout.
  - 02 Mount 120V-1ph, 20A, GFI duplex receptacle into junction box below blender shelf.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Join sections together as one unitized integral bar station per drawings.
  - 02 Assemble sections, as shown on drawings, into single unit using common leg. Minimize number of legs.
  - 03 Submit shop drawing of single unit bar station. Coordinate drawing with bar die and top.

**ITEM NO. 24CB COCKTAIL STATION**

- A One (1) - Glastender, model CS-72-CCW - Modified, per drawings.
- B Consisting of the following components:
  - 01 Tubing chase.
  - 02 Pass-thru ice bin with ten (10) circuit, sealed, cold plate.
  - 03 Blender shelf.
  - 04 Double speed rail.
  - 05 Two (2) waste sinks.
  - 06 Two (2) lift-out plastic strainers.
  - 07 15" wide stainless steel drain shelf with removable perforated inserts.
  - 08 Model DOS/SS-72 15" wide stainless steel double overshef.
  - 09 Stainless steel front and end panels.
  - 10 Delete factory installed glasswasher from station. Provide clear opening within unit for field installation of Champion glasswasher.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Champion, model CG2, glasswasher.
    - a Counter-Clockwise rotation.
    - b Stainless steel top, front and side panels.
    - c Access door left.
    - d Fully automatic.
    - e Regulated electric heat (3.0KW).
    - f Detergent, sanitizer and rinse aid pumps.
    - g Drain tray and waste collector.
    - h Water pressure reducing valve.

- i Water hammer arrestor.
  - j Eighteen (18) months parts and labor warranty from date of start-up. Warranty to include Technician's round trip drive time to jobsite.
- 02 Component Hardware, model KL41-4001-SE1, deck mount, swivel gooseneck faucet.  
 03 Component Hardware, model L73-2004B-32 undershelf fluorescent light fixture.  
 04 Mount junction box with 120V-1ph, 20A GFI duplex receptacle below blender shelf.

D Special instructions:

- 01 Install glasswasher as shown on drawings and details.
- 02 Modify hood opening of glasswasher per recommendations of Manufacturers Representative.
- 03 Provide chase through end panel for access to utilities. Coordinate size/location with utility rough-in. Install finished grommet at opening.
- 04 Mount fluorescent light, below drain shelf.
- 05 Assemble accessories and components into a single unit. Minimize legs.
- 06 Submit shop drawing.

**ITEM NO. 25CB COCKTAIL COUNTER**

- A One (1) - By Division 06.

**ITEM NO. 26CB COFFEE MAKER**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 27CB ICED TEA BREWER**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 28CB ICE MAKER W/ TRANSPORT CART**

- A Two (2) - Hoshizaki, model KM-901MAJ, air cooled .

B To Include:

- 01 Crescent Cube ice.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Water hammer arrestor.
- 02 Water pressure reducing valve.
- 03 Two (2) Everpure model EV9325-23 "Insurice" TRIPLE PF-I4000 water filter system.
- 04 San Jamar, model SI9000, Saf-T-Scoop Guardian System.
- 05 Follett Corp. model DEV1650SG-60-75, bin with stainless steel exterior and base. Provide SmartCART 75 with three (3) totes, ice paddle, ice rake and hanging bracket.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Install ice maker on bin. Include all accessories required for complete installation.
- 02 Locate front of ice maker flush with front of ice bin.
- 03 Mount water filter on adjacent walls with 16 ga. stainless steel mounting plate. Size and shape to accommodate filter bracket. Attach mounting plate to wall with stainless steel pan head screws. Weld stainless steel keyhole studs to mounting plate and attach filter bracket.
- 04 Mount scoop hanging bracket on side of bin with 16 ga. stainless steel mounting plate. Size and shape to accommodate hanging bracket. Weld threaded stainless steel studs to ice bin and attach mounting plate with chrome plated, locking, cap nuts. Weld stainless steel keyhole studs to mounting plate and attach hanging bracket.

**EMPLOYEE DINING ROOM**

**ITEM NO. 01ED NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 02ED NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 03ED SERVING COUNTER**

- A One (1) - Delfield, ShellySteel, mobile serving counter, configuration per drawings.
- B Consisting of the following components:
- 01 Model SCS-36-B Refrigerated Cold Food Counter.
- a Counter top 34" AFF.
  - b 14" top extension modification.
  - c 14 ga., 304 type, stainless steel top.
  - d 18 ga. stainless steel base.
  - e NFS-7 refrigerated cold pan.
  - f Apron panel below top on server's side.
  - g Model G-50 stainless steel, single sided, adjustable food shield with shelf. Provide incandescent light fixture, under food shield, wired to base.
  - h Model E-50 stainless steel, 12" wide, folding, solid tray slide. Mounted 34" AFF.
  - i Locking devise on ends for joining counters.
  - j Extend drain line an terminate above floor drain.
  - k Pre-wire light fixture to switch in apron panel on server side.
  - l Pre-wire cold pan to switch in apron panel on server side.
  - m Pre-wire 120/208V-1ph receptacle on interior of base to connect Hot Food Counter cord and plug.
  - n Provide single electrical cord and plug for Refrigerated Cold Food Counter. Pre-wire all components to common connection point. Connect cord and plug to receptacle in wall.
  - o Cord and plug from Refrigerated Cold Food Counter to provide electrical service for entire Serving Counter.
  - p 5" dia. swivel casters with polyurethane tires. Casters with brakes.
  - q Plastic laminate panels front and sides. Plastic laminate selected, by Architect, from manufactures standard, matte finished, colors.
- 02 Model SH-3-NU Three Well Hot Food Counter.
- a Counter top 34" AFF.
  - b 10" top extension modification.
  - c 14 ga., 304 type, stainless steel top.
  - d 18 ga. stainless steel base.
  - e Apron panel below top on server's side.
  - f Model G-60 stainless steel, single sided, adjustable food shield with shelf. Provide incandescent light fixture, under food shield, wired to base.
  - g Model E-60 stainless steel, 12" wide, folding, solid tray slide. Mounted 34" AFF.
  - h Locking devise on ends for joining counters.
  - i Manifold hot food well drain lines to single connection point and extend to drain valve.
  - j Mount drain valve on, server side, left end of counter.
  - k Extend drain line an terminate above floor drain.
  - l Pre-wire light fixture to switch in apron panel on server side.
  - m Pre-wire hot food well to controls in apron panel on server side.
  - n Pre-wire 120V-1ph receptacle on interior of base to connect Cashier's Counter cord and plug.
  - o Provide single electrical cord and plug for Hot Food Counter. Pre-wire all components to common connection point. Connect cord and plug to receptacle in base of Refrigerated Cold Food Counter.
  - p 5" dia. swivel casters with polyurethane tires. Casters with brakes.
  - q Plastic laminate panels front and sides. Plastic laminate selected, by Architect, from manufactures standard, matte finished, colors.
- 03 Model SCS-30 Cashier's Counter.
- a Counter top 34" AFF.
  - b 14 ga., 304 type, stainless steel top.
  - c 18 stainless steel base.
  - d 2 1/2" hole in top with grommet for cash register cord, plug and inter-connection cable.
  - e Cashier's drawer.
  - f Stainless steel undershelf.
  - g Model E-30 stainless steel, 12" wide, folding, solid tray slide. Mounted 34" AFF.

- h Locking devise on right end for joining counters.
- i Pre-wire 120V-1ph receptacle on interior of base to connect cash register cord and plug.
- j Provide single electrical cord and plug for Cashier's Counter. Pre-wire all components to common connection point. Connect cord and plug to receptacle in base of Hot Food Counter.
- k 5" dia. swivel casters with polyurethane tires. Casters with brakes.
- l Plastic laminate panels front and sides. Plastic laminate selected, by Architect, from manufactures standard, matte finished, colors.

C Special instructions:

- 01 Join Item 01, Refrigerated Cold Food Counter with Item 02, Hot Food Counter.
- 02 Join Item 02, Hot Food Counter with Item 03, Cashier's Counter.
- 03 Submit shop drawing of Serving Counter detailing equipment line-up and electrical connections.

**ITEM NO. 04ED BEVERAGE COUNTER**

A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per drawings and details.

B To Include:

- 01 Work surface 34" AFF.
- 02 Stainless steel top.
- 03 Splash where adjacent to walls and equipment.
- 04 Cut and polish hole(s) in top for extending beverage lines, cord and plug to services below top. Coordinate size/location with Ice & Carbonated Beverage Dispenser.
- 05 Cut and polish hole(s) in top for Base Outlet.
- 06 Closed body base with stainless steel finish, per details.
- 07 Cutout for Item No. 05ED, Undercounter Refrigerator. Provide 18 ga. stainless steel lining at rear and sides of cutout.
- 08 Carbonator storage compartment. 14 ga. stainless steel pan with drain, per details. Removable pan recessed into toe base, per drawings and details. Storage compartment enclosed with hinged door.
- 09 Bottom shelf enclosed with hinged doors.
- 10 Stainless steel door per details. Each door with lock, keyed alike.
- 11 Utility compartment located per drawings.
- 12 Stainless steel removable access panel, per details.
- 13 Pre-pipe brass gate valve, below top, to each base outlet.
- 14 Pre-pipe Base Outlets to a common connection point in utility compartment.
- 15 Extend drain lines to utility compartment and terminate at opening above floor drain.
- 16 14 ga. stainless steel, channel shaped, toe base per details. Set base in continuous bead of clear silicone sealant at floor. Notch base at floor drain and seal base to floor. Floor drain must be accessible when panel is removed.
- 17 Pre-wire and pre-pipe counter with U.L. components per Article 2.6 Fabricated Equipment and Fixtures this Section.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Two (2) Component Hardware, model K50-X125 base with KL50-X122 adapter, deck mount, base outlet.

D Special instructions:

- 01 Install base outlet behind coffee maker and iced tea brewer.
- 02 Park Item No. 05ED Undercounter Refrigerator in base.
- 03 Brace top to support counter mounted equipment.
- 04 Coordinate base with location of beverage lines.

**ITEM NO. 05ED UNDERCOUNTER REFRIGERATOR**

A One (1) - Continental Refrigerator, model DL36-SS-U.

B To Include:

- 01 Stainless steel top, front and sides.
- 02 Stainless steel interior.



- 03 Front breathing refrigeration.
- 04 Hinge doors per drawings.
- 05 Cord and plug.
- 06 1 3/8" dia. swivel casters.

- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install into base of Item No. 04ED, Beverage Counter.

**ITEM NO. 06ED LID & STAW TRAY**

- A One (1) - Dispense-Rite, model WLO-1B.

- B To Include:
  - 01 Counter mount.
  - 02 Removable dividers.

- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install on Item No. 04ED, Beverage Counter.

**ITEM NO. 07ED CONDIMENT DISPENSER**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 08ED COFFEE MAKER**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 09ED ICED TEA BREWER**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 10ED MILK DISPENSER**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 11ED CARBONATOR**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 12ED ICE & CARBONATED BEVERAGE DISPENSER**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 13ED CUP DISPENSER**

- A One (1) - Dispense-Rite, model CTC-R-4SS.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel finish.
  - 02 Counter mount.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Verify Owner's cup size(s).
  - 02 Adjust cup dispensers to accommodate Owner's cups.
  - 03 Install on Item No. 23ED, Serving Counter.

**ITEM NO. 14ED MICROWAVE OVEN**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 15ED RESIDENTIAL REFRIGERATOR**

A One (1) - By Owner.

**GRAB-N-GO**

**ITEM NO. 01GG WALK-IN COOLER & FREEZER**

A One (1) - Mid-South Industries, Thermo-Kool, 15'- 2" long x 25'- 11-1/2" wide x 9'- 4" high. Provide per details, drawings and PART 2-PRODUCTS Articles 2.09 and 2.11.

B To include:

- 01 Without floor.
- 02 13-1/2" high foam screed.
- 03 Finished floor by General Contractor.
- 04 N.S.F. construction.
- 05 U.L. classified.
- 06 Class I foam.
- 07 36" x 78" door.
- 08 Hinge doors per drawings.
- 09 Chrome plated hardware.
- 10 Door with automatic closer, self-closing hinges, foot treadle, magnetic latch, magnetic gasket, cylinder lock and kickplates each side. Provide each door with three spring loaded hinges.
- 11 Component Hardware model VXS-LEDPK10N-PC series, LED, vapor-proof, 10W, light fixture with lamp and protective globe. Ceiling mounted in each compartment per drawings. Pre-wire to common connecting point, on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling.
- 12 Heated threshold.
- 13 Apply 1/8" thick x 36" high, No. 6061-T6 hard-alloy aluminum diamond tread plate to all exposed exterior walls and walk-thru door (interior and exterior). Seal all joints with gray colored Dow-Corning 795 silicone sealant.
- 14 Closure panels at exposed sides per detail.
- 15 Angled wall trim at walls per detail.
- 16 Provide each compartment with Modularm, Corporation model 75LC , flush mount temperature alarm and walk-in light manager with dry contacts for connection to remote alarm (connection to remote alarm by Division 26) and probe-cord length required to extend from exterior front of assembly to a mounting position of the sensor within evaporator return air-stream. Pre-wire to common connecting point, (light connection), on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling. Set light timer to leave lights on for 30 minutes.
- 17 Heated pressure relief port in cooler. Pre-wire to common connecting point, (light connection), on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling.
- 18 Heated pressure relief port in freezer. Pre-wire to common connecting point, (light connection), on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling.
- 19 Provide Kingman Industries, "Thermo-Curtain", model 6-2-04 curtain at each door opening. Vulene vinyl, breakaway loop, strips with rounded edges and 50% overlap. Include all mounting hardware.
- 20 Provide New Age Industrial Corp., Inc., 5" high aluminum baseboard, at interior of each compartment. Miter inside and outside corners. Smooth edges of outside corners. Install baseboard after interior finish floor is installed. Set base bottom and top edges in bead of silicone sealant.
- 21 Construct all special size panels using same methods, materials and locking system as used to construct standard panels. Special size panels must connect to and be locked with other panels, using joint design and locks identical to standard panels. Connecting of panels by any other method is not acceptable.

- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Refrigeration Design Technologies Inc., refrigeration systems as follows:
    - a MOZ-series , 208V-3ph, pre-assembled remote, with fused disconnect and using R407A refrigerant in refrigeration system. Provide Eco-Smart demand defrost controllers with expansion valve, solenoid valve pre-wired and mounted on evaporators. Job site installation to consist of piping condensing unit to evaporator, evacuating and charging units with refrigerant.
    - b Cooler, +35°F.: Model MOZ015M63C, (1.5 HP), medium temp, air-cooled compressor. model ADT-140, 120V-1ph, evaporator. Cooler defrost to be "Ecosmart" type with positive refrigeration cycle shutdown.
    - c Freezer, -10°F: Model MOZ055L63C, (5.5 HP), low temp, air-cooled compressor. Model LET-140, 208V-1ph, evaporator with electric defrost initiated by "Ecosmart" demand defrost controller.
    - f Refrigeration systems with winter controls and stainless steel, exterior weather-proof housings.
- D Special Instructions:
- 01 Installation must be supervised by factory personnel or factory authorized personnel.
  - 02 Install walk-in walls into building floor recess per drawings.
  - 03 Level and square exterior wall and partition floor screeds. Anchor screeds to slab recess.
  - 04 Prior to assembly of insulated panels, apply 1/4" to 3/8" bead of Dow-Corning 795 silicone sealant (color gray or white to match panel finish), at exterior side of panel tongue and groove edge.
  - 05 Protect exposed surface of panels from installation of concrete floor and other work. Provide protective covering on walls during installation of concrete in or around walk-in. Door(s) must be left open to ventilate interior when concrete is installed in walk-in interior.
  - 06 Install condensing units on building roof per details, drawings and manufactures recommendations.
  - 07 Install evaporator coils as indicated on drawings per manufactures recommendations.

**ITEM NO. 02GG WALK-IN SHELVING**

- A One (1) lot - Eagle Group, "Quad-Adjust" with "EAGLEgard" epoxy finish. Each section free standing with five (5) shelves and four (4) 86" posts. Section below evaporator provide three (3) shelves and four (4) 63" posts.
- B Each section to include:
- 01 Two (2) QuadTruss shelves.
  - 02 Three (3) Quad-Adjust shelves.
  - 03 Four (4) posts.
- C Sections:
- 01 Two (2) 21" x 30"
  - 02 Nine (9) 21" x 36"
  - 03 Seven (7) 21" x 42"
  - 04 Ten (10) 21" x 48".
- D Special instructions:
- 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF. Set additional shelves 17" O.C.
  - 02 Set QuadTruss shelves top and bottom. Remaining shelves Quad-Adjust.
  - 03 Section below evaporator include two (2) Quad-Truss and one (1) Quad-Adjust shelves.

**ITEM NO. 03GG STORAGE SHELVING**

- A One (1) lot - Eagle Group, "Quad-Adjust" with "EAGLEgard" epoxy finish. Each section free standing with five (5) shelves and four (4) 86" posts.

- B Each section to include:
  - 01 Two (2) QuadTruss shelves.
  - 02 Three (3) Quad-Adjust shelves.
  - 03 Four (4) posts.
- C Sections:
  - 01 Four (4) 21" x 36"
  - 02 Three (3) 21" x 42"
  - 03 Eleven (11) 21" x 48".
- D Special instructions:
  - 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF. Set additional shelves 17" O.C.
  - 02 Set QuadTruss shelves top and bottom. Remaining shelves Quad-Adjust.

**ITEM NO. 04GG STORAGE SHELVING**

- A One (1) lot - Eagle Group, "Quad-Adjust" with "EAGLEgard" epoxy finish. Each section free standing with five (5) shelves and four (4) 86" posts.
- B Each section to include:
  - 01 Two (2) QuadTruss shelves.
  - 02 Three (3) Quad-Adjust shelves.
  - 03 Four (4) posts.
- C Sections:
  - 01 One (1) 21" x 42".
- D Special instructions:
  - 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF. Set additional shelves 17" O.C.
  - 02 Set QuadTruss shelves top and bottom. Remaining shelves Quad-Adjust.

**ITEM NO. 05GG MOBILE WORK TABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To include:
  - 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 Open structure base.
  - 04 Undershelf.
  - 05 5" dia. swivel casters with stainless steel yokes and polyurethane tires. Two (2) casters with brakes. Refer to "Casters" in this Section.

**ITEM NO. 06GG MOBILE SLICER STAND**

- A One (1) - Piper Products, model 331-3424.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Rotating bumper.
  - 02 5" dia. polyurethane tired casters.
  - 03 Two (2) locking brakes.

**ITEM NO. 07GG SLICER**

- A One (1) - Hobart, model HS8N-1.

- B To Include:
  - 01 Non-removable knife.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install on Item No. 06GG, Mobile Slicer Stand.

**ITEM NO. 08GG VEGETABLE PREPARATION TABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To include:
  - 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 Marine edge top.
  - 04 18" x 18" x 12" deep sink compartment.
  - 05 Two (2) 20" x 18" x 3/4" deep recessed top with 18" x 18" x 11-1/4" deep sink compartment per detail.
  - 06 Can opener in top of table, per detail.
  - 07 Open structure base.
  - 08 Undershelf where unobstructed.
  - 09 Parking space in base for trash can.
  - 10 Corner legs with flanged feet.
  - 11 Flanged foot where required by the contract documents.
  - 12 14 ga. stainless steel bracket below top with cutting board holder. Construct per detail.
  - 13 Two (2) 14 ga. stainless steel bracket below top for mounting knife rack. Construct per detail.
  - 14 Elevated shelf per details and drawings. Table mounted 21" above top.
  - 15 Full length utensil rack mounted above table, per details.
  - 16 Two (2) 16 ga. stainless steel printer stands mounted at each end of elevated shelf.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Two (2) Component Hardware, model KL51-9012-SE1, deck mount, faucet with 12" swing spout.
  - 02 Nemco, model 56050-1, can opener.
  - 03 Two (2) Richlite 3/4" thick, reversible, NSF approved, cutting board with finger hole.
  - 04 Two (2) Edlund, model KR-699, knife rack.
  - 05 Three (3) Component Hardware, model S90-0020-N, drawer.
  - 06 Three (3) Component Hardware, model DSS-8015, lever drain assembly.
- D Special instructions:
  - 01 Install faucet.
  - 02 Install can opener.
  - 03 Install knife rack on bracket.
  - 04 Cutting boards to fit into recessed top of sink compartment.
  - 05 Verify size of printer with Owner and coordinate with stands.
  - 06 Anchor table to floor.

**ITEM NO. 09GG MOBILE MIXER STAND**

- A One (1) - Piper Products, model 121-23-29TSS.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Model MX-52-R rack.
  - 02 Rotating bumper.
  - 03 5" dia. polyurethane tired casters.
  - 04 Two (2) locking brakes.

**ITEM NO. 10GG COOK OIL SYSTEM**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 11GG 20 QUART MIXER**

- A One (1) - Hobart, model HL200.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel 20 qt. bowl.
  - 02 "B" beater.
  - 03 "D" wire whip.
  - 04 "ED" dough hook.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Provide Hobart branded accessories.
  - 02 Anchor to Item No. 09GG, Mobile Mixer Stand.
  - 03 Seal to Item No. 09GG, Mobile Mixer Stand.

**ITEM NO. 12GG MOBILE COOLING RACK**

- A Three (3) - Cres-Cor, model 207-UA-13A.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Perimeter bumper.
  - 02 Polyurethane tired casters.

**ITEM NO. 13GG MOBILE HEATED CABINET**

- A One (1) - Cres-Cor, model H-137-SUA-12D.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Hinge door per drawing.
  - 02 Perimeter bumper.
  - 03 Polyurethane tired casters.

**ITEM NO. 14GG MOBILE COOK/HOLD CABINET**

- A One (1) - Alto-Shaam, model 1000-TH-II.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Hinge door per drawing.
  - 02 Door lock.
  - 03 Perimeter bumper.
  - 04 5" dia. swivel casters with polyurethane tires. Front casters with brakes.

**ITEM NO. 15GG VENTILATOR W/ FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEM**

- A One (1) - CaptiveAire Systems, model 6030ND-2-PSP-F, exhaust-only wall canopy with ceiling mounted perforated supply air plenum. Unit 5'-0" wide x length per drawings.
- B To include:
  - 01 18 ga., type 304, stainless steel construction.
  - 02 Constructed in accordance with NFPA 96.
  - 03 ETL listed and bear label.
  - 04 ETL Sanitation listed and bear label.
  - 05 Fully weld exhaust air plenum.
  - 06 Recessed, vapor-proof, LED, 30W, light fixtures with bulbs. Provide remote touch-screen control panel for lights and fans. Inter-connect lights between junction boxes on multi-section ventilators. Provide single point electrical connection for final hook-up. Conceal all conduit. Ventilator provided with three (3) lineal feet of light fixture per each 4'-0" of length.
  - 07 Captrate Solo stainless steel filters. ETL Listed.
  - 08 Insulate supply air plenum.
  - 09 Air dampers at interior of supply air plenum.

- 10 Supply air grilles sized to provide air velocity as recommended by manufacture.
- 11 CaptiveAire Smart Controls, Thermostatic Control, to automatically activate the ventilator fans when cooking occurs. Inter-wire system to sensor(s). System installed in stainless steel utility cabinet, mounted on end of ventilator. Pre-wired system to single point connection for final connection to power and connection to fan contact by Division 26. Contact by Division 26.
- 12 Pipe chase at ventilator ends for gas supply lines. Chase bottom closed with cut-out for gas pipe.
- 13 Stainless steel angle trim at ceiling as required. One piece corners.
- 14 Stainless steel closure panels to ceiling as required. One piece corners.
- 15 Fire suppression system Ansul , "PIRANHA", chemical, automatic system, in accordance with codes, ordinances, manufactures recommendations and per PART 2 -PRODUCTS, Exhaust Hood Fire Suppression Systems. Provide required surface protection, fuel shut-off devise(s) and micro switches.

**C Ancillary Equipment:**

- 01 Stainless steel wall panels at ventilator(s) where adjacent to walls:
  - a Construct panels of 18 ga. 304, stainless steel. Apply fire rated contact cement to wall and stainless steel panel. Install on walls as shown on drawings. Extend panels from top of base to 1" behind ventilator and 18" beyond each end of ventilator. Stainless steel panels extended to finished ceiling where not under ventilator.
  - b Construct panel section in equal widths. Minimum panel width 24", except at ends. End panels must be equal width but not less than 12". At corner turns form panel with 1/4" radius and return to adjacent wall. Corner returns shall be a minimum of 6" wide.
  - c Minimize vertical joints. No horizontal joints.
- 02 Component Hardware Group, Inc. model J60-2260, 1" wide, flat stainless steel snap-on molding over all vertical joints and at edges where panels terminate.

**D Special instructions:**

- 01 Installation must be supervised by factory personnel or factory authorized personnel.
- 02 Provide test of ventilator air system volumes (exhaust and supply air) to determine compliance with the design requirements. Contractor must comply with provisions of state and local codes and ordinances, during testing. Submit data to Architect.
- 03 Hang with 1/2" dia. steel hanger rods and turn buckles. Provide required structural members to suspend ventilator from overhead structure.
- 04 Set ventilator lower front edge 6'-8" AFF.

**ITEM NO. 16GG 10 QUART KETTLE W/ STAND & DRAINER CART**

A One (1) - Groen, model TDB/6-10.

**B To Include:**

- 01 Stainless steel construction.
- 02 Model 124883 stainless steel stand.
- 03 Model 124704 drain cart with model 124781 plumbing kit.
- 04 Flanged feet.

**C Ancillary Equipment:**

- 01 Component Hardware, model KL51H-9012-SE1, deck mount faucet with swing spout. Spout length to reach over kettle.

**D Special Instructions:**

- 01 Install faucet on stainless steel mounting bracket. Rear right side.
- 02 Anchor kettle to stand.
- 03 Anchor stand to floor.

**ITEM NO. 17GG 30 GALLON TILTING SKILLET**

A One (1) - Groen, model BPM-30G, 10" deep pan, natural gas.

**B To Include:**

- 01 Stainless steel construction.
- 02 Mechanical tilt.

- 03 Electric ignition.
- 04 Pan carrier.
- 05 Flanged foot kit.
- 06 Gas pressure regulator valve.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Component Hardware, model KL51H-9024-SE1, mixing faucet. Spout length to reach over skillet pan.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Install faucet on stainless steel mounting bracket. Rear right side.
- 02 Anchor skillet to floor.

**ITEM NO. 18GG MOBILE CONVECTION OVEN**

- A One (1) - Montague, model 2-115AG, natural gas.

B To Include:

- 01 Stainless steel front, sides and top.
- 02 Throttling-type thermostat.
- 03 Two speed fan.
- 04 Gas pressure regulator valve for each oven.
- 05 5" dia. swivel casters with stainless steel yokes and polyurethane tires. Refer to "Casters" in this Section.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Two (2) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model HG-4D-48SK, 3/4" I.D., plastic coated 48" long, flexible gas hoses and quick disconnect assembly.
- 02 Two (2) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model K kit, including restraining device.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Do not manifold gas line to oven decks.
- 02 Anchor restraining device to oven and wall.
- 03 Furnish hose and quick disconnect assembly to Division 22 for installation.

**ITEM NO. 19GG COMBI OVEN**

- A One (1) - Rational CombiMaster Plus, model 202 NG, natural gas.

B To Include:

- 01 Stainless steel front, sides and top.
- 02 Mode selector control.
- 03 100 cooking programs
- 04 Five speed programmable fan.
- 05 Core temperature probe.
- 06 Hand shower with automatic retracting system.
- 07 Fourteen (14) CombiGrill.
- 08 Ten (10) Grill & Pizza Tray.
- 09 Ten (10) CombiFry Basket.
- 10 Five (5) CombiRib-Grid.
- 11 Eleven (11) Multibaker.
- 12 Ten (10) Super Spike Chicken Grid.
- 13 Twelve (12) Grill Cleaner.
- 14 Two(2) Hand Spray Bottle.
- 15 Built-in gas pressure regulator.
- 16 Cord and plug.
- 17 Installation Kit.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Everpure "Kleensteam", model EV9797-22 Kleensteam II Twin System, water filter.



- 02 Water pressure reducing valve.
- 03 Water hammer arrestor.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Mount water filter on wall behind equipment.
- 02 Provide start-up inspection service by factory authorized service agent.
- 03 Provide factory authorized personnel for operation and maintenance training.
- 04 Provide one (1) day training session for Owner's personnel with factory Chef.

**ITEM NO. 20GG NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 21GG VENTILATOR W/ FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEM**

- A One (1) - CaptiveAire Systems, model 5430ND-2-PSP-F, exhaust-only wall canopy with ceiling mounted perforated supply air plenum. Unit 4'-6" wide x length per drawings.

B To include:

- 01 18 ga., type 304, stainless steel construction.
- 02 Constructed in accordance with NFPA 96.
- 03 ETL listed and bear label.
- 04 ETL Sanitation listed and bear label.
- 05 Fully weld exhaust air plenum.
- 06 Recessed, vapor-proof, LED, 30W, light fixtures with bulbs. Provide remote touch-screen control panel for lights and fans. Inter-connect lights between junction boxes on multi-section ventilators. Provide single point electrical connection for final hook-up. Conceal all conduit. Ventilator provided with three (3) lineal feet of light fixture per each 4'-0" of length.
- 07 Captrate Solo stainless steel filters. ETL Listed.
- 08 Insulate supply air plenum.
- 09 Air dampers at interior of supply air plenum.
- 10 Supply air grilles sized to provide air velocity as recommended by manufacture.
- 11 CaptiveAire Smart Controls, Thermostatic Control, to automatically activate the ventilator fans when cooking occurs. Inter-wire system to sensor(s). System installed in stainless steel utility cabinet, mounted on end of ventilator. Pre-wired system to single point connection for final connection to power and connection to fan contact by Division 26. Contact by Division 26.
- 12 Pipe chase at ventilator ends for gas supply lines. Chase bottom closed with cut-out for gas pipe.
- 13 Stainless steel angle trim at ceiling as required. One piece corners.
- 14 Stainless steel closure panels to ceiling as required. One piece corners.
- 15 Fire suppression system Ansul , "PIRANHA", chemical, automatic system, in accordance with codes, ordinances, manufactures recommendations and per PART 2 -PRODUCTS, Exhaust Hood Fire Suppression Systems. Provide required surface protection, fuel shut-off devise(s) and micro switches.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Stainless steel wall panels at ventilator(s) where adjacent to walls:
  - a Construct panels of 18 ga. 304, stainless steel. Apply fire rated contact cement to wall and stainless steel panel. Install on walls as shown on drawings. Extend panels from top of base to 1" behind ventilator and 18" beyond each end of ventilator. Stainless steel panels extended to finished ceiling where not under ventilator.
  - b Construct panel section in equal widths. Minimum panel width 24", except at ends. End panels must be equal width but not less than 12". At corner turns form panel with 1/4" radius and return to adjacent wall. Corner returns shall be a minimum of 6" wide.
  - c Minimize vertical joints. No horizontal joints.
- 02 Component Hardware Group, Inc. model J60-2260, 1" wide, flat stainless steel snap-on molding over all vertical joints and at edges where panels terminate.

D Special instructions:

- 01 Installation must be supervised by factory personnel or factory authorized personnel.
- 02 Provide test of ventilator air system volumes (exhaust and supply air) to determine compliance with the design requirements. Contractor must comply with provisions of state and local codes and ordinances, during testing. Submit data to Architect.

- 03 Hang with ½" dia. steel hanger rods and turn buckles. Provide required structural members to suspend ventilator from overhead structure.
- 04 Set ventilator lower front edge 6'-8" AFF.

**ITEM NO. 22GG SALAMANDER BROILER**

- A One (1) - Montague, model SB36-W, infrared salamander broiler, wall mounted, natural gas.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel front, sides, bottom and top.
  - 02 Rear gas connection.
  - 03 Gas pressure regulator valve.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Provide 14 ga., type 304 stainless steel, 2" x 2" square tubing, fully welded, wall mounted supports. Fully weld ends of supports closed. Cross brace supports with 2" x 2" square tubing. Set salamander broiler on extended horizontal supports 6" forward from wall. Secure broiler to supports. Reinforce wall to support salamander broiler.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install salamander broiler on wall behind equipment. Include all accessories required to make installation.
  - 02 Set bottom of salamander broiler 55" AFF.
  - 03 Submit shop drawing of supports.
  - 04 Install salamander broiler above Item No. 23GG, Mobile Range.

**ITEM NO. 23GG MOBILE RANGE**

- A One (1) - Montague, model M24-5, modular two burner range, natural gas.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel front, sides and top.
  - 02 Model HB24 stainless steel 15" high flue riser.
  - 03 Stainless steel tubular base with 16 ga. stainless steel undershelf fully welded to legs.
  - 04 Rear gas connection.
  - 05 Gas pressure regulator valve.
  - 06 5" dia. swivel casters with stainless steel yokes and polyurethane tires. Refer to "Casters" in this Section.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model HG-4D-48SK, 3/4" I.D., plastic coated 48" long, flexible gas hoses and quick disconnect assembly.
  - 02 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model K kit, including restraining device.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Submit shop drawing of range.
  - 02 Anchor restraining device to range and wall.
  - 03 Furnish hose and quick disconnect assembly to Division 22 for installation.

**ITEM NO. 24GG MOBILE REFRIGERATED EQUIPMENT STAND**

- A One (1) - Continental Refrigerator, model DL-60G. Modified.
- B To Include:
  - 01 16 GA., type 304 stainless steel top with drip guard marine edge.
  - 02 Modify top to 62" of overall length. Center top over base.
  - 03 Heat shield Insulated top.
  - 04 Cord and plug.
  - 05 3" dia. swivel casters with polyurethane tires. Front casters with brakes.

- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Six (6) Vollrath model 90062, 6" deep, full size stainless steel pans.
  - 02 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model K kit, including restraining device.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install Item No. 25GG, Mobile Griddle on equipment stand.
  - 02 Anchor restraining device to equipment stand and wall.
  - 03 Submit shop drawing of refrigerated equipment stand.

**ITEM NO. 25GG MOBILE GRIDDLE**

- A One (1) - MagiKitch'n, model MKG-60-E, natural gas.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Thermostat controls.
  - 02 Electric ignition.
  - 03 Cord and plug.
  - 04 Gas pressure regulator valve.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model HG-4E-48SK, 1" I.D., plastic coated 48" long, flexible gas hoses and quick disconnect assembly.
  - 02 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model K kit, including restraining device.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install griddle without legs.
  - 02 Anchor griddle to stand.
  - 03 Anchor restraining device to griddle and wall.
  - 04 Furnish hose and quick disconnect assembly to Division 22 for installation.

**ITEM NO. 26GG MOBILE REFRIGERATED EQUIPMENT STAND**

- A One (1) - Continental Refrigerator, model DL-48G. Modified.
- B To Include:
  - 01 16 GA., type 304 stainless steel top with drip guard marine edge.
  - 02 Modify top to 50" of overall length. Center top over base.
  - 03 Heat shield Insulated top.
  - 04 Cord and plug.
  - 05 3" dia. swivel casters with polyurethane tires. Front casters with brakes.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Four (4) Vollrath model 90062, 6" deep, full size stainless steel pans.
  - 02 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model K kit, including restraining device.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install Item No. 25GG, Mobile Griddle on equipment stand.
  - 02 Anchor restraining device to equipment stand and wall.
  - 03 Submit shop drawing of refrigerated equipment stand.

**ITEM NO. 27GG MOBILE CHAR-BROILER**

- A One (1) - MagiKitch'n, model CM-RMB-648, natural gas.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel front, sides and back.
  - 02 Side and back extensions.
  - 03 Scround rod top grate with standard spacing.
  - 04 Water Tubs
  - 05 Safety pilot.
  - 06 Rear gas connection.

07 Gas pressure regulator valve.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model HG-4D-48SK, 3/4" I.D., plastic coated 48" long, flexible gas hoses and quick disconnect assembly.
- 02 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model K kit, including restraining device.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Anchor restraining device to char-broiler and wall.
- 02 Furnish hose and quick disconnect assembly to Division 22 for installation.

**ITEM NO. 28GG MOBILE FRYER BANK**

A One (1) battery - Pitco, model SG14RS-FD, natural gas, per drawings.

B To Include:

- 01 Stainless steel fat container.
- 02 Stainless steel front, door and sides.
- 03 Electronic ignition with drain valve interlock.
- 04 Digital controls with melt cycle.
- 05 Multi-cabinet unit.
- 06 Model BNB dump station with stainless steel pan and screen.
- 07 Stainless steel lift-off covers for fryers and dump station.
- 08 Solstice Filter Drawer System installed in BNB cabinet.
- 09 Heated filtration system.
- 10 Oil reclamation system for liquid shorting.
- 11 Single point rear gas connection.
- 12 "T" gas manifold.
- 13 Gas pressure regulator valve.
- 14 9" adjustable casters with front locking brakes.
- 15 One (1) case filter paper part # A7025301.
- 16 One (1) case filter powder part # PP10733.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model HG-4F-48SK, 1 1/4" I.D., plastic coated 48" long, flexible gas hoses and quick disconnect assembly.
- 02 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model K kit, including restraining device.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Locate BNB cabinet per drawings.
- 02 Anchor restraining device to fryer and wall.
- 03 Furnish hose and quick disconnect assembly to Division 22 for installation.

**ITEM NO. 29GG FREEZER**

A One (1) - Continental Refrigerator, model DL1F-SS-HD.

B To Include:

- 01 Half height doors.
- 02 Hinge doors per drawings.
- 03 One (1) extra shelf per section.
- 04 Cord and plug.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 14 ga. stainless steel, channel shaped, toe base per details. Set base in continuous bead of clear silicone sealant at floor.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Anchor toe base to freezer.

**ITEM NO. 30GG NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 31GG MOBILE REFRIGERATED MAKE TABLE**

- A Two (2) - Continental Refrigerator, model DL48-12M-FB-D.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel top, sides and doors.
  - 02 Stainless steel interior.
  - 03 Front breathing refrigeration.
  - 04 Stainless steel insulated cover.
  - 05 Full length 12" wide cutting board.
  - 06 Stainless steel divider bars for 1/6th size pans.
  - 07 Drawers in base.
  - 08 Cord and plug.
  - 09 5" dia. swivel casters with polyurethane tires.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Twelve (12) Vollrath, model 90642, 4" deep, 1/6th size stainless steel pans.

**ITEM NO. 32GG MICROWAVE OVEN**

- A One (1) - Panasonic, model NE-1064F.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Cord and plug.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Wall shelf per details.
- D Special instructions:
  - 01 Install wall shelf per details and drawings.
  - 02 Set shelf bottom edge 54" AFF.
  - 03 Install microwave oven on wall shelf.
  - 04 Restrain excess cord length.

**ITEM NO. 33GG CONVEYOR TOASTER**

- A One (1) - APW-Wyott, model M-83.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel finish.
  - 02 Butter roller with pan.
  - 03 Teflon sheet kit.
  - 04 Cord and plug.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install on Item No. 37GG, Work Table.

**ITEM NO. 34GG CHEF'S COUNTER**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To include:
  - 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel top.
  - 03 4" high splash at rear.
  - 04 Opening for hot food wells.
  - 05 10" wide x 4'-0" long x 3/4" thick, Richlite, removable, sectional cutting board, per details.
  - 06 Punch hole(s) in top for extending liquid lines to vacuum breaker from services below. Coordinate size/location with vacuum breaker.

- 07 Vacuum breaker housing per details.
- 08 Plate shelf below top at hot wells.
- 09 Closed body stainless steel base.
- 10 Cut-out in base for drawer warmers.
- 11 Load center compartment located per drawings.
- 12 Utility compartment located per drawings.
- 13 Removable access panel, per detail.
- 14 Removable 18 ga. stainless steel louvered bottom at hot wells.
- 15 Manifold hot food well drain lines to common connection.
- 16 Extend drain lines to utility compartment and terminate at openings above floor drain.
- 17 Pre-wire hot food wells to controls mounted in apron panel of base apron.
- 18 14 ga. stainless steel, channel shaped, toe base per details. Set base in continuous bead of clear silicone sealant at floor. Notch base at floor drain and seal base to floor. Floor drain must be accessible.
- 19 Pre-wire and pre-pipe counter with U.L. components per Article 2.5 Fabricated Equipment and Fixtures this Section.
- 20 Pre-wire and pre-pipe counter and components to circuit breaker load centers in utility compartments per Article 2.5 Fabricated Equipment and Fixtures this Section.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Component Hardware, model KL50-X137, vacuum breaker. Install at hot food wells as shown on details and drawings. Pre-pipe from "AutoFill" hot food well connection through vacuum breaker to utility compartment.
- 02 Wells, model BMW-206RTD/AFU / 208V-1ph, AutoFill hot food well. Install per Article 2.7 Hot Food Wells this Section. Inter-connect drain line of model BMW-206ULRTD/AF with model BMW-206ULRTD hot food well to share "AutoFill" option.
- 03 Two (2) Wells, model BMW-206RTDU / 208V-1ph, hot food wells. Install per Article 2.7 Hot Food Wells this Section.
- 04 Wells, model 20385, drain valve extension kit with 1" brass gate valve. Install remote handle in recessed stainless steel pan at apron panel of counter, per details. Manifold hot food well drain lines to a single valve assembly. Extend drain line to floor drain per details and drawings.

D Special instructions:

- 01 Install Item No. 35GG, Drawer Warmer into base.

**ITEM NO. 35GG DRAWER WARMER**

A Two (2) - Hatco, model HDW-1.

B To Include:

- 01 Stainless steel finish.
- 02 Cord and plug.

C Special Instructions:

- 01 Install into base of Item No. 34GG, Chef's Counter.
- 02 Install so removable for service.

**ITEM NO. 36GG TOASTER**

A One (1) - Hatco, model TPT-208.

B To Include:

- 01 Stainless steel finish.
- 02 Selector switch for single sided toasting.
- 03 Cord and plug.

C Special Instructions:

- 01 Install on Item No. 31GG, Mobile Refrigerated Make Table.
- 02 Restrain excess cord length.

**ITEM NO. 37GG WORK TABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, size and shape per details and drawings.
- B To include:
  - 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 Splash where adjacent to walls.
  - 04 Open structure base.
  - 05 Undershelf where unobstructed.
- C Special instructions:
  - 01 Install Item No. 36GG, Toaster on top.
  - 02 Install Item No. 38GG, Waffle Maker on top.

**ITEM NO. 38GG NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 39GG PASS-SHELF**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To include:
  - 01 Stainless steel pass-thru shelf with "V" edge on pick-up side, per detail. Turn all edges straight down and fully weld corners.
  - 02 Provide stainless steel formed pan underbracing at shelf. Provide stainless steel shelf supports under bottom of shelf to stabilize shelf at wall per detail.
  - 03 Frame window opening with stainless steel, fully welded, trim on both sides per detail.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install Item No. 41GG, Heat Lamp into window per details.

**ITEM NO. 40GG NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 41GG HEATED LAMP**

- A Two (2) - Hatco, model GRH-36.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Toggle switch.
  - 02 Adjustable angle brackets.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install heat lamps in window opening above Item No. 39GG, Pick-Up Shelf per details.

**ITEM NO. 42GG BACK-UP COUNTER**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration drawings and details.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel construction.
  - 02 Splash where adjacent to walls.
  - 03 12" x 15" x 10" deep sink welded into top.
  - 04 Punch top with hole(s) for soup wells.
  - 05 Closed body base with stainless steel finish.
  - 06 Cutout for Item No. 45GG, Undercounter Refrigerator. Provide 18 ga. stainless steel lining at rear and sides of cutout.
  - 07 Stainless steel hinged doors per details. Each door with door locks, keyed alike.
  - 08 Enclose sink with hinged door.
  - 09 Bottom shelf below sink per detail.

- 10 Intermediate and bottom shelves enclosed with hinged doors.
- 11 Utility compartment located per drawings.
- 12 Load center compartment located per drawings.
- 13 Removable access panel, per details.
- 14 Manifold soup well drain lines to a common connection point.
- 15 Extend drains to utility compartment and terminate at opening above floor drain.
- 16 Pre-wire soup well to controls mounted in apron panel of base.
- 17 14 ga. stainless steel, channel shaped, toe base per details. Set base in continuous bead of clear silicone sealant at floor. Notch base at floor drain and seal base to floor. Floor drain must be accessible when panel is removed.
- 18 Pre-wire and pre-pipe counter with U.L. components per Article 2.6 Fabricated Equipment and Fixtures this Section.
- 19 Pre-wire and pre-pipe counter and components to circuit breaker load centers in utility compartments per Article 2.6 Fabricated Equipment and Fixtures this Section.

C Ancillary Equipment

- 01 Two (2) Wells model SS8TDUCI, 208V-1ph soup well . Drop-in well mounted into top opening. Apply high temperature Silicone sealant around soup well flange and top forming complete seal and thermal break. Install well per manufactures recommendation. Enclose well at bottom with removable louvered panel.
- 04 Wells, model 20385, drain valve extension kit with 1" brass gate valve. Install remote handle in recessed stainless steel pan, per details. Manifold soup well drain lines to a single valve assembly. Extend drain line to floor drain per details and drawings.
- 02 Component Hardware model KL51-9001 -SE1, deck mount, swivel gooseneck faucet.
- 03 Component Hardware, model DSS-8015 lever drain assembly.
- 04 Two (2) Vollrath, model 78184, 7 1/4 quart size stainless steel pans.
- 05 Two (2) Vollrath, model 78180, stainless steel slotted cover.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Park Item No. 45GG Undercounter Refrigerator into base.

**ITEM NO. 43GG NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 44GG NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 45GG UNDERCOUNTER REFRIGERATOR**

- A One (1) - Continental Refrigerator, model DL60-SS-U-D.

B To Include:

- 01 Stainless steel top, sides and doors.
- 02 Stainless steel interior.
- 03 Front breathing refrigeration.
- 04 Drawers in base.
- 05 Cord and plug.
- 06 1 3/8" dia. swivel casters. Front casters with brakes.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Four (4) Vollrath model 90262, 6" deep, half size stainless steel pans.
- 02 Four (4) Vollrath model 90362, 6" deep, 1/3rd size stainless steel pans.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Install into base of Item No. 48, Back-Up Counter.

**ITEM NO. 46GG SERVING COUNTER**

- A One (1) - By Division 06.



**ITEM NO. 47GG REFRIGERATED DISPLAY CASE**

- A One (1) - Federal Industries, model RSSM-560SC, self-contained.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Horizontal top light.
  - 02 Two (2) stainless steel shelves with lights below.
  - 03 Stainless steel deck.
  - 04 Reflective end glass.
  - 05 Black interior back panel.
  - 06 Black exterior rear finish.
  - 07 Rollco security roll-up cover.
  - 08 Condensate evaporator assembly.
  - 09 Cord and plug.
  - 10 Plastic laminate exterior finish. Color selected, by Architect, from manufacture's standard colors.
  - 11 Filler panels size and shape per detail. Construct of ½" MDFX board with black plastic laminate finish on all exposed surfaces. Mount on 14 ga. stainless steel, channel toe base per details.
- C Special instructions:
  - 01 Restrain excess cord length.
  - 02 Extend electrical cord and plug to receptacle.

**ITEM NO. 48GG CASH REGISTER**

- A Two (2) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 49GG ICE CREAM CASE**

- A One (1) - LaRosa, model L-40146-28 Modified.
- B To include:
  - 01 Stainless steel finish top, front and side panels.
  - 02 Factory to remove splash and provide turned down edge at rear.
  - 03 20 ga. steel white interior.
  - 04 9" x 14" x 10" deep sink welded into top with faucet and drain.
  - 05 Dipperwell with faucet and drain.
  - 06 Compressor location per drawing.
  - 07 Cord and plug.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 14 ga. stainless steel, channel shaped, toe base per details. Set base in continuous bead of clear silicone sealant at floor.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Anchor toe base to ice cream case.
  - 02 Restrain excess cord length.
  - 03 Install into Item No. 46GG, Serving Counter.
  - 04 Coordinate installation with Millwork Contractor.

**ITEM NO. 50GG TOPPING STATION**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 51GG TOPPING STATION**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 52GG FOOD SHIELD**

- A One (1) - Versa-Gard, model VP24, fixed glass, full-service, vertical protector.

- B To Include:
- 01 Mounting option C1 with flange at counter top.
  - 02 1" dia. solid 6061-T6 aluminum supports and mounting hardware.
  - 03 Brushed aluminum with satin clear anodized finish.
  - 04 1/4" thick tempered glass vertical panels. Radius all corners.

- C Special Instructions:
- 01 Submit shop drawing of food shield.
  - 02 Coordinate installation with Millwork Contractor.

**ITEM NO. 53GG BEVERAGE COUNTER**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per drawings and details.

- B To Include:
- 01 Work surface 34" AFF.
  - 02 Engineered stone top and splash constructed per details. Stone selected, by Architect, from manufacture's standard colors.
  - 03 Splash where adjacent to walls.
  - 04 Cut and polish hole(s) in top for carbonated beverage lines. Coordinate size/location with Ice & Carbonated Beverage Dispenser. Polish hole(s) in top for extending beverage lines, cord and plug to services below top. Coordinate size/location with Ice & Carbonated Beverage Dispenser.
  - 05 Cut and polish hole(s) in top for trash chute to receptacle below. Coordinate hole location with trash chute and trash receptacle.
  - 06 Cut and polish hole(s) in top for Base Outlet.
  - 07 Closed body base with plastic laminate covered front, per details. Plastic laminate selected, by Architect, from manufacture's standard colors. Stainless steel ends.
  - 08 Trash receptacle space. Receptacle shelf enclosed with hinged door.
  - 09 Carbonator storage compartment. 14 ga. stainless steel pan per details. Removable pan recessed into toe base, per details and drawings. Storage compartment enclosed with hinged door.
  - 10 Bottom shelf enclosed with hinged doors.
  - 11 Plastic laminate doors per details. Each door with lock, keyed alike.
  - 12 Utility compartment located per drawings.
  - 13 Pre-pipe brass gate valve, below top, to each base outlet.
  - 14 Pre-pipe Base Outlets to a common connection point in utility compartment.
  - 15 Extend drain lines to utility compartment and terminate at opening above floor drain.
  - 16 120V-1ph, 20A receptacle in base with stainless steel cover for connecting Carbonator.
  - 17 120V-1ph, 20A receptacle in base with stainless steel cover for connecting Ice & Carbonated Beverage Dispenser.
  - 18 14 ga. stainless steel, channel shaped, toe base per details. Set base in continuous bead of clear silicone sealant at floor. Notch base at floor drain and seal base to floor. Floor drain must be accessible when panel is removed.
  - 19 Pre-wire and pre-pipe counter with U.L. components per Article 2.6 Fabricated Equipment and Fixtures this Section.

- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Tomlinson Industries model 1920107, 9" diameter stainless steel chute. Modify length of chute to be 3 1/4" O.A.
  - 02 Two (2) Component Hardware, model K50-X125 base with KL50-X122 adapter, deck mount, base outlet.
  - 03 Rubbermaid, model FG294700, gray, trash receptacle.

- D Special instructions:
- 01 Install base outlet behind coffee maker and iced tea brewer.
  - 02 Brace top to support counter mounted equipment.
  - 03 Coordinate toe base with location of beverage lines.

**ITEM NO. 54GG CUP DISPENSER**

- A Three (3) - Dispense-Rite, model CTC-R-4SS.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel finish.
  - 02 Counter mount.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Verify Owner's cup size(s).
  - 02 Adjust cup dispensers to accommodate Owner's cups.
  - 03 Install on Item No. 53GG, Beverage Counter.

**ITEM NO. 55GG COFFEE MAKER**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 56GG LID & STRAW TRAY**

- A One (1) - Dispense-Rite, model WLO-1B.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Counter mount.
  - 02 Removable dividers.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install on Item No. 53GG, Beverage Counter.

**ITEM NO. 57GG CONDIMENT DISPENSER**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 58GG ICED TEA BREWER**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 59GG CARBONATOR**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 60GG NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 61GG ICE & CARBONATED BEVERAGE DISPENSER**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 62GG MOBILE ICE CART**

- A One (1) - Cambro, model ICS125LB.
- B Special Instructions:
  - 01 Color selected, by Architect, from manufactures standard colors.

**ITEM NO. 63GG BEVERAGE TABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per drawings and details.
- B To include:
  - 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.

- 03 Marine edge top.
- 04 Splash where adjacent to walls.
- 05 21" x 21" x 2" deep recessed top with 16" x 21" x 8" deep sink compartment per detail.
- 06 Open structure base.
- 07 Intermediate and bottom shelves where unobstructed.
- 08 Corner legs with flanged feet.
- 09 Flanged foot where required by the contract documents.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Component Hardware, model KL53-1000-BR, splash mount, spray assembly with wall bracket.
- 02 Component Hardware, model KL50-Y002-GF, spray valve with water nozzle.
- 03 Component Hardware, model KL55-7012, add-on-faucet with 12" swing spout.
- 04 Component Hardware, model KL40-1000, mounting kit.
- 05 Component Hardware, model DSS-8015 lever drain with overflow assembly.

D Special instructions:

- 01 Coordinate clearance between faucet body and sink recess. Glass rack must be removable unobstructed.
- 02 Install spray assembly and mounting kit.
- 03 Brace top to support counter mounted equipment.
- 04 Mount wall bracket per detail.
- 05 Anchor table to floor.

**ITEM NO. 64GG SOILED DISHTABLE**

A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.

B To include:

- 01 Work surface 34" AFF.
- 02 Stainless steel construction.
- 03 1" high inverted "V" edge at soiled dish drop-off.
- 04 Splash where adjacent to walls.
- 05 Splash guard rim per details.
- 06 Scupper drain per details.
- 07 Pre-rinse sink per details.
- 08 Die stamped scrap chute per details.
- 09 Open structure base.
- 10 9" wide x 4'-6" long, glass dump sink. Furnish with removable stainless steel scrap baskets. Construct dump sink and scrap baskets per details.
- 11 Parking space in base for trash can.
- 12 14 ga. stainless steel hat channel support bracket, below top, for mounting hose reel, per details.
- 13 14 ga. stainless steel bracket, below top, for mounting hose reel mixing valve, per details.
- 14 14 ga. stainless steel bracket, below top, for mounting water valve for dump sink, per details.
- 15 Flanged foot where required by the contract documents.
- 16 Double sided rack shelf, configuration per details and drawings. Table mounted per details.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Component Hardware, model KHR-1050-OSS, open body, hose reel assembly.
- 02 Component Hardware, model KL43-4050-1, mixing valve.
- 03 Component Hardware, model KVB-1045-198-CP, polished chrome, vacuum breaker assembly.
- 04 Component Hardware, model KL53-1000-BR, splash mount, pre-rinse assembly with wall bracket.
- 05 Component Hardware, model KL40-3400, mounting kit.
- 06 Component Hardware, model J92-5000, scrap block.
- 07 Component Hardware, model KL79-Y300-2C, water valve assembly.

D Special instructions:

- 01 Install pre-rinse assembly with mounting kit.
- 02 Install scrap block into top, per details.
- 03 Mount hose reel assembly per details.
- 04 Install mixing valve into bracket below table top.
- 05 Install water valve into bracket below table top per details.

06 Anchor dishtable to floor.

**ITEM NO. 65GG DISHWASHER W/ BOOSTER HEATER**

- A One (1) - Champion, model 66 DRPW, high temperature machine.
- B To Include:
- 01 Direction of operation per drawing.
  - 02 Dual rinse system.
  - 03 24" vertical clearance through machine.
  - 04 Stainless steel construction including frame, legs and feet.
  - 05 Stainless steel front and side panels.
  - 06 Stainless steel insulated hinged doors on wash tank.
  - 07 22" prewash section with external scrap basket.
  - 08 Single point electrical connection for dishwasher and booster heater.
  - 09 Regulated electric heat (15.0 KW).
  - 10 DualRinse tank heat (3.0 KW).
  - 11 Built-in booster heater (22.0 KW) for 70°F. water temperature rise.
  - 12 Automatic tank fill.
  - 13 Common drain connection.
  - 14 Water pressure reducing valve.
  - 15 Water hammer arrestor.
  - 16 Factory installed drain water tempering kit.
  - 17 4" x 16" vent hood and locking damper at each end of dishwasher.
  - 18 Vent fan control for interlocking operation of exhaust fan.
  - 19 Table limit switch.
  - 20 Two (2) year parts and labor warranty from date of start-up. Warranty to include round trip drive time to jobsite.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Stainless steel ducts, per details.
  - 02 Vollrath dish racks as follows;
    - a Four (4) model 52672 dish racks
    - b Two (2) model 52671 flatware racks
    - c Two (2) model 52669 pan racks
- D Special Instructions:
- 01 Install table limit switch into Item No. 66GG, Clean Dishtable.
  - 02 Provide start-up inspection service by factory authorized service agent.
  - 03 Provide factory authorized personnel for operation and maintenance training.

**ITEM NO. 66GG CLEAN DISHTABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To include:
- 01 Work surface 34" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 Splash where adjacent to walls.
  - 04 Splash guard rim per details.
  - 05 Open structure base.
  - 06 Undershelf where unobstructed.
- C Special Instructions:
- 01 Table limit switch installed at end of dishtable.
  - 02 Pre-wire switch to dishwasher.

**ITEM NO. 67GG POT SINK**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.

- B To Include:
- 01 37" high to rolled rim top.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 Splash at rear.
  - 04 Two (2) 24" x 26 1/2" x 14" deep sink compartments. Depth from rolled rim.
  - 05 30" x 26 1/2" x 14" deep sink compartment. Depth from rolled rim.
  - 06 Drainboards.
  - 07 Die stamped scrap chute per detail.
  - 08 Open structure base.
  - 09 Parking space in base for trash can.
  - 10 Undershelf where unobstructed.
  - 11 Corner legs with flanged feet.
  - 12 Flanged foot where required by contract documents.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Component Hardware, rail shelf, configuration per details and drawings.  
Construct with the following parts:
    - a Model J19-4962, wall brackets.
    - b 1" O.D., 16 ga., stainless steel tubular rails with welded capped ends.
    - c 16 ga., type 304, stainless steel panel on wall behind shelf, per detail.
  - 02 Two (2) Component Hardware, model KL34-8014, splash mount, faucet with 14" swing spout.
  - 03 Two (2) Component Hardware, model KL40-3400, mounting kit.
  - 04 Component Hardware, model J92-5000, scrap block.
  - 05 Three (3) Component Hardware, model DSS-8015, lever drain assembly.
- D Special Instructions:
- 01 Install faucet with mounting kit.
  - 02 Install scrap block into drainboard per details.
  - 03 Mount rail shelf 21" above rolled rim of sink.
  - 04 Anchor sink to floor.

**ITEM NO. 68GG PAN RACK**

- A Six (6) - Eagle Group, Quik-Set solid embossed shelving units.
- B To Include:
- 01 Five (5) model HDS 24" x 42" 16 ga. stainless steel embossed shelves.
  - 02 Four (4) model HDSCP74-S 74" stainless steel posts. Modify post height to 72".
  - 03 Four (4) model CAHW4-SB 5" dia. polymer tired casters, two (2) with brakes.
- C Special Instructions:
- 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF and all others 17" O.C.

**ITEM NO. 69GG JANITOR'S SHELVING**

- A One (1) lot - Eagle Group, "QuadTruss" with "EAGLEgard" epoxy finish. Each section free standing with five (5) shelves and four (4) 86" posts.
- B Each section to include:
- 01 Two (2) QuadTruss shelves.
  - 02 Three (3) Quad-Adjust shelves.
  - 03 Four (4) posts.
- C Sections:
- 01 Three (3) 21" x 42".
- D Special Instructions:
- 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF and all others 17" O.C.
  - 02 Set Quad-Truss shelves top and bottom all others shelves Quad-Adjust.

**ITEM NO. 70GG NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 71GG WALL SHELF W/ MOP HANGERS**

- A One (1) - Eagle Group, model USO830-16/3 MOD.
- B To Include:
  - 01 16 ga. type 304 stainless steel construction.
  - 02 Wall brackets welded to shelf.
  - 03 Three (3) mop hangers.
  - 04 Two (2) hooks.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Set shelf bottom edge 72" AFF.

**ITEM NO. 72GG MOBILE POWER WASHER**

- A One (1) - Spray Master Technologies, model SMT- 600PEWHD, portable system.
- B To Include:
  - 01 1100 psi/ 2.2 gpm.
  - 02 High Temp system.
  - 03 30'-0" steel braided high pressure hose.
  - 04 Manual rewind hose reel.
  - 05 36" stainless steel spray gun and wand assembly.
  - 06 Wall & Tile Brush attachment.
  - 07 Trap Shooter attachment.
  - 08 Hummer Jet JR floor cleaning attachment.

**BANQUET KITCHEN**

**ITEM NO. 01BQ WALK-IN COOLER & FREEZER**

- A One (1) - Mid-South Industries, Thermo-Kool, 24'- 6" long x 7'- 9" wide x 9'- 4" high. Provide per details, drawings and PART 2-PRODUCTS Articles 2.09 and 2.11.
- B To include:
  - 01 Without floor.
  - 02 13-1/2" high foam screed.
  - 03 Finished floor by General Contractor.
  - 04 N.S.F. construction.
  - 05 U.L. classified.
  - 06 Class I foam.
  - 07 36" x 78" door.
  - 08 Hinge doors per drawings.
  - 09 Chrome plated hardware.
  - 10 Door with automatic closer, self-closing hinges, foot treadle, magnetic latch, magnetic gasket, cylinder lock and kickplates each side. Provide each door with three spring loaded hinges.
  - 11 Component Hardware model VXS-LEDPK10N-PC series, LED, vapor-proof, 10W, light fixture with lamp and protective globe. Ceiling mounted in each compartment per drawings. Pre-wire to common connecting point, on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling.
  - 12 Heated threshold.
  - 13 Apply 1/8" thick x 36" high, No. 6061-T6 hard-alloy aluminum diamond tread plate to all exposed exterior walls and walk-thru door (interior and exterior). Seal all joints with gray colored Dow-Corning 795 silicone sealant.
  - 14 Closure panels at exposed sides per detail.
  - 15 Angled wall trim at walls per detail.

- 16 Provide each compartment with Modularm, Corporation model 75LC , flush mount temperature alarm and walk-in light manager with dry contacts for connection to remote alarm (connection to remote alarm by Division 26) and probe-cord length required to extend from exterior front of assembly to a mounting position of the sensor within evaporator return air-stream. Pre-wire to common connecting point, (light connection), on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling. Set light timer to leave lights on for 30 minutes.
- 17 Heated pressure relief port in cooler. Pre-wire to common connecting point, (light connection), on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling.
- 18 Heated pressure relief port in freezer. Pre-wire to common connecting point, (light connection), on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling.
- 19 Provide Kingman Industries, "Thermo-Curtain", model 6-2-04 curtain at each door opening. Vulene vinyl, breakaway loop, strips with rounded edges and 50% overlap. Include all mounting hardware.
- 20 Provide New Age Industrial Corp., Inc., 5" high aluminum baseboard, at interior of each compartment. Miter inside and outside corners. Smooth edges of outside corners. Install baseboard after interior finish floor is installed. Set base bottom and top edges in bead of silicone sealant.
- 21 Construct all special size panels using same methods, materials and locking system as used to construct standard panels. Special size panels must connect to and be locked with other panels, using joint design and locks identical to standard panels. Connecting of panels by any other method is not acceptable.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Refrigeration Design Technologies Inc., refrigeration systems as follows:
  - a MOZ-series , 208V-3ph, pre-assembled remote, with fused disconnect and using R407A refrigerant in refrigeration system. Provide Eco-Smart demand defrost controllers with expansion valve, solenoid valve pre-wired and mounted on evaporators. Job site installation to consist of piping condensing unit to evaporator, evacuating and charging units with refrigerant.
  - b Cooler, +35°F.: Model MOZ010M63C, (1.0 HP), medium temp, air-cooled compressor. model ADT-090, 120V-1ph, evaporator. Cooler defrost to be "Ecosmart" type with positive refrigeration cycle shutdown.
  - c Freezer, -10°F: Model MOZ035L63C, (3.5 HP), low temp, air-cooled compressor. Model LET-120, 208V-1ph, evaporator with electric defrost initiated by "Ecosmart" demand defrost controller.
  - f Refrigeration systems with winter controls and stainless steel, exterior weather-proof housings.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Installation must be supervised by factory personnel or factory authorized personnel.
- 02 Install walk-in walls into building floor recess per drawings.
- 03 Level and square exterior wall and partition floor screeds. Anchor screeds to slab recess.
- 04 Prior to assembly of insulated panels, apply 1/4" to 3/8" bead of Dow-Corning 795 silicone sealant (color gray or white to match panel finish), at exterior side of panel tongue and groove edge.
- 05 Protect exposed surface of panels from installation of concrete floor and other work. Provide protective covering on walls during installation of concrete in or around walk-in. Door(s) must be left open to ventilate interior when concrete is installed in walk-in interior.
- 06 Install condensing units on building roof per details, drawings and manufactures recommendations.
- 07 Install evaporator coils as indicated on drawings per manufactures recommendations.

**ITEM NO. 02BQ WALK-IN COOLER**

- A One (1) - Mid-South Industries, Thermo-Kool, 14'- 4" long x 8'- 5" wide x 9'- 2" high. Provide per details, drawings and PART 2-PRODUCTS Articles 2.09 and 2.11.
- B To include:
  - 01 Without floor.
  - 02 11-1/2" high foam screed.
  - 03 Finished floor by General Contractor.
  - 04 N.S.F. construction.



- 05 U.L. classified.
- 06 Class I foam.
- 07 42" x 78" door.
- 08 Hinge doors per drawings.
- 09 Chrome plated hardware.
- 10 Door with automatic closer, self-closing hinges, foot treadle, magnetic latch, magnetic gasket, cylinder lock and kickplates each side. Provide each door with three spring loaded hinges.
- 11 Component Hardware model VXS-LEDPK10N-PC series, LED, vapor-proof, 10W, light fixture with lamp and protective globe. Ceiling mounted in each compartment per drawings. Pre-wire to common connecting point, on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling.
- 12 Heated threshold.
- 13 Apply 1/8" thick x 36" high, No. 6061-T6 hard-alloy aluminum diamond tread plate to all exposed exterior walls and walk-thru door (interior and exterior). Seal all joints with gray colored Dow-Corning 795 silicone sealant.
- 14 Closure panels at exposed sides per detail.
- 15 Angled wall trim at walls per detail.
- 16 Provide each compartment with Modularm, Corporation model 75LC , flush mount temperature alarm and walk-in light manager with dry contacts for connection to remote alarm (connection to remote alarm by Division 26) and probe-cord length required to extend from exterior front of assembly to a mounting position of the sensor within evaporator return air-stream. Pre-wire to common connecting point, (light connection), on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling. Set light timer to leave lights on for 30 minutes.
- 17 Provide Kingman Industries, "Thermo-Curtain", model 6-2-04 curtain at each door opening. Vulene vinyl, breakaway loop, strips with rounded edges and 50% overlap. Include all mounting hardware.
- 18 Provide New Age Industrial Corp., Inc., 5" high aluminum baseboard, at interior of each compartment. Miter inside and outside corners. Smooth edges of outside corners. Install baseboard after interior finish floor is installed. Set base bottom and top edges in bead of silicone sealant.
- 19 Construct all special size panels using same methods, materials and locking system as used to construct standard panels. Special size panels must connect to and be locked with other panels, using joint design and locks identical to standard panels. Connecting of panels by any other method is not acceptable.

**C Ancillary Equipment:**

- 01 Refrigeration Design Technologies Inc., refrigeration systems as follows:
  - a MOZ-series , 208V-3ph, pre-assembled remote, with fused disconnect and using R407A refrigerant in refrigeration system. Provide Eco-Smart demand defrost controllers with expansion valve, solenoid valve pre-wired and mounted on evaporators. Job site installation to consist of piping condensing unit to evaporator, evacuating and charging units with refrigerant.
  - b Cooler, +35°F.: Model MOZ010M63C, (1.0 HP), medium temp, air-cooled compressor. model ADT-104, 120V-1ph, evaporator. Cooler defrost to be "Ecosmart" type with positive refrigeration cycle shutdown.
  - c Refrigeration systems with winter controls and stainless steel, exterior weather-proof housings.

**D Special Instructions:**

- 01 Installation must be supervised by factory personnel or factory authorized personnel.
- 02 Install walk-in walls into building floor recess per drawings.
- 03 Level and square exterior wall and partition floor screeds. Anchor screeds to slab recess.
- 04 Prior to assembly of insulated panels, apply 1/4" to 3/8" bead of Dow-Corning 795 silicone sealant (color gray or white to match panel finish), at exterior side of panel tongue and groove edge.
- 05 Protect exposed surface of panels from installation of concrete floor and other work. Provide protective covering on walls during installation of concrete in or around walk-in. Door(s) must be left open to ventilate interior when concrete is installed in walk-in interior.
- 06 Install condensing units on building roof per details, drawings and manufactures recommendations.
- 07 Install evaporator coil as indicated on drawings per manufactures recommendations.

**ITEM NO. 03BQ POT SINK**

- A One (1) - Champion, model PP-3, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To Include:
- 01 Direction of operation per drawings.
  - 02 Voltage and phase per drawings.
  - 03 Type 304 stainless steel construction.
  - 04 14 ga. stainless steel tanks and drainboards.
  - 05 37" high to rolled rim top.
  - 06 10" high backsplash at wall. Height above rolled rim.
  - 07 44" long clean drainboard.
  - 08 88" long soiled drainboard.
  - 09 Punch hole for collector.
  - 10 Two (2) 24" x 28" x 18 deep sink compartments.
  - 11 One (1) 36" x 28" x 18" deep sink compartment.
  - 12 Sink front trim panel.
  - 13 Stainless steel drain handle support brackets.
  - 14 Stainless steel legs and adjustable feet.
  - 15 Fully welded stainless steel crossrails.
  - 16 Corner legs with flanged feet.
  - 17 Flanged foot where required by the contract documents.
  - 18 3 H.P. wash pump motor.
  - 19 3 kw electric tank heat.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Component Hardware, rail shelf, configuration per details and drawings.  
Construct with the following parts:
    - a Model J19-4962, wall brackets.
    - b 1" O.D., 16 ga., stainless steel tubular rails with welded capped ends.
    - c 16 ga., type 304, stainless steel panel on wall behind shelf, per detail.
  - 02 Two (2) Component Hardware, model KL34-8014, splash mount, faucet with 14" swing spout.
  - 03 Two (2) Component Hardware, model KL40-3400, mounting kit.
  - 04 Component Hardware, model KL53-1000-BR, splash mount, pre-rinse assembly with wall bracket.
  - 05 Component Hardware, model KL40-2020, mounting kit.
  - 06 Three (3) Component Hardware, model DSS-8015, lever drain assemblies.
- D Special Instructions:
- 01 Install faucets and mounting kits.
  - 02 Fully weld Item No. 04BQ, Collector, into drainboard per drawings.
  - 03 Mount rail overshef 21" above rolled rim of sink.
  - 04 Anchor sink to floor.

**ITEM NO. 04BQ COLLECTOR**

- A One (1) - Salvajor Co., model P914, food waste collector.
- B To Include:
- 01 Direction of operation per drawings.
  - 02 One (1) extra scrap basket.
  - 03 Built-in control panel with line disconnect.
  - 04 Water diffuser.
  - 05 Flanged feet.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Water pressure reducing valve.
  - 02 Water hammer arrestor.
- D Special Instructions:
- 01 Install into drainboard of Item No. 03BQ, Pot Sink.
  - 02 Installation per contract documents and manufactures recommendations.

03 Anchor collector to floor.

**ITEM NO. 05BQ VENTILATOR W/ FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEM**

- A One (1) - CaptiveAire Systems, model 6030ND-2-PSP-F, exhaust-only wall canopy with ceiling mounted perforated supply air plenum. Unit 5'0" wide x length per drawings.
- B To include:
- 01 18 ga., type 304, stainless steel construction.
  - 02 Constructed in accordance with NFPA 96.
  - 03 ETL listed and bear label.
  - 04 ETL Sanitation listed and bear label.
  - 05 Fully weld exhaust air plenum.
  - 06 Recessed, vapor-proof, LED, 30W, light fixtures with bulbs. Provide remote touch-screen control panel for lights and fans. Inter-connect lights between junction boxes on multi-section ventilators. Provide single point electrical connection for final hook-up. Conceal all conduit. Ventilator provided with three (3) lineal feet of light fixture per each 4'-0" of length.
  - 07 Captrate Solo stainless steel filters. ETL Listed.
  - 08 Insulate supply air plenum.
  - 09 Air dampers at interior of supply air plenum.
  - 10 Supply air grilles sized to provide air velocity as recommended by manufacture.
  - 11 CaptiveAire Smart Controls, Thermostatic Control, to automatically activate the ventilator fans when cooking occurs. Inter-wire system to sensor(s). System installed in stainless steel utility cabinet, mounted on end of ventilator. Pre-wired system to single point connection for final connection to power and connection to fan contact by Division 26. Contact by Division 26.
  - 12 Pipe chase at ventilator ends for gas supply lines. Chase bottom closed with cut-out for gas pipe.
  - 13 Stainless steel angle trim at ceiling as required. One piece corners.
  - 14 Stainless steel closure panels to ceiling as required. One piece corners.
  - 15 Fire suppression system Ansul , "PIRANHA", chemical, automatic system, in accordance with codes, ordinances, manufactures recommendations and per PART 2 -PRODUCTS, Exhaust Hood Fire Suppression Systems. Provide required surface protection, fuel shut-off devise(s) and micro switches.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Stainless steel wall panels at ventilator(s) where adjacent to walls:
    - a Construct panels of 18 ga. 304, stainless steel. Apply fire rated contact cement to wall and stainless steel panel. Install on walls as shown on drawings. Extend panels from top of base to 1" behind ventilator and 18" beyond each end of ventilator. Stainless steel panels extended to finished ceiling where not under ventilator.
    - b Construct panel section in equal widths. Minimum panel width 24", except at ends. End panels must be equal width but not less than 12". At corner turns form panel with 1/4" radius and return to adjacent wall. Corner returns shall be a minimum of 6" wide.
    - c Minimize vertical joints. No horizontal joints.
  - 02 Component Hardware Group, Inc. model J60-2260, 1" wide, flat stainless steel snap-on molding over all vertical joints and at edges where panels terminate.
- D Special instructions:
- 01 Installation must be supervised by factory personnel or factory authorized personnel.
  - 02 Provide test of ventilator air system volumes (exhaust and supply air) to determine compliance with the design requirements. Contractor must comply with provisions of state and local codes and ordinances, during testing. Submit data to Architect.
  - 03 Hang with 1/2" dia. steel hanger rods and turn buckles. Provide required structural members to suspend ventilator from overhead structure.
  - 04 Set ventilator lower front edge 6'-8" AFF.

**ITEM NO. 06BQ WALK-IN SHELVING**

- A One (1) lot - Eagle Group, "Quad-Adjust" with "EAGLEgard" epoxy finish. Each section free standing with five (5) shelves and four (4) 86" posts. Section below evaporator provide three (3) shelves and four (4) 63" posts.

- B Each section to include:
  - 01 Two (2) QuadTruss shelves.
  - 02 Three (3) Quad-Adjust shelves.
  - 03 Four (4) posts.
- C Sections:
  - 01 Five (5) 21" x 36"
  - 02 One (1) 21" x 42"
  - 03 Four (4) 21" x 48"
  - 04 Three (3) 21" x 60".
- D Special instructions:
  - 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF. Set additional shelves 17" O.C.
  - 02 Set QuadTruss shelves top and bottom. Remaining shelves Quad-Adjust.
  - 03 Section below evaporator include two (2) Quad-Truss and one (1) Quad-Adjust shelves.

**ITEM NO. 07BQ SHELVING**

- A One (1) lot - Eagle Group, "Quad-Adjust" with "EAGLEgard" epoxy finish. Each section free standing with five (5) shelves and four (4) 86" posts.
- B Each section to include:
  - 01 Two (2) QuadTruss shelves.
  - 02 Three (3) Quad-Adjust shelves.
  - 03 Four (4) posts.
- C Sections:
  - 01 Three (3) 21" x 36"
  - 02 Four (4) 21" x 42"
  - 03 Eight (8) 21" x 48"
  - 04 One (1) 21" x 60".
- D Special instructions:
  - 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF. Set additional shelves 17" O.C.
  - 02 Set QuadTruss shelves top and bottom. Remaining shelves Quad-Adjust.

**ITEM NO. 08BQ NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 09BQ PAN RACK**

- A Two (2) - Eagle Group, Quik-Set solid embossed shelving units.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Five (5) model HDS 24" x 42" 16 ga. stainless steel embossed shelves.
  - 02 Four (4) model HDSCP74-S 74" stainless steel posts. Modify post height to 72".
  - 03 Four (4) model CAHW4-SB 5" dia. polymer tired casters, two (2) with brakes.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF and all others 17" O.C.

**ITEM NO. 10BQ HOSE REEL**

- A One (1) - Component Hardware, model KHR-1035-OSS, open body, hose reel.
- B To include:
  - 01 35'-0" hose.

- 02 Stainless steel hose reel assembly.
- 03 Model KL50-X197 vacuum breaker.

C Special Instructions:

- 01 Install per drawings and details.
- 02 Anchor to wall.
- 03 Set bottom of hose reel body 78" AFF and bottom of spray valve 55" AFF.

**ITEM NO. 11BQ FRYER BANK**

- A One (1) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 12BQ MOBILE RANGE**

- A One (1) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 13BQ MOBILE CHAR-BROILER**

- A One (1) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 14BQ 40 GALLON TILT SKILLET**

- A Two (2) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 15BQ 60 GALLON TILTING KETTLE**

- A One (1) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 16BQ MOBILE CONVECTION OVEN**

- A Two (2) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 17BQ COMBI OVEN**

- A Two (2) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 18BQ VEGETABLE PREPARATION TABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.

B To include:

- 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
- 02 Stainless steel construction.
- 03 Four (4) 18" x 18" x 12" deep sink compartment.
- 04 Can opener in top of table, per detail.
- 05 Open structure base.
- 06 Undershelf where unobstructed.
- 07 Parking space in base for trash can.
- 08 Corner legs with flanged feet.
- 09 Flanged foot where required by the contract documents.
- 10 Elevated shelf per details and drawings. Table mounted 21" above top.
- 11 Full length utensil rack mounted above table per details.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Nemco, model 56050-1, can opener.
- 02 Three (3) Component Hardware, model KL51-9012-SE1, deck mount, faucet with 12" swing spout.
- 03 Three (3) Component Hardware, model DSS-8015, lever drain assembly.

- D Special instructions:
- 01 Install faucet.
  - 02 Install can opener.
  - 03 Anchor table to floor.

**ITEM NO. 19BQ UTILITY CART**

- A Two (2) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 20BQ NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 21BQ MOBILE HEATED CABINET**

- A Three (3) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 22BQ MOBILE COOLING RACK**

- A Nineteen (19) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 23BQ WORK TABLE W/ BAIN MARIE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To include:
- 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 Top with marine edges.
  - 04 Bain Marie 20" X 60" x 14" i.d. (unless otherwise noted). 14 ga. stainless steel, fully welded, tank with radius coved corners. Die stamp top edge at perimeter of opening. Insulate sides and bottom with 1" thick rigid fiberglass, set in mastic. Enclose tank with 20 ga. stainless steel, fully welded, jacket and bottom cover. Slope and score tank bottom to die stamped opening for lever drain with overflow assembly. Set overflow outlet at 3" below top. Provide drain handle bracket at tank bottom, per detail. Provide sectional false bottom. 14 ga stainless steel, pan-formed, 1" high, perforated (3/4" holes @ 6" o.c.) with welded corners and finger rings. Sections not to exceed 18" in length.
  - 05 Two (2) 20" x 18" x 3/4" deep recessed top with 18" x 18" x 11-1/4" deep sink compartment per detail.
  - 06 Can opener in top of table, per detail.
  - 07 Open structure base.
  - 08 Undershelf where unobstructed.
  - 09 Parking space in base for trash can.
  - 10 Corner legs with flanged feet.
  - 11 Flanged foot where required by the contract documents.
  - 12 Elevated shelf per details and drawings. Table mounted 21" above top.
  - 13 Full length utensil rack mounted above table per details.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Component Hardware, model KL51-9012-SE1, deck mount, faucet with 12" swing spout .
  - 02 Component Hardware, model KL64-9106-SE1, deck mount, faucet with 6" swing spout .
  - 03 Three (3) Component Hardware, model DSS-8015, lever drain assembly.
  - 04 Two (2) Hatco model FR2-9B (balanced load) Bain Marie heater with stainless steel body.
- D Special instructions:
- 01 Install faucets.
  - 02 Install Bain Marie Heater per manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 03 Anchor table to floor.

**ITEM NO. 24BQ MOBILE SLICER STAND**

- A One (1) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 25BQ SLICER**

A One (1) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 26BQ WORK TABLE**

A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.

B To include:

- 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
- 02 Stainless steel construction.
- 03 Open structure base.
- 04 Undershef.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Component Hardware, model S90-0020, drawer.

**ITEM NO. 27BQ BLAST CHILLER**

A One (1) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 28BQ MOBILE MIXER STAND**

A One (1) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 29BQ 20 QUART MIXER**

A One (1) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 30BQ NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 31BQ WORK TABLE**

A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.

B To include:

- 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
- 02 Stainless steel construction.
- 03 18" x 18" x 12" deep sink compartment.
- 04 Open structure base.
- 05 Undershef where unobstructed.
- 06 Corner legs with flanged feet.
- 07 Flanged foot where required by the contract documents.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Component Hardware, model KL51-9012-SE1, deck mount, faucet with 12" swing spout .
- 02 Component Hardware, model S90-0020, drawer.
- 03 Component Hardware, model DSS-8015, lever drain assembly.

D Special instructions:

- 01 Install faucet.
- 02 Anchor table to floor.

**ITEM NO. 32BQ 60 QUART MIXER**

A One (1) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 33BQ ACCESSORY STAND**

A One (1) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 34BQ MOBILE HEATED PLATE STORAGE**

A Ten (10) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 35BQ HEATED BANQUET CART**

A Nine (9) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 36BQ QUEEN MARY**

A Three (3) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 37BQ NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 38BQ SOILED DISHTABLE**

A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.

B To include:

- 01 Work surface 34" AFF.
- 02 Stainless steel construction.
- 03 Rolled rim per details and drawings.
- 04 Flat rim at vacuum breaker per detail and drawings.
- 05 Vacuum breaker housing per detail.
- 06 Scrapping trough per details and drawings. Pre-pipe trough and furnish with accessories per details. Two (2) intermediate nozzles. Terminate trough into collector.
- 07 Cut-out for collector.
- 08 Open structure base.
- 09 Tubular rack storage undershelf where unobstructed.
- 10 14 ga. stainless steel hat channel support bracket, below top, for mounting hose reel per detail.
- 11 14 ga. stainless steel bracket, below top, for mounting hose reel mixing valve per detail.
- 12 Corner legs with flanged feet.
- 13 Flanged foot where required by the contract documents.
- 14 Double sided rack shelf, table mounted, per details and drawings.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Three (3) Component Hardware, model KHR-1035-OSS, open body, hose reel assembly.
- 02 Four (4) Component Hardware, model KL43-4050-1, mixing valve.
- 03 Three (3) Component Hardware, model KL50-X197, vacuum breaker assembly.

D Special instructions:

- 01 Mounted hose reel assembly per details and drawings.
- 02 Install mixing valve into bracket below table top per details.
- 03 Install vacuum breaker per details and drawings.
- 04 Fully weld Item No. 39BQ, Collector, into table top per drawings.
- 05 Pre-pipe water lines from vacuum breaker to hose reels. Run lines tight to underside of table top.
- 06 Anchor dishtable to floor.

**ITEM NO. 39BQ COLLECTOR**

A One (1) - Salvajor Co., model S419, food waste collector.

B To Include:

- 01 Direction of operation per drawings.
- 02 One (1) extra scrap basket.
- 03 Stainless steel cover.



- 04 Built-in control panel with line disconnect.
- 05 Water diffuser.
- 06 Two (2) gusher head assemblies.
- 07 Flanged feet.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Water pressure reducing valve.
- 02 Water hammer arrestor.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Install into top of Item No. 38BQ, Soiled Dishtable.
- 02 Provide brass globe valve at each gusher head and water diffuser. Furnish all pipe and fittings to completely inter-connect gusher heads, diffuser and collector. Plumb trough in accordance with manufactures recommendations.
- 03 Installation per contract documents and manufactures recommendations.
- 04 Anchor collector to floor.

**ITEM NO. 40BQ NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 41BQ DISHWASHER W/ BOOSTER HEAT**

- A One (1) - Champion, model EUCCW6. 23'-0" long consisting of the following sections:  
2'-6" load, 2'-6" pre-wash, 6'-0" wash/rinse, 12'-0" dual rinse/final rinse/unload.

B To Include:

- 01 Direction of operation per drawings.
- 02 Voltage and phase per drawings.
- 03 Stainless steel construction.
- 04 Extended wash tank chamber.
- 05 External scrap tank.
- 06 Stainless steel frame, legs and feet.
- 07 Stainless steel enclosure panels front, rear and ends.
- 08 Insulated hinged access doors.
- 09 Piping to be stainless steel or copper.
- 10 29" wide peg style conveyor belt.
- 11 Belt to accommodate oval tray.
- 12 One piece, removable, stainless steel wash/rinse manifold.
- 13 4" x 24" exhaust duct collars and locking dampers at each end of dishwasher.
- 14 Automatic tank fill.
- 15 Re-circulating flushing nozzles at load end and pre-wash.
- 16 Dual rinse arm.
- 17 Common drain connection.
- 18 Factory installed drain water tempering kit.
- 19 Water pressure reducing valve.
- 20 Water hammer arrestor.
- 21 Single point electrical connection for dishwasher and booster heater.
- 22 Regulated electric tank heat.
- 23 Built-in booster heater for 70°F. water temperature rise.
- 24 Automatic energy shut-off and rinse saver system.
- 25 Start-stop station at load end.
- 26 Automatic shut-off shelf at unload end.
- 27 Vent fan control for interlocking operation of exhaust fan.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Stainless steel ducts per details.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Provide installation and assembly by factory authorized service agent.
- 02 Provide start-up inspection service by factory authorized service agent.
- 03 Provide factory authorized personnel for operation and maintenance training.

**ITEM NO. 42BQ SOILED DISHTABLE**

- A One (1) - Champion, model RCT roller conveyor table.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel construction.
  - 02 14 ga. stainless steel drip pan. Slope pan to drain.
  - 03 1.9" stainless steel rollers with stainless steel ball bearings, stainless steel hex shafts and plastic seals. Mount rollers in 12 ga. stainless steel sectional frame. Space rollers 4" o.c.. Frame sections fit into drip pan and are removable without tools.
  - 04 Open structure base.
  - 05 Stainless steel legs and adjustable feet.
  - 06 Fully welded stainless steel crossrails.
  - 07 Flanged feet on legs at load end of table.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Extend drain line and terminate above floor drain.

**ITEM NO. 43BQ DISHWASHER W/ BOOSTER HEATER**

- A One (1) - Champion, model 66 DRPW, high temperature machine.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Direction of operation per drawing.
  - 02 Dual rinse system.
  - 03 24" vertical clearance through machine.
  - 04 Stainless steel construction including frame, legs and feet.
  - 05 Stainless steel front and side panels.
  - 06 Stainless steel insulated hinged doors on wash tank.
  - 07 22" prewash section with external scrap basket.
  - 08 Single point electrical connection for dishwasher and booster heater.
  - 09 Regulated electric heat (15.0 KW).
  - 10 DualRinse tank heat (3.0 KW).
  - 11 Built-in booster heater (22.0 KW) for 70°F. water temperature rise.
  - 12 Automatic tank fill.
  - 13 Common drain connection.
  - 14 Water pressure reducing valve.
  - 15 Water hammer arrestor.
  - 16 Factory installed drain water tempering kit.
  - 17 4" x 16" vent hood and locking damper at each end of dishwasher.
  - 18 Vent fan control for interlocking operation of exhaust fan.
  - 19 Table limit switch.
  - 20 Two (2) year parts and labor warranty from date of start-up. Warranty to include round trip drive time to jobsite.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Stainless steel ducts, per details.
  - 02 Vollrath dish racks as follows;
    - a Four (4) model 52672 dish racks
    - b Two (2) model 52671 flatware racks
    - c Two (2) model 52669 pan racks
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install table limit switch into Item No. 44BQ, Clean Dishtable.
  - 02 Provide start-up inspection service by factory authorized service agent.
  - 03 Provide factory authorized personnel for operation and maintenance training.

**ITEM NO. 44BQ CLEAN DISHTABLE**

- A One (1) - Champion, model RCT roller conveyor table.

- B To Include:
- 01 Stainless steel construction.
  - 02 14 ga. stainless steel drip pan. Slope pan to drain.
  - 03 1.9" stainless steel rollers with stainless steel ball bearings, stainless steel hex shafts and plastic seals. Mount rollers in 12 ga. stainless steel sectional frame. Space rollers 4" o.c.. Frame sections fit into drip pan and are removable without tools.
  - 04 Open structure base.
  - 05 Stainless steel legs and adjustable feet.
  - 06 Fully welded stainless steel crossrails.
  - 07 Stainless steel tubular rack storage shelf fully welded to legs.
  - 08 Flanged feet on legs at load end of table.
- C Special Instructions:
- 01 Extend drain line and terminate above floor drain.
  - 02 Table limit switch installed at end of conveyor table.
  - 03 Pre-wire switch to dishwasher.

**ITEM NO. 45BQ UTILITY CART**

- A One (1) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 46BQ MOBILE RACK DOLLY**

- A Six (6) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 47BQ PAN RACK**

- A Seven (7) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 48BQ MOBILE POWER WASHER**

- A One (1) - Future.

**ITEM NO. 49BQ NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 50BQ NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 51BQ NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 52BQ NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 53BQ JANITOR'S SHELVING**

- A One (1) lot - Eagle Group, "QuadTruss" with "EAGLEgard" epoxy finish. Each section free standing with five (5) shelves and four (4) 86" posts.
- B Each section to include:
- 01 Two (2) QuadTruss shelves.
  - 02 Three (3) Quad-Adjust shelves.
  - 03 Four (4) posts.
- C Sections:
- 01 One (1) 14" x 42".
- D Special Instructions:
- 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF and all others 17" O.C.
  - 02 Set Quad-Truss shelves top and bottom all others shelves Quad-Adjust.

**ITEM NO. 54BQ WALL SHELF W/ MOP HANGERS**

- A One (1) - Eagle Group, model USO830-16/3 MOD.
- B To Include:
  - 01 16 ga. type 304 stainless steel construction.
  - 02 Wall brackets welded to shelf.
  - 03 Three (3) mop hangers.
  - 04 Two (2) hooks.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Set shelf bottom edge 72" AFF.

**ITEM NO. 55BQ ICE MAKER W/ TRANSPORT CART**

- A Two (2) - Hoshizaki, model KM-1601SAJ, air cooled .
- B To Include:
  - 01 Crescent Cube ice.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Water hammer arrestor.
  - 02 Water pressure reducing valve.
  - 03 Everpure model EV9325-04 "Insurice" QUAD-I4000 water filter system.
  - 04 San Jamar, model SI9000, Saf-T-Scoop Guardian System.
  - 05 Follett Corp. model DEV1650SG-60-75, bin with stainless steel exterior and base. Provide SmartCART 75 with three (3) totes, ice paddle, ice rake and hanging bracket.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install ice maker on bin. Include all accessories required for complete installation.
  - 02 Locate front of ice maker flush with front of ice bin.
  - 03 Mount water filter on side of bin with 16 ga. stainless steel mounting plate. Size and shape to accommodate filter bracket. Weld threaded stainless steel studs to ice bin and attach mounting plate with chrome plated, locking, cap nuts. Weld stainless steel keyhole studs to mounting plate and attach filter bracket.
  - 04 Mount scoop hanging bracket on side of bin with 16 ga. stainless steel mounting plate. Size and shape to accommodate hanging bracket. Weld threaded stainless steel studs to ice bin and attach mounting plate with chrome plated, locking, cap nuts. Weld stainless steel keyhole studs to mounting plate and attach hanging bracket.

**ITEM NO. 56BQ BEVERAGE TABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To include:
  - 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 Top with marine edges.
  - 04 Splash where adjacent to walls.
  - 05 Drain trough per details and drawings.
  - 06 21" x 21" x 2" deep recessed top with 16" x 21" x 8" deep sink compartment per detail.
  - 07 Punch top with hole(s) for Base Outlet.
  - 08 Open structure base.
  - 09 Parking space in base for Item No. 60BQ, Glass Rack.
  - 10 Corner legs with flanged feet.
  - 11 Flanged foot where required by the contract documents.
  - 12 Extend drain line and terminate above floor drain.
  - 13 Elevated shelf per details and drawings. Table mounted 21" above top.

- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Component Hardware, model KL53-1000-BR, splash mount, spray assembly with wall bracket.
  - 02 Component Hardware, model KL50-Y002-GF, spray valve with water nozzle.
  - 03 Component Hardware, model KL55-7012, add-on-faucet with 12" swing spout.
  - 04 Component Hardware, model KL40-1000, mounting kit.
  - 05 Two (2) Component Hardware, model K50-X125 base with KL50-X122 adapter, deck mount, base outlet.
  - 06 Component Hardware, model DSS-8015 lever drain with overflow assembly.
- D Special instructions:
- 01 Coordinate clearance between faucet body and sink recess. Glass rack must be removable unobstructed.
  - 02 Install spray assembly and mounting kit.
  - 03 Mount spray assembly wall bracket per detail.
  - 04 Install Base Outlet behind coffee urn and iced tea brewer.
  - 05 Brace top to support counter mounted equipment.
  - 06 Park Item No. 60BQ, Glass Rack in base.
  - 07 Anchor table to floor.

**ITEM NO. 57BQ COFFEE URN**

- A Two (2) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 58BQ ICED TEA BREWER**

- A Two (2) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 59BQ BEVERAGE TABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To include:
- 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 Top with marine edges.
  - 04 Splash where adjacent to walls.
  - 05 Drain trough per details and drawings.
  - 06 21" x 21" x 2" deep recessed top with 16" x 21" x 8" deep sink compartment per detail.
  - 07 Punch top with hole(s) for Base Outlet.
  - 08 Open structure base.
  - 09 Parking space in base for Item No. 60BQ, Glass Rack.
  - 10 Corner legs with flanged feet.
  - 11 Flanged foot where required by the contract documents.
  - 12 Extend drain line and terminate above floor drain.
  - 13 Elevated shelf per details and drawings. Table mounted 21" above top.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Component Hardware, model KL53-1000-BR, splash mount, spray assembly with wall bracket.
  - 02 Component Hardware, model KL50-Y002-GF, spray valve with water nozzle.
  - 03 Component Hardware, model KL55-7012, add-on-faucet with 12" swing spout.
  - 04 Component Hardware, model KL40-1000, mounting kit.
  - 05 Two (2) Component Hardware, model K50-X125 base with KL50-X122 adapter, deck mount, base outlet.
  - 06 Component Hardware, model DSS-8015 lever drain with overflow assembly.
- D Special instructions:
- 01 Coordinate clearance between faucet body and sink recess. Glass rack must be removable unobstructed.
  - 02 Install spray assembly and mounting kit.
  - 03 Mount spray assembly wall bracket per detail.
  - 04 Install Base Outlet behind coffee urn and iced tea brewer.

- 05 Brace top to support counter mounted equipment.
- 06 Park Item No. 60BQ, Glass Rack in base.
- 07 Anchor table to floor.

**ITEM NO. 60BQ GLASS RACK**

A Six (6) - Future.

**WAREHOUSE**

**ITEM NO. 01WH NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 02WH NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 03WH WALK-IN COOLER**

- A One (1) - Mid-South Industries, Thermo-Kool, 17'- 4" long x 18'- 1" wide x 9'- 2" high. Provide per details, drawings and PART 2-PRODUCTS Articles 2.09 and 2.11.
- B To include:
  - 01 Without floor.
  - 02 18" high foam screed.
  - 03 Finished floor by General Contractor.
  - 04 N.S.F. construction.
  - 05 U.L. classified.
  - 06 Class I foam.
  - 07 36" x 78" door.
  - 08 Hinge doors per drawings.
  - 09 Frank 60" x 78" manual horizontal sliding cooler doors. Provide door with stainless steel chain lock, inside release, 14" x 24" view port and pull handles.
  - 10 Chrome plated hardware.
  - 11 Door with automatic closer, self-closing hinges, foot treadle, magnetic latch, magnetic gasket, cylinder lock and kickplates each side. Provide each door with three spring loaded hinges.
  - 12 Component Hardware model VXS-LEDPK10N-PC series, LED, vapor-proof, 10W, light fixture with lamp and protective globe. Ceiling mounted in each compartment per drawings. Pre-wire to common connecting point, on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling.
  - 13 Heated threshold.
  - 14 Apply 1/8" thick x 36" high, No. 6061-T6 hard-alloy aluminum diamond tread plate to all exposed exterior walls, interior walls, walk-thru door (interior and exterior) and sliding door (interior and exterior). Seal all joints with gray colored Dow-Corning 795 silicone sealant.
  - 15 Closure panels at exposed sides per detail.
  - 16 Angled wall trim at walls per detail.
  - 17 Provide each compartment with Modularm, Corporation model 75LC , flush mount temperature alarm and walk-in light manager with dry contacts for connection to remote alarm (connection to remote alarm by Division 26) and probe-cord length required to extend from exterior front of assembly to a mounting position of the sensor within evaporator return air-stream. Pre-wire to common connecting point, (light connection), on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling. Set light timer to leave lights on for 30 minutes.
  - 18 Provide Kingman Industries, "Thermo-Curtain", model 6-2-04 curtain at each door opening. Vulene vinyl, breakaway loop, strips with rounded edges and 50% overlap. Include all mounting hardware.
  - 19 Splice walk-in roof panels to accommodate ceiling suspension system.
  - 20 Exterior ceiling suspension system with angle supports and mounting hardware.

21 Construct all special size panels using same methods, materials and locking system as used to construct standard panels. Special size panels must connect to and be locked with other panels, using joint design and locks identical to standard panels. Connecting of panels by any other method is not acceptable.

C Ancillary Equipment:

01 Refrigeration Design Technologies Inc., refrigeration systems as follows:

- a MOZ-series , 208V-3ph, pre-assembled remote, with fused disconnect and using R407A refrigerant in refrigeration system. Provide Eco-Smart demand defrost controllers with expansion valve, solenoid valve pre-wired and mounted on evaporators. Job site installation to consist of piping condensing unit to evaporator, evacuating and charging units with refrigerant.
- b Cooler, +35°F.: Model MOZ025M63C, (2.5 HP), medium temp, air-cooled compressor. model ADT-180, 120V-1ph, evaporator. Cooler defrost to be "Ecosmart" type with positive refrigeration cycle shutdown.
- c Refrigeration systems with winter controls and stainless steel, exterior weather-proof housings.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Installation must be supervised by factory personnel or factory authorized personnel.
- 02 Install walk-in walls into building floor recess per drawings.
- 03 Level and square exterior wall and partition floor screeds. Anchor screeds to slab recess.
- 04 Prior to assembly of insulated panels, apply 1/4" to 3/8" bead of Dow-Corning 795 silicone sealant (color gray or white to match panel finish), at exterior side of panel tongue and groove edge.
- 05 Protect exposed surface of panels from installation of concrete floor and other work. Provide protective covering on walls during installation of concrete in or around walk-in. Door(s) must be left open to ventilate interior when concrete is installed in walk-in interior.
- 06 Install ceiling suspension system as indicated on drawings per manufactures recommendations.
- 07 Install condensing units on building roof per details, drawings and manufactures recommendations.
- 08 Install evaporator coil as indicated on drawings per manufactures recommendations.

**ITEM NO. 04WH WALK-IN SHELVING**

A One (1) lot - Eagle Group, "Quad-Adjust" with "EAGLEgard" epoxy finish. Each section free standing with five (5) shelves and four (4) 86" posts. Section below evaporator provide three (3) shelves and four (4) 63" posts.

B Each section to include:

- 01 Two (2) QuadTruss shelves.
- 02 Three (3) Quad-Adjust shelves.
- 03 Four (4) posts.

C Sections:

- 01 Six (6) 21" x 48".

D Special instructions:

- 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF. Set additional shelves 17" O.C.
- 02 Set QuadTruss shelves top and bottom. Remaining shelves Quad-Adjust.
- 03 Omit lower two (2) shelves on six (6) 48" sections and set bottom shelf 3"-0" AFF .
- 04 Install Item No. 05WH, Dunnage Rack, under shelving per drawings.
- 05 Section below evaporator include two (2) Quad-Truss shelves.

**ITEM NO. 05WH DUNNAGE RACK**

A Six (6) - New Age Industrial Corp., model 2064

B Sections:  
01 24" width x 42" length x 12" height

C To include:  
01 1 1/2" x 1 3/4" x .070" aluminum tubing.  
02 Fully welded.  
03 Load capacity 2,500 lbs.

**ITEM NO. 06WH WALK-IN SHELVING**

A One (1) lot - Eagle Group, "Quad-Adjust" with "EAGLEgard" epoxy finish. Each section free standing with five (5) shelves and four (4) 86" posts.

B Each section to include:  
01 Two (2) QuadTruss shelves.  
02 Three (3) Quad-Adjust shelves.  
03 Four (4) posts.

C Sections:  
01 Two (2) 21" x 42".

D Special instructions:  
01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF. Set additional shelves 17" O.C.  
02 Set QuadTruss shelves top and bottom. Remaining shelves Quad-Adjust.

**ITEM NO. 07WH KEG RACK**

A One (1) lot - New Age Industrial Corp., "Adjust-A-Shelf" T-Bar Series aluminum shelving. Each section free standing with three (3) shelves and 76" posts. Section below evaporator provide with two (2) shelves and 54" posts.

B To include:  
01 1 1/2" x 1 3/4" x .070" aluminum tubing frame.  
02 1 1/4" x 2 1/4" x .100" aluminum T-Bar laterals.  
03 Fully welded.  
04 Load capacity 1,500 lbs per shelf.

C Sections:  
01 Two (2) 18" x 36"  
02 Four (4) 18" x 60".

D Special instructions:  
01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF.  
02 Mount intermediate and top shelves as instructed by Owner.

**FINE DINING**

**ITEM NO. 01FD WALK-IN COOLER & FREEZER**

A One (1) - Mid-South Industries, Thermo-Kool, 15'- 2" long x 14'- 5 1/2" wide x 9'- 4" high. Provide per details, drawings and PART 2-PRODUCTS Articles 2.09 and 2.11.

B To include:  
01 Without floor.  
02 13-1/2" high foam screed.  
03 Finished floor by General Contractor.



- 04 N.S.F. construction.
- 05 U.L. classified.
- 06 Class I foam.
- 07 36" x 78" door.
- 08 Hinge doors per drawings.
- 09 Chrome plated hardware.
- 10 Door with automatic closer, self-closing hinges, foot treadle, magnetic latch, magnetic gasket, cylinder lock and kickplates each side. Provide each door with three spring loaded hinges.
- 11 Component Hardware model VXS-LEDPK10N-PC series, LED, vapor-proof, 10W, light fixture with lamp and protective globe. Ceiling mounted in each compartment per drawings. Pre-wire to common connecting point, on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling.
- 12 Heated threshold.
- 13 Apply 1/8" thick x 36" high, No. 6061-T6 hard-alloy aluminum diamond tread plate to all exposed exterior walls and walk-thru door (interior and exterior). Seal all joints with gray colored Dow-Corning 795 silicone sealant.
- 14 Closure panels at exposed sides per detail.
- 15 Angled wall trim at walls per detail.
- 16 Provide each compartment with Modularm, Corporation model 75LC , flush mount temperature alarm and walk-in light manager with dry contacts for connection to remote alarm (connection to remote alarm by Division 26) and probe-cord length required to extend from exterior front of assembly to a mounting position of the sensor within evaporator return air-stream. Pre-wire to common connecting point, (light connection), on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling. Set light timer to leave lights on for 30 minutes.
- 17 Heated pressure relief port in cooler. Pre-wire to common connecting point, (light connection), on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling.
- 18 Heated pressure relief port in freezer. Pre-wire to common connecting point, (light connection), on walk-in roof. No exposed conduit on interior ceiling.
- 19 Provide Kingman Industries, "Thermo-Curtain", model 6-2-04 curtain at each door opening. Vulene vinyl, breakaway loop, strips with rounded edges and 50% overlap. Include all mounting hardware.
- 20 Provide New Age Industrial Corp., Inc., 5" high aluminum baseboard, at interior of each compartment. Miter inside and outside corners. Smooth edges of outside corners. Install baseboard after interior finish floor is installed. Set base bottom and top edges in bead of silicone sealant.
- 21 Construct all special size panels using same methods, materials and locking system as used to construct standard panels. Special size panels must connect to and be locked with other panels, using joint design and locks identical to standard panels. Connecting of panels by any other method is not acceptable.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Refrigeration Design Technologies Inc., refrigeration systems as follows:
  - a MOZ-series , 208V-3ph, pre-assembled remote, with fused disconnect and using R407A refrigerant in refrigeration system. Provide Eco-Smart demand defrost controllers with expansion valve, solenoid valve pre-wired and mounted on evaporators. Job site installation to consist of piping condensing unit to evaporator, evacuating and charging units with refrigerant.
  - b Cooler, +35°F.: Model MOZ010M63C, (1.0 HP), medium temp, air-cooled compressor. model ADT-104, 120V-1ph, evaporator. Cooler defrost to be "Ecosmart" type with positive refrigeration cycle shutdown.
  - c Freezer, -10°F: Model MOZ045L63C, (4.5 HP), low temp, air-cooled compressor. Model LET-120, 208V-1ph, evaporator with electric defrost initiated by "Ecosmart" demand defrost controller.
  - f Refrigeration systems with winter controls and stainless steel, exterior weather-proof housings.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Installation must be supervised by factory personnel or factory authorized personnel.
- 02 Install walk-in walls into building floor recess per drawings.
- 03 Level and square exterior wall and partition floor screeds. Anchor screeds to slab recess.
- 04 Prior to assembly of insulated panels, apply 1/4" to 3/8" bead of Dow-Corning 795 silicone sealant (color gray or white to match panel finish), at exterior side of panel tongue and groove edge.

- 05 Protect exposed surface of panels from installation of concrete floor and other work. Provide protective covering on walls during installation of concrete in or around walk-in. Door(s) must be left open to ventilate interior when concrete is installed in walk-in interior.
- 06 Install condensing units on building roof per details, drawings and manufactures recommendations.
- 07 Install evaporator coils as indicated on drawings per manufactures recommendations.

**ITEM NO. 02FD WALK-IN SHELVING**

- A One (1) lot - Eagle Group, "Quad-Adjust" with "EAGLEgard" epoxy finish. Each section free standing with five (5) shelves and four (4) 86" posts. Section below evaporator provide three (3) shelves and four (4) 63" posts.
- B Each section to include:
  - 01 Two (2) QuadTruss shelves.
  - 02 Three (3) Quad-Adust shelves.
  - 03 Four (4) posts.
- C Sections:
  - 01 Two (2) 14" x 36"
  - 02 Eight (8) 21" x 36"
  - 03 Eight (8) 21" x 42".
- D Special instructions:
  - 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF. Set additional shelves 17" O.C.
  - 02 Set QuadTruss shelves top and bottom. Remaining shelves Quad-Adjust.
  - 03 Section below evaporator include two (2) Quad-Truss and one (1) Quad-Adjust shelves.

**ITEM NO. 03FD STORAGE SHELVING**

- A One (1) lot - Eagle Group, "Quad-Adjust" with "EAGLEgard" epoxy finish. Each section free standing with five (5) shelves and four (4) 86" posts.
- B Each section to include:
  - 01 Two (2) QuadTruss shelves.
  - 02 Three (3) Quad-Adust shelves.
  - 03 Four (4) posts.
- C Sections:
  - 01 Two (2) 14" x 42"
  - 02 Four (4) 21" x 42"
  - 03 Two (2) 21" x 48".
- D Special instructions:
  - 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF. Set additional shelves 17" O.C.
  - 02 Set QuadTruss shelves top and bottom. Remaining shelves Quad-Adjust.

**ITEM NO. 04FD MOBILE COOLING RACK**

- A Two (2) - Cres-Cor, model 207-UA-13A.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Perimeter bumper.
  - 02 Polyurethane tired casters.

**ITEM NO. 05FD MOBILE SLICER STAND**

- A One (1) - Piper Products, model 331-3424.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Rotating bumper.
  - 02 5" dia. polyurethane tired casters.
  - 03 Two (2) locking brakes.

**ITEM NO. 06FD SLICER**

- A One (1) - Hobart, model HS8N-1.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Non-removable knife.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install on Item No. 05fd, Mobile Slicer Stand.

**ITEM NO. 07FD VEGETABLE PREPARATION TABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To include:
  - 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 Marine edge top.
  - 04 Splash where adjacent to walls.
  - 05 Two (2) 18" x 20" x 3/4" deep recessed top with 18" x 18" x 11-1/4" deep sink compartment per detail.
  - 06 Can opener in top of table, per detail.
  - 07 Open structure base.
  - 08 Undershelf where unobstructed.
  - 09 Parking space in base for trash can.
  - 10 Corner legs with flanged feet.
  - 11 Flanged foot where required by the contract documents.
  - 12 14 ga. stainless steel bracket below top with cutting board holder. Construct per detail.
  - 13 14 ga. stainless steel bracket below top for mounting knife rack. Construct per detail.
  - 14 Elevated shelf per details and drawings. Table mounted 21" above top.
  - 15 Two (2) 16 ga. stainless steel printer stands mounted at each end of elevated shelf.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Component Hardware, model KL54-8012-SE1, splash mount, faucet with 12" swing spout.
  - 02 Component Hardware, model KL40-1000, mounting kit.
  - 03 Nemco, model 56050-1, can opener.
  - 04 Two (2) Richlite 3/4" thick, reversible, NSF approved, cutting board with finger hole.
  - 05 Edlund, model KR-699, knife rack.
  - 06 Component Hardware, model S90-0020-N, drawer.
  - 07 Two (2) Component Hardware, model DSS-8015, lever drain assembly.
- D Special instructions:
  - 01 Install faucet and mounting kit.
  - 02 Install can opener.
  - 03 Install knife rack on bracket.
  - 04 Cutting boards to fit into recessed top of sink compartment.
  - 05 Verify size of printer with Owner and coordinate with stands.
  - 06 Anchor table to floor.

**ITEM NO. 08FD MOBILE MIXER STAND**

- A One (1) - Piper Products, model 121-23-29TSS.

- B To Include:
- 01 Model MX-52-R rack.
  - 02 Rotating bumper.
  - 03 5" dia. polyurethane tired casters.
  - 04 Two (2) locking brakes.

**ITEM NO. 09FD 20 QUART MIXER**

- A One (1) - Hobart, model HL200.
- B To Include:
- 01 Stainless steel 20 qt. bowl.
  - 02 "B" beater.
  - 03 "D" wire whip.
  - 04 "ED" dough hook.
- C Special Instructions:
- 01 Provide Hobart branded accessories.
  - 02 Anchor to Item No. 08FD, Mobile Mixer Stand.
  - 03 Seal to Item No. 08FD, Mobile Mixer Stand.

**ITEM NO. 10FD AIR COMPRESSOR**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 11FD WORK TABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To include:
- 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 Splash where adjacent to walls.
  - 04 18" x 18" x 12" deep sink compartment.
  - 05 Open structure base.
  - 06 Undershelf where unobstructed.
  - 07 Corner legs with flanged feet.
  - 08 Elevated shelf per details and drawings. Table mounted 21" above top.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Component Hardware, model KL54-8012-SE1, splash mount, faucet with 12" swing spout.
  - 02 Component Hardware, model KL40-1000, mounting kit.
  - 03 Component Hardware, model S90-0020-N, drawer.
  - 04 Component Hardware, model DSS-8015, lever drain assembly.
- D Special instructions:
- 01 Install faucet and mounting kit.
  - 02 Anchor table to floor.

**ITEM NO. 12FD STORAGE SHELVING**

- A One (1) lot - Eagle Group, "Quad-Adjust" with "EAGLEgard" epoxy finish. Each section free standing with five (5) shelves and four (4) 86" posts.
- B Each section to include:
- 01 Two (2) QuadTruss shelves.
  - 02 Three (3) Quad-Adust shelves.
  - 03 Four (4) posts.

C Sections:

- 01 One (1) 21" x 30"
- 02 Two (2) 21" x 42"
- 03 One (1) 21" x 48".

D Special instructions:

- 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF. Set additional shelves 17" O.C.
- 02 Set QuadTruss shelves top and bottom. Remaining shelves Quad-Adjust.

**ITEM NO. 13FD MOBILE WORK TABLE**

A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.

B To include:

- 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
- 02 Stainless steel construction.
- 03 Open structure base.
- 04 Undershef.
- 05 5" dia. swivel casters with stainless steel yokes and polyurethane tires. Two (2) casters with brakes. Refer to "Casters" in this Section.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Component Hardware, model S90-0020-N, drawer.

**ITEM NO. 14FD VENTILATOR W/ FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEM**

A One (1) - CaptiveAire Systems, model 6030ND-2-PSP-F, exhaust-only wall canopy with ceiling mounted perforated supply air plenum. Unit 5'-0" wide x length per drawings.

B To include:

- 01 18 ga., type 304, stainless steel construction.
- 02 Constructed in accordance with NFPA 96.
- 03 ETL listed and bear label.
- 04 ETL Sanitation listed and bear label.
- 05 Fully weld exhaust air plenum.
- 06 Recessed, vapor-proof, LED, 30W, light fixtures with bulbs. Provide remote touch-screen control panel for lights and fans. Inter-connect lights between junction boxes on multi-section ventilators. Provide single point electrical connection for final hook-up. Conceal all conduit. Ventilator provided with three (3) lineal feet of light fixture per each 4'-0" of length.
- 07 Captrate Solo stainless steel filters. ETL Listed.
- 08 Insulate supply air plenum.
- 09 Air dampers at interior of supply air plenum.
- 10 Supply air grilles sized to provide air velocity as recommended by manufacture.
- 11 CaptiveAire Smart Controls, Thermostatic Control, to automatically activate the ventilator fans when cooking occurs. Inter-wire system to sensor(s). System installed in stainless steel utility cabinet, mounted on end of ventilator. Pre-wired system to single point connection for final connection to power and connection to fan contact by Division 26. Contact by Division 26.
- 12 Pipe chase at ventilator ends for gas supply lines. Chase bottom closed with cut-out for gas pipe.
- 13 Stainless steel angle trim at ceiling as required. One piece corners.
- 14 Stainless steel closure panels to ceiling as required. One piece corners.
- 15 Fire suppression system Ansul, "PIRANHA", chemical, automatic system, in accordance with codes, ordinances, manufactures recommendations and per PART 2 -PRODUCTS, Exhaust Hood Fire Suppression Systems. Provide required surface protection, fuel shut-off devise(s) and micro switches.

- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Stainless steel wall panels at ventilator(s) where adjacent to walls:
    - a Construct panels of 18 ga. 304, stainless steel. Apply fire rated contact cement to wall and stainless steel panel. Install on walls as shown on drawings. Extend panels from top of base to 1" behind ventilator and 18" beyond each end of ventilator. Stainless steel panels extended to finished ceiling where not under ventilator.
    - b Construct panel section in equal widths. Minimum panel width 24", except at ends. End panels must be equal width but not less than 12". At corner turns form panel with 1/4" radius and return to adjacent wall. Corner returns shall be a minimum of 6" wide.
    - c Minimize vertical joints. No horizontal joints.
  - 02 Component Hardware Group, Inc. model J60-2260, 1" wide, flat stainless steel snap-on molding over all vertical joints and at edges where panels terminate.
- D Special instructions:
- 01 Installation must be supervised by factory personnel or factory authorized personnel.
  - 02 Provide test of ventilator air system volumes (exhaust and supply air) to determine compliance with the design requirements. Contractor must comply with provisions of state and local codes and ordinances, during testing. Submit data to Architect.
  - 03 Hang with 1/2" dia. steel hanger rods and turn buckles. Provide required structural members to suspend ventilator from overhead structure.
  - 04 Set ventilator lower front edge 6'-8" AFF.

**ITEM NO. 15FD 10 QUART KETTLE W/ STAND & DRAINER CART**

- A One (1) - Groen, model TDB/6-10.
- B To Include:
- 01 Stainless steel construction.
  - 02 Model 124883 stainless steel stand.
  - 03 Model 124704 drain cart with model 124781 plumbing kit.
  - 04 Flanged feet.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Component Hardware, model KL51H-9012-SE1, deck mount faucet with swing spout. Spout length to reach over kettle.
- D Special Instructions:
- 01 Install faucet on stainless steel mounting bracket. Rear right side.
  - 02 Anchor kettle to stand.
  - 03 Anchor stand to floor.

**ITEM NO. 16FD MOBILE RANGE**

- A One (1) - Montague, model M12-5, modular two burner range, natural gas.
- B To Include:
- 01 Stainless steel front, sides and top.
  - 02 Model M12S stainless steel 12" wide spreader.
  - 03 Model HB24 stainless steel 15" high flue riser.
  - 04 Stainless steel tubular base with 16 ga. stainless steel undershelf fully welded to legs.
  - 05 Rear gas connection.
  - 06 Gas pressure regulator valve.
  - 07 5" dia. swivel casters with stainless steel yokes and polyurethane tires. Refer to "Casters" in this Section.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model HG-4C-48SK, 1/2" I.D., plastic coated 48" long, flexible gas hoses and quick disconnect assembly.
  - 02 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model K kit, including restraining device.

- D Special Instructions:
- 01 Submit shop drawing of range.
  - 02 Anchor restraining device to range and wall.
  - 03 Furnish hose and quick disconnect assembly to Division 22 for installation.

**ITEM NO. 17FD COMBI OVEN**

- A One (1) - Rational CombiMaster Plus, model 202 NG, natural gas.
- B To Include:
- 01 Stainless steel front, sides and top.
  - 02 Mode selector control.
  - 03 100 cooking programs
  - 04 Five speed programmable fan.
  - 05 Core temperature probe.
  - 06 Hand shower with automatic retracting system.
  - 07 Fourteen (14) CombiGrill.
  - 08 Ten (10) Grill & Pizza Tray.
  - 09 Ten (10) CombiFry Basket.
  - 10 Five (5) CombiRib-Grid.
  - 11 Eleven (11) Multibaker.
  - 12 Ten (10) Super Spike Chicken Grid.
  - 13 Twelve (12) Grill Cleaner.
  - 14 Two(2) Hand Spray Bottle.
  - 15 Built-in gas pressure regulator.
  - 16 Cord and plug.
  - 17 Installation Kit.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Everpure "Kleensteam", model EV9797-22 Kleensteam II Twin System, water filter.
  - 02 Water pressure reducing valve.
  - 03 Water hammer arrestor.
- D Special Instructions:
- 01 Mount water filter on wall behind equipment.
  - 02 Provide start-up inspection service by factory authorized service agent.
  - 03 Provide factory authorized personnel for operation and maintenance training.
  - 04 Provide one (1) day training session for Owner's personnel with factory Chef.

**ITEM NO. 18FD STEAMER**

- A One (1) - Groen, model (2) SSB-5GF, natural gas.
- B To Include:
- 01 Hinge doors per drawing.
  - 02 Stainless steel base.
  - 03 Flanged foot kit.
  - 04 Gas pressure regulator valve.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Everpure "Kleensteam", model EV9797-22 Kleensteam II Twin System, water filter.
  - 02 Water pressure reducing valve.
  - 03 Water hammer arrestor.
- D Special Instructions:
- 01 Anchor steamer to stand.
  - 02 Anchor stand to floor.
  - 03 Mount water filter on wall behind equipment.

**ITEM NO. 19FD MOBILE HEATED CABINET**

- A One (1) - Cres-Cor, model H-137-SUA-12D.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Hinge door per drawing.
  - 02 Perimeter bumper.
  - 03 Polyurethane tired casters.

**ITEM NO. 20FD PNEUMATIC POTATO CUTTER**

- A One (1) - Nemco, model 56455.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Model 56424-1T (1/4") blade and holder assembly for hard vegetables.
  - 02 Model 56424-1 (1/4") blade and holder assembly for soft vegetables.
  - 03 Model 56424-2 (3/8") blade and holder assembly for soft vegetables.
  - 04 Model 56424-3 (1/2") blade and holder assembly for soft vegetables.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Air compressor provided and installed by Owner.
  - 02 Owner to coordinate installation of air lines from compressor to cutter.
  - 03 Install on Item No. 11FD, Work Table.

**ITEM NO. 21FD VENTILATOR W/ FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEM**

- A One (1) - CaptiveAire Systems, model 6030ND-2-PSP-F, exhaust-only wall canopy with ceiling mounted perforated supply air plenum. Unit 5'-0" wide x length per drawings.
- B To include:
  - 01 18 ga., type 304, stainless steel construction.
  - 02 Constructed in accordance with NFPA 96.
  - 03 ETL listed and bear label.
  - 04 ETL Sanitation listed and bear label.
  - 05 Fully weld exhaust air plenum.
  - 06 Recessed, vapor-proof, LED, 30W, light fixtures with bulbs. Provide remote touch-screen control panel for lights and fans. Inter-connect lights between junction boxes on multi-section ventilators. Provide single point electrical connection for final hook-up. Conceal all conduit. Ventilator provided with three (3) lineal feet of light fixture per each 4'-0" of length.
  - 07 Captrate Solo stainless steel filters. ETL Listed.
  - 08 Insulate supply air plenum.
  - 09 Air dampers at interior of supply air plenum.
  - 10 Supply air grilles sized to provide air velocity as recommended by manufacture.
  - 11 CaptiveAire Smart Controls, Thermostatic Control, to automatically activate the ventilator fans when cooking occurs. Inter-wire system to sensor(s). System installed in stainless steel utility cabinet, mounted on end of ventilator. Pre-wired system to single point connection for final connection to power and connection to fan contact by Division 26. Contact by Division 26.
  - 12 Pipe chase at ventilator ends for gas supply lines. Chase bottom closed with cut-out for gas pipe.
  - 13 Stainless steel angle trim at ceiling as required. One piece corners.
  - 14 Stainless steel closure panels to ceiling as required. One piece corners.
  - 15 Fire suppression system Ansul , "PIRANHA", chemical, automatic system, in accordance with codes, ordinances, manufactures recommendations and per PART 2 -PRODUCTS, Exhaust Hood Fire Suppression Systems. Provide required surface protection, fuel shut-off devise(s) and micro switches.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Stainless steel wall panels at ventilator(s) where adjacent to walls:
    - a Construct panels of 18 ga. 304, stainless steel. Apply fire rated contact cement to wall and stainless steel panel. Install on walls as shown on drawings. Extend panels from top of base to 1" behind ventilator and 18" beyond each end of ventilator. Stainless steel panels extended to finished ceiling where not under ventilator.



- b Construct panel section in equal widths. Minimum panel width 24", except at ends. End panels must be equal width but not less than 12". At corner turns form panel with 1/4" radius and return to adjacent wall. Corner returns shall be a minimum of 6" wide.
  - c Minimize vertical joints. No horizontal joints.
- 02 Component Hardware Group, Inc. model J60-2260, 1" wide, flat stainless steel snap-on molding over all vertical joints and at edges where panels terminate.

D Special instructions:

- 01 Installation must be supervised by factory personnel or factory authorized personnel.
- 02 Provide test of ventilator air system volumes (exhaust and supply air) to determine compliance with the design requirements. Contractor must comply with provisions of state and local codes and ordinances, during testing. Submit data to Architect.
- 03 Hang with 1/2" dia. steel hanger rods and turn buckles. Provide required structural members to suspend ventilator from overhead structure.
- 04 Set ventilator lower front edge 6'-8" AFF.

**ITEM NO. 22FD SALAMANDER BROILER**

A One (1) - Montague, model SB36-W, infrared salamander broiler, wall mounted, natural gas.

B To Include:

- 01 Stainless steel front, sides, bottom and top.
- 02 Rear gas connection.
- 03 Gas pressure regulator valve.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Provide 14 ga., type 304 stainless steel, 2" x 2" square tubing, fully welded, wall mounted supports. Fully weld ends of supports closed. Cross brace supports with 2" x 2" square tubing. Set salamander broiler on extended horizontal supports 6" forward from wall. Secure broiler to supports. Reinforce wall to support salamander broiler.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Install salamander broiler on wall behind equipment. Include all accessories required to make installation.
- 02 Set bottom of salamander broiler 55" AFF.
- 03 Submit shop drawing of supports.
- 04 Install salamander broiler above Item No. 23FD, Mobile Range.

**ITEM NO. 23FD MOBILE RANGE**

A One (1) - Montague, model M36-5, modular five burner range, natural gas.

B To Include:

- 01 Stainless steel front, sides and top.
- 02 Model HB36 stainless steel 18" high flue riser.
- 03 Stainless steel tubular base with 16 ga. stainless steel undershelf fully welded to legs.
- 04 Rear gas connection.
- 05 Gas pressure regulator valve.
- 06 5" dia. swivel casters with stainless steel yokes and polyurethane tires. Refer to "Casters" in this Section.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model HG-4E-48SK, 1" I.D., plastic coated 48" long, flexible gas hoses and quick disconnect assembly.
- 02 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model K kit, including restraining device.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Submit shop drawing of range.
- 02 Anchor restraining device to range and wall.
- 03 Furnish hose and quick disconnect assembly to Division 22 for installation.

**ITEM NO. 24FD MOBILE REFRIGERATED EQUIPMENT STAND**

- A One (1) - Continental Refrigerator, model DL-60G. Modified.
- B To Include:
  - 01 16 GA., type 304 stainless steel top with drip guard marine edge.
  - 02 Modify top to 62" of overall length. Center top over base.
  - 03 Heat shield Insulated top.
  - 04 Cord and plug.
  - 05 3" dia. swivel casters with polyurethane tires. Front casters with brakes.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Six (6) Vollrath model 90062, 6" deep, full size stainless steel pans.
  - 02 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model K kit, including restraining device.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install Item No. 25GG, Mobile Griddle on equipment stand.
  - 02 Anchor restraining device to equipment stand and wall.
  - 03 Submit shop drawing of refrigerated equipment stand.

**ITEM NO. 25FD MOBILE GRIDDLE**

- A One (1) - MagiKitch'n, model MKG-60-E, natural gas.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Thermostat controls.
  - 02 Electric ignition.
  - 03 Cord and plug.
  - 04 Gas pressure regulator valve.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model HG-4E-48SK, 1" I.D., plastic coated 48" long, flexible gas hoses and quick disconnect assembly.
  - 02 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model K kit, including restraining device.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install griddle without legs.
  - 02 Anchor griddle to stand.
  - 03 Anchor restraining device to griddle and wall.
  - 04 Furnish hose and quick disconnect assembly to Division 22 for installation.

**ITEM NO. 26FD MOBILE CHAR-BROILER**

- A One (1) - MagiKitch'n, model FM-RMB-648, natural gas.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel front, sides and back.
  - 02 Side and back extensions.
  - 03 Scround rod top grate with standard spacing.
  - 04 Safety pilot.
  - 05 Rear gas connection.
  - 06 Gas pressure regulator valve.
  - 07 5" dia. swivel casters with stainless steel yokes and polyurethane tires. Refer to "Casters" in this Section.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model HG-4D-48SK, 3/4" I.D., plastic coated 48" long, flexible gas hoses and quick disconnect assembly.
  - 02 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model K kit, including restraining device.

- D Special Instructions:
- 01 Anchor restraining device to char-broiler and wall.
  - 02 Furnish hose and quick disconnect assembly to Division 22 for installation.

**ITEM NO. 27FD MULTI-COOK OVEN**

- A Two (2) - Alto-Shaam, model VMC-F4E , stacked.
- B To Include:
- 01 Stainless steel front, sides and top.
  - 02 Programable control.
  - 03 Two (2) Core temperature probe, per unit.
  - 04 Stacking Kit .
  - 05 Mobile base with casters.
  - 06 One (1) case Dirt Buster III Cleaner, per unit.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 Two (2) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model K kit, including restraining device.
- D Special Instructions:
- 01 Anchor restraining device to oven and wall.
  - 02 Provide start-up inspection service by factory authorized service agent.
  - 03 Provide factory authorized personnel for operation and maintenance training.

**ITEM NO. 28FD MOBILE FRYER BANK**

- A One (1) battery - Pitco, model SG14RS-FD, natural gas, per drawings.
- B To Include:
- 01 Stainless steel fat container.
  - 02 Stainless steel front, door and sides.
  - 03 Electronic ignition with drain valve interlock.
  - 04 Digital controls with melt cycle.
  - 05 Multi-cabinet unit.
  - 06 Model BNB dump station with stainless steel pan and screen.
  - 07 Stainless steel lift-off covers for fryers and dump station.
  - 08 Solstice Filter Drawer System installed in BNB cabinet.
  - 09 Heated filtration system.
  - 10 Oil reclamation system for liquid shorting.
  - 11 Single point rear gas connection.
  - 12 "T" gas manifold.
  - 13 Gas pressure regulator valve.
  - 14 9" adjustable casters with front locking brakes.
  - 15 One (1) case filter paper part # A7025301.
  - 16 One (1) case filter powder part # PP10733.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
- 01 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model HG-4F-48SK, 1 1/4" I.D., plastic coated 48" long, flexible gas hoses and quick disconnect assembly.
  - 02 T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc., "Safe-T-Link" model K kit, including restraining device.
- D Special Instructions:
- 01 Locate BNB cabinet per drawings.
  - 02 Anchor restraining device to fryer and wall.
  - 03 Furnish hose and quick disconnect assembly to Division 22 for installation.

**ITEM NO. 29FD FREEZER**

- A One (1) - Continental Refrigerator, model DL1F-SS-HD.

- B To Include:
  - 01 Half height doors.
  - 02 Hinge doors per drawings.
  - 03 One (1) extra shelf per section.
  - 04 Cord and plug.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 14 ga. stainless steel, channel shaped, toe base per details. Set base in continuous bead of clear silicone sealant at floor.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Anchor toe base to freezer.
  - 02 Seal to Item No. 32FD, Chef's Counter.

**ITEM NO. 30FD NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 31FD PASS-THRU REFRIGERATOR**

- A One (1) - Continental Refrigerator, model DL1RE-SS-PT-HD.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Half height doors.
  - 02 Hinge doors per drawings.
  - 03 One (1) extra shelf.
  - 04 Expansion valve system.
  - 05 Cord and plug.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 14 ga. stainless steel, channel shaped, toe base per details. Set base in continuous bead of clear silicone sealant at floor.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Anchor toe base to refrigerator.
  - 02 Seal to Item No. 32FD, Chef's Counter.

**ITEM NO. 32FD CHEF'S COUNTER**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per detail and drawings.
- B To include:
  - 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 Stainless steel two level top.
  - 04 15" wide x full length 14 ga. stainless steel tray slide with tray-lock per detail.
  - 05 18" x 18" x 12" deep sink compartment.
  - 06 Vacuum breaker housing per detail.
  - 07 Punch hole(s) in top for extending vacuum breaker liquid lines to services below top. Coordinate size/location with vacuum breaker.
  - 08 Punch tray slide top with hole(s) for soup wells.
  - 09 Die stamp top openings for hot food wells.
  - 10 Cut-out for Item No. 35FD, Mobile Refrigerated Make Table. Turn top edge straight down 2" into cut-out and hug lining. 18 ga. stainless steel lining at all sides of cut-out.
  - 11 Two tier elevated shelf with food guard panel per details and drawings.
  - 12 Closed body base.
  - 13 Opening in base for Item No. 33FD, Drawer Warmer.
  - 14 Open bottom shelf where unobstructed.
  - 15 Enclose sink with hinged door.
  - 16 Stainless steel hinged door per details.
  - 17 Tray storage compartment below tray slide per details and drawings.
  - 18 Load center compartment located per drawings.

- 19 Utility compartment located per drawings.
- 20 Removable access panel per detail.
- 21 Manifold hot food well drain lines to common connection.
- 22 Manifold soup well drain lines to common connection.
- 23 Extend drain lines to utility compartment and terminate at openings above floor drain.
- 24 Pre-wire infrared food warmer to switch mounted in apron panel of base.
- 25 Pre-wire hot food wells to controls mounted in apron panel of base.
- 26 Pre-wire soup wells to controls mounted in apron panel of base.
- 27 120V-1ph 20.0A receptacle in base for connecting refrigerated make table.
- 28 120V-1ph, 20A pedestal electrical box receptacle. Mount to underside of elevated shelf.
- 29 14 ga. stainless steel, channel shaped, toe base per details. Set base in continuous bead of clear silicone sealant at floor. Notch base at floor drain and seal base to floor. Floor drain must be accessible.
- 30 Pre-wire and pre-pipe counter with U.L. components per Article 2.5 Fabricated Equipment and Fixtures this Section.
- 31 Pre-wire and pre-pipe counter and components to circuit breaker load centers in utility compartments per Article 2.5 Fabricated Equipment and Fixtures this Section.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Wells, model BMW-206RTD/AFU / 208V-1ph, AutoFill hot food well. Install per Article 2.7 Hot Food Wells this Section. Inter-connect drain line of model BMW-206ULRTD/AF with model BMW-206ULRTD hot food well to share "AutoFill" option.
- 02 Three (3) Wells, model BMW-206RTDU / 208V-1ph, hot food wells. Install per Article 2.7 Hot Food Wells this Section.
- 03 Two (2) Wells model SS8TDUCI, 208V-1ph soup well with cord and plug. Drop-in well mounted into top opening. Apply high temperature Silicone sealant around soup well flange and top forming complete seal and thermal break. Install well per manufactures recommendation. Enclose well at bottom with removable louvered panel.
- 04 Two (2) Wells, model 20385, drain valve extension kit with 1" brass gate valve. Install remote handle in recessed stainless steel pan at apron panel of counter, per detail. Manifold three (3) hot food well drain lines to a single valve assembly. Manifold two (2) soup well drain lines to a single valve assembly. Extend drain line to floor drain per drawings and details.
- 05 Component Hardware, model KL50-X137, vacuum breaker. Install at hot food wells as shown on drawings and details. Pre-pipe from "AutoFill" hot food well connection through vacuum breaker to utility compartment.
- 06 Two (2) Hatco Corp. model GRAHL-48, 120/208V-1ph heat lamp with lights and toggle switch control. Mount under shelves per drawings. Conceal wiring in support posts.
- 07 Component Hardware, model KL51-9012-SE1, deck mount, faucet with 12" swing spout .
- 08 Component Hardware, model DSS-8015 lever drain assembly.
- 09 Two (2) Vollrath, model 78184, 7 1/4 quart size stainless steel pans.
- 10 Two (2) Vollrath, model 78180, stainless steel slotted cover.

**ITEM NO. 33FD DRAWER WARMER**

- A One (1) - Hatco, model HDW-2B, 208V-1ph, built-in warmer.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel front.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Drawer warmer must be removable for service.
  - 02 Install per manufactures recommendations.
  - 03 Install in base of Item No. 32FD, Chef's Counter.

**ITEM NO. 34FD TOASTER**

- A One (1) - Hatco, model TPT-208.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel finish.

- 02 Selector switch for single sided toasting.
- 03 Cord and plug.

C Special Instructions:

- 01 Install on Item No. 32, Chef's Counter.
- 02 Restrain excess cord length.

**ITEM NO. 35FD MOBILE REFRIGERATED MAKE TABLE**

A One (1) - Continental Refrigerator, model DL48-12M-FB-D.

B To Include:

- 01 Stainless steel top, sides and doors.
- 02 Stainless steel interior.
- 03 Front breathing refrigeration.
- 04 Stainless steel insulated removable flat cover.
- 05 Full length 10" wide cutting board.
- 06 Stainless steel divider bars for 1/6th size pans.
- 07 Drawers in base.
- 08 Expansion valve system.
- 09 Cord and plug.
- 10 5" dia. swivel casters with polyurethane tires.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Twelve (12) Vollrath, model 90642, 4" deep, 1/6th size stainless steel pans.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Install into Item No. 32FD, Chef's Counter.

**ITEM NO. 36FD NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 37FD NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 38FD NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 39FD MOBILE REFRIGERATED PREPARATION TABLE**

A One (1) - Continental Refrigerator, model DL72-30M-FB-D.

B To Include:

- 01 Stainless steel top, sides and doors.
- 02 Stainless steel interior.
- 03 Front breathing refrigeration.
- 04 Stainless steel insulated removable flat covers.
- 05 Full length 10" wide cutting board.
- 06 Stainless steel divider bars for 1/6th size pans.
- 07 Drawers in base.
- 08 Expansion valve system.
- 09 Cord and plug.
- 10 5" dia. swivel casters with polyurethane tires.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Thirty (30) Vollrath, model 90642, 4" deep, 1/6th size stainless steel pans.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Install into Item No. 32FD, Chef's Counter.

**ITEM NO. 40FD NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 41FD NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 42FD LETTUCE CRISPER**

- A One (1) - SilverKing, model SKELD25-SD-1-BA2-R290, wall mounted, self-contained.
- B To include:
  - 01 Stainless steel exterior finish.
  - 02 Stainless steel interior finish..
  - 03 Hinge door per drawings.
  - 04 Wall mounting bracket.
  - 05 Cord and plug.
- C Special instructions:
  - 01 Provide anchoring material for wall mounting.
  - 02 Set bottom of crisper 52" AFF. Confirm mounting height with Owner.

**ITEM NO. 43FD PLATE CHILLER**

- A One (1) - Glastender, model FRM-2 .
- B To include:
  - 01 Stainless steel finish exterior and top.
  - 02 Stainless steel interior.
  - 03 3" dia. caster set.

**ITEM NO. 44FD WORK TABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To include:
  - 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 Splash where adjacent to walls.
  - 04 Open structure base.
  - 05 Undershelf where unobstructed.
  - 06 Elevated shelf per details and drawings. Table mounted 21" above top.

**ITEM NO. 45FD ICE CREAM CASE**

- A One (1) - LaRosa, model L-40146-28.
- B To include:
  - 01 Stainless steel finish top, front and side panels.
  - 02 Splash at rear.
  - 03 20 ga. steel white interior.
  - 04 9" x 14" x 10" deep sink welded into top with faucet and drain.
  - 05 Dipperwell with faucet and drain.
  - 06 Compressor location per drawing.
  - 07 Cord and plug.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 14 ga. stainless steel, channel shaped, toe base per details. Set base in continuous bead of clear silicone sealant at floor.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Anchor toe base to ice cream case.
  - 02 Restrain excess cord length.

**ITEM NO. 46FD NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 47FD WORK TABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To include:
  - 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 Splash where adjacent to walls.
  - 04 Open structure base.
  - 05 Splay rear crossrail.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Park Item No. 48FD, Undercounter Refrigerator in base.

**ITEM NO. 48FD UNDERCOUNTER REFRIGERATOR**

- A One (1) - Continental Refrigerator, model CRA68-U-FB-D.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Stainless steel top, front and sides.
  - 02 Aluminum sides and interior.
  - 03 Front breathing refrigeration.
  - 04 Stainless steel roll-out drawers.
  - 05 Cord and plug.
  - 06 1 3/8" dia. swivel casters. Front casters with brakes.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Two (2) Vollrath model 90042, 4" deep, full size stainless steel pans.
  - 02 Two (2) Vollrath model 90062, 6" deep, full size stainless steel pans.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install into base of Item No. 47FD, Work Table.

**ITEM NO. 49FD MICROWAVE / CONVECTION OVEN**

- A One (1) - TurboChef, model BULLET.
- B To include:
  - 01 Stainless steel finish top, front and sides.
  - 02 Two (2) model NGC-1331 solid PTFE baskets.
  - 03 One (1) model NGC-1478 aluminum paddle.
  - 04 One (1) model ENC-3012 baking stone
  - 05 One (1) model ENC-1279 oven rack.
  - 06 One (1) model 103180 bottle of oven cleaner.
  - 07 One (1) model 103181 bottle of oven guard.
  - 08 Two (2) model 103182 trigger sprayer.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install on Item No. 47FD, Work Table.

**ITEM NO. 50FD TOPPING STATION**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 51FD MOBILE HEATED CABINET**

- A One (1) - Cres-Cor, model H-137-SUA-12D.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Hinge door per drawing.



- 02 Perimeter bumper.
- 03 Polyurethane tired casters.

**ITEM NO. 52FD BEVERAGE TABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To include:
  - 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 Top with marine edges.
  - 04 Splash where adjacent to walls and equipment.
  - 05 21" x 21" x 2" deep recessed top with 16" x 21" x 8" deep sink compartment per detail.
  - 06 Punch top with hole(s) for Water Station.
  - 07 Punch top with hole(s) for Base Outlet.
  - 08 Open structure base.
  - 09 Parking space in base for Item No. 56FD, Mobile Rack Dolly.
  - 10 Corner legs with flanged feet.
  - 11 Flanged foot where required by the contract documents.
  - 12 Extend drain line and terminate above floor drain.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Component Hardware, model KL53-1000-BR, splash mount, spray assembly with wall bracket.
  - 02 Component Hardware, model KL50-Y002-GF, spray valve with water nozzle.
  - 03 Component Hardware, model KL55-7012, add-on-faucet with 12" swing spout.
  - 04 Component Hardware, model KL40-1000, mounting kit.
  - 05 Component Hardware, model K27-2000, glass filler with 12" riser, drain pan and wire grid.
  - 06 Two (2) Component Hardware, model K50-X125 base with KL50-X122 adapter, deck mount, base outlet.
  - 07 Component Hardware, model DSS-8015 lever drain with overflow assembly.
- D Special instructions:
  - 01 Coordinate clearance between faucet body and sink recess. Glass rack must be removable unobstructed.
  - 02 Install spray assembly and mounting kit.
  - 03 Mount spray assembly wall bracket per detail.
  - 04 Install Water Station per details, drawings and manufacturers recommendations.
  - 05 Install Base Outlet behind coffee maker and iced tea brewer.
  - 06 Brace top to support counter mounted equipment.
  - 07 Park Item No. 56FD, Mobile Rack Dolly in base.
  - 08 Anchor table to floor.

**ITEM NO. 53FD CARBONATOR**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 54FD ICE & CARBONATED BEVERAGE DISPENSER**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 55FD ICED TEA BREWER**

- A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 56FD MOBILE GLASS RACK**

- A Four (4) - Cambro, model CD2020.
- B Special Instructions:
  - 01 Color selected, by Architect, from manufactures standard colors.

**ITEM NO. 57FD COFFEE MAKER**

A One (1) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 58FD NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 59FD ICE MAKER W/ TRANSPORT CART**

A One (1) - Hoshizaki, model KM-1100MAH, air cooled .

B To Include:

01 Crescent Cube ice.

C Ancillary Equipment:

01 Water hammer arrestor.

02 Water pressure reducing valve.

03 Everpure model EV9325-04 "Insurice" QUAD-I4000 water filter system.

04 San Jamar, model SI9000, Saf-T-Scoop Guardian System.

05 Follett Corp. model DEV1010SG-48-75, bin with stainless steel exterior and base. Provide SmartCART 75 with three (3) totes, ice paddle, ice rake and hanging bracket.

D Special Instructions:

01 Install ice maker on bin. Include all accessories required for complete installation.

02 Locate front of ice maker flush with front of ice bin.

03 Mount water filter on wall with 16 ga. stainless steel mounting plate. Size and shape to accommodate filter bracket. Attach mounting plate to wall with stainless steel pan head screws. Weld stainless steel keyhole studs to mounting plate and attach filter bracket.

04 Mount scoop hanging bracket on side of bin with 16 ga. stainless steel mounting plate. Size and shape to accommodate hanging bracket. Weld threaded stainless steel studs to ice bin and attach mounting plate with chrome plated, locking, cap nuts. Weld stainless steel keyhole studs to mounting plate and attach hanging bracket.

**ITEM NO. 60FD NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 61FD WORK TABLE**

A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.

B To include:

01 Work surface 36" AFF.

02 Stainless steel construction.

03 Splash where adjacent to walls.

04 Open structure base.

05 Intermediate and bottom shelf.

C Special Instructions:

01 Install Item No. 62FD, Cash Register on top.

**ITEM NO. 62FD CASH REGISTER**

A Two (2) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 63FD SMOKER**

A One (1) - Southern Pride, model SPK-1400, wood-burning rotisserie, natural gas, per drawings and details.

B To Include:

01 Stainless steel exterior finish.

- 02 Stainless steel interior finish.
- 03 Digital cook and hold thermostat.
- 04 Recess front legs for thru-wall installation.
- 05 Locate firebox and gear motor per drawing.
- 06 Thirty (30) 12" x 42" stainless steel product racks.
- 07 Thru-wall insulation kit for smoker with VSP ventilation system.
- 08 VSP Eyebrow Hood ventilation system to include:
  - a. Filters.
  - b. Rear discharge.
  - c. Two speed exhaust fan.
  - d. Tilted fan package.
  - d. Roof curb (for pitched roof ) with vented extension, hinge kit and grease capture trough.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Fire suppression system Ansul , "R-102", chemical, automatic system, in accordance with codes, ordinances, manufactures recommendations and per PART 2 -PRODUCTS, Exhaust Hood Fire Suppression Systems. Provide required surface protection, fuel shut-off devise(s) and micro switches.
- 02 18 ga. stainless steel channel shaped insulated trim at Smoker on walls. Secure to Smoker and seal to walls. Trim interior and exterior of wall opening around Smoker. Trim to be fully welded.

D Special instructions:

- 01 Foodservice Equipment Contractor to verify degree of roof pitch with General Contractor.
- 02 Installation must be supervised by factory personnel or factory authorized personnel.
- 03 Mount Ventilation System in accordance with state / local codes, ordinances and manufactures recommendations.
- 04 Furnish exhaust fan, roof curb and mounting accessories to Division 23 for installation.
- 05 Stainless steel (all welded) exhaust duct provided and installed by Division 23.
- 06 Provide test of ventilator air system volumes (exhaust air) to determine compliance with the design requirements. Contractor must comply with provisions of state and local codes and ordinances, during testing. Submit data to Architect.

**ITEM NO. 64FD WORK TABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.

B To include:

- 01 Work surface 36" AFF.
- 02 Stainless steel construction.
- 03 Splash where adjacent to walls.
- 04 18" x 18" x 12" deep sink compartment.
- 05 Open structure base.
- 06 Undershelf where unobstructed.
- 07 Corner legs with flanged feet.
- 08 Elevated shelf per details and drawings. Table mounted 21" above top.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Component Hardware, model KL54-8012-SE1, splash mount, faucet with 12" swing spout.
- 02 Component Hardware, model KL40-1000, mounting kit.
- 03 Component Hardware, model S90-0020-N, drawer.
- 04 Component Hardware, model DSS-8015, lever drain assembly.

D Special instructions:

- 01 Install faucet and mounting kit.
- 02 Anchor table to floor.

**ITEM NO. 65FD NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 66FD NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 67FD SOILED DISHTABLE**

- A One (1) - Fabricated, configuration per details and drawings.
- B To include:
  - 01 Work surface 34" AFF.
  - 02 Stainless steel construction.
  - 03 1" high inverted "V" edge at soiled dish drop-off.
  - 04 Splash where adjacent to walls.
  - 05 Splash guard rim per details.
  - 06 Scupper drain per details.
  - 07 Die stamped scrap chute per details.
  - 08 Cut-out for Item No. 68FD, Collector.
  - 09 Open structure base.
  - 10 9" wide x 5'-6" long, glass dump sink. Furnish with removable stainless steel scrap baskets. Construct dump sink and scrap baskets per details.
  - 11 Parking space in base for trash can.
  - 12 14 ga. stainless steel bracket, below top, for mounting water valve for dump sink, per details.
  - 13 Flanged foot where required by the contract documents.
  - 14 Double sided rack shelf, configuration per details and drawings. Table mounted per details.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Component Hardware, model KL53-1000-BR, splash mount, pre-rinse assembly with wall bracket.
  - 02 Component Hardware, model KL40-3400, mounting kit.
  - 03 Component Hardware, model J92-5000, scrap block.
  - 04 Component Hardware, model KL79-Y300-2C, water valve assembly.
- D Special instructions:
  - 01 Install pre-rinse assembly with mounting kit.
  - 02 Install scrap block into top, per details.
  - 03 Install water valve into bracket below table top per details.
  - 04 Fully weld Item No. 68FD, Collector, into table top per drawings.
  - 05 Anchor dishtable to floor.

**ITEM NO. 68FD COLLECTOR**

- A One (1) - Salvajor Co., model S914, food waste collector.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Direction of operation per drawings.
  - 02 One (1) extra scrap basket.
  - 03 Stainless steel cover.
  - 04 Built-in control panel with line disconnect.
  - 05 Flanged feet.
- C Ancillary Equipment:
  - 01 Water pressure reducing valve.
  - 02 Water hammer arrestor.
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Install into top of Item No. 67FD, Soiled Dishtable.
  - 02 Installation per contract documents and manufactures recommendations.
  - 03 Anchor collector to floor.

**ITEM NO. 69FD DISHWASHER W/ BOOSTER HEATER**

- A One (1) - Champion, model 66 DRPW, high temperature machine.
- B To Include:
  - 01 Direction of operation per drawing.
  - 02 Dual rinse system.

- 03 24" vertical clearance through machine.
- 04 Stainless steel construction including frame, legs and feet.
- 05 Stainless steel front and side panels.
- 06 Stainless steel insulated hinged doors on wash tank.
- 07 22" prewash section with external scrap basket.
- 08 Single point electrical connection for dishwasher and booster heater.
- 09 Regulated electric heat (15.0 KW).
- 10 DualRinse tank heat (3.0 KW).
- 11 Built-in booster heater (22.0 KW) for 70°F. water temperature rise.
- 12 Automatic tank fill.
- 13 Common drain connection.
- 14 Water pressure reducing valve.
- 15 Water hammer arrestor.
- 16 Factory installed drain water tempering kit.
- 17 4" x 16" vent hood and locking damper at each end of dishwasher.
- 18 Vent fan control for interlocking operation of exhaust fan.
- 19 Table limit switch.
- 20 Two (2) year parts and labor warranty from date of start-up. Warranty to include round trip drive time to jobsite.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Stainless steel ducts, per details.
- 02 Vollrath dish racks as follows;
  - a Four (4) model 52672 dish racks
  - b Two (2) model 52671 flatware racks
  - c Two (2) model 52669 pan racks

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Install table limit switch into splash of Item No. 71FD, Pot Sink & Clean Dishtable.
- 02 Provide start-up inspection service by factory authorized service agent.
- 03 Provide factory authorized personnel for operation and maintenance training.

**ITEM NO. 70FD NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 71FD POT SINK & CLEAN DISHTABLE**

- A One (1) - Champion, model PP-3, configuration per details and drawings.

B To Include:

- 01 Work surface 34" AFF.
- 02 Type 304 stainless steel construction.
- 03 14 ga. stainless steel tanks and drainboards.
- 04 Splash where adjacent to walls.
- 05 13" high backsplash at wall behind sink compartments.
- 06 Splash guard rim per details.
- 07 Direction of sink operation per drawings.
- 08 Voltage and phase per drawings.
- 09 Two (2) 24" x 28" x 18 deep sink compartments.
- 10 One (1) 36" x 28" x 18" deep sink compartment.
- 11 Cut-out for Item No. 72FD, Collector.
- 12 Open structure base.
- 13 Undershelf where unobstructed.
- 14 Sink front trim panel per details.
- 15 Stainless steel drain handle support brackets.
- 16 Stainless steel legs and adjustable feet.
- 17 Fully welded stainless steel crossrails.
- 18 14 ga. stainless steel hat channel support bracket, below top, for mounting hose reel, per detail.
- 19 14 ga. stainless steel bracket, below top, for mounting hose reel mixing valve, per detail.
- 20 Corner legs with flanged feet.
- 21 Flanged foot where required by the contract documents.

- 22 3 H.P. wash pump motor.
- 23 3 kw electric tank heat.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Component Hardware, rail shelf, configuration per details and drawings.  
Construct with the following parts:
  - a Model J19-4962, wall brackets.
  - b 1" O.D., 16 ga., stainless steel tubular rails with welded capped ends.
  - c 16 ga., type 304, stainless steel panel on wall behind shelf, per detail.
- 02 Component Hardware, model KHR-1050-OSS, open body, hose reel assembly.
- 03 Component Hardware, model KL43-4050-1, mixing valve.
- 04 Component Hardware, model KVB-1045-198-CP, polished chrome, vacuum breaker assembly.
- 05 Component Hardware, model KL53-1000-BR, splash mount, pre-rinse assembly with wall bracket.
- 06 Component Hardware, model KL40-1000, mounting kit.
- 07 Two (2) Component Hardware, model KL34-8014, splash mount, faucet with 14" swing spout.
- 08 Two (2) Component Hardware, model KL40-3400, mounting kit.
- 09 Three (3) Component Hardware, model DSS-8015, lever drain assemblies.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Install pre-rinse assembly and mounting kit above collector per drawings.
- 02 Mounted hose reel assembly per drawings and details.
- 03 Install faucets and mounting kits.
- 04 Install mixing valve into bracket below table top.
- 05 Fully weld Item No. 72FD, Collector, into drainboard per drawings.
- 06 Table limit switch installed into splash of dishtable. Pre-wire switch to dishwasher.
- 07 Mount rail overshef 21" above rolled rim of sink.
- 08 Anchor dishtable to floor.

**ITEM NO. 72FD COLLECTOR**

- A One (1) - Salvajor Co., model P914, food waste collector.

B To Include:

- 01 Direction of operation per drawings.
- 02 One (1) extra scrap basket.
- 03 Stainless steel cover.
- 04 Built-in control panel with line disconnect.
- 05 Flanged feet.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Water pressure reducing valve.
- 02 Water hammer arrestor.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Install into top of Item No. 71FD, Pot Sink & Clean Dishtable.
- 02 Installation per contract documents and manufactures recommendations.
- 03 Anchor collector to floor.

**ITEM NO. 73FD PAN RACK**

- A Two (2) - Eagle Group, Quik-Set solid embossed shelving units.

B To Include:

- 01 Five (5) model HDS 24" x 42" 16 ga. stainless steel embossed shelves.
- 02 Four (4) model HDSCP74-S 74" stainless steel posts. Modify post height to 72".
- 03 Four (4) model CAHW4-SB 5" dia. polymer tired casters, two (2) with brakes.

C Special Instructions:

- 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF and all others 17" O.C.

**ITEM NO. 74FD JANITOR'S SHELVING**

- A One (1) - Eagle Group, "QuadTruss" with "EAGLEgard" epoxy finish. Each section free standing with five (5) shelves and four (4) 86" posts.
- B Each section to include:
  - 01 Two (2) QuadTruss shelves.
  - 02 Three (3) Quad-Adjust shelves.
  - 03 Four (4) posts.
- C Sections:
  - 01 One (1) 14" x 42".
- D Special Instructions:
  - 01 Set bottom shelf 10" AFF and all others 17" O.C.
  - 02 Set Quad-Truss shelves top and bottom all others shelves Quad-Adjust.

**ITEM NO. 75FD WALL SHELF W/ MOP HANGERS**

- A One (1) - Eagle Group, model USO830-16/3 MOD.
- B To Include:
  - 01 16 ga. type 304 stainless steel construction.
  - 02 Wall brackets welded to shelf.
  - 03 Three (3) mop hangers.
  - 04 Two (2) hooks.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Set shelf bottom edge 72" AFF.

**FINE DINING BAR**

**ITEM NO. 01FB BAR**

- A One (1) - By Division 06.

**ITEM NO. 02FB SPEED GUN**

- A Two (2) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 03FB CASH REGISTER**

- A Two (2) - By Owner.

**ITEM NO. 04FB CASHIER'S STAND**

- A Two (2) - Glastender, model PCB-24 .

- B To include:
  - 01 Hinge door per drawings.

**ITEM NO. 05FB BAR STATION**

- A One (1) - Glastender, bar station, configuration per drawings. Consisting of the following components.
- B To include:
  - 01 Model DBA-12 drainboard.
  - 02 Model IBA-36-CP10, ice chest with built-in ten (10) circuit cold plate.

- 03 Two (2) BW3 bottle wells with sliding cover.
- 04 Model DBA-12 drainboard.
- 05 Model BSA-12, blender station with sink, drain and junction box for duplex GFI receptacle.
- 06 Model DBG-24-RS glass rack storage with drainboard top and sliding intermediate and bottom shelves.
- 07 Model SSR-48 speed rail.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Component Hardware, model KL45-4006-SE1, splash mount, faucet with 6" swing spout.
- 02 Mount 120V-1ph, 20A, GFI duplex receptacle into junction box below blender shelf.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Join sections together as one unitized integral bar station per drawings.
- 02 Assemble sections, as shown on drawings, into single unit using common leg. Minimize number of legs.
- 03 Submit shop drawing of single unit bar station. Coordinate drawing with bar die and top.

**ITEM NO. 06FB GLASSWASHER**

- A One (1) - Champion, model CG, Clockwise rotation.

B To Include:

- 01 Stainless steel top, front and side panels.
- 02 Front access door.
- 03 Fully automatic.
- 04 Regulated electric heat (3.0KW).
- 05 Detergent, sanitizer and rinse aid pumps.
- 06 Drain tray and waste collector.
- 07 Water pressure reducing valve.
- 08 Water hammer arrestor.
- 09 Eighteen (18) months parts and labor warranty from date of start-up. Warranty to include round trip drive time to jobsite.

**ITEM NO. 07FB BAR STATION**

- A One (1) - Glastender, bar station, configuration per drawings. Consisting of the following components.

B To include:

- 01 Model HSA-12-D hand sink with soap dispenser, towel dispenser and drain.
- 02 Model DBG-24-RS glass rack storage with drainboard top and sliding intermediate and bottom shelves.
- 03 Model BSA-12, blender station with sink, drain and junction box for duplex GFI receptacle.
- 04 Model DBA-12 drainboard.
- 05 Model IBA-36-CP10, ice chest with built-in ten (10) circuit cold plate.
- 06 Two (2) BW3 bottle wells with sliding cover.
- 07 Model DBA-12 drainboard.
- 08 Model SSR-48 speed rail.

C Ancillary Equipment:

- 01 Two (2) Component Hardware, model KL45-4006-SE1, splash mount, faucet with 6" swing spout.
- 02 Mount 120V-1ph, 20A, GFI duplex receptacle into junction box below blender shelf.

D Special Instructions:

- 01 Join sections together as one unitized integral bar station per drawings.
- 02 Assemble sections, as shown on drawings, into single unit using common leg. Minimize number of legs.
- 03 Submit shop drawing of single unit bar station. Coordinate drawing with bar die and top.

**ITEM NO. 08FB BACK-BAR**

- A One (1) - By Division 06.



**ITEM NO. 09FB BACK-BAR REFRIGERATOR**

- A Glastender, model BB84, self-contained.
- B To include:
  - 01 Stainless steel top.
  - 02 Stainless steel finish on front and door.
  - 03 Black vinyl finish on sides.
  - 04 Stainless steel interior finish.
  - 05 Hinge door per drawing.
  - 06 Door lock. Key all locks alike.
  - 07 Compressor location per drawing.
  - 08 4" dia. caster set.
- C Special Instructions:
  - 01 Coordinate caster height with construction of Item No. 08FB, Back-Bar.
  - 02 Install into base of Item No. 08FB, Back-Bar.
  - 03 Coordinate installation with Millwork Contractor.

**ITEM NO. 10FB NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 11FB BEER SYSTEM**

- A One (1) lot - Chill-Rite. Included in Item No. 13CB, Beer System.
- B Special Instructions:
  - 01 Include parts, accessories, and fittings for complete installation of Tee Tower.
  - 02 Stainless Steel Tee Tower Dispensing Kit shipped loose for field installation.
  - 03 Install into top of Item No. 08FB, Back-Bar.
  - 04 Install drip tray per manufactures recommendations.
  - 05 Coordinate installation with Millwork Contractor.

**ITEM NO. 12FB MUG CHILLER**

- A One (1) - Glastender, model MF36-S2 .
- B To include:
  - 01 Stainless steel exterior finish.
  - 02 Stainless steel interior finish.
  - 03 Two (2) wire shelves.
  - 04 2" dia. caster set.

**ITEM NO. 13FB NUMBER NOT USED**

**ITEM NO. 14FB BACK-BAR REFRIGERATOR**

- A Glastender, model BB84, self-contained.
- B To include:
  - 01 Stainless steel top.
  - 02 Stainless steel finish on front and door.
  - 03 Black vinyl finish on sides.
  - 04 Stainless steel interior finish.
  - 05 Hinge door per drawing.
  - 06 Door lock. Key all locks alike.
  - 07 Compressor location per drawing.
  - 08 4" dia. caster set.

- C Special Instructions:
- 01 Coordinate caster height with construction of Item No. 08FB, Back-Bar.
  - 02 Install into base of Item No. 08FB, Back-Bar.
  - 03 Coordinate installation with Millwork Contractor.

**ITEM NO. 15FB WINE COOLER**

A One (1) - Glastender, model FV24, self-contained.

- B To include:
- 01 Stainless steel finish top.
  - 02 Stainless steel finish on front and door.
  - 03 Stainless steel finish on sides.
  - 04 Stainless steel interior finish.
  - 05 Hinge door per drawing.
  - 06 Door lock. Key all locks alike.
  - 07 Front breathing refrigeration.
  - 08 2-1/2" dia. caster set.

- C Special Instructions:
- 01 Restrain excess cord length.
  - 02 Coordinate caster height with construction of Item No. 01 FB, Bar.
  - 03 Install under top of Item No. 01FB, Bar.
  - 04 Coordinate installation with Millwork Contractor.

**2.16 ALTERNATE EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURERS**

- A The following list of manufacturers are approved as alternates to equipment items specified. Alternate or Substituted equipment must comply with Article 1.6 Substitutions in this Section.

**CASINO BAR**

**ITEM NO. 01CB STORAGE SHELVING**

A. InterMetro Industries Corp.

**ITEM NO. 08CB DRAINBOARD W/ GLASS RINSER**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 09CB BACK-BAR REFRIGERTOR**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 11CB MUG CHILLER**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 13CB BEER SYSTEM**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 15CB CASHIER'S STAND**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 17CB BAR STATION**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 18CB BAR STATION**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 19CB BAR STATION**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 22CB GLASSWASHER**

A. Moyer Diebel

**ITEM NO. 23CB BAR STATION**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 24CB COCKTAIL STATION**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 28CB ICE MAKER**

A. Ice-O-Matic

**EMPLOYEE DINING ROOM**

**ITEM NO. 03ED SERVING COUNTER**

A. Eagle Group

**ITEM NO. 05ED UNDERCOUNTER REFRIGERATOR**

A. Traulsen

**GRAB-N-GO**

**ITEM NO. 01GG WALK-IN COOLER / FREEZER**

A. Bally

**ITEM NO. 02GG WALK-IN SHELVING**

A. InterMetro Industries Corp.

**ITEM NO. 03GG STORAGE SHELVING**

A. InterMetro Industries Corp.

**ITEM NO. 04GG STORAGE SHELVING**

A. InterMetro Industries Corp.

**ITEM NO. 06GG MOBILE SLICER STAND**

A. Custom Fabricated

**ITEM NO. 07GG SLICER**

A. Globe Equipment Company

**ITEM NO. 09GG MOBILE MIXER STAND**

A. Custom Fabricated

**ITEM NO. 11GG 20 QUART MIXER**

A. Globe Equipment Company

**ITEM NO. 12GG MOBILE COOLING RACK**

A. Carter Hoffmann

**ITEM NO. 13GG MOBILE HEATED CABINET**

A. Carter Hoffmann

**ITEM NO. 16GG 10 QUART KETTLE W/ STAND & DRAIN CART**

A. Cleveland

**ITEM NO. 17GG 30 GALLON TILTING SKILLET**

A. Cleveland

**ITEM NO. 18GG MOBILE CONVECTION OVEN**

A. South Bend (Marathoner Gold)

**ITEM NO. 19GG COMBI OVEN**

A. Alto-Shaam

**ITEM NO. 22GG SALAMANDER BROILER**

A. Jade Range

**ITEM NO. 23GG MOBILE RANGE**

A. Jade Range

**ITEM NO. 24GG MOBILE REFRIGERATED EQUIPMENT STAND**

A. Traulsen

**ITEM NO. 25GG MOBILE GRIDDLE**

A. Lang Manufacturing

**ITEM NO. 26GG MOBILE REFRIGERATED EQUIPMENT STAND**

A. Traulsen

**ITEM NO. 27GG MOBILE CHAR-BROILER**

A. Bakers Pride (Dante Series)

**ITEM NO. 28GG MOBILE FRYER BANK**

A. Frymaster

**ITEM NO. 29GG FREEZER**

A. Traulsen

**ITEM NO. 31GG MOBILE REFRIGERATED MAKE TABLE**

A. Traulsen

**ITEM NO. 32GG MICROWAVE OVEN**

A. Accelerated Cooking Products

**ITEM NO. 33GG CONVEYOR TOASTER**

A. Star Manufacturing

**ITEM NO. 35GG DRAWER WARMER**

A. Wells Bloomfield

**ITEM NO. 36GG TOASTER**

A. Toastmaster

**ITEM NO. 45GG UNDERCOUNTER REFRIGERATOR**

A. Traulsen

**ITEM NO. 47GG REFRIGERATED DISPLAY CASE**

A. RPI Industries

**ITEM NO. 65GG DISHWASHER W/ BOOSTER HEATER**

A. Hobart

**ITEM NO. 68GG PAN RACK**

A. Market Forge

**ITEM NO. 69GG JANITOR'S SHELVING**

A. InterMetro Industries Corp.

**ITEM NO. 71GG WALL SHELF W/ MOP HANGERS**

A. General Accessory Manufacturing

**BANQUET KITCHEN**

**ITEM NO. 01BQ WALK-IN COOLER / FREEZER**

A. Bally

**ITEM NO. 02BQ WALK-IN COOLER**

A. Bally

**ITEM NO. 03BQ POT SINK**

A. Hobart

**ITEM NO. 06BQ WALK-IN SHELVING**

A. InterMetro Industries Corp.

**ITEM NO. 07BQ SHELVING**

A. InterMetro Industries Corp.

**ITEM NO. 09BQ PAN RACK**

A. Market Forge

**ITEM NO. 41BQ DISHWASHER W/ BOOSTER HEATER**

A. Hobart

**ITEM NO. 42BQ SOILED DISHTABLE**

A. Custom Fabricated

**ITEM NO. 43BQ DISHWASHER W/ BOOSTER HEATER**

A. Hobart

**ITEM NO. 44BQ CLEAN DISHTABLE**

A. Custom Fabricated

**ITEM NO. 53BQ JANITOR'S SHELVING**

A. InterMetro Industries Corp.

**ITEM NO. 54BQ WALL SHELF W/ MOP HANGERS**

A. General Accessory Manufacturing

**ITEM NO. 55BQ ICE MAKER**

A. Ice-O-Matic

**WAREHOUSE**

**ITEM NO. 03WH WALK-IN COOLER**

A. Bally

**ITEM NO. 04WH WALK-IN SHELVING**

A. InterMetro Industries Corp.

**ITEM NO. 05WH DUNNAGE RACK**

A. Channel Manufacturing

**ITEM NO. 06WH WALK-IN SHELVING**

A. InterMetro Industries Corp.

**ITEM NO. 07WH KEG RACK**

A. Channel Manufacturing

**FINE DINING**

**ITEM NO. 01FD WALK-IN COOLER / FREEZER**

A. Bally

**ITEM NO. 02FD WALK-IN SHELVING**

A. InterMetro Industries Corp.

**ITEM NO. 03FD STORAGE SHELVING**

A. InterMetro Industries Corp.

**ITEM NO. 04FD MOBILE COOLING RACK**

A. Carter Hoffmann

**ITEM NO. 05FD MOBILE SLICER STAND**

A. Custom Fabricated

**ITEM NO. 06FD SLICER**

A. Globe Equipment Company

**ITEM NO. 08FD MOBILE MIXER STAND**

A. Custom Fabricated

**ITEM NO. 09FD 20 QUART MIXER**

A. Globe Equipment Company

**ITEM NO. 12FD STORAGE SHELVING**

A. InterMetro Industries Corp.

**ITEM NO. 15FD 10 QUART KETTLE W/ STAND & DRAIN CART**

A. Cleveland

**ITEM NO. 16FD MOBILE RANGE**

A. Jade Range

**ITEM NO. 17FD COMBI OVEN**

A. Alto-Shaam

**ITEM NO. 18FD STEAMER**

A. Cleveland

**ITEM NO. 19FD MOBILE HEATED CABINET**

A. Carter Hoffmann

**ITEM NO. 22FD SALAMANDER BROILER**

A. Jade Range

**ITEM NO. 23FD MOBILE RANGE**

A. Jade Range

**ITEM NO. 24FD MOBILE REFRIGERATED EQUIPMENT STAND**

A. Traulsen

**ITEM NO. 25FD MOBILE GRIDDLE**

A. Lang Manufacturing

**ITEM NO. 26FD MOBILE CHAR-BROILER**

A. Bakers Pride (Dante Series)



**ITEM NO. 28FD MOBILE FRYER BANK**

A. Frymaster

**ITEM NO. 29FD FREEZER**

A. Traulsen

**ITEM NO. 31FD PASS-THRU REFRIGERATOR**

A. Traulsen

**ITEM NO. 33FD DRAWER WARMER**

A. Wells Bloomfield

**ITEM NO. 34FD TOASTER**

A. Toastmaster

**ITEM NO. 35FD MOBILE REFRIGERATED MAKE TABLE**

A. Traulsen

**ITEM NO. 39FD MOBILE REFRIGERATED MAKE TABLE**

A. Traulsen

**ITEM NO. 48FD UNDERCOUNTER REFRIGERATOR**

A. Traulsen

**ITEM NO. 49FD MICROWAVE / CONVECTION OVEN**

A. Merrychef

**ITEM NO. 51FD MOBILE HEATED CABINET**

A. Carter Hoffmann

**ITEM NO. 56FD MOBILE RACK DOLLY**

A. Carlisle

**ITEM NO. 59FD ICE MAKER**

A. Ice-O-Matic

**ITEM NO. 69FD DISHWASHER W/ BOOSTER HEATER**

A. Hobart

**ITEM NO. 73FD PAN RACK**

A. Market Forge

**ITEM NO. 74FD JANITOR'S SHELVING**

A. InterMetro Industries Corp.

**ITEM NO. 75FD WALL SHELF W/ MOP HANGERS**

A. General Accessory Manufacturing

**FINE DINING BAR**

**ITEM NO. 04FB CASHIER'S STAND**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 05FB BAR STATION**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 06FB GLASSWASHER**

A. Moyer Diebel

**ITEM NO. 07FB BAR STATION**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 09FB BACK-BAR REFRIGERTOR**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 12FB MUG CHILLER**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 14FB BACK-BAR REFRIGERTOR**

A. Perlick Corporation

**ITEM NO. 15FB WINE COOLER**

A. Perlick Corporation

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 DELIVERY AND INSTALLATION**

A. Supervision:

- 01 Provide a competent foreman or supervisor who shall remain on the job during all phases of installation.
- 02 Foreman shall have the technical expertise to oversee erection of equipment and coordinate with other trades regarding connections, installation and inspections.

- B. Delivery:
- 01 Coordinate with progress of construction and schedule of Owner's operation. The following procedures apply unless instructed and documented by Owner or General Contractor.
  - 02 Foodservice Equipment:
    - a Delivered in factory fabricated containers designed to protect equipment and finish until final installation.
  - 03 Field-Assembled Fixed Equipment:
    - a Delivered to the job-site when directed by the General Contractor and installed/protected accordingly.
  - 04 Fixed Equipment:
    - a Delivered after completion of work on finished ceilings, lighting, finished floor and wall systems, including painting.
  - 05 Movable Equipment:
    - a Delivered to inventory in secured area for job-site storage or when fixed equipment installation and clean-up has been completed.
  - 06 Minor appliances and loose items delivered only when Owner is prepared to receive and inventory such items.
- C. Installation:
- 01 Performed by technicians skilled in field welding, finishing and adjustment of equipment to fit field conditions in accordance with best standards of the industry.
  - 02 Assemble, square, level and make ready for final utilities connections.
  - 03 Provide sanitary conditions when cutting around obstructions.
  - 04 Sealants:
    - a Apply General Electric construction sealant Series SE-1200 silicone mastic (clear color).
    - b Insert backer rod at 1/8" gaps or as required.
    - c Mask both sides of gap before applying sealant and remove excess for a neat application.
    - d Smoothly apply sealant at all equipment splashes adjacent to walls and other equipment.
  - 05 Trim:
    - a When gaps exceed 1/4", install 18 gauge stainless steel trim molding of proper shape with concealed attachment.
    - b Use epoxy cement or "zee" clips to secure stainless steel trim.
    - c Radius exposed corners and smooth edges of trim.
    - d Reduce gaps to a minimum and seal.
  - 06 Anchoring:
    - a Comply with NSF and local health department requirements when anchoring equipment to floor.
    - b All anchoring methods must allow easy cleaning of equipment.
    - c Install stainless steel acorn head nuts on exposed bolt threads.
    - d Provide stainless steel bolts or screws with pan shaped heads.
- D. Protection of Work:
- 01 Fabricated Fixtures:
    - a Adhere fiberboard or twin wall corrugated board to tops and exposed body panels/components.
  - 02 Manufactured Equipment:
    - a Adhere fiberboard or twin wall corrugated board to equipment as required by shape and installation requirements.

- 03 Unauthorized Use Of Equipment:
  - a Using equipment for tool and materials storage, workbench, scaffold or stacking area.
- 04 Damaged Equipment:
  - a Document and submit to Owner a recommendation of action for repair or replacement.
  - b Detail impact on Project Schedule and any changes to the Contract Amount.

### **3. 2 CLEAN AND ADJUST**

- A. Clean / Restore Finishes:
  - 01 Clean up and remove all debris from the job site, resulting from work as installation progresses.
  - 02 After completion of installation, and other major work in Foodservice Areas, remove protective coverings and thoroughly clean (interior/exterior) all Foodservice Equipment.
  - 03 Wash/clean equipment and leave in a condition ready for Owners use and sanitation.
  - 04 Restore exposed finishes, remove abrasions and polish exposed metal surfaces.
  - 05 Touch-up damage to painted finishes.
  - 06 Clean and polish (interior/exterior) all Foodservice Equipment ready for use prior to demonstration and final observation.
- B. Adjustment:
  - 01 Lubricate and adjust drawer slides, hinges, casters.
  - 02 Clean or replace faucet aerators and line strainers.
  - 03 Adjust pressure regulating valves, timed-delay relays, thermostatic controls, temperature sensors and ventilator grilles.
  - 04 Start up, adjust and check operation of all Foodservice Equipment prior to demonstration and final observation.
  - 05 Start up and check operation of all refrigeration systems for at least 72 hours prior to acceptance.

### **3. 3 EQUIPMENT START-UP/DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Start-Up:
  - 01 Test, adjust and regulate equipment in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
  - 02 Provide Authorized Service Agent start-up for equipment when available.
  - 03 Certify in writing to the Owner that the installation, adjustments and performance are in compliance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Demonstration:
  - 01 Provide Owner or Foodservice Operators with a thorough operational demonstration of all equipment.
  - 02 Provide detailed instruction in the care and maintenance of equipment.
  - 03 Coordinate the scheduling of selected equipment items with attendees and Owner at least two weeks in advance of demonstration periods.

### **3. 4 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

- A. Submission:
  - 01 Submit three (3) sets bound in hardback, three-ring binders (quantity per Contract Documents) at completion of installation.

- B. Format:
- 01 Cover:
    - a Label cover with manual title and project name.
  - 02 Table of Contents:
    - a Provide Table of Contents listing equipment item number, equipment description and manufacture.
    - b Equipment not requiring operating, parts or maintenance manuals need not be included.
  - 03 Tab Divider:
    - a Provide a tab divider for each manufacture of equipment provided on this project.
    - b Divider to include manufacture's name, operation, maintenance and parts manuals for all equipment of same manufacture.
    - c Place equipment item number, as indicated in the contract documents, on corresponding equipment manuals.
  - 04 Service Directories:
    - a Manual to include a list of equipment and its respective local service agent.
    - b Service agent must be located within 50 miles of project site.
    - c Provide address, telephone number, E-mail address, web site address and name of person to contact.
    - d Service agencies selected shall be factory-authorized for equipment assigned.
  - 05 Required Information:
    - a Manual to include equipment manufacturer's operating/maintenance instructions, replacement parts data and price lists.
    - b Include assemblies and components built into other equipment.
    - c Provide name and address of each respective manufacturer to be contacted for spare or replacement parts after Warranty period.
    - d Provide video tapes and/or CD's for maintenance, training, operation, etc, where available from the manufacturer.

### **3. 5 FINAL OBSERVATION**

- A. Final observation will be made when the Contractor has certified that he has completed his work, reviewed the installation/ operation of each item and found it to be in compliance with the Construction Documents.
- B. Repetitive final observations incurred due to the Contractor's failure to comply with requirements of this Article may be invoiced to this Contractor at Consultant's standard hourly rates.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 22 05 13

### COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

##### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

##### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

##### 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## **2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers:
1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

## **2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS**

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  2. Split phase.
  3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.



- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)**

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 22 05 16

### EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
  - 2. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
  - 3. Rubber packless expansion joints.
  - 4. Grooved-joint expansion joints.
  - 5. Pipe loops and swing connections.
  - 6. Alignment guides and anchors.

##### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
  - 2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
  - 3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
  - 4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating,

end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

## **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of expansion joint, from manufacturer.

## **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

## **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 2. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS**

- A. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
    - b. Flexicraft Industries.
    - c. Flex Pression Ltd.
    - d. Metraflex, Inc.
    - e. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 2. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
  - 3. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
  - 4. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.
    - a. Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
    - b. Bronze hoses and double-braid bronze sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 500 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
  - 5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.

- a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
  - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 420 psig at 70 deg F and 315 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Stainless-steel fittings with threaded end connections.
- a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 325 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
  - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 515 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Stainless-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
- a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F and 145 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
  - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 275 psig at 70 deg F and 200 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
8. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 8 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
- a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F and 90 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
  - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

## 2.2 GROOVED-JOINT EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
- 1. Victaulic Company.
- B. Description: Packless, gasketed, type with grooved end telescoping body, suitable for axial end movement to 3". 350 psi (2410 kPa). Victaulic Style 150 Mover®.
- C. Description: Factory-assembled expansion joint made of several grooved-end pipe nipples, couplings, and grooved joints.
- 1. Standard: AWWA C606, for grooved joints.
  - 2. Nipples: Galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, steel pipe with grooved ends.
  - 3. Couplings: Five, flexible type for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM gasket suitable for cold and hot water, and bolts and nuts.
  - 4. UL classified in accordance with ANSI / NSF-61 for potable water service, and shall be certified to the low lead requirements of NSF-372.

## 2.3 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

### A. Alignment Guides:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Adesco Manufacturing LLC.
  - b. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
  - c. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
  - d. Flexicraft Industries.
  - e. Flex-Weld, Inc.
  - f. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
  - g. Metraflex, Inc.
  - h. Senior Flexonics Pathway.
  - i. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
  - j. U.S. Bellows, Inc.
2. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two- section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

### B. Anchor Materials:

1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
  - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
  - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
  - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
  - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.

- b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud unless otherwise indicated.
- c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION**

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.
- B. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
- C. Install rubber packless expansion joints according to FSA-NMEJ-702.
- D. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping

### **3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION**

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings including tee in main.
- C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in riser.
- D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in main.
- E. For water systems, Victaulic flexible couplings may be used to accommodate thermal contraction and expansion, and may be used in lieu of welded expansion loops with approval of the engineer. Where loops are required, use flexible type couplings on the loops.

### **3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION**

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install one guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
  - 1. Anchor Attachment to Black-Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

2. Anchor Attachment to Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 42, riser clamp welded to anchor.
  3. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24, U-bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
  2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 22 05 17

### SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
  - 5. Grout.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

##### 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.

2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

### **2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  2. CALPICO, Inc.
  3. Metraflex Company (The).
  4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  5. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

### **2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS**

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Presealed Systems.
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

### **2.5 GROUT**

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1 inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### **3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
  - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### **3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### **3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### **3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE**

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves Sleeve-seal fittings.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
  - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

- 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
5. Interior Partitions:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 22 05 18

### ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

##### 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.

- b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
  - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
  - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
  - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
  - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
- a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
  - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
  - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
  - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
  - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.



- j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

### **3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 22 05 19

### METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
2. Filled-system thermometers.
3. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
4. Light-activated thermometers.
5. Thermowells.
6. Dial-type pressure gages.
7. Gage attachments.
8. Test plugs.
9. Test-plug kits.
10. Sight flow indicators.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for fire-protection water-service meters outside the building.
2. Section 211200 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes" for fire protection pressure gages.
3. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems"
4. Section 211316 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for fire protection pressure gages.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

##### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.

##### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS**

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Ashcroft Inc.
  - 2. Ernst Flow Industries.
  - 3. Marsh Bellofram.
  - 4. Miljoco Corporation.
  - 5. Nanmac Corporation.
  - 6. Noshok.
  - 7. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
  - 8. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
  - 9. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
  - 10. Terice, H. O. Co.
  - 11. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 12. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - 13. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
  - 14. Winters Instruments - U.S.
- B. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- C. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch nominal diameter.
- D. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F and deg C.
- E. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- F. Connector Size: 1/2 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- G. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch in diameter; stainless steel.
- H. Window: Plain glass.
- I. Ring: Stainless steel.
- J. Element: Bimetal coil.
- K. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.

- L. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

## 2.2 FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

### A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Ashcroft Inc.
  - b. Marsh Bellofram.
  - c. Miljoco Corporation.
  - d. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
  - e. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
  - f. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - g. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
5. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.
9. Ring: Metal.
10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1percent of scale range.

### B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Ashcroft Inc.
  - b. Miljoco Corporation.
  - c. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.

2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.
9. Ring: Metal.
10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1percent of scale range.

### **2.3 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS**

#### **A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:**

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Terice, H. O. Co.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Cast aluminum; 6-inch nominal size.
4. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
7. Window: Glass or plastic.
8. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

## 2.4 THERMOWELLS

### A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

### B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

## 2.5 PRESSURE GAGES

### A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
  - b. Ashcroft Inc.
  - c. Ernst Flow Industries.
  - d. Flo Fab Inc.
  - e. Marsh Bellofram.
  - f. Miljoco Corporation.
  - g. Noshok.
  - h. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
  - i. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
  - j. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
  - k. Terice, H. O. Co.
  - l. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

- m. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - n. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
  - o. Winters Instruments - U.S.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  3. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
  4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
  8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  9. Window: Glass.
  10. Ring: Metal.
  11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
  - b. Ashcroft Inc.
  - c. Flo Fab Inc.
  - d. Marsh Bellofram.
  - e. Miljoco Corporation.
  - f. Noshok.
  - g. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
  - h. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
  - i. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
  - j. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - k. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - l. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.



2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

## **2.6 GAGE ATTACHMENTS**

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass ball, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## **2.7 TEST PLUGS**

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:
  1. Flow Design, Inc.
  2. Miljoco Corporation.
  3. National Meter, Inc.
  4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
  5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- F. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic-self-sealing rubber.

## 2.8 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:
1. Flow Design, Inc.
  2. Miljoco Corporation.
  3. National Meter, Inc.
  4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
  5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- B. Furnish one test-plug kit containing one thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.
- D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.
- E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch-diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.
- F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

## 2.9 SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Archon Industries, Inc.
  2. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
  3. Emerson Process Management; Brooks Instrument.
  4. Ernst Co., John C., Inc.
  5. Ernst Flow Industries.
  6. KOBOLD Instruments, Inc. - USA; KOBOLD Messring GmbH.
  7. OPW Engineered Systems; a Dover company.
  8. Penberthy; A Brand of Tyco Valves & Controls - Prophetstown.
- B. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.

- C. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.
- D. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
- E. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F.
- F. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
- G. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches into fluid and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- H. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- J. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- K. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
  - 2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
  - 3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
  - 4. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.
- L. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
  - 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

### **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

### **3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE**

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
  - 3. Compact-style, liquid-in-glass type.
  - 4. Direct-mounted, light-activated type.
  - 5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger shall be the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
  - 3. Compact-style, liquid-in-glass type.
  - 4. Direct-mounted, light-activated type.
  - 5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
  - 3. Compact-style, liquid-in-glass type.
  - 4. Direct-mounted, light-activated type.
  - 5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.
- D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller shall be the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
  - 3. Compact -style, liquid-in-glass type.

4. Direct-mounted, light-activated type.
  5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.
- E. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

### **3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE**

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- C. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C.
- D. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.
- E. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.
- F. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C.
- G. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C.
- H. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.

### **3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE**

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be the following:
  1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
  2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
  3. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be the following:
  1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
  2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
  3. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be the following:
  1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
  2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
  3. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.

### **3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE**

- A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa.

- B. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa.
- C. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa.
- D. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa.
- E. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa.
- F. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa.
- G. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 22 05 23

### GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bronze angle valves.
  - 2. Brass ball valves.
  - 3. Bronze ball valves.
  - 4. Iron ball valves.
  - 5. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
  - 6. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
  - 7. Brass, grooved-end butterfly valves.
  - 8. Bronze lift check valves.
  - 9. Bronze swing check valves.
  - 10. Iron swing check valves.
  - 11. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
  - 12. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
  - 13. Iron, center-guided check valves.
  - 14. Iron, plate-type check valves.
  - 15. Bronze gate valves.
  - 16. Iron gate valves.
  - 17. Bronze globe valves.
  - 18. Iron globe valves.
  - 19. Lubricated plug valves.
  - 20. Chainwheels.

- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
  - 2. Section 221113 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
  - 3. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
  - 4. Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for valves applicable only to this piping.

### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.

### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
  - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service, and shall meet the low-lead requirements of NSF-61.

### **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:



1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
  4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
  5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
  6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
1. Maintain valve end protection.
  2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES**

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
  2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller.
  4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
  5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.

2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606, or to copper-tube dimensions.
3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

## 2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Hammond Valve.
  - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
  - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze.

B. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.

- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - b. Kitz Corporation.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union- ring bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
  - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

D. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.

- g. Powell Valves.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union- ring bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

### **2.3 BRASS BALL VALVES**

- A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kitz Corporation.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. Body Design: One piece.
    - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - g. Stem: Brass.
    - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - i. Port: Reduced.

### **2.4 BRONZE BALL VALVES**

- A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
  - c. Body Design: One piece.
  - d. Body Material: Bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - g. Stem: Bronze.
  - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - i. Port: Reduced.

## 2.5 IRON BALL VALVES

- A. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
    - c. Kitz Corporation.
    - d. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
    - e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Split body.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.

- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel.
- i. Port: Full.

## 2.6 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

### A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum- Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - c. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - f. DeZurik Water Controls.
  - g. Flo Fab Inc.
  - h. Hammond Valve.
  - i. Kitz Corporation.
  - j. Legend Valve.
  - k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - l. NIBCO INC.
  - m. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
  - n. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - o. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
  - p. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: EPDM.
  - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
  - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.
- B. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum- Bronze Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
    - c. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
    - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - f. DeZurik Water Controls.
    - g. Flo Fab Inc.
    - h. Hammond Valve.
    - i. Kitz Corporation.
    - j. Legend Valve.
    - k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - l. NIBCO INC.
    - m. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
    - n. Red-White Valve Corporation.
    - o. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
    - p. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: NBR.
  - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
  - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

C. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. American Valve, Inc.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - d. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
  - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Center Line.
  - f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - g. DeZurik Water Controls.
  - h. Flo Fab Inc.
  - i. Hammond Valve.
  - j. Kitz Corporation.
  - k. Legend Valve.
  - l. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - m. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
  - n. NIBCO INC.
  - o. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
  - p. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.



- q. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
- r. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.

D. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. American Valve, Inc.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - d. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
  - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Center Line.
  - f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - g. DeZurik Water Controls.
  - h. Flo Fab Inc.
  - i. Hammond Valve.
  - j. Kitz Corporation.
  - k. Legend Valve.
  - l. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - m. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
  - n. NIBCO INC.
  - o. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.

- p. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
- q. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
- r. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: NBR.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.

E. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless- Steel Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. American Valve, Inc.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - d. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
  - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - g. DeZurik Water Controls.
  - h. Flo Fab Inc.
  - i. Hammond Valve.
  - j. Kitz Corporation.
  - k. Legend Valve.
  - l. Milwaukee Valve Company.

- m. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
- n. NIBCO INC.
- o. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
- p. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- q. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
- r. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
- s. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Stainless steel.

F. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Stainless- Steel Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABZ Valves and Controls; A div. of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. American Valve, Inc.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - d. Cooper Cameron Valves; A div. of Cooper Cameron Corp.
  - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
  - g. DeZurik Water Controls.
  - h. Flo Fab Inc.
  - i. Hammond Valve.

- j. Kitz Corporation.
- k. Legend Valve.
- l. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- m. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
- n. NIBCO INC.
- o. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
- p. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- q. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
- r. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
- s. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: NBR.
  - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
  - g. Disc: Stainless steel.

## 2.7 IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Victaulic Company; Vic-300 MasterSeal.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
    - c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.

- d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
  - 1) Stem shall be offset from the disc centerline to provide complete 360-degree circumferential seating.
- e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron Aluminum-bronze.
- f. Seal: Pressure responsive EPDM.
- g. UL classified in accordance with ANSI / NSF-61 for potable water service, and shall be certified to the low lead requirements of NSF-372.

B. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Victaulic Company; Vic-300 MasterSeal.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. NPS 12 and Smaller CWP Rating: 300 psig.
  - c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron Aluminum-bronze.
  - d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
    - 1) Stem shall be offset from the disc centerline to provide complete 360-degree circumferential seating.
  - e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
  - f. Seal: Pressure responsive EPDM.
  - g. UL classified in accordance with ANSI / NSF-61 for potable water service, and shall be certified to the low lead requirements of NSF-372.

**2.8 BRASS, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES**

A. 300 CWP, Cast Brass, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Victaulic Company; Series 608N.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Ends: Manufactured to copper-tube dimensions. (Flaring the adjoining pipe or fitting ends to accommodate alternate sized couplings is not permitted.)

- b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- c. Body Material: Cast brass.
- d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
  - 2) Stem shall be offset from the disc centerline to provide complete 360-degree circumferential seating.
- e. Disc: Aluminum-bronze.
- f. Seal: Pressure responsive EPDM.
- g. UL classified in accordance with ANSI / NSF-61 for potable water service, and shall be certified to the low lead requirements of NSF-372.

## 2.9 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

### A. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: Bronze.

### B. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Flo Fab Inc.
  - b. Hammond Valve.
  - c. Kitz Corporation.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.

- f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - h. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: NBR, PTFE, or TFE.

## 2.10 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

### A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Kitz Corporation.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. NIBCO INC.
  - i. Powell Valves.
  - j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - l. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Kitz Corporation.
  - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - g. NIBCO INC.
  - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

C. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.



- e. Kitz Corporation.
- f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- g. NIBCO INC.
- h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- i. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: Bronze.

D. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

**2.11 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES**

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Kitz Corporation.
  - f. Legend Valve.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. NIBCO INC.
  - i. Powell Valves.
  - j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - k. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  - l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - m. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Bronze.
  - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.

- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Composition.
- g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
- h. Disc Holder: Bronze.
- i. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- j. Gasket: Asbestos free.

C. Class 250, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Bronze.
  - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

**2.12 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL**

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Bronze.
  - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
  - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Weight-Closure Control:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Bronze.
  - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
  - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and weight.

## **2.13 IRON, GROOVED-END SPRING-ASSISTED SWING CHECK VALVES**

- A. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Spring-Assisted Swing Check Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Victaulic Company; Series 716.
  2. Description:
    - a. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - b. Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - c. Seal: EPDM.
    - d. Disc: Spring-operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.
    - e. Suitable for vertical or horizontal installation.

## **2.14 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES**

- A. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - c. Crispin Valve.
    - d. DFT Inc.
    - e. Flo Fab Inc.
    - f. GA Industries, Inc.
    - g. Hammond Valve.
    - h. Metraflex, Inc.
    - i. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - j. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
    - k. NIBCO INC.
    - l. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
    - m. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.

- n. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  - o. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - d. Style: Compact wafer.
  - e. Seat: Bronze.
- B. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
  - b. Crispin Valve.
  - c. DFT Inc.
  - d. Flomatic Corporation.
  - e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Metraflex, Inc.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
  - i. NIBCO INC.
  - j. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
  - k. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  - l. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  - m. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.

e. Ends: Flanged.

f. Seat: Bronze.

C. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.

b. Crispin Valve.

c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.

b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.

c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.

d. Style: Compact wafer.

e. Seat: Bronze.

D. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.

b. Crispin Valve.

c. DFT Inc.

d. Flo Fab Inc.

e. Hammond Valve.

f. Metraflex, Inc.

g. Milwaukee Valve Company.

h. NIBCO INC.

i. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.

j. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.

b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.

c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.

d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.

e. Seat: Bronze.

E. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.

b. Crispin Valve.

c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.

b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.

c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.

d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.

e. Seat: Bronze.

F. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.

b. Crispin Valve.

c. DFT Inc.

d. Flo Fab Inc.

e. Hammond Valve.

f. Milwaukee Valve Company.

g. NIBCO INC.

h. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.

i. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.

j. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.

b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.



- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
- d. Style: Compact wafer.
- e. Seat: EPDM.

G. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
  - b. Crispin Valve.
  - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - d. Style: Compact wafer.
  - e. Seat: EPDM.

H. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
  - b. Crispin Valve.
  - c. DFT Inc.
  - d. Flo Fab Inc.
  - e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - g. NIBCO INC.
  - h. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  - i. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.

- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
- d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
- e. Seat: EPDM.

I. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
  - b. Crispin Valve.
  - c. DFT Inc.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Seat: EPDM.

J. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
  - b. Crispin Valve.
  - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.

- e. Seat: EPDM.

## 2.15 IRON, PLATE-TYPE CHECK VALVES

### A. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Flomatic Corporation.
  - d. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: API 594.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - e. Seat: Bronze.

### B. Class 250, Iron, Wafer, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: API 594.
  - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - e. Seat: EPDM.

### C. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.

- c. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: API 594.
  - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - e. Seat: EPDM.
- D. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM.

## **2.16 BRONZE GATE VALVES**

- A. Class 125, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - e. Hammond Valve.
    - f. Kitz Corporation.
    - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - h. NIBCO INC.
    - i. Powell Valves.

- j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- l. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Kitz Corporation.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. NIBCO INC.
  - i. Powell Valves.
  - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.

- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Class 150, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Hammond Valve.
  - b. Kitz Corporation.
  - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - d. NIBCO INC.
  - e. Powell Valves.
  - f. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union- ring bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

D. Class 150, RS Bronze Gate Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- c. Hammond Valve.
- d. Kitz Corporation.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.
- g. Powell Valves.
- h. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- i. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union- ring bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## 2.17 IRON GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Flo Fab Inc.
  - e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Kitz Corporation.
  - g. Legend Valve.

- h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- i. NIBCO INC.
- j. Powell Valves.
- k. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- m. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge.
- g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. Flo Fab Inc.
- e. Hammond Valve.
- f. Kitz Corporation.
- g. Legend Valve.
- h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- i. NIBCO INC.
- j. Powell Valves.
- k. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.



m. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge.
- g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

C. Class 250, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- c. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge.
- g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

D. Class 250, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- c. Hammond Valve.
- d. Milwaukee Valve Company.

- e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. Powell Valves.
  - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
  - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

## **2.18 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES**

- A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - c. Hammond Valve.
    - d. Kitz Corporation.
    - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - f. NIBCO INC.
    - g. Powell Valves.
    - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
    - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - j. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.

- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
  - d. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Hammond Valve.
  - c. Kitz Corporation.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. Powell Valves.
  - g. Red-White Valve Corporation.

- h. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - i. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union- ring bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## 2.19 IRON GLOBE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - d. Hammond Valve.
    - e. Kitz Corporation.
    - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - g. NIBCO INC.
    - h. Powell Valves.
    - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
    - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 250, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.20 LUBRICATED PLUG VALVES

A. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with

lubrication-sealing system.

- d. Pattern: Regular or short.
- e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

B. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
  - d. Pattern: Regular or short.
  - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

C. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
  - b. Milliken Valve Company.
  - c. R & M Energy Systems; a unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
  - d. Pattern: Regular or short.
  - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

D. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
  - b. Milliken Valve Company.
  - c. R & M Energy Systems; a unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.

2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
  - d. Pattern: Regular or short.
  - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

E. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
  - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
  - d. Pattern: Regular or short.
  - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

F. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
  - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
  - d. Pattern: Regular or short.
  - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

G. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.

- b. Milliken Valve Company.
- c. R & M Energy Systems; a unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.

- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
  - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
  - d. Pattern: Regular or short.
  - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

H. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
  - b. Milliken Valve Company.
  - c. R & M Energy Systems; a unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
  - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, Grade 40 cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
  - d. Patter: Regular or short.
  - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

**2.20 CHAINWHEELS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Babbitt Steam Specialty Co.
  - 2. Roto Hammer Industries.
  - 3. Trumbull Industries.
- B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
  - 1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.



2. Attachment: For connection to ball valve stems.
3. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron, of type and size required for valve. Include zinc coating.
4. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Examine grooved ends for form and cleanliness. Grooved ends shall be clean and free from indentations, projections, and roll marks in the area from pipe end to groove.
- F. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### **3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION**

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for ball, butterfly, gate and plug valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
- F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
  2. Center-Guided Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
  3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into

service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### **3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS**

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, or gate valves.
  - 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
  - 3. Throttling Service: ball, or butterfly valves.
  - 4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal-seat check valves.
    - c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
  - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  - 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
  - 7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing or Steel Pipe: Valve ends may be grooved.

### **3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE**

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
  - 1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
  - 2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.

3. Ball Valves: One piece, full port, brass with brass trim.
4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.
6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
3. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
4. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 300 CWP.
5. Cast Brass, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 300 CWP.
6. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
7. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring.
8. Iron, Grooved-End Spring Assisted Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
9. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125, compact-wafer, metal seat.
10. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125; single plate; metal seat.
11. Iron Gate Valves: NRS.
12. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.

### 3.6 SANITARY-WASTE VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
3. Ball Valves: One piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass bronze trim.
4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.
6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
4. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring weight.
5. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
6. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125.
7. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.
8. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125, regular gland, threaded.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 22 05 29

### HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
4. Metal framing systems.
5. Fiberglass strut systems.
6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
7. Fastener systems.
8. Pipe stands.
9. Pipe positioning systems.
10. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 220516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

##### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment.

## **1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
  - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 2. Metal framing systems.
  - 3. Fiberglass strut systems.
  - 4. Pipe stands.
  - 5. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

## **1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welding certificates.

## **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.

3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Copper Pipe Hangers:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

## **2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS**

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## **2.3 FIBERGLASS PIPE HANGERS**

- A. Clevis-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:
1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 1, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass or fiberglass-reinforced resin.
  2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of fiberglass polyurethane.
- B. Strap-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:
1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 9 or Type 10, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass-reinforced resin.
  2. Hanger Rod and Fittings: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of stainless steel.

## **2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS**

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
    - c. Flex-Strut Inc.

- d. GS Metals Corp.
  - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  - f. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
  - g. Wesanco, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
  3. Standard: MFMA-4.
  4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
  5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
  6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
  7. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc.
  8. Paint Coating: Vinyl.
  9. Plastic Coating: PVC.
- B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.
    - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
    - c. ERICO International Corporation.
    - d. Haydon Corporation; H-Strut Division.
    - e. NIBCO INC.
    - f. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
    - g. PHS Industries, Inc.
  2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
  3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
  4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
  5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
  6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
  7. Coating: Zinc.



## **2.5 FIBERGLASS STRUT SYSTEMS**

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Allied Tube & Conduit.
  - 2. Champion Fiberglass, Inc.
  - 3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
  - 4. SEASAFE, INC.; a Gibraltar Industries Company.
- B. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly similar to MFMA-4 for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
  - 1. Channels: Continuous slotted fiberglass or other plastic channel with inturned lips.
  - 2. Channel Nuts: Fiberglass nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
  - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of fiberglass.

## **2.6 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS**

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
  - 2. Clement Support Services.
  - 3. ERICO International Corporation.
  - 4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
  - 5. PHS Industries, Inc.
  - 6. Pipe Shields, Inc.; a subsidiary of Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
  - 7. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
  - 8. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - 9. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig, ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## **2.7 FASTENER SYSTEMS**

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## **2.8 PIPE STANDS**

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
  - 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  - 2. Base: Plastic.
  - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
  - 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
  - 1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  - 2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
  - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
  - 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
  - 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

## **2.9 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS**

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

## **2.10 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS**

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## **2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- E. Fiberglass Strut System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled fiberglass struts.
- F. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- G. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- H. Pipe Stand Installation:
  - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
  - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- I. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- J. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- K. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- L. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- M. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- N. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- O. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- P. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- Q. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
  - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
  - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### **3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS**

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### **3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS**

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### **3.5 PAINTING**

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
  3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
  7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.

8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.



14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- S. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 22 05 48

### VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Isolation pads.
  - 2. Isolation mounts.
  - 3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
  - 4. Freestanding spring isolators.
  - 5. Housed spring mounts.
  - 6. Elastomeric hangers.
  - 7. Spring hangers.
  - 8. Spring hangers with vertical-limit stops.
  - 9. Pipe riser resilient supports.
  - 10. Resilient pipe guides.
  - 11. Seismic snubbers.
  - 12. Restraining braces and cables.
  - 13. Steel, vibration isolation equipment bases.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.

##### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic-Restraint Loading:

1. Site Class as Defined in the IBC: A.
2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC: I.
  - a. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.
  - b. Component Response Modification Factor: 1.5.
  - c. Component Amplification Factor: 1.0.
3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second).
4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1-Second Period.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
    - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated.
    - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
  3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  1. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, seismic forces required to select vibration isolators, seismic restraints, and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  2. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system has been examined for excessive stress and that none will exist.
  3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail overall dimensions, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, base weights, equipment static loads, power transmission, component misalignment, and cantilever loads.
  4. Seismic-Restraint Details:
    - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
    - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the

structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.

- c. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

## **1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for plumbing piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

## **1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-mounting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## **1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproved by ICC-ES, or preapproved by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or a comparable product by one of the following:
  1. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.

2. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
3. California Dynamics Corporation.
4. Isolation Technology, Inc.
5. Kinetics Noise Control.
6. Mason Industries.
7. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
8. Vibration Isolation.

Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

- D. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
- E. Mount: Double-deflection type, with molded, oil-resistant rubber, hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, or neoprene isolator elements with factory-drilled, encapsulated top plate for bolting to equipment and with baseplate for bolting to structure. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
  2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- F. Restrained Mounts: All-directional mountings with seismic restraint.
1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
  2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- G. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.
1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

5. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
  6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
- H. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.
1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
  2. Restraint: Seismic or limit-stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
- I. Housed Spring Mounts: Housed spring isolator with integral seismic snubbers.
1. Housing: Ductile-iron or steel housing to provide all-directional seismic restraint.
  2. Base: Factory drilled for bolting to structure.
  3. Snubbers: Vertically adjustable to allow a maximum of 1/4-inch travel up or down before contacting a resilient collar.
- J. Elastomeric Hangers: Single or double-deflection type, fitted with molded, oil-resistant elastomeric isolator elements bonded to steel housings with threaded connections for hanger rods. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
- K. Spring Hangers: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
  7. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- L. Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression and with a vertical-limit stop.
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
  7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
  8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- M. Pipe Riser Resilient Support: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of 2 steel tubes separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch- thick neoprene. Include steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions. Design support for a maximum load on the isolation material of 500 psig and for equal resistance in all directions.
- N. Resilient Pipe Guides: Telescopic arrangement of 2 steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch- thick neoprene. Where clearances are not readily visible, a factory-set guide height with a shear pin to allow vertical motion due to pipe expansion and contraction shall be fitted. Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

## 2.2 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
  1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
  2. California Dynamics Corporation.



3. Isolation Technology, Inc.
4. Kinetics Noise Control.
5. Mason Industries.
6. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
7. Vibration Isolation.
8. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

D. Steel Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
  - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.

E. Inertia Base Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
  - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

**2.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
  2. California Dynamics Corporation.
  3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  4. Hilti, Inc.
  5. Kinetics Noise Control.
  6. Loos & Co.; Cableware Division.
  7. Mason Industries.
  8. TOLCO Incorporated; a brand of NIBCO INC.
  9. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
- D. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports.
1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- E. Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
  2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
  3. Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch- thick resilient cushion.
- F. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
- G. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized-steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
- H. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.
- I. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- J. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- K. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

- L. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
- M. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

## **2.4 FACTORY FINISHES**

- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
  - 1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
  - 2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
  - 3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
  - 4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 APPLICATIONS**

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES.
- B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

### **3.3 VIBRATION-CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION**

- A. Equipment Restraints:

1. Install seismic snubbers on plumbing equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
  2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inches.
  3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES providing required submittals for component.
- B. Piping Restraints:
1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
  2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
  3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES providing required submittals for component.
- E. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- F. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- G. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- H. Drilled-in Anchors:
1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
  5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.

6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless steel anchors for exterior applications.

### **3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION**

- A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for piping flexible connections.

### **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
  3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
  6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
  7. Measure isolator deflection.
  8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
  9. Air-Mounting System Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  10. Air-Mounting System Operational Test: Test the compressed-air leveling system.
  11. Test and adjust air-mounting system controls and safeties.
  12. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.6 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.

- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
- C. Adjust active height of sprint isolators.
- D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 22 05 53

### IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Stencils.
  - 5. Valve tags.
  - 6. Warning tags.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

##### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
  5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  2. Letter Color: Black.
  3. Background Color: Blue.
  4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
  5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  6. Minimum Letter Size: 1+4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
  8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## **2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS**

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Blue.



- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

### **2.3 PIPE LABELS**

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

### **2.4 STENCILS**

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
  - 1. Stencil Material: Aluminum.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

### **2.5 VALVE TAGS**

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
  - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.

2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## **2.6 WARNING TAGS**

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### **3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION**

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### **3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION**

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.
1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Domestic Water Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Black.
  - b. Letter Color: Blue.
2. Sanitary Waste Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Black
  - b. Letter Color: Blue.

### 3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
    - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
  2. Valve-Tag Color:
    - a. Cold Water: Green.
    - b. Hot Water: Green.
  3. Letter Color:
    - a. Cold Water: Black.
    - b. Hot Water: Black.

### **3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION**

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 22 07 16

### PLUMBING EQUIPMENT INSULATION

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing equipment:

1. Domestic water boiler breechings.
2. Domestic water, hot-water pumps.
3. Domestic water storage tanks.
4. Domestic water filter housings.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).

- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail removable insulation at equipment connections and access panels.
4. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
5. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
6. Detail field application for each equipment type.

- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:

1. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
2. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
3. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.
  - 1. Equipment Mockups: One tank or vessel, pump.
  - 2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
  - 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  - 4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
  - 5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  - 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

#### **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for equipment insulation application.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

## 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Domestic Water Boiler Breeching Insulation Schedule" and "Equipment Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Calcium Silicate:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Industrial Insulation Group (IIG); Thermo-12 Gold.
  - 2. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
- G. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.
  - 2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
  - 3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
  - 4. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.

5. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
  6. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
  7. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
    - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
    - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Sheet and K-FLEX LS.
- I. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
    - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- J. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For equipment applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; CertaPro Commercial Board.
    - b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
    - c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
    - d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
    - e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
    - f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.
- K. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100



deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
  - b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
  - c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
  - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Flex.
  - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.
- L. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Armacell LLC; Tubolit.
    - b. Nomaco Insulation; IMCOLOCK, IMCOSHEET, NOMALOCK, and NOMAPLY.

## **2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS**

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Thermokote V.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

## **2.3 ADHESIVES**

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-97.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 290.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-27.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-30.
  - e. Vimasco Corporation; 760.
- 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-84.
  - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aero seal.
    - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
    - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
  - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
    - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
    - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
  1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
    - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.

- b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
- c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
- 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over insulation.
- 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
- 5. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

### A. Joint Sealants:

- 1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  - e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
- 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
- 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
- 5. Color: White or gray.
- 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.

- d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  - 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  - 5. Color: Aluminum.
  - 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
  - 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  - 5. Color: White.
  - 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
- 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  - 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  - 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  - 4. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - 1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.
- 5. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - 1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.
- 6. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - 1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

## **2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH**

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. for covering equipment.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas No. 5.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for equipment.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

## **2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS**

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

## **2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS**

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.



- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
    - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
    - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
  2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  3. Color: White.
  4. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.
- C. Metal Jacket:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
    - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
    - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
  2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
    - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
    - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
    - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
    - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.

## 2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
    - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
    - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
  2. Width: 2 inches.

3. Thickness: 6 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 500 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
    - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
  2. Width: 2 inches.
  3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 5 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.
- E. PVDC Tape: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Tape and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Tape.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Film Thickness: 4 mils.
  4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
  5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.12 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
    - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
  2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.

3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
    - 2) GEMCO; CD.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
    - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CHP-1.
    - 2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
    - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.
3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
    - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

- d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - 1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.
    - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
  - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Self-Adhering Insul-Hangers.
    - 2) GEMCO; Peel & Press.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.
  - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC 150.
    - 2) GEMCO; R-150.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
    - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.

- b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- 7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) GEMCO.
    - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. C & F Wire.

### 2.13 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.
- C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140

and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
  - D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at [2 inches] [4 inches] o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- O. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
  2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  3. Nameplates and data plates.
  4. Manholes.
  5. Handholes.
  6. Cleanouts.

### **3.4 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION**

- A. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe, and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
  2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
  3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
  4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:



- a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
  - b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
  - c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
  - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
  - e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
  - f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
  - g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
  6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
  7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
  8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
  9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
  10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.
1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pumps:
1. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-

inch- diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a latching mechanism.

2. Fabricate boxes from galvanized steel at least 0.040 inch thick.
3. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

### **3.5 INSTALLATION OF CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION**

- A. Insulation Installation on Domestic Water Boiler Breechings:
1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation material.
  2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
  3. On exposed applications without metal jacket, finish insulation surface with a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

### **3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION**

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### **3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION**

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
  2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
  3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
  2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
  3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
  5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.
- E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:
  1. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. 33-1/2-inch-circumference limit allows for 2-inch- overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
  2. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

### **3.8 FINISHES**

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
  1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### **3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### **3.10 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE**

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Equipment, Concealed:
  - 1. None.
  - 2. PVC: 20 mils thick.
  - 3. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.
  - 4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.
  - 5. Stainless Steel, Type 304: 0.010 inch thick.
- D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
  - 1. None.
  - 2. PVC: 20 mils thick.
  - 3. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.
  - 4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.
  - 5. Stainless Steel, Type 304: 0.010 inch thick.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 22 07 19

### PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
  - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
  - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
  - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
  - 4. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
  - 5. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation."

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
  - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
  - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
  - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
  - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
  - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.

2. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
3. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
4. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.
  1. Piping Mockups:
    - a. One 10-foot section of NPS 2 straight pipe.
    - b. One each of a 90-degree threaded, welded, and flanged elbow.
    - c. One each of a threaded, welded, and flanged tee fitting.
    - d. One NPS 2 or smaller valve, and one NPS 2-1/2 or larger valve.
    - e. Four support hangers including hanger shield and insert.
    - f. One threaded strainer and one flanged strainer with removable portion of insulation.
    - g. One threaded reducer and one welded reducer.
    - h. One pressure temperature tap.

- i. One mechanical coupling.
  2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
  3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
  5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.
- D. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

## **1.8 SCHEDULING**

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.
  - 2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
  - 3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
  - 4. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
  - 5. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
  - 6. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
    - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
    - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
    - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.



- b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
  - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
  - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
  - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- J. Phenolic:
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Kingspan Tarec Industrial Insulation NV; Koolphen K.
    - b. Resolco International BV; Insul-phen.
  - 2. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
  - 3. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
  - 4. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
  - 5. Factory-Applied Jacket: None. Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- K. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Armacell LLC; Tubolit.
    - b. Nomaco Insulation; IMCOLOCK and NOMALOCK.

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Thermokote V.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-84.
  - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aero seal.
    - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
    - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
  - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. Phenolic Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-96.
    - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-33.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
    - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
    - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; Polycy VP Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
  1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
    - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.

- b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
- c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
- 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
- 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
- 5. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

### A. Joint Sealants:

- 1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass and Phenolic Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  - e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
- 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
- 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
- 5. Color: White or gray.
- 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  5. Color: Aluminum.
  6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  5. Color: White.
  6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## **2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS**

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## **2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH**

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas Number 10.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

## **2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS**

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

## **2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS**

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
    - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
    - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
  - 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  - 3. Color: White.
  - 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- C. Metal Jacket:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
    - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
    - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.



2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
  - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
  - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
    - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
    - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
    - 3) Tee covers.
    - 4) Flange and union covers.
    - 5) End caps.
    - 6) Beveled collars.
    - 7) Valve covers.
    - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
  
3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
  - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
  - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
    - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
    - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
    - 3) Tee covers.
    - 4) Flange and union covers.
    - 5) End caps.
    - 6) Beveled collars.

- 7) Valve covers.
  - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- D. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil- thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittwrap.
    - b. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Insulrap No Torch 125.

## 2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.

5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
    - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
    - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
  2. Width: 2 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 500 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
    - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
  2. Width: 2 inches.
  3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 5 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.12 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
    - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping and Seals.
  2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304; wide with wing seal.

3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy].
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. C & F Wire.

## **2.13 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS**

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Engineered Brass Company.
    - b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
    - c. McGuire Manufacturing.
    - d. Plumberex.
    - e. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
    - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
  2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot-water supply and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
- B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
    - b. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
  2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
  - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.

3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
  2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  3. Nameplates and data plates.
  4. Cleanouts.

### **3.4 PENETRATIONS**

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### **3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION**

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints,

seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.

3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.



3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### **3.6 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION**

#### **A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:**

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

#### **B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:**

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

#### **C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:**

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

#### **D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:**

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.

2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### **3.7 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION**

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### **3.8 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION**

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
  1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.

4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
  4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
  3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### **3.9 INSTALLATION OF PHENOLIC INSULATION**

- A. General Installation Requirements:
1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
- B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.

3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
  4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
- D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### **3.10 INSTALLATION OF POLYOLEFIN INSULATION**

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
  2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
  2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### **3.11 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION**

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
  2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
  3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
  2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
  3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
  5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

### **3.12 FINISHES**

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
  - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### **3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### **3.14 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  2. Underground piping.
  3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### **3.15 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Domestic Cold Water:
  1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
    - d. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.

- e. Polyolefin: 1/2 inch thick.
- 2. NPS 1-1/4 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
  - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
  - d. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
  - e. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
    - d. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
    - e. Polyolefin: 3/4 inch thick.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
    - d. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
    - e. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- C. Domestic Chilled Water (Potable):
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
    - d. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
    - e. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

### **3.16 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Domestic Water Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.

- b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
- c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
- d. Phenolic: 2 inches thick.
- e. Polyolefin: 2 inches thick.

B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
  - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
  - d. Phenolic: 2 inches thick.
  - e. Polyolefin: 2 inches thick.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 22 08 00

### COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Commissioning is a systematic process of ensuring that selected building systems perform interactively according to the design intent and the owner's operational needs. This is achieved by beginning in the design phase and continuing through construction, acceptance and the warranty period with actual verification of performance. The commissioning process shall encompass and coordinate the traditionally separate functions of system documentation, equipment startup, control system calibration, testing and balancing, performance testing and training.
- B. Commissioning during the construction phase is intended to achieve the following specific objectives according to the Contract Documents:
  - 1. Verify that applicable equipment and systems are installed according to the contract documents, the manufacturer's recommendations and to industry accepted minimum standards and that they receive adequate operational checkout by Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors.
  - 2. Verify and document proper performance of equipment and systems.
  - 3. Verify that O&M documentation left on site is complete.
  - 4. Verify that the Owner's operating personnel are trained.
- C. The commissioning process does not take away from or reduce the responsibility of the system designers or Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors to provide a finished and fully functioning product.

##### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Commissioning Team. The members of the commissioning team consist of the Commissioning Authority (CxA), the Owner's Project Manager (PM), the Construction Manager (CM), the design Architects/Engineers (A/E), the Plumbing Contractor (PC), the Balancing Sub-Contractor (TAB), the ATC Sub-Contractor (ATC), the HVAC Contractor (HC), the Electrical Contractor (EC) and any other Installing Sub-Contractors or suppliers of equipment.
- B. Management. The Owner hires the CxA directly. The CxA directs and coordinates the commissioning activities and is part of the commissioning team. Heapy Engineering shall be the CxA for this project. The CxA is responsible to the Owner and shall have the authority to grant final acceptance of each system commissioned. All members work together to fulfill their contracted responsibilities and meet the objectives of the Contract Documents. Refer to Para. 1.5 for additional management details.
- C. Scheduling. The CxA shall work with the CM according to established protocols to schedule the commissioning activities. The CxA shall provide sufficient notice to the CM for scheduling commissioning activities. The CM shall integrate all commissioning activities into the master schedule. All parties shall address scheduling problems and make necessary notifications in a timely manner in order to expedite the commissioning process.

1. The CM shall provide the initial schedule of primary commissioning events at the commissioning scoping meeting. As construction progresses more detailed schedules are developed by the CxA. The Commissioning Plan also provides a format for detailed schedules.

### **1.3 COMISSIONING PROCESS**

- A. Commissioning Process. The following narrative provides a brief overview of the typical commissioning tasks during construction and the general order in which they occur.
  1. Commissioning during construction begins with a scope meeting conducted by the CxA where the commissioning process is reviewed with the commissioning team members.
  2. Additional meetings shall be required throughout construction, scheduled by the CxA with necessary parties attending, to plan, scope, coordinate, schedule future activities and resolve problems.
  3. Equipment documentation is submitted to the CxA during normal submittals, including detailed startup procedures.
  4. The CxA works with the Contractors/Sub-Contractors in developing startup plans and startup documentation formats, including providing the Contractors/Sub-Contractors with construction and startup checklists to be completed, during the startup process.
  5. In general, the checkout and performance verification proceeds from simple to complex; from component level to equipment to systems and intersystem levels with construction and startup checklists being completed before functional testing.
  6. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors, under their own direction, execute and document the construction and startup checklists. The CxA documents that the checklists were completed according to the contract documents. This may include the CxA witnessing startup of selected equipment. The CxA shall be notified 48 hours in advance of starting up equipment. Where applicable, manufacturers representative executes and documents startup of equipment.
  7. The CxA develops specific equipment and system functional performance test procedures. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors review the procedures.
  8. The procedures are executed by the Contractors/Sub-Contractors, under the direction of, and documented by the CxA.
  9. Items of non-compliance in material, installation or setup are corrected at the Contractors'/Sub-Contractors' expense and the system retested in accordance with paragraphs 3.5 of this section.
  10. The CxA reviews the O&M documentation for completeness.
  11. Commissioning is completed before Substantial Completion is achieved.
  12. The CxA reviews, pre-approves and coordinates the training provided by the Contractors/Sub-Contractors and verifies that it was completed. The CxA shall attend five (5) training sessions.
  13. Deferred testing is conducted, as specified or required.

## 1.4 RELATED WORK

- A. Drawings and general requirements of the Contract, including General Conditions and Requirements, Supplementary Conditions, Revisions and other Specification sections, apply to work in this section.

## 1.5 RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. The responsibilities of various parties in the commissioning process are provided in this section. The responsibilities of the Plumbing Contractor for specific systems, are in other Division 22 sections. The responsibilities of the (other) contractors are noted in their specification documents. It is noted that the services for the HVAC mechanical, plumbing and electrical designers/engineers, and CxA are not provided for in this contract. That is, the Contractor/Sub-Contractor is not responsible for providing their services. Their responsibilities are listed here to clarify the commissioning process.
- B. All Parties
  - 1. Attend commissioning scoping meeting and additional meetings, as scheduled.
  - 2. Participate in 10-month warranty walk inspection.
- C. Plumbing Designers/Engineers (A/E)
  - 1. Perform normal submittal review, construction observation, as-built drawing preparation, records, etc., as contracted.
  - 2. Provide any design narrative and sequences documentation requested by the CxA. The designers shall assist (along with the contractors) in clarifying the operation and control of commissioned equipment in areas where the specifications, control drawings or equipment documentation is not sufficient for writing detailed testing procedures.
  - 3. Attend commissioning scoping meetings and other selected commissioning team meetings, as requested.
  - 4. Participate in the resolution of system deficiencies identified during commissioning, according to the contract documents.
  - 5. Review and approve the O&M manuals.
  - 6. Participate in the resolution of non-compliance, non-conformance and design deficiencies identified during commissioning including warranty-period commissioning.
- D. Commissioning Authority (CxA)
  - 1. The CxA is not responsible for design concept, design criteria, compliance with codes, design or general construction scheduling, cost estimating, or construction management, means or methods. The CxA may assist with problem-solving non-conformance or deficiencies, but ultimately that responsibility resides with the CM and the A/E.
  - 2. The primary role of the CxA is to develop and coordinate the execution of a testing plan, observe and document performance - that systems are functioning in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors

shall provide all tools or the use of tools to start, checkout and functionally test equipment and systems.

3. Coordinates and directs the commissioning activities in a logical, sequential and efficient manner using consistent protocols and forms, centralized documentation, clear and regular communications and consultations with all necessary parties, frequently updated timelines and schedules and technical expertise.
4. Coordinate the commissioning work and, with the CM, ensure that commissioning activities are being scheduled into the master schedule.
5. Plan and conduct a commissioning scoping meeting and other commissioning meetings.
6. Request and review additional information required to perform commissioning tasks, including O&M materials, Contractor/Sub-Contractor startup and checkout procedures.
7. Before startup, gather and review the current controls sequences and interlocks and work with Contractors/Sub-Contractors and design engineers until sufficient clarity has been obtained, in writing, to be able to write detailed testing procedures.
8. Concurrent with the A/E reviews, the CxA shall review normal Contractors/Sub-Contractors submittals related to the commissioned equipment for conformance to the Contract Documents as it relates to the commissioning process, to the functional performance of the equipment and adequacy for developing test procedures. The CxA shall notify the CM, PM or A/E as requested, of items missing or areas that are not in conformance with Contract Documents and which require resubmission.
9. Write and distribute construction checklists
10. Review factory startup plan and develop a startup plan and initial systems checkout plan with Contractors/Sub-Contractors.
11. Perform site visits, as necessary, to observe component and system installations. Attends selected progress meetings and job-site meetings to obtain information on construction progress. Review construction meeting minutes for revisions/substitutions relating to the commissioning process. Assist in resolving any discrepancies.
12. Witness all or part of the Plumbing piping test and flushing procedure, sufficient to be confident that proper procedures were followed. Include the testing report and cleaning procedures documentation in O&M manuals. Notify owner's representative of any deficiencies in results or procedures.
13. Review and approve construction and startup checklists completion in conjunction with selected site observation and spot checking.
14. Oversee sufficient startup and initial testing of any related control system and verify it is ready to be used.
15. After submittals are approved, write the functional performance test procedures for equipment and systems. This may include control system trending, stand-alone datalogger monitoring or manual functional testing.

16. Maintain a master deficiency and resolution log and a separate testing record. Provide the CM and PM with written progress reports and test results with recommended actions.
  17. Review equipment warranties to ensure that the Owner's responsibilities are clearly defined.
  18. Oversee and coordinate the training of the Owner's operating personnel by attending 5 sessions.
  19. Compile and maintain a commissioning record.
  20. Review of the final O&M manuals.
  21. Provide a final commissioning report (as described in this section).
  22. Coordinate and supervise required seasonal or deferred testing and deficiency corrections.
- E. Owner's Project Manager (PM)
1. Manage the contract of the A/E and of the CM.
  2. Arrange the opportunity for facility operating and maintenance personnel to attend various field commissioning activities and field training.
  3. Identify any possible warranty items, document and contact the Contractors/Sub-Contractors for follow-up.
  4. Ensure that any seasonal or deferred testing and any deficiency issues are identified.
- F. Construction Manager (CM)
1. Facilitate the coordination of the commissioning work by the CxA. The CM and CxA ensure that commissioning activities are being scheduled into the master schedule.
  2. Furnish a copy of all construction documents, addenda, change orders and approved submittals and shop drawings related to commissioned equipment to the CxA.
  3. In each purchase order or subcontract written, include requirements for submittal data, O&M data, commissioning tasks and training.
  4. Ensure that all Contractors/Sub-Contractors execute their commissioning responsibilities according to the Contract Documents and schedule.
  5. Perform the normal review of Contractors/Sub-Contractors submittals.
  6. A representative shall attend the commissioning scope meeting and other necessary meetings scheduled by the CxA to facilitate the Cx process.
  7. When necessary, observe and witness construction, construction and startup checklists, startup, and functional testing of selected equipment.
  8. Review commissioning progress and deficiency reports.

9. Coordinate the resolution of non-compliance and design deficiencies identified in all phases of commissioning.
10. Coordinate the training of owner personnel.
11. Prepare O&M manuals, according to the Contract Documents, including clarifying and updating the original sequences of operation to as-built conditions.

G. Contractors/Sub-Contractors

1. Coordinate the commissioning work with the CxA.
2. Execute their commissioning responsibilities according to the Contract Documents and schedule.
3. Attend the commissioning scope meeting(s) and other necessary meetings scheduled by the CxA to facilitate the Cx process.
4. When necessary, observe and witness construction, construction and startup checklists, startup, and functional testing of selected equipment.
5. Review commissioning progress and deficiency reports.
6. Resolve the non-compliance and design deficiencies identified in all phases of commissioning.
7. Coordinate the training of Owner personnel for the systems provided under this contract.
8. Prepare O&M manuals, according to the Contract Documents, including clarifying and updating the original sequences of operation to as-built conditions.

H. Equipment Suppliers

1. Provide all requested submittal data, including detailed startup procedures and specific responsibilities of the Owner to keep warranties in force.
2. Assist in equipment testing per agreements with Contractors/Sub-Contractors.
3. Include all special tools and instruments (only available from vendor, specific to a piece of equipment) required for testing equipment according to these Contract Documents in the base bid price to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors.
4. Provide information requested by CxA regarding equipment sequence of operation and testing procedures.
5. Review test procedures for equipment started up by factory representatives.

## 1.6 DEFINITIONS

- A. Acceptance Phase - phase of construction after startup and initial checkout when functional performance tests, O&M documentation review and training occur.
- B. Approval - acceptance that a piece of equipment or system has been properly installed and is functioning in the tested modes according to the Contract Documents.

- C. Architect / Engineer (A/E) - the prime consultant and sub-consultants who comprise the design team, generally the HVAC mechanical designer/engineer and the electrical designer/engineer.
- D. Commissioning Authority (CxA) - an agent, not otherwise responsible for the design or the construction. The CxA directs and coordinates the day-to-day commissioning activities. The CxA does not take an oversight role like the CM. The CxA is part of the commissioning team and shall report directly to the Owner.
- E. Construction Checklist (CC) and Startup Checklist (SC) - a list of items to inspect and elementary component tests to conduct to verify proper installation of equipment, provided by the CxA to the Contractor/Sub-Contractor. Construction and startup checklists are primarily static inspections and procedures to prepare the equipment or system for initial operation (e.g., belt tension, oil levels OK, labels affixed, gages in place, sensors calibrated, etc.). However, some construction and startup checklist items entail simple testing of the function of a component, a piece of equipment or system (such as verifying initial set-up of a duplex pumping system). Construction and startup checklists augment and are combined with the manufacturer's startup checklist.
- F. Construction Manager (CM) – coordinates, communicates and directs the entire process of construction in terms of scope, quality, time and cost within the authority and responsibility limits of the contract documents.
- G. Contract Documents - the documents binding on parties involved in the construction of this project (drawings, specifications, change orders, amendments, contracts, etc.).
- H. Contractors/Sub-Contractors – Construction Contractors and their Sub-Contractors who are awarded a contract for the construction or some aspect of the construction of the project in accordance with the contract documents.
- I. Control System - the central building direct digital control system.
- J. Deferred Functional Tests - FTs that are performed later, after substantial completion, due to partial occupancy, equipment, seasonal requirements, design or other site conditions that disallow the test from being performed.
- K. Deficiency - a condition in the installation or function of a component, piece of equipment or system that is not in compliance with the Contract Documents (that is, does not perform properly or is not complying with the sequence of operations).
- L. Factory Testing - testing of equipment on-site or at the factory, by factory personnel with an Owner's representative present.
- M. Functional Performance Test (FT)
  - 1. Test of the dynamic function and operation of equipment and systems using manual (direct observation) or monitoring methods. Functional testing is the dynamic testing of systems (rather than just components) under full operation.
  - 2. Systems are tested under various modes, such as during component failures, fire alarm condition, power failure, etc. The systems are run through all the control system's sequences of operation and components are verified to be responding as the sequences state.
  - 3. The CxA develops the functional test procedures in a sequential written form, coordinates, oversees and documents the actual testing, which is usually

performed by the installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors or vendor. FTs are performed after construction and startup checklists, and startup are complete.

- N. Construction Manager (CM) - the prime Contractor for this project. Generally refers to all the CM's Sub-Contractors as well. Also referred to as the Contractor in some contexts.
- O. Indirect Indicators - indicators of a response or condition, such as a reading from a control system screen reporting a damper to be 100% closed.
- P. Manual Test - using hand-held instruments, immediate control system readouts or direct observation to verify performance (contrasted to analyzing monitored data taken over time to make the "observation").
- Q. Monitoring - the recording of parameters (flow, current, status, pressure, etc.) of equipment operation using dataloggers or the trending capabilities of control systems.
- R. Non-Compliance - see Deficiency.
- S. Non-Conformance - see Deficiency.
- T. Over-written Value - writing over a sensor value in the control system to see the response of a system (e.g., changing the outside air temperature value from 50F to 75F to verify economizer operation). See also "Simulated Signal."
- U. Project Manager (PM) - the contracting and managing authority for the owner over the construction of the project, a staff position.
- V. Sampling - functionally testing only a fraction of the total number of identical or near identical pieces of equipment. Refer to Part 3.4 for details.
- W. Seasonal Performance Tests - FT that are deferred until the system(s) shall experience conditions closer to their design conditions.
- X. Simulated Condition - condition that is created for the purpose of testing the response of a system (e.g., applying a hair dryer to a space sensor to see the response in a VAV box).
- Y. Simulated Signal - disconnecting a sensor and using a signal generator to send an amperage, resistance or pressure to the transducer and DDC system to simulate a sensor value.
- Z. Specifications - the construction specifications of the Contract Documents.
- AA. Startup - the initial starting or activating of dynamic equipment, including executing startup checklists.
- BB. Subs - the Sub-Contractors to the Contractor who provide and install building components and systems.
- CC. Substantial Completion – Refer to the description defined in the General Conditions.
- DD. Test Procedures - the step-by-step process which must be executed to fulfill the test requirements. The CxA develops the test procedures.
- EE. Test Requirements - requirements specifying what modes and functions, etc. shall be tested. The test requirements are not the detailed test procedures. The test requirements are specified in the Contract Documents.



- FF. Trending - monitoring using the building control system.
- GG. Vendor - supplier of equipment.
- HH. Warranty Period - warranty period for entire project, including equipment components. Warranty begins at Substantial Completion and extends for at least one year, unless specifically noted otherwise in the Contract Documents and accepted submittals. Equipment that does not initially pass seasonal or deferred functional testing shall have the warranty start date adjusted to date of passing test completion.
- II. Warranty Walk – On-site inspection of all commissioned systems to verify proper operation approximately 10 months into the warranty period. As part of this inspection a review will also be conducted of trend log data from the Building Automation System and service/maintenance records.

## **1.7 SYSTEMS TO BE COMISSIONED**

- A. The following systems shall be commissioned in this project:
  - 1. One (1) Water Treatment System
  - 2. One (1) Rio System
  - 3. Domestic Hot Water Generation
  - 4. Automatic Temperature Controls
  - 5. Kitchen Systems
  - 6. Walk-In Freezers
  - 7. Walk-In Coolers
  - 8. Kitchen Exhaust Hoods

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT**

- A. All standard testing equipment required to perform startup and initial checkout and required functional performance testing shall be provided by the Contractors/Sub-Contractors for the equipment being tested.
- B. Special equipment, tools and instruments (only available from vendor, specific to a piece of equipment) required for testing equipment, shall be included in the Contractors/Sub-Contractors bid price.
- C. All testing equipment shall be of sufficient quantity, quality and accuracy to test and/or measure system performance. All equipment shall be calibrated within the last year, and according to the manufacturer's recommended intervals, and when dropped or damaged. Calibration tags shall be affixed or certificates readily available.
- D. Refer to Para. 3.4 for details regarding equipment that may be required to simulate required test conditions.
- E. Functional Testing Equipment

- F. The Plumbing Contractor shall provide written documentation to the CxA that the Contractor's staff has been trained on the proper use and application of any testing equipment.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 MEETINGS**

- A. Orientation Meeting. Within 90 days of commencement of construction, the CxA shall schedule, plan and conduct a commissioning orientation meeting with the entire commissioning team in attendance. The CxA shall provide agenda and distribute meeting minutes to all parties.
- B. Miscellaneous Meetings. Other meetings shall be planned and conducted by the CxA as construction progresses. These meetings shall cover coordination, deficiency resolution and planning issues with particular Contractors/Sub-Contractors. The CxA shall organize these meetings and shall minimize unnecessary time being spent by Contractors/Sub-Contractors. For large projects, these meetings may be held monthly, until the final 3 months of construction when they may be held as frequently as one per week.

### **3.2 REPORTING**

- A. The CxA shall provide regular reports to the CM and PM, with increasing frequency as construction and commissioning progresses.
- B. The CxA shall regularly communicate with all members of the commissioning team, keeping them apprised of commissioning progress and scheduling changes through memos, progress reports, etc.
- C. Testing or review approvals and non-conformance and deficiency reports are made regularly with the review and testing as described in later sections.
- D. A final summary report by the CxA shall be provided to the CM and PM, focusing on evaluating the commissioning process. All acquired documentation, logs, minutes, reports, deficiency lists, communications, findings, unresolved issues, etc., shall be compiled in appendices and provided with the summary report.
  - 1. Construction and startup checklists, functional tests and monitoring reports shall not be part of the final report, but shall be stored as the Commissioning Record in the O&M manuals.

### **3.3 START-UP CHECKLISTS AND INITIAL CHECKOUT**

- A. The following procedures apply to all equipment to be commissioned, according to para. 1.7, Systems to be Commissioned. Some systems that are not comprised of actual dynamic machinery may have very simplified CCs, SCs and startup.
- B. Startup and Initial Checkout Plan. The CxA shall assist the commissioning team members responsible for startup of any equipment in developing detailed startup plans for all equipment. The primary role of the CxA in this process is to ensure that there is written documentation that each of the manufacturer-recommended procedures have been completed. Parties responsible for construction and startup checklists, and startup are identified in the commissioning orientation meeting and in the checklist forms.
  - 1. The CxA provides these checklists and tests to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors determines which trade is responsible for executing and documenting the tests.

2. The Contractor/Sub-Contractor responsible for the purchase of the equipment develops the full startup plan by combining (or adding to) the CxA's checklists with the manufacturer's detailed startup and checkout procedures from the O&M manual and the normally used field checkout sheets. The plan shall include checklists and procedures with specific boxes or lines for recording and documenting the checking and inspections of each procedure and a summary statement with a signature block at the end of the plan. Where required, the equipment shall be started up by factory representatives. The CxA shall be notified a minimum 48 hours prior to equipment startup.
3. The Contractor/Sub-Contractor submits the full startup plan to the CxA for review.
4. The CxA reviews the procedures and the format for documenting them, noting any procedures that need to be added.

C. Execution of Construction and Startup Checklists, and Startup

1. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors and vendors schedule startup and checkout with the CM, PM and CxA. The performance of the construction and startup checklists, startup and checkout are directed and executed by the Contractors/Sub-Contractors or vendor. When checking off construction and startup checklists, signatures may be required of other Contractors/Sub-Contractors for verification of completion of their work.
2. The CxA shall observe, at minimum, the procedures for each piece of primary equipment. In no case shall the number of units witnessed be less than the contractual agreement on any one building.
3. For lower-level components of equipment, (e.g., sensors, controllers), the CxA shall observe a sampling of the construction, and startup, and startup procedures.
4. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors and vendors shall execute startup and provide the CxA with a signed and dated copy of the completed startup, and construction and startup tests and checklists.
5. Only individuals that have direct knowledge and witnessed that a line item task on the construction and startup checklist was actually performed shall initial or check that item off. It is not acceptable for supervisors to fill out these forms.

D. Deficiencies, Non-Conformance and Approval in Checklists and Startup

1. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall clearly list any outstanding items of the initial startup and construction and startup procedures that were not completed successfully, and any completed corrections, at the bottom of the procedures form or on an attached sheet. The procedures form and any outstanding deficiencies are provided to the CxA within two days of test completion.
2. The CxA reviews the report and submits either a non-compliance report or an approval form to the Contractor/Sub-Contractor or CM. The CxA shall work with the Contractors/Sub-Contractors and vendors to correct and retest deficiencies or uncompleted items. The CxA shall involve the CM and others as necessary. The installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors or vendors shall correct all areas that are deficient or incomplete in the checklists and tests in a timely manner, and shall notify the CxA as soon as outstanding items have been corrected and resubmit an updated startup report and a Statement of Correction on the original

non-compliance report. When satisfactorily completed, the CxA recommends approval of the execution of the checklists and start up of each system.

3. Items left incomplete, which later cause deficiencies or delays during functional testing will result in incidental damages to the responsible party. Refer to Para. 3.5 sub-item B.4 herein for details.

### **3.4 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TESTING (FT)**

- A. This sub-section applies to all commissioning functional testing for all divisions.
- B. The general list of equipment to be commissioned is found in Para. 1.7.
- C. Objectives and Scope. The objective of Functional Performance Testing is to demonstrate that each system is operating according to the Contract Documents. During the testing process, areas of deficient performance are identified and corrected, improving the operation and functioning of the systems.
  1. In general, each system should be operated through all modes of operation (seasonal, occupied, unoccupied, warm-up, cool-down, part- and full-load) where there is a specified system response. Verifying each step in the sequences of operation is required. Proper responses to such modes and conditions as power failure, equipment failure, etc. shall also be tested.
- D. Development of Test Procedures. Before test procedures are written, the CxA shall obtain all requested documentation and a current list of change orders affecting equipment or systems, including an updated points list, program code, control sequences and parameters. The CxA shall develop specific test procedures and forms to verify and document proper operation of each piece of equipment and system. Each Contractors/Sub-Contractors or vendor responsible to execute a test shall provide limited assistance to the CxA in developing the procedures review. Prior to execution, the CxA shall provide a copy of the test procedures to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors who shall review the tests for feasibility, safety, equipment and warranty protection. When requested, the CxA will submit the tests to the A/E for review.
  1. The purpose of any given specific test is to verify and document compliance with the stated criteria of acceptance given on the test form.
  2. The test procedure forms developed by the CxA shall include (but not be limited to) the following information:
  3. System and equipment or component name(s)
  4. Equipment location and ID number
  5. Unique test ID number, and reference to unique construction and startup checklist and startup documentation ID numbers for the piece of equipment
  6. Date
  7. Project name
  8. Participating parties
  9. A copy of the specific sequence of operations or other specified parameters being verified

10. Required pre-test field measurements
11. Instructions for setting up the test
12. Special cautions, alarm limits, etc.
13. Specific step-by-step procedures to execute the test, in a clear, sequential and repeatable format
14. Acceptance criteria of proper performance with a check box to allow for clearly marking whether or not proper performance of each part of the test was achieved
15. A section for comments
16. Signatures and date block for the CxA

E. Test Methods

1. Functional performance testing and verification may be achieved by manual testing (persons manipulate the equipment and observe performance) or by monitoring the performance and analyzing the results using the control system's trend log capabilities or by stand-alone dataloggers. The CxA may substitute specified methods or require an additional method to be executed, other than what was specified. The CxA shall determine which method is most appropriate for tests that do not have a method specified.
2. Simulated Conditions. Simulating conditions (not by an overwritten value) shall be allowed, though timing the testing to experience actual conditions is encouraged wherever practical.
3. Altering Setpoints. Rather than overwriting sensor values, and when simulating conditions is difficult, altering setpoints to test a sequence is acceptable.
4. Indirect Indicators. Relying on indirect indicators for responses or performance shall be allowed only after visually and directly verifying and documenting, over the range of the tested parameters, that the indirect readings through the control system represent actual conditions and responses. These verifications shall be completed during construction and startup testing.
5. Setup. Each function and test shall be performed under conditions that simulate actual conditions as close as is practically possible. The Contractor/Sub-Contractor executing the test shall provide all necessary materials, system modifications, etc. to produce the necessary flows, pressures, temperatures, etc. necessary to execute the test according to the specified conditions. At completion of the test, the Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall return all affected building equipment and systems, due to these temporary modifications, to their pre-test condition.
6. Sampling. Multiple identical pieces of non-life-safety or otherwise non-critical equipment may be functionally tested using a sampling strategy. Significant application differences and significant sequence of operation differences in otherwise identical equipment invalidates their common identity. A small size or capacity difference, alone, does not constitute a difference. It is noted that no sampling by Contractors/Sub-Contractors is allowed in construction and startup checklist execution.

- F. Coordination and Scheduling. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall provide sufficient notice to the CxA regarding their completion schedule for the construction and startup checklists and startup of all equipment and systems. The CxA shall schedule functional tests through the CM and affected Contractors/Sub-Contractors. The CxA shall direct, witness and document the functional testing of all equipment and systems. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall execute the tests.
1. In general, functional testing is conducted after construction and startup testing has been satisfactorily completed. The air balancing and water balancing is completed and debugged before functional testing of air-related or water-related equipment or systems. Testing proceeds from components to subsystems to systems. When the proper performance of all interacting individual systems has been achieved, the interface or coordinated responses between systems is checked.
- G. Test Equipment. Refer to Part 2 for test equipment requirements.
- H. Problem Solving. The CxA may recommend solutions to problems found, however the burden of responsibility to solve, correct and retest problems is with the CM, Contractors/Sub-Contractors and A/E.

### **3.5 DOCUMENTATION, NON-CONFORMANCE AND APPROVAL OF TESTS**

- A. Documentation. The CxA shall witness and document the results of all functional performance tests using the specific procedural forms developed for that purpose. Prior to testing, these forms are provided to the CM for review and approval and to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors for review. The CxA shall include the filled out forms in the O&M manuals.
- B. Non-Conformance
1. The CxA shall record the results of the functional test on the procedure or test form. All deficiencies or non-conformance issues shall be noted and reported to the CM on a standard non-compliance form.
  2. Corrections of minor deficiencies identified may be made during the tests at the discretion of the CxA. In such cases the deficiency and resolution shall be documented on the procedure form.
  3. As tests progress and a deficiency is identified, the CxA discusses the issue with the executing Contractors/Sub-Contractors.
    - a. When there is no dispute on the deficiency and the Contractors/Sub-Contractors accepts responsibility to correct it:
      - 1) The CxA documents the deficiency and the Contractors/Sub-Contractors response and intentions and they go on to another test or sequence. After the day's work, the CxA submits the non-compliance reports to the CM for signature, if required. A copy is provided to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors and CxA. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors corrects the deficiency, signs the statement of correction at the bottom of the non-compliance form certifying that the equipment is ready to be retested and sends it back to the CxA.
      - 2) The CxA reschedules the test and the test is repeated. See sub-item 3.5.B.4..

- b. If there is a dispute about a deficiency, regarding whether it is a deficiency or who is responsible:
  - 1) The deficiency shall be documented on the non-compliance form with the Contractors/Sub-Contractors' response and a copy given to the CM and to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors' representative assumed to be responsible.
  - 2) Resolutions are made at the lowest management level possible. Other parties are brought into the discussions as needed. Final interpretive authority is with the A/E. Final acceptance authority is with the owners representative.
  - 3) The CxA documents the resolution process. The CxA will test equipment once and provide one re-test, additional cost associated with further required re-testing of the same equipment shall be borne by the responsible Contractors/Sub-Contractors.
  - 4) Once the interpretation and resolution have been decided, the appropriate party corrects the deficiency, signs the statement of correction on the non-compliance form and provides it to the CxA. The CxA reschedules the test and the test is repeated until satisfactory performance is achieved.
4. Cost of Retesting
  - a. The cost for the Contractors/Sub-Contractors to retest a construction and startup or functional test, if they are responsible for the deficiency, shall be theirs. If they are not responsible, any cost recovery for retesting costs shall be negotiated with the CM.
  - b. For a deficiency identified, not related to any construction and startup checklist or startup fault, the following shall apply: The CxA and CM shall direct the retesting of the equipment once at no "charge" to the Owner for their time. However, the CxA's and CM's time for a second retest shall be charged to the Contractor/Sub-Contractor, who may choose to recover costs from the responsible Sub-Contractor/vendor.
  - c. The time for the CxA and CM to direct any retesting required because a specific construction and startup checklist or startup test item, reported to have been successfully completed, but determined during functional testing to be faulty, shall be in the form of incidental damages to the CM, who may choose to recover costs from the party responsible for executing the faulty construction and startup test.
  - d. Refer to the sampling section of Para. 3.4 for requirements for testing and retesting identical equipment.
5. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall respond in writing to the CxA and Owner at least as often as commissioning meetings are being scheduled concerning the status of each apparent outstanding discrepancy identified during commissioning. Discussion shall cover explanations of any disagreements and proposals for their resolution.
6. The CxA retains the original non-conformance forms until the end of the project.

7. The prime Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall not consider any required retesting by any Contractors/Sub-Contractors a justified reason for a claim of delay or for a time extension.
- C. Failure Due to Manufacturer Defect. If 10%, or three, whichever is greater, of identical pieces (size alone does not constitute a difference) of equipment fail to perform to the Contract Documents (mechanically or substantively) due to manufacturing defect, not allowing it to meet its submitted performance spec, all identical units may be considered unacceptable by the PM. In such case, the Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall provide the Owner with the following:
1. Within one week of notification from the CM or PM, the Contractors/Sub-Contractors or manufacturer's representative shall examine all other identical units, making a record of the findings. The findings shall be provided to the CM or PM within two weeks of the original notice.
  2. Within two weeks of the original notification, the Contractors/Sub-Contractors or manufacturer shall provide a signed and dated, written explanation of the problem, cause of failures, etc. and all proposed solutions which shall include full equipment submittals. The proposed solutions shall not significantly exceed the specification requirements of the original installation.
  3. The PM shall determine whether a replacement of all identical units or a repair is acceptable.
  4. Two examples of the proposed solution shall be installed by the Contractors/Sub-Contractors and the CM shall be allowed to test the installations for up to one week, upon which the PM shall decide whether to accept the solution.
  5. Upon acceptance, the Contractors/Sub-Contractors and/or manufacturer shall replace or repair all identical items, at their expense and extend the warranty accordingly, if the original equipment warranty had begun. The replacement/repair work shall proceed with reasonable speed beginning within one week from when parts can be obtained.
- D. Approval. The CxA notes each satisfactorily demonstrated function on the test form. Formal approval of the functional test is made later after review by the CxA. The CxA recommends acceptance of each test to the PM using a standard form. The CxA gives final approval on each test using the same form, providing a signed copy to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors.

### **3.6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. Standard O&M Manuals
1. The specific content and format requirements for the standard O&M manuals are detailed in specifications.
  2. CxA Review. Prior to substantial completion, the CxA shall review the O&M manuals, and documentation such as as-builts for systems that were commissioned to verify compliance with the contract documents. The CxA shall communicate deficiencies in the manuals to the CM, PM or A/E, as requested. Upon a successful review of the corrections, the CxA acknowledges completion of the review of these sections of the O&M manuals to the CM, PM or A/E.

### **3.7 TRAINING OF OWNER PERSONNEL**



- A. The CM shall be responsible for training and scheduling and ultimately ensuring that training is completed.
- B. The CxA shall be responsible for overseeing and approving the content and adequacy of the training of Owner personnel for commissioned equipment.
  - 1. The CxA shall interview the facility manager and design engineer to determine the special needs and areas where training shall be most valuable. The Owner and CxA shall decide how rigorous the training should be for each piece of commissioned equipment. The CxA shall communicate the results to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors and vendors who have training responsibilities.
  - 2. In addition to these general requirements, the specific training requirements of Owner personnel by Contractors/Sub-Contractors and vendors is specified in Division 22.
  - 3. Within 60 days of contract award, each Contractors/Sub-Contractors and vendor responsible for training shall submit a written training plan to the CxA for review and approval prior to training. The plan shall cover the following elements:
    - a. Equipment (included in training)
    - b. Intended audience
    - c. Location of training
    - d. Objectives
    - e. Subjects covered (description, duration of discussion, special methods, etc.)
    - f. Duration of training on each subject
    - g. Instructor for each subject
    - h. Methods (classroom lecture, video, site walk-through, actual operational demonstrations, written handouts, etc.)
    - i. Instructor qualifications
  - 4. The CxA develops an overall training plan and coordinates and schedules, with the CM, the overall training for the commissioned systems. The CxA develops criteria for determining that the training was satisfactorily completed, including attending 2 of the training sessions, etc. The CxA recommends approval of the training to the PM using a standard form. The CM also signs the approval form.

### **3.8 DEFERRED TESTING**

- A. Unforeseen Deferred Tests. If any check or test cannot be completed due to the building structure, required occupancy condition or other deficiency, execution of checklists and functional testing may be delayed upon approval of the PM. These tests shall be conducted in the same manner as the original tests as soon as possible. Services of necessary parties shall be negotiated. Equipment that does not initially pass deferred functional testing shall have the warranty start date adjusted to date of passing test completion.
- B. Seasonal Testing. During the warranty period, seasonal testing (tests delayed until weather conditions are closer to the system's design) shall be completed as part of this

contract. The CxA shall coordinate this activity. Tests shall be executed, documented and deficiencies corrected by the appropriate Contractors/Sub-Contractors, with facilities staff and the CxA witnessing. Equipment that does not initially pass seasonal functional testing shall have the warranty start date adjusted to date of passing test completion. Any final adjustments to the O&M manuals and as-builts due to the testing shall be made.

### 3.9 WRITTEN WORK PRODUCTS

A. The commissioning process generates a number of written work products described in various parts of the specifications. In summary, the written products are:

Product	Developed By
1. Final commissioning plan	CxA
2. Cx Meeting minutes	CxA
3. Commissioning schedules	CxA with CM
4. Equipment documentation submittals	Responsible Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors
5. Sequence clarifications	Responsible Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors and A/E as needed
6. Construction and startup checklists	CxA (included in Specifications)
7. Startup and initial checkout plan	Responsible Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors and CxA (compilation of existing documents)
8. Startup and initial checkout forms filled out	Responsible Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors/Mfg Rep (where applicable)
9. Commissioning Progress Record	CxA
10. Deficiency reports	CxA
11. Functional test forms	CxA
12. Filled out functional tests	CxA
13. O&M manuals	Responsible Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors
14. Commissioning record book	CxA
15. Overall training plan	CxA and CM
16. Specific training agendas	Responsible Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors
17. Final commissioning report	CxA
18. Misc. approvals	CxA

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 22 11 16

### DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.
  - 2. Encasement for piping.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 221113 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

##### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

##### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
  - 2. Do not interrupt water service without Construction Manager's written permission.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."

## **2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- F. Copper Unions:
  - 1. MSS SP-123.
  - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
  - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
  - 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.
- G. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Elkhart Products Corporation.
    - b. NIBCO Inc.
    - c. Viega.
  - 3. Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
  - 4. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
- H. Copper-Tube, Extruded-Tee Connections:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. T-Drill Industries Inc.
  - 2. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.

- I. Appurtenances for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Victaulic Company.
  2. Bronze Fittings for Grooved-End, Copper Tubing: ASME B16.22 wrought copper and ASTM B 75 copper tube or ASME B16.18 and ASTM B 584 bronze castings. Manufactured to copper-tube dimensions. (Flaring the adjoining pipe or fitting ends to accommodate alternate sized couplings is not permitted.)
  3. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:
    - a. Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606.
    - b. Ferrous housing sections cast with offsetting-angle-pattern, bolt pads.
    - c. EPDM-HP rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
    - d. ASTM A449 bolts and nuts.
    - e. Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
    - f. Installation-Ready, for direct stab installation without field disassembly.
    - g. Basis of Design: Victaulic Style 607H.
  4. System shall be UL classified in accordance with ANSI / NSF-61 for potable water service, and shall be certified to the low lead requirements of NSF-372.

## **2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
  1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
  2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
  1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
  2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
  1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
  2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- D. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: 1.

AWWA C151/A21.51.

2. Push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.

E. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

F. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

G. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51.

H. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Victaulic Company.
2. Fittings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions that match pipe.
3. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping:
  - a. AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions.
  - b. Ferrous housing sections.
  - c. EPDM or Halogenated-Butyl-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water; FlushSeal® type.
  - d. ASTM A449 bolts and nuts.
  - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
    - 1) NPS 12 and Smaller: 350 psig.
    - 2) NPS 14 to NPS 18: 250 psig.
    - 3) NPS 20 to NPS 46: 150 psig.
4. For direct connection to IPS / steel pipe sizes, Victaulic Style 307 transition coupling with offsetting, angle-pattern, bolt pads.

## 2.4 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe:

1. ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Standard Weight.



2. Include ends matching joining method.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Standard Weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- C. Galvanized, Gray-iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions:
1. ASME B16.39, Class 150.
  2. Hexagonal-stock body.
  3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface.
  4. Threaded ends.
- E. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.
- F. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Victaulic Company.
  3. Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Galvanized, ASTM A 234/A 234M, steel pipe; factory-fabricated from ASTM A53 steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
  4. Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
    - a. AWWA C606 for steel-pipe dimensions.
    - b. Two ferrous housing sections.
    - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
    - d. ASTM A449 bolts and nuts.
    - e. Installation-Ready, for direct stab installation without field disassembly, in sizes through NPS 12.
    - f. Minimum Pressure Rating, NPS 24 and smaller: 350 psig.
    - g. Rigid: Coupling housings with offsetting, angle-pattern bolt pads shall be used to provide system rigidity and support and hanging in accordance with ANSI B31.1 and B31.9. Installation-Ready, for direct stab installation without field disassembly. Basis of Design: Victaulic Style 107N.

- h. Flexible: Use in locations where vibration attenuation and stress relief are required. Basis of Design: Victaulic Style 177 Installation-Ready, and Style 77.
- i. AGS series two-segment couplings with lead-in chamfer on housing key and wide-width FlushSeal gasket. Basis of Design: Victaulic Style W07 (rigid) and Style W77 (flexible).

## 2.5 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPING

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Schedule 10.
- C. Stainless-Steel Pipe Fittings: ASTM A 815/A 815M.
- D. Stainless Steel Pipe, NPS 2 and Smaller: ASTM A312, Schedule 10S, Type 304/304L stainless steel with plain ends.
  - 1. Fittings: Precision, cold drawn, austenitic stainless steel with elastomer O-ring seals, suitable for working pressure to 500-psig (3450-kPa).
  - 2. UL classified in accordance with ANSI / NSF-61 for potable water service, and shall be certified to the low lead requirements of NSF-372.
  - 3. Basis of Design: Victaulic Vic-Press for Schedule 10S Pipe.
- E. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Victaulic Company.
  - 2. Schedule 10S pipe shall be roll grooved using a Victaulic grooving tool equipped with RX roll sets, specifically designed for stainless steel pipe.
  - 3. Fittings for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe: Stainless-steel casting to ASTM A351 with dimensions matching stainless-steel pipe, or factory fabricated from ASTM A312 stainless steel pipe.
  - 4. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe:
    - j. AWWA C606 for stainless-steel-pipe dimensions.
    - a. Stainless-steel housing sections to ASTM A351, or ductile iron housing sections to ASTM A536.
    - b. Stainless-steel or zinc-electroplated steel bolts and nuts.
    - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
    - d. Minimum Pressure Rating: As shown with couplings.
    - e. Rigid Type: Housings shall clamp the bottom of the groove, suitable for 300-psig working pressure with Schedule 10S pipe. Basis of Design: Victaulic

Style 89 (DI) and Style 489 (SS).

- f. AGS series two-segment couplings with lead-in chamfer on housing key and wide-width FlushSeal gasket. Basis of Design: Victaulic Style W89 (rigid), suitable for 300-psig working pressure with Schedule 10S pipe.
  - g. Flexible Type: Victaulic Style 77S. Pressure ratings vary with size of coupling. Refer to the manufacturer's latest published literature.
5. UL classified in accordance with ANSI / NSF-61 for potable water service, and shall be certified to the low lead requirements of NSF-372.

## 2.6 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

### A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:

- 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
- 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

### B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

### C. Grooved Joint Lubricants: Lubricate gaskets with lubricant supplied by the coupling manufacturer in accordance with published installation instructions. The lubricant shall approved for the gasket elastomer and system media.

### D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.

### E. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

### F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

### G. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F 493.

- 1. CPVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 2. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 3. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### H. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

- 1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 2. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

3. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- I. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.7 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING**

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- B. Form: Sheet.
- C. Color: Black.

## **2.8 TRANSITION FITTINGS**

- A. General Requirements:
  1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
  2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
  3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
    - b. Dresser, Inc.; Piping Specialties Products.
    - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
    - d. JCM Industries.
    - e. Romac Industries, Inc.
    - f. Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
    - g. Viking Johnson.

## **2.9 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS**

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
    - d. Jomar International.
    - e. Matco-Norca.
    - f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
  3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
  4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Matco-Norca.
    - d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - e. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
  3. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
  4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
  5. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous;  
threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.

- c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
  - 4. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
  - 5. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
  - 6. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Nipples:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Elster Perfection Corporation.
    - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products; Tyco Fire Products LP.
    - c. Matco-Norca.
    - d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - e. Victaulic Company.
  - 2. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
  - 3. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
  - 4. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
  - 5. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
  - 6. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EARTHWORK**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

#### **3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- H. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- I. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic- restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- J. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- K. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- L. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- M. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- N. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- O. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- P. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- Q. Install PEX piping with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.
- R. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- S. Unions and flanges for servicing and disconnect are not required in installations using grooved mechanical joint couplings. (The couplings shall serve as disconnect points if required.)

- T. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 221123 "Domestic Water Pumps."
- V. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### **3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- G. Push-on Joints for Copper Tubing: Clean end of tube. Measure insertion depth with manufacturer's depth gage. Join copper tube and push-on-joint fittings by inserting tube to measured depth.
- H. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool



designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.

- I. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Make joints according to AWWA C606 and the manufacturer's latest published installation instructions. Roll groove ends of tubes. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of tubes or tube and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in tubing grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts. A factory trained representative (direct employee) of the coupling manufacturer shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the use of grooving tools, application of groove, and product installation. The representative shall periodically visit the job site and review installation to ensure best practices in grooved joint installation are being followed. Contractor shall remove and replace any improperly installed products.
- J. Joint Construction for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606 and the manufacturer's latest published installation instructions. Cut round-bottom grooves in ends of pipe at gasket-seat dimension required for specified (flexible or rigid) joint. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts. A factory trained representative (direct employee) of the coupling manufacturer shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the use of grooving tools, application of groove, and product installation. The representative shall periodically visit the job site and review installation to ensure best practices in grooved joint installation are being followed. Contractor shall remove and replace any improperly installed products.
- K. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Steel Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606 and the manufacturer's latest published installation instructions. Square cut groove ends of pipe as specified. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts. A factory trained representative (direct employee) of the coupling manufacturer shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the use of grooving tools, application of groove, and product installation. The representative shall periodically visit the job site and review installation to ensure best practices in grooved joint installation are being followed. Contractor shall remove and replace any improperly installed products.
- L. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- M. Joint Construction for Solvent-Cemented Plastic Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
  - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
  - 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- N. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

### **3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
  - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
  - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings.

### **3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### **3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.

3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- I. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  6. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
  7. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- J. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 15 feet.

### **3.7 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:

1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### **3.8 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

### **3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  1. Piping Inspections:
    - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
      - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
      - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
    - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
    - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Piping Tests:
    - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.

- b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
- d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
- f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.10 ADJUSTING**

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

- 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
- 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
- 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
- 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
  - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
  - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
- 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
- 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
- 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
- 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

### **3.11 CLEANING**

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
  - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
      - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
      - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
    - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
    - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
    - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
  - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  - 2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

### **3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE**

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise

indicated.

- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be the following:
  - 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- E. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- F. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
  - 1. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - 3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - 4. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper push-on-joint fittings; and push-on joints.
  - 5. Stainless-steel pipe, ASTM A312, Type 304/304L, Schedule 10S; with Vic-Press fittings and joints.
- G. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - 3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
  - 4. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 5. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

### **3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE**

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:

1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
  4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.
- C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 22 11 19

### DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
6. Strainers.
7. Outlet boxes.
8. Hose stations.
9. Hose bibbs.
10. Wall hydrants.
11. Ground hydrants.
12. Post hydrants.
13. Drain valves.
14. Water-hammer arresters.
15. Air vents.
16. Trap-seal primer valves.
17. Trap-seal primer systems.
18. Specialty valves.
19. Flexible connectors.
20. Water meters.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
2. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
3. Section 223200 "Domestic Water Filtration Equipment" for water filters in domestic water piping.
4. Section 224300 "Medical Plumbing Fixtures" for thermostatic mixing valves for sitz baths, thermostatic mixing-valve assemblies for hydrotherapy equipment, and outlet boxes for dialysis equipment.
5. Section 224500 "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" for water tempering equipment.
6. Section 224713 "Drinking Fountains" for water filters for water coolers.
7. Section 224716 "Pressure Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.
8. Section 224723 "Remote Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.
  1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Field quality-control reports.

### **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES**

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 and NSF 14.

### **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

### **2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS**

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
    - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.

- d. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - e. Rain Bird Corporation.
  - f. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
  - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
  - 3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
  - 4. Body: Bronze.
  - 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
  - 6. Finish: Rough bronze.
- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Arrowhead Brass Products.
    - b. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
    - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - d. Legend Valve.
    - e. MIFAB, Inc.
    - f. Prier Products, Inc.
    - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
    - h. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.
    - i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products.
    - j. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
  - 3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
  - 4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
  - 5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.
- C. Pressure Vacuum Breakers:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - d. Flomatic Corporation.
    - e. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
    - f. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
    - g. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1020.
  3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
  5. Accessories:
    - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.
- D. Laboratory-Faucet Vacuum Breakers:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
    - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.
    - d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1035.
  3. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8 matching faucet size.
  4. Body: Bronze.
  5. End Connections: Threaded.
  6. Finish: Chrome plated.
- E. Spill-Resistant Vacuum Breakers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
3. Standard: ASSE 1056.
  4. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  5. Size: NPS 1/4.
  6. Accessories:
    - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

## 2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

### A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - d. Honeywell International Inc.
  - e. Legend Valve.
  - f. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - g. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1012.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Size: NPS 1/2.
5. Body: Bronze.
6. End Connections: Union, solder joint.
7. Finish: Chrome plated.

### B. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.

- c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - d. Flomatic Corporation.
  - e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
3. Standard: ASSE 1013.
  4. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  5. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
  6. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved.
  7. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  8. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
  9. Accessories:
    - a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
    - b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
    - c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.
- C. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings:
    - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - d. Flomatic Corporation.
    - e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
    - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1015.
  3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.

5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
8. Accessories:
  - a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
  - b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.

## **2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES**

### **A. Water Regulators:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. Honeywell International Inc.
  - d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
3. Standard: ASSE 1003.
4. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
5. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

Copy "Water-Control Valves" Paragraph below and re-edit for each type of water-control valve required. If only one type is required, drawing designation may be omitted.

Water-control valves in paragraph below are available in NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and larger.

## **2.6 BALANCING VALVES**

### **A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:**

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Armstrong International, Inc.

- b. Flo Fab Inc.
  - c. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett Div.
  - d. NIBCO Inc.
  - e. TAC.
  - f. TACO Incorporated.
  - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
- 2. Type: Ball valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
  - 3. Body: Brass.
  - 4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
  - 5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.
- B. Cast-Iron Calibrated Balancing Valves:
- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
    - b. Flo Fab Inc.
    - c. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett Div.
    - d. NIBCO Inc.
    - e. TAC.
    - f. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - 2. Type: Adjustable with Y-pattern globe valve, two readout ports, and memory-setting indicator.
  - 3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not smaller than NPS 2-1/2.
- C. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.
- D. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:
- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.



- e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - g. NIBCO Inc.
  - h. Red-White Valve Corp.
2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
  3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
  4. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
  5. Body: Copper alloy.
  6. Port: Standard or full port.
  7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
  9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
  10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

E. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. Honeywell International Inc.
  - d. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - e. Leonard Valve Company.
  - f. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
7. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.

8. Tempered-Water Setting: 105 deg F.
  9. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
- F. Primary Water Tempering Valves:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Heat-Timer Corporation.
    - b. Holby Valve Co., Inc.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1017, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve, listed as tempering valve.
  3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Body: Bronze.
  5. Temperature Control: Manual.
  6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
  7. Tempered-Water Setting: 105 deg F.
  8. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: 2.0 gpm.
  9. Pressure Drop at Design Flow Rate: 5.0 psig.

## **2.7 HOSE BIBBS**

- A. Hose Bibbs:
1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
  2. Body Material: Bronze.
  3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
  4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
  5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
  6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
  7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
  8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
  9. Finish for Service Areas: Rough bronze.
  10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
  11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
  12. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle.
  13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Wheel handle.

14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
15. Include wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

## **2.8 POST HYDRANTS**

### **A. Freeze-Resistant Sanitary Yard Hydrants:**

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Hoepfner Products.
  - b. Woodford.
2. Standard: ASSE 1057, Type 5 for nondraining hydrants.
3. Operation: Wheel handle.
4. Head: Copper alloy, with pail hook.
5. Inlet: NPS 3/4-inch threaded inlet and inlet nozzle, galvanized-steel riser, and venturi.
6. Canister: Plastic with atmospheric-vent device.
7. Vacuum Breaker:
  - a. Removable hose-connection backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
  - b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet for field installation.

## **2.9 DRAIN VALVES**

### **A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:**

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

### **B. Gate-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:**

1. Standard: MSS SP-80 for gate valves.

2. Pressure Rating: Class 125.
  3. Size: NPS 3/4.
  4. Body: ASTM B 62 bronze.
  5. Inlet: NPS 3/4 threaded or solder joint.
  6. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.
- C. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves <Insert drawing designation if any>:
1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for ball valves or MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
  2. Pressure Rating: 200-psig minimum CWP or Class 125.
  3. Size: NPS 3/4.
  4. Body: Copper alloy or ASTM B 62 bronze.
  5. Drain: NPS 1/8 side outlet with cap.

## **2.10 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS**

### **A. Water-Hammer Arresters:**

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:  
To require a specific type of water-hammer arrester, verify its availability with manufacturer.

- a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - h. Watts Drainage Products.
  - i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
  3. Type: Metal bellows.
  4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

## **2.11 AIR VENTS**

### **A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents:**

1. Body: Bronze.
  2. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125-psig minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F.
  3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
  4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
  5. Size: NPS 3/8 minimum inlet.
  6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.
- B. Welded-Construction Automatic Air Vents:
1. Body: Stainless steel.
  2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig minimum pressure rating.
  3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
  4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
  5. Size: NPS 3/8 minimum inlet.
  6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.12 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Comply with requirements for general-duty metal valves in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. CPVC Union Ball Valves:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. Asahi/America.
    - c. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
    - d. Georg Fischer LLC; GF Piping Systems.
    - e. Hayward Flow Control Systems; Hayward Industrial Products, Inc.
    - f. IPEX.
    - g. NIBCO Inc.
    - h. Spears Manufacturing Company.
    - i. Thermoplastic Valves Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-122.
    - b. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125 psig at 73 deg F.

- c. Body Material: CPVC.
- d. Body Design: Union type.
- e. End Connections for Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Detachable, socket.
- f. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Detachable, socket.
- g. Ball: CPVC; full port.
- h. Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
- i. Handle: Tee shaped.

C. PVC Ball Check Valves:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Asahi/America.
  - c. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
  - d. Georg Fischer LLC; GF Piping Systems.
  - e. Hayward Flow Control Systems; Hayward Industrial Products, Inc.
  - f. IPEX.
  - g. Legend Valve.
  - h. NIBCO Inc.
  - i. Spears Manufacturing Company.
  - j. Thermoplastic Valves Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125 psig at 73 deg F.
  - b. Body Material: PVC.
  - c. Body Design: Union-type ball check.
  - d. End Connections for Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Detachable, socket.
  - e. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Detachable, socket.
  - f. Ball: PVC.
  - g. Seals: EPDM- or FKM-rubber O-rings.

**2.13 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS**

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
  2. Flexicraft Industries.
  3. Flex Pression, Ltd.
  4. Flex-Weld Incorporated.
  5. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
  6. Mercer Gasket & Shim, Inc.
  7. Metraflex, Inc.
  8. Proco Products, Inc.
  9. TOZEN Corporation.
  10. Unaflex.Universal Metal Hose; a Hyspan company.
- B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
  2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
  3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- C. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
  2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
  3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
  2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
  3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- B. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

- C. Install water-control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- E. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
  - 1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- F. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve.
- G. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- H. Install hose stations with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with thermometer on outlet.
  - 1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- I. Install ground hydrants with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set ground hydrants with box flush with grade.
- J. Install draining-type post hydrants with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set post hydrants in concrete paving or in 1 cu. ft. of concrete block at grade.
- K. Set nonfreeze, nondraining-type post hydrants in concrete or pavement.
- L. Set freeze-resistant yard hydrants with riser pipe in concrete or pavement. Do not encase canister in concrete.
- M. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- N. Install air vents at high points of water piping. Install drain piping and discharge onto floor drain.
- O. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- P. Install drainage-type, trap-seal primer valves as lavatory trap with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting.
- Q. Install trap-seal primer systems with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for proper flow.

### **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Comply with requirements for ground equipment in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."



- B. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical connections.

### **3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING**

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  - 1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
  - 3. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
  - 4. Double-check, backflow-prevention assemblies.
  - 5. Carbonated-beverage-machine backflow preventers.
  - 6. Dual-check-valve backflow preventers.
  - 7. Reduced-pressure-detector, fire-protection, backflow-preventer assemblies.
  - 8. Double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventers.
  - 9. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  - 10. Calibrated balancing valves.
  - 11. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
  - 12. Manifold, thermostatic, water mixing-valve assemblies.
  - 13. Photographic-process, thermostatic, water mixing-valve assemblies.
  - 14. Primary water tempering valves.
  - 15. Outlet boxes.
  - 16. Hose stations.
  - 17. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
  - 18. Trap-seal primer systems.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 11 23**  
**DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.
  - 2. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
  - 3. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 221123.13 "Domestic-Water Packaged Booster Pumps" for booster systems.
  - 2. Section 332100 "Water Supply Wells" for well pumps.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

**1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

**1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

**1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.

- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

## **1.8 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS**

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
  - 2. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation.
  - 3. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
  - 4. TACO Incorporated.
  - 5. WILO USA LLC - WILO Canada Inc.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.
- C. Pump Construction:
  - 1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
  - 2. Casing: Bronze, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
  - 3. Impeller: Plastic.
  - 4. Motor: Single speed, unless otherwise indicated.

### **2.2 HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, SEPARATELY COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS**

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation.
  - 2. Marshall Engineered Products Co.
  - 3. TACO Incorporated.
  - 4. Thrush Co. Inc.
  - 5. Weinman Division; Crane Pumps & Systems.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, separately coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontal.

- C. Pump Construction:
1. Casing: Radially split with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections.
  2. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
  3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
  4. Coupling: Flexible.
  5. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket.
  6. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
  7. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
- D. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and resiliently mounted to pump casing.

### **2.3 MOTORS**

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

### **2.4 CONTROLS**

- A. Pressure Switches: Electric, adjustable for control of water-supply pump.
1. Type: Water-immersion pressure sensor, for installation in piping.
  2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
  3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
  4. Transformer: Provide if required.
  5. Power Requirement: 120 V, ac.
  6. Settings: Start pump at and stop pump at
- B. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.
1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
  2. Range: 50 to 125 deg F.
  3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
  4. Operation of Pump: On or off.
  5. Transformer: Provide if required.

6. Power Requirement: 120 V, ac.
  7. Settings: Start pump at 105 deg F and stop pump at 120 deg F.
- C. Timers: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump.
1. Type: Programmable, seven-day clock with manual override on-off switch.
  2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, suitable for wall mounting.
  3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
  4. Transformer: Provide if required.
  5. Power Requirement: 120-V ac.
  6. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Up to two on-off cycles each day for seven days.
- D. Time-Delay Relays: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump between water heater and connected hot-water storage tank.
1. Type: Adjustable time-delay relay.
  2. Range: Up to five minutes.
  3. Setting: Five minutes.
  4. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
  5. Operation of Pump: On or off.
  6. Transformer: Provide if required.
  7. Power Requirement: 120-V ac.
  8. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Limit pump operation to periods of burner operation plus maximum five minutes after the burner stops.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

### **3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Install in-line, sealless centrifugal pumps with shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft(s) horizontal.
- D. Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft vertical.

- E. Pump Mounting: Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with cast-iron base mounted on concrete base using elastomeric pads. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - 3. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- F. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers of size required to support pump weight.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Fabricate brackets or supports as required.
  - 2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- G. Install pressure switches in water supply piping.
- H. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.
- I. Install time-delay relays in piping between water heaters and hot-water storage tanks.

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
  - 1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
    - a. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
    - b. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
    - c. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
    - d. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
  - 2. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves

same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

3. Install pressure gage at suction of each pump and pressure gage at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gage tapings where provided or install pressure-gage connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gages and snubbers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Connect pressure switches, to pumps that they control.
- E. Interlock pump between water heater and hot-water storage tank with water heater burner and time-delay relay.

### **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

### **3.5 STARTUP SERVICE**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Check piping connections for tightness.
  3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
  4. Set pressure switches, for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
  5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
    - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
    - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
    - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
  6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
  7. Start motor.
  8. Open discharge valve slowly.
  9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
  10. Adjust timer settings.



### **3.6 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 22 13 16

### SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Specialty pipe fittings.
  - 3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

##### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.
  - 2. Waste, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig.
- B. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For sovent drainage system. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

##### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For waste and vent piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - 2. Detailed description of piping anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

##### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

## **1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Architect's Construction Manager's written permission.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PIPING MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### **2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class(es).
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

### **2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. Sovent Stack Fittings: ASME B16.45 or ASSE 1043, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.
- C. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ANACO-Husky.
    - b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - c. Fernco Inc.
    - d. Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - e. MIFAB, Inc.
    - f. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
    - g. Stant.

- h. Tyler Pipe.
  - 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
  - 3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- D. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ANACO-Husky.
    - b. Clamp-All Corp.
    - c. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - d. MIFAB, Inc.
    - e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
    - f. Stant.
    - g. Tyler Pipe.
  - 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
  - 3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- E. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. MG Piping Products Company.
  - 2. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
  - 3. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

## **2.4 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Standard Weight class. Include square-cut-grooved or threaded ends matching joining method.
- B. Cast-Iron Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, threaded.
- C. Steel Pipe Pressure Fittings:
  - 1. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Schedule 40, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
  - 2. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.

3. Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- D. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
  2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Grooved-Joint, Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products, Inc.
    - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
    - c. Shurjoint Piping Products.
    - d. Victaulic Company.
  2. Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM A 536 ductile-iron castings, ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable-iron castings, ASTM A 234/A 234M forged steel fittings, or ASTM A 106/A 106M steel pipes with dimensions matching ASTM A 53/A 53M steel pipe, and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
  3. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys; EPDM-rubber gasket suitable for hot and cold water; and bolts and nuts.

## 2.5 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: Performance requirements of ASME A112.3.1, Stainless Steel Drainage Systems for Sanitary DWV, Storm, and Vacuum Applications, Above- and Below Ground, drainage pattern with socket and spigot ends.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Josam Push-Fit Type 316L stainless steel pipe and fittings with visible EPDM gasketed socket, or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Iita/Chibro Steckdrain.
- B. Internal Sealing Rings: Elastomeric gaskets shaped to fit socket groove.
1. Standard EPDM sealing rings are suitable for most applications with temperatures up to 212 deg F. Consult manufacturer for assistance with gasket compatibility.
  2. Optional FPM/FKM elastomeric sealing rings as required for continuous flow above 212 deg F up to 572 deg F or for specific chemical resistance requirements. Consult manufacturer for assistance with gasket compatibility.
  3. Sealing ring gaskets shall have a visible lip after installation to verify that the seal is properly positioned in the completed joint.
  4. Markings or color coding shall be visible on the gasket to identify the gasket material type after installation.

## 2.6 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron, Mechanical-Joint Piping:
  - 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
  - 2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, mechanical-joint, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
  - 3. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Ductile-Iron, Push-on-Joint Piping:
  - 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
  - 2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, push-on-joint ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
  - 3. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.
- C. Ductile-Iron, Grooved-Joint Piping:
  - 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51 with round-cut-grooved ends according to AWWA C606.
  - 2. Ductile-Iron-Pipe Appurtenances:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Anvil International.
      - 2) Shurjoint Piping Products.
      - 3) Star Pipe Products.
      - 4) Victaulic Company.
    - b. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 536 ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching AWWA C110/A 21.10 ductile-iron pipe or AWWA C153/A 21.53 ductile-iron fittings and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
    - c. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys; EPDM-rubber center-leg gasket suitable for hot and cold water; and bolts and nuts.

## 2.7 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and Type M, water tube, drawn temper.

- D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
- E. Copper Pressure Fittings:
  - 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
  - 2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
  - 1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
  - 2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

## **2.8 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Solid-Wall ABS Pipe: ASTM D 2661, Schedule 40.
- B. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: ASTM F 628, Schedule 40.
- C. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2661, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
- D. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2235.
  - 1. ABS solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 325 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## **2.9 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- B. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.
- C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
  - 1. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."



## 2.10 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

### A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - 2) Fernco Inc.
    - 3) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
    - 4) Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.
  - b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
  - c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - d. Sleeve Materials:
    - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
    - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
    - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - 2) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
  - b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
  - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
5. Pressure Transition Couplings:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
  - 2) Dresser, Inc.
  - 3) EBAA Iron, Inc.
  - 4) JCM Industries, Inc.
  - 5) Romac Industries, Inc.
  - 6) Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
  - 7) The Ford Meter Box Company, Inc.
  - 8) Viking Johnson.
- b. Standard: AWWA C219.
- c. Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
- d. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
- e. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
- f. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

- 1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- 2. Dielectric Unions:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - 2) Central Plastics Company.
    - 3) Hart Industries International, Inc.
    - 4) Jomar International Ltd.
    - 5) Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - 6) McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - 7) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - 8) Wilkins; a Zurn company.
  - b. Description:

- 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
  - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
  - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
3. Dielectric Flanges:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - 2) Central Plastics Company.
    - 3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - 4) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - 5) Wilkins; a Zurn company.
  - b. Description:
    - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - 2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
    - 3) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
    - 4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - 2) Calpico, Inc.
    - 3) Central Plastics Company.
    - 4) Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - b. Description:
    - 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
    - 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
    - 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

5. Dielectric Nipples:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Elster Perfection.
    - 2) Grinnell Mechanical Products.
    - 3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - 4) Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - 5) Victaulic Company.
  - b. Description:
    - 1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66
    - 2) Electroplated steel nipple.
    - 3) Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
    - 4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
    - 5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## **2.11 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING**

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- B. Material: Linear low-density polyethylene film of 0.008-inch or high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
- C. Form: Sheet.
- D. Color: Black.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EARTH MOVING**

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

### **3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- K. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- L. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- M. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
  3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- N. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
  1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- O. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.
- P. Install stainless-steel piping according to ASME A112.3.1 and applicable plumbing code.
- Q. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- R. Install aboveground ABS piping according to ASTM D 2661.
- S. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- T. Install underground ABS piping according to ASTM D 2321.

- U. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:
  - 1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Solvent Drainage System: Comply with ASSE 1043 and solvent fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  - 3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- V. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to sanitary sewer piping outside building with restrained joints. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
  - 1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- W. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
  - 1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- X. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- Y. Plumbing Specialties:
  - 1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waster gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  - 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  - 3. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- Z. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- AA. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- BB. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- CC. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.

- B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.
- C. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Join stainless-steel pipe and fittings with gaskets according to ASME A112.3.1.
- F. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- G. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- H. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
- I. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
  - 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

### **3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Transition Couplings:
  - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
  - 2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
  - 3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
  - 4. In Underground Force Main Piping:
    - a. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
    - b. NPS 2 and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples.
3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### **3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION**

- A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves:
  1. Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
  2. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
  3. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
  1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves.
  2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
  3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
  4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

### **3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
  2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
  3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
  4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
  5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.



6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 3: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- J. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 2: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 3: 96 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  3. NPS 4: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.

4. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
- K. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 10 feet.
- L. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  4. NPS 3 and NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
- M. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- N. Install hangers for ABS piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
- O. Install supports for vertical ABS piping every 48 inches.
- P. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.7 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  5. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.

6. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  7. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

### **3.8 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### **3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.

4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
  5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### **3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Exposed ABS Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

### **3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE**

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
  1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
  4. Stainless-steel pipe and fittings, sealing rings, and gasketed joints.

5. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
  6. Solid-wall ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  7. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  8. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
  4. Stainless-steel pipe and fittings, sealing rings, and gasketed joints.
  5. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  6. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
  4. Stainless-steel pipe and fittings gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  5. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
    - a. Option for Vent Piping, NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3-1/2: Hard copper tube, Type M; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  6. Solid-wall ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  7. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  8. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- E. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
  4. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- F. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
1. Extra Heavy class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  3. Stainless-steel pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  4. Solid wall ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  5. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  6. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- G. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:
1. Extra Heavy class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; coupled joints.
  3. Solid-wall PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- H. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 shall be the following:
1. Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
- I. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 shall be the following:
1. Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
  3. Grooved-end, galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- J. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
1. Hard copper tube, Type L; wrought-copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
  3. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
  4. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
  5. Fitting-type transition coupling for piping smaller than NPS 1-1/2 and pressure transition coupling for NPS 1-1/2 and larger if dissimilar pipe materials.

- K. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
  3. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
  4. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
  5. Pressure transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials.

**END OF SECTION**





## SECTION 22 13 19

### SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Backwater valves.
  - 2. Cleanouts.
  - 3. Floor drains.
  - 4. Flashing materials.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.
- C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- D. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- G. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for the following:
  - 1. Grease interceptors.
  - 2. Grease removal devices.
  - 3. Oil interceptors.
  
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for frost-resistant vent terminals.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

## **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Include the following:
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
    - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control test reports.

## **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

## **1.8 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

## **1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Cultures: Provide 1-gal. bottles of bacteria culture recommended by manufacturer of FOG disposal systems equal to 200 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 2 1-gal. bottles.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 CLEANOUTS**

#### **A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:**

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - g. Josam Company; Blucher-Josam Div.
4. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
5. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
6. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch as required to match connected piping.
7. Closure: Countersunk plug.
8. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
9. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.

#### **B. Metal Floor Cleanouts:**

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. Oatey.
  - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - i. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - j. Kusel Equipment Co.
  - k. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - l. Josam Company; Blucher-Josam Div.
4. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for adjustable housing cleanout.
5. Size: Same as connected branch.
6. Type: Adjustable housing.
7. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
8. Clamping Device: Not required.
9. Outlet Connection: Inside calk.
10. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
11. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron Plastic with threads.
12. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
13. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
14. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy Duty.
15. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
16. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
17. Size: Same as connected branch.
18. Housing: Stainless steel.

19. Closure: Stainless steel with seal.
20. Riser: Stainless-steel drainage pipe fitting to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; d of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
4. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
5. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
6. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch as required to match connected piping.
7. Closure: Countersunk plug.
8. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
9. Wall Access: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze cover plate with screw.
10. Wall Access: Round, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

## 2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Commercial Enameling Co.
  - b. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Prier Products, Inc.
  - e. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - f. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - g. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
4. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
  5. Pattern: Area drain.
  6. Body Material: Gray iron.
  7. Seepage Flange: Not required.
  8. Anchor Flange: Not required.
  9. Clamping Device: Not required.
  10. Outlet: Bottom.
  11. Backwater Valve: Drain-outlet type.
  12. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Acid-resistant enamel.
  13. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
  14. Top or Strainer Material: Bronze.
  15. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
  16. Top Shape: Round.
  17. Top Loading Classification: Light Duty.
  18. Funnel: Not required.
  19. Inlet Fitting: Not required.
  20. Trap Material: Bronze.
  21. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap.

## **2.3 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Acorn Engineering Company; Elmdor/Stoneman Div.
    - b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
- B. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch-thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 6 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.
1. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
  2. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
  3. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

## **2.4 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ProSet Systems Inc.
  3. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.
  4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent stack.
  5. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
  6. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
  7. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

## **2.5 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES**

- A. Open Drains:
1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
  2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.

- B. Air-Gap Fittings:
1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
  2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
  3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
  4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
  5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.
- C. Sleeve Flashing Device:
1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend [1 inch] [2 inches] <Insert dimension> above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
  2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.
- D. Stack Flashing Fittings:
1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
  2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- E. Vent Caps:
1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
  2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- F. Frost-Resistant Vent Terminals:
1. Description: Manufactured or shop-fabricated assembly constructed of copper, lead-coated copper, or galvanized steel.
  2. Design: To provide 1-inch enclosed air space between outside of pipe and inside of flashing collar extension, with counterflashing.
- G. Expansion Joints:
1. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
  2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
  3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
  4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

## 2.6 FLASHING MATERIALS



- A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness.
  - 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0469-inch thickness.
  - 3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness.
- B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft..
  - 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft..
- C. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- D. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.
- E. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- F. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- H. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

## 2.7 MOTORS

- A. General requirements for motors are specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting: Install on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases specified in [Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
  - 2. Construct bases to withstand, without damage to equipment, seismic force required by code.
  - 3. Construct concrete bases 4 inches high and extend base not less than 6 inches in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic anchor support.
  - 4. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi at 28 days.

5. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  6. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  7. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  8. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
  4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    - c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
  3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.

- G. Assemble and install ASME A112.3.1, stainless-steel channel drainage systems according to ASME A112.3.1. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with surface.
- H. Assemble non-ASME A112.3.1, stainless-steel channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- I. Assemble FRP channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- J. Assemble plastic channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- K. Install fixture air-admittance valves on fixture drain piping.
- L. Install stack air-admittance valves at top of stack vent and vent stack piping.
- M. Install air-admittance-valve wall boxes recessed in wall.
- N. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- O. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- P. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors at floor penetrations.
- Q. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 1 inch above floor.
- R. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
  - 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
  - 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- S. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- T. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- U. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- V. Install frost-resistant vent terminals on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- W. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.
- X. Install frost-proof vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- Y. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
  - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
  - 2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
  - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
  - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
  - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.
- G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

## 3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled and their installation, including piping and electrical connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### **3.6 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 22 42 13.13

### COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Water closets.
  - 2. Flushometer valves.
  - 3. Toilet seats.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for water closets.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

##### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

##### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than six of each type.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 FLOOR-MOUNTED, BOTTOM-OUTLET WATER CLOSETS

- A. Water Closets: Floor mounted, bottom outlet, top spud.
  - 1. Bowl:

- a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
  - b. Material: Vitreous china.
  - c. Type: Siphon jet.
  - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
  - e. Height: Standard Handicapped/elderly, complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1.
  - f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
  - g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
  - h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
  - i. Color: White.
2. Bowl-to-Drain Connecting Fitting: ASME A112.4.3.

## **2.2 WALL-MOUNTED WATER CLOSETS**

- A. Water Closets: Wall mounted, top spud, accessible.
- 1. Bowl:
    - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
    - b. Material: Vitreous china.
    - c. Type: Siphon jet.
    - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
    - e. Height: Standard.
    - f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
    - g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
    - h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
  - 2. Support:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.
    - b. Description: Waste-fitting assembly as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include additional extension coupling, faceplate, and feet for installation in wide pipe space.
    - c. Water-Closet Mounting Height: Standard Handicapped/elderly according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

## **2.3 FLUSHOMETER VALVES**

- A. Solenoid-Actuator, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves:
- 1. Standard: ASSE 1037.



2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
  3. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
  4. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
  5. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
  6. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
  7. Style: Exposed Concealed.
  8. Actuator: Solenoid complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  9. Trip Mechanism: Battery-powered electronic sensor complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  10. Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
  11. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
  12. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.
- B. Battery-Powered, Solenoid-Actuator, Piston Flushometer Valves:
1. Standard: ASSE 1037.
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
  3. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
  4. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
  5. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
  6. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
  7. Style: Exposed Concealed.
  8. Actuator: Solenoid complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  9. Trip Mechanism: Battery-powered electronic sensor complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  10. Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
  11. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
  12. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.

## **2.4 TOILET SEATS**

- A. Toilet Seats:

1. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
2. Material: Plastic.
3. Type: Commercial (Standard).
4. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
5. Hinge: Check.
6. Hinge Material: Noncorroding metal.
7. Seat Cover: Not required.
8. Color: White.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before water-closet installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where water closets will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Water-Closet Installation:
  1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
  2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
  3. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- B. Support Installation:
  1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets.
  2. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
  3. Install floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate, onto waste-fitting seals; and attach to support.
  4. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.
- C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:
  1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
  2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.

3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
  4. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
  5. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.
- D. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- E. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:
1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
  2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
  3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Joint Sealing:
1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
  2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
  3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

### **3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.

- C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 22 42 13.16

### COMMERCIAL URINALS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Urinals.
  - 2. Flushometer valves.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for urinals.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

##### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

##### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.
  - 2. Waterless Urinal Trap-Seal Cartridges: Equal to 200 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 12 of each type.
  - 3. Waterless Urinal Trap-Seal Liquid: Equal to 1 gal. for each urinal installed.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 STALL URINALS

- A. Urinals: Wall hung, back outlet, siphon jet, accessible.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. American Standard America.
  - b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - c. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
  - d. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
  - e. Kohler Co.
  - f. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
  - g. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
2. Fixture:
- a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
  - b. Material: Vitreous china.
  - c. Strainer or Trapway: Manufacturer's standard strainer with integral trap.
  - d. Water Consumption: Water saving.
  - e. Spud Size and Location: NPS 3/4; back.
  - f. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2; back.
  - g. Color: White.
3. Waste Fitting:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
  - b. Size: NPS 2.
4. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.

## **2.2 URINAL FLUSHOMETER VALVES**

- A. Lever-Handle, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves:
- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Coyne & Delany Co.
    - b. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    - c. Sloan Valve Company.
    - d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
  - 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
  - 4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.

5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
8. Style: Exposed.
9. Consumption: 0.125 gal. per flush.
10. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4.
11. Minimum Outlet: NPS 3/4.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before urinal installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where urinals will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Urinal Installation:
  1. Install urinals level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
  2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
  3. Install wall-hung, bottom-outlet urinals with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
  4. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
  5. Install trap-seal liquid in waterless urinals.
- B. Support Installation:
  1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
  2. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.
  3. Use carriers without waste fitting for urinals with tubular waste piping.
  4. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.
- C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:
  1. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
  2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.

3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible urinals with handle mounted on open side of compartment.
  4. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.
- D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:
1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations.
  2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
  3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Joint Sealing:
1. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
  2. Match sealant color to urinal color.
  3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

### **3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 22 42 16.13

### COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this **Section**.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Lavatories.
  - 2. Faucets.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for lavatories.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring of automatic faucets.

##### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

##### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Servicing and adjustments of automatic faucets.

##### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
  - 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 VITREOUS-CHINA, COUNTER-MOUNTED LAVATORIES**

- A. Lavatory: Rectangular, self-rimming, vitreous china, counter mounted.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. American Standard America.
    - b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
    - c. Kohler Co.
    - d. TOTO USA, INC.
  - 2. Fixture:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
    - b. Type: Self-rimming for above-counter mounting.
    - c. Nominal Size: Rectangular, 21 by 19 inches.
    - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: Three holes, 2-inch centers.
    - e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
    - f. Color: White.
    - g. Mounting Material: Sealant.
- B. Lavatory: Oval, self-rimming, vitreous china, counter mounted.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. American Standard America.
    - b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - c. Capizzi.
    - d. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
    - e. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
    - f. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    - g. Kohler Co.
    - h. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
    - i. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
    - j. TOTO USA, INC.
    - k. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Fixture:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
  - b. Type: Self-rimming for above-counter mounting.
  - c. Nominal Size: Oval, 19 by 17 inches.
  - d. Nominal Size: Round, 19 inches.
  - e. Faucet-Hole Punching: Three holes, 2-inch centers.
  - f. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
  - g. Color: White.
  - h. Mounting Material: Sealant.

## **2.2 VITREOUS-CHINA, WALL-MOUNTED LAVATORIES**

- A. Lavatory: Vitreous china, wall mounted, with back.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. American Standard America.
    - b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - c. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
    - d. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
    - e. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    - f. Kohler Co.
    - g. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
    - h. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
    - i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
  2. Fixture:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
    - b. Type: For wall hanging.
    - c. Nominal Size: Oval, 19 by 16 inches.
    - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole.
    - e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
    - f. Color: White.
    - g. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.

## 2.3 **SOLID-BRASS, AUTOMATICALLY OPERATED LAVATORY FAUCETS**

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Lavatory Faucets: Automatic-type, battery-powered, electronic-sensor-operated, mixing, solid-brass valve.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. American Standard America.
    - b. Bradley Corporation.
    - c. Chicago Faucets.
    - d. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    - e. Grohe America, Inc.
    - f. Hydrotek International, Inc.
    - g. Kohler Co.
    - h. Moen Incorporated.
    - i. Sloan Valve Company.
    - j. Speakman Company.
    - k. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
    - l. TOTO USA, INC.
    - m. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
  - 2. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and UL 1951.
  - 3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 4. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
  - 5. Body Type: Single hole.
  - 6. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
  - 7. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
  - 8. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.

9. Mounting Type: Deck, concealed.
10. Spout: Rigid type.
11. Spout Outlet: Aerator.

## **2.4 WASTE FITTINGS**

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
  1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4.
  2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated, brass or steel wall flange.
  3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch- thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.
- B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

### **3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 22 42 16.16

### COMMERCIAL SINKS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Service sinks.
  - 2. Handwash sinks.
  - 3. Sink faucets.
  - 4. Waste fittings.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 224100 "Residential Plumbing Fixtures" for residential sinks.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sinks.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

##### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

##### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sinks to include in maintenance manuals.

##### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
  - 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SERVICE SINKS**

- A. Service Sinks: Enameled, cast iron, trap standard mounted.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. American Standard America.
    - b. Commercial Enameling Company.
    - c. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    - d. Kohler Co.
    - e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
  - 2. Fixture:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2.
    - b. Type: Service sink with back.
    - c. Back: Two faucet holes.
    - d. Nominal Size: 22 by 18 inches.
    - e. Color: White.
    - f. Mounting: NPS 2 P-trap standard with grid strainer inlet, cleanout, and floor flange.
    - g. Rim Guard: On front and sides.
  - 3. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, sink carrier.
- B. Service Sinks: Vitreous china, trap standard mounted.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
    - b. Kohler Co.
    - c. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
  - 2. Fixture:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
    - b. Type: Service sink with back.
    - c. Back: Two faucet holes.



- d. Nominal Size: 22 by 20 inches.
  - e. Color: White.
  - f. Mounting: NPS 2 P-trap standard with grid strainer inlet, cleanout, and floor flange.
  - g. Rim Guard: On front and sides.
3. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, sink carrier.
- C. Service Sinks: Enameled, cast iron, floor mounted.
- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. American Standard America.
    - b. Commercial Enameling Company.
    - c. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    - d. Kohler Co.
    - e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
  - 2. Fixture:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2.
    - b. Style: With front apron and raised back.
    - c. Nominal Size: 28 by 28 inches.
    - d. Color: White.
    - e. Drain: Grid with NPS 2 outlet.
    - f. Rim Guard: Coated wire.

## 2.2 HANDWASH SINKS

- A. Handwash Sinks: Stainless steel, wall mounted.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Advance Tabco.
    - b. AERO Manufacturing Company.
    - c. Amtekco Industries, Inc.
    - d. Eagle Group; Foodservice Equipment Division.
    - e. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
    - f. Griffin Products, Inc.
    - g. Just Manufacturing.

2. Fixture:
  - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 and NSF/ANSI 2.
  - b. Type: Basin with radius corners, back for faucet, and support brackets.
  - c. Nominal Size: 17 by 16 by 5 inches.
3. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.
4. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Waste Fittings" Article.
5. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, sink carrier.

### **2.3 SINK FAUCETS**

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Sink Faucets: Manual type, single-control mixing valve.
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. American Standard America.
    - b. Bradley Corporation.
    - c. Chicago Faucets.
    - d. Delta Faucet Company.
    - e. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
    - f. GROHE America, Inc.
    - g. Just Manufacturing.
    - h. Kohler Co.
    - i. Moen Incorporated.
    - j. Speakman Company.
    - k. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
    - l. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
    - m. American Standard America.
    - n. Bradley Corporation.
    - o. BrassTech Inc.
    - p. Central Brass Company.
    - q. Chicago Faucets.
    - r. Danze, Inc.

- s. Delta Faucet Company.
- t. Eljer, Inc.
- u. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- v. Franke Consumer Products, Inc.
- w. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
- x. Griffin Products, Inc.
- y. GROHE America, Inc.
- z. Hansgrohe USA.
- aa. Hydrotek International, Inc.
- bb. Intersan Manufacturing Company.
- cc. Just Manufacturing.
- dd. Kohler Co.
- ee. Matco-Norca.
- ff. Moen Incorporated.
- gg. Price Pfister, Inc.
- hh. Speakman Company.
- ii. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
- jj. WhiteRock Corp.
- kk. Wolverine Brass, Inc.
- ll. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
- mm. American Standard America.
- nn. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
- oo. Danze, Inc.
- pp. Delta Faucet Company.
- qq. Eljer, Inc.
- rr. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
- ss. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
- tt. Matco-Norca.
- uu. Moen Incorporated.
- vv. Sterling; a Kohler company.

ww. WhiteRock Corp.

xx. Wolverine Brass, Inc.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
4. Body Type: Centerset.
5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
6. Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.2 gpm.
8. Handle(s): Lever
9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
10. Spout Type: Rigid, solid brass].
11. Vacuum Breaker: Required for hose outlet.
12. Spout Outlet: Laminar flow.

## **2.4 WASTE FITTINGS**

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
  1. Size: NPS 1-1/2.
  2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- thick brass tube to wall and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.
  3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch- thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

## **2.5 GROUT**

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped/elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
- E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
  - 1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - 2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- G. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.

- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

**3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 22 47 16

### PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pressure water coolers and related components.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pressure water cooler.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

##### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For pressure water coolers to include in maintenance manuals.

##### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Filter Cartridges: Equal to 10% percent of quantity installed for each type and size indicated, but no fewer than 10% of each.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

- A. Pressure Water Coolers: Wall mounted, standard, wheelchair accessible.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Halsey Taylor.
    - c. Haws Corporation.
    - d. Larco Inc.
    - e. Tri Palm International, LLC; Oasis Brand.

- f. Tri Palm International, LLC; Sunroc Brand.
- 2. Cabinet: Single.
- 3. Bubbler: One, with adjustable stream regulator, located on each cabinet deck.
- 4. Control: Push button.
- 5. Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/4 tailpiece.
- 6. Supply: NPS 3/8 with shutoff valve.
- 7. Waste Fitting: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 brass P-trap.
- 8. Filter: One or more water filters complying with NSF 42 and NSF 53 for cyst and lead reduction to below EPA standards; with capacity sized for unit peak flow rate.
- 9. Cooling System: Electric, with hermetically sealed compressor, cooling coil, air-cooled condensing unit, corrosion-resistant tubing, refrigerant, corrosion-resistant-metal storage tank, and adjustable thermostat.
  - a. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 10. Capacities and Characteristics:
  - a. Cooled Water: 5 gph.
  - b. Ambient-Air Temperature: 90 deg F.
  - c. Inlet-Water Temperature: 80 deg F.
  - d. Cooled-Water Temperature: 50 deg F.
  - e. Electrical Characteristics:
    - 1) Volts: 120-V ac.
    - 2) Phase: Single.
    - 3) Hertz: 60.
- 11. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I water-cooler carrier.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Set freestanding pressure water coolers on floor.
- C. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.
- D. Install mounting frames, affixed to building construction, and attach recessed, pressure water coolers to mounting frames.
- E. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball, gate, or globe valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
- G. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- H. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Install ball, gate, or globe shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Install valve upstream from filter for water cooler. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.
- B. Adjust pressure water-cooler temperature settings.

### **3.5 CLEANING**

- A. After installing fixture, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.
- D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 23 00 01

### HVAC GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 GENERAL NOTES

- A. The Drawing General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions and Divisional Specification Sections shall apply to and form part of this Division.
- B. Where items of this section contradict with Division I, the more stringent of the sections shall apply.
- C. This Contractor shall be responsible for the review of all project drawings and specification that affect work of this section.

##### 1.2 SCOPE

- A. Work includes but is not necessarily limited to the following:
  - 1. Provide all labor, material, equipment and transportation to complete the Work as shown on the drawings, specified herein and/or implied thereby.
- B. Applicable provisions of General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions and all sections in Division No. 1 "General Requirements" govern work under this section.
- C. This contractor shall review all contract documents including but not limited to Division 1 specifications regarding Savings by Design and requirements. In addition to the entire set of contract documents, the following items are critical to Savings by Design:
  - 1. Installation of equipment at efficiencies as specified.
  - 2. Installation of premium energy efficient motors.

##### 1.3 WORK NOT INCLUDED IN THIS DIVISION

- A. Painting, except as hereinafter specified. See Division 9 for painting.
- B. Electrical, except for controls hereinafter specified. See Division 26 for electrical.

##### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Unless otherwise specified, "all clarification from," "field direction by," "submittals to," "approved by," "processed by," "permission from," and like mentioned herein shall mean from/by/to the Owner's Authorized Representative.
- B. "Provide" means furnish and install referenced item with all appurtenances.
- C. "Shall" indicates a mandatory requirement.
- D. "Air conditioning" is defined as the treatment and/or handling of any air to any degree by the systems shown on the drawings and herein specified and is not restricted to refrigerated cooling.
- E. "Or Equal" is defined as approved as equal by the Owner's Authorized Representative.

## **1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE OF MATERIALS**

- A. Provide for the safety and good condition of all materials and equipment until final acceptance by the Owner. Protect all materials and equipment from damage from any cause whatever, and provide adequate and proper storage facilities during the progress of the work. Replace all damaged and defective work, material or equipment prior to filing application for final acceptance.
- B. Cap or plug openings in equipment, piping, ducts, and other systems to exclude entrance of dirt and other foreign material during construction.
- C. Material storage shall be the contractor's responsibility. Coordinate the storage of materials on site prior to purchasing of materials. Storage shall comply with Owner's Authorized Representative's requirements.

## **1.6 CODES AND STANDARDS**

- A. All work and materials shall be in full accordance with the latest adopted rules and regulations of the Local Fire Marshal; the California Electrical Code (NEC); the California Plumbing Code; local Building Codes; the California Mechanical Code; California Building Code; and other applicable codes, laws or regulations of bodies lawfully empowered and having jurisdiction over this project. Nothing in the plans or specifications is to be construed to permit work not conforming to these codes. When codes conflict with one another, provide larger, higher or more restrictive standards without additional costs.

## **1.7 PERMITS**

- A. Obtain all permits, patent rights, and licenses that are required for the performing of this work by all laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, or orders of any officer and/or body. Provide all notices necessary in connection therewith, and pay all fees relating thereto and all costs and expenses incurred on account thereof. No work shall be covered before inspection by the jurisdictional authorities and observation by the Architect.

## **1.8 EXPLANATION AND PRECEDENCE OF DRAWINGS**

- A. Drawings and specifications are intended to be read together so that any work mentioned in one and not the other shall be executed the same as if mentioned in both.
- B. For purposes of clearness and legibility, drawings are essentially diagrammatic, and, although size and location of equipment are drawn to scale wherever possible, Contractor shall make use of all data in all the contract documents and shall verify this information at building site.
- C. Where the contract specifications and/or drawings are in conflict, obtain clarification of such during bidding. Clarification will only be given in written addendum form. Where addenda for clarification of such is not timely, base the bid on the higher standards or more restrictive requirements; prior to fabrication, obtain written clarification.
- D. The drawings indicate required size and points of termination of piping and ductwork, and suggest proper routes to conform to structure, avoid obstructions and preserve clearances. However, it is not intended that drawings indicate all necessary offsets, and it shall be the work of the Contractor to make the installation in such a manner as to conform to the structure, avoid obstructions, preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear, without further instructions or costs to the Owner.

- E. It is intended that all mechanical systems be located symmetrically with all architectural elements. Refer to architectural, structural, electrical, plumbing plans and details in completing the required coordination.
- F. The Contractor shall fully inform himself regarding any and all peculiarities and limitations of the spaces available for the installation of all work and materials furnished and installed under the Contract. He shall exercise due and particular caution to determine that all parts of his work are made quickly and easily accessible.
- G. The Contractor shall study all drawings and specifications to determine any conflict with ordinances and statutes. Any discrepancies shall be reported, and any changes shall be shown in the as-built drawings and the additional work performed at no cost to the Owner.
- H. Submittal of bid shall indicate the Contractor has examined the site, drawings and specifications and has included all required allowances in his bid. No allowance shall be made for any error resulting from Contractor's failure to visit job site and to review drawings and specifications, and bid shall include costs for all required drawings and changes as outlined above, all at no cost to Owner.

### **1.9 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

- A. In areas where clearances are limited and in places where several disciplinary works must be located or areas noted by Architect/Engineer, prepare coordination drawings at a scale not less than 1/8" equals 1'-0".
- B. These drawings shall be mutually prepared by all contractors. The sheet metal contractor shall initiate the drawing production. Each additional trade shall aid their systems as required to complete full coordination. Each trade shall date and sign composite drawing.
- C. If locations arise during construction where multiple disciplinary systems cannot fit in the space allocated as a result of one non-coordinate disciplinary system installation. The general contractor or the subcontractor who fails to coordinate shall be responsible for the system modifications required to make them fit.
- D. Where conflicts arise during the completion of the coordination drawings, the general contractors shall determine resolution.

### **1.10 RECORD DRAWINGS**

- A. Provide and maintain on the job one complete set of blueline prints of the drawings for the mechanical work. Carefully record on this set of prints, all work including ductwork, piping, valves, etc., which is installed differently from that indicated on the drawings; locate dimensionally from fixed points all buried piping including depths relative to finish floor elevations. The depth shall also be indicated for all plugged wyes, tees and capped lines. Mark all changes of location of piping, ducts, and equipment in accordance with Division 1, Section "Project Record Drawings".
- B. These drawings shall be continuously kept up-to-date, and shall be available for inspection at all times. All existing lines discovered shall be indicated on these drawings and located dimensionally from fixed points along with depths, if buried.
- C. At completion of work, provide a neat and legible reproducible set of these up-to-date drawings which shall be individually signed and dated by the Contractor and the job inspector as to their accuracy.
- D. Such drawings shall be submitted for acceptance and approval to the Owner's Authorized Representative before final certificate of acceptance will be issued.

### **1.11 COORDINATION WITH OTHER DIVISIONS**

- A. This contractor shall coordinate but not limited to the following:
  - 1. All duct conduit and pipe openings with structural contractor.
  - 2. All equipment support locations (hung on floor mounted) with structural contractor.
  - 3. All fire smoke damper and powered equipment locations with the electrical contractor.

### **1.12 CUTTING AND PATCHING**

- A. Perform all cutting and fitting required for work of this section in rough construction of the building.
- B. All patching of finished construction of building shall be performed under the sections of specifications covering these materials by the trades at no additional cost to the Owner.
- C. All cutting of concrete work by Contractor shall be by core drilling or concrete saw. No cutting or coring shall be done without first obtaining the permission of the Owner's Authorized Representative.
- D. All patching of existing surfaces shall match existing material and finish.

### **1.13 DAMAGE BY LEAKS**

- A. Contractor shall be responsible for damage to the grounds, walks, roads, buildings, piping systems, electrical systems and their equipment and contents, caused by leaks in the piping systems being installed or having been installed herein. He shall repair at his expense all damage so caused. All repair work shall be done as directed by the Owner's Authorized Representative.

### **1.14 EMERGENCY REPAIRS**

- A. The Owner reserves the right to make emergency repairs as required to keep equipment in operation without voiding the Contractor's guarantee bond nor relieving the Contractor of his responsibilities.

### **1.15 LOCATIONS**

- A. The Contractor shall fully inform himself regarding any and all peculiarities and limitations of the spaces available for the installation of all work and materials furnished and installed under the contract. Coordinate with all other trades in advance of the work, requirements for openings, recesses and chases in the walls, partitions, equipment housekeeping pads, framing or openings and routing of piping, ductwork, conduit, etc. relative to each trade to alleviate conflicts. Should furnishing this information be neglected, delayed or incorrect and additional cutting is found to be required, the cost of same shall be borne by the Contractor. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for providing and paying for the required core drilling and openings in existing work.
- B. Diagrammatic Indications on Drawings Are:
  - 1. Approximate only.
  - 2. At various locations shown distorted for clarity.
- C. Exact Locations Shall:

1. Be as required for proper installation in available space.
2. Avoid interference with architectural and structural features, other trade's piping, ductwork, conduit, etc.
3. Be coordinated with the work of other trades toward the general purpose of having the work progress rapidly and smoothly with a minimum interference between one trade and another.
4. Preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear.
5. Include a neat arrangement of piping, ductwork, conduit, etc. symmetrical to the building lines, light and tile patterns and other building elements. Any deviations shall be requested in writing prior to implementation.

#### **1.16 SUPPORTS, EQUIPMENT PADS, STAGING, ETC.**

- A. Construct all supports required for the proper installation of equipment in accordance with the drawings and if not indicated on drawings. Provide an engineered shop drawing indicating proposed supports and mounting methods. Refer to architectural and structural drawings for equipment pads by others. Provide all staging, scaffolds, platforms, ladders or similar facilities required to properly install the work.

#### **1.17 SUBSTITUTIONS**

- A. If substitutions of controls or equipment requires any changes in the structural design and/or electrical work from that shown on the drawings, the extra cost of the equipment, added structural and/ or electrical work shall be the responsibility of the Contractor requesting the substitution.
- B. If the Contractor proposes substitutions of any equipment specified herein or on the drawings, it shall be the Contractor's responsibility to obtain approval for such equipment as well as approval for anchorage of such equipment from governing approval agencies. All costs required for such approval shall be the responsibility of the Contractor requesting the substitution.
- C. The Contractor shall coordinate the installation of an approved substitute, make such changes as may be required for the work to be completed and be made compatible with other systems in all respects.

#### **1.18 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Prior to commencement of work and in accordance with the General Requirements, submit for review a minimum of six copies of a list of all proposed equipment and material to be provided. By submitting the proposed equipment lists, it is deemed that the Contractor has performed the following: verified the delivery dates and such are compatible with the specified construction schedule; verified that the equipment is of proper size to accommodate the conditions specified or indicated. Where manufacturers without specific model numbers are named, such shall be regarded as acceptable as to the manufacturer only and not as to any specific equipment of the named manufacturer. Specific equipment of such name manufacturers shall comply with all requirements and shall be submitted for review. By proposing the substitutions, it is deemed that the Contractor shall bear the cost of any changes necessary to accommodate the substitutions.
- B. Provide formal submittal to Owner's Authorized Representative. Review of the formal submittal is only for general conformance with design concept of project and general compliance with the information given in the contract documents. The Contractor is responsible for confirmation and correlation of the dimensions, quantities and sizes, for

information that pertains to fabrication methods or construction techniques, and for coordination of work of all trades. Deviations from Drawings and Specifications shall be clearly and completely indicated by a separate letter in the formal submittals, and the lack of such is deemed complete compliance with Drawings and Specifications without any deviations. Submittals favorably processed will not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for errors or deviations not so reported by a separate letter.

1. Products and equipment specified and/or scheduled on the drawings with manufacturers names and models identified, constitutes the basis of design, including but not limited to performance, acoustical characteristics, fit in allocated space, service and maintenance clearances, equipment replacement access space, and availability of reliable service at the project location and substitution of products and equipment specified and/or scheduled on the drawings with products or equipment of another manufacturer requires prior approval by Owners Authorized Representative in accordance with General Requirements.
2. Model numbers used may not indicate all features or options required for this specific installation. Modify the specified models to comply with all requirements, as specified and/or shown.
3. Product Data for Proposed Substitutions:
  - a. Submit copies of complete data, with drawings and samples as appropriate, including:
    - 1) Comparison of the qualities of the proposed substitution with that specified.
    - 2) Changes required in other elements of the work because of the substitution.
    - 3) Affect on construction schedule.
    - 4) Cost data comparing the proposed substitution with the product specified.
    - 5) Availability of maintenance service and source of replacement materials at the project location.
    - 6) Any requests for equipment substitution shall include 1/4" = 1'-0" scale layouts of proposed equipment in plan, elevations and sections complete with piping and ductwork hookups as applicable, to verify fit within allocated spaces, service and maintenance clearances and equipment replacement access spaces.
  - b. Acceptance of substitutions is entirely at the discretion of the Owner's Authorized Representative.
- C. All formal submittals shall be complete and with catalog data and information properly marked to show, among other things, equality of material (where substitution is allowed and desired), adequacy in capacity and performance to meet minimum capacities or performance as specified or indicated. Arrange the submittals in the same sequence as these Specifications and reference (at the upper right-hand side with tabs) the particular Specification provision for which each submittal is intended. Incomplete submittals shall be rejected.
- D. Do not fabricate or deliver materials or equipment until formal submittals have been approved. Where material or equipment is used without such approval, it is deemed that the material or equipment shall be in complete compliance with drawings and specifications, without additional cost where such compliance is lacking.
- E. Submittals shall be bound and shall include, as a minimum, the following:



1. Complete bill of materials listing equipment furnished.
  2. Catalog cut sheets of every component being provided with all items clearly highlighted.
  3. Provide complete blueline shop drawings of the equipment detailing all field connection points.
  4. Dimensions including weights and capacities.
  5. Wiring diagrams showing control interface as applicable.
  6. Warranty sheets.
  7. Pressure drops as applicable.
  8. Required clearances for maintenance.
- F. Upon permission to proceed, after review of the formal submittal and prior to the installation of work, submit dimensional and scaled, not less than 1/4" equal to one foot, coordination drawings of all mechanical ductwork and piping floor plans, plumbing piping floor plans and mechanical equipment rooms and areas. Such layouts shall indicate but not necessarily be limited to, all mechanical equipment, control panels, pipe risers, routes of major pipes, housekeeping pads, electrical stub-ups and points of connection, clearances for servicing and maintaining equipment, proposed routing of larger equipment into and thru the building during construction, and other like items. The layouts shall also indicate major equipment to be provided under other sections of work. Prepare floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, elevations, sections and details as required to indicate a coordinated effort has been addressed between all trades to alleviate problem areas due to limited space, sequencing of construction, etc. so as to not impede the efficient flow of work and account for unwarranted delays and costs.
- G. Contractor shall incur all costs for time spent by Engineer for review of more than two submittals on each item. Costs shall be based on Engineer's hourly billing rate schedule at the time of review. Rate schedule available upon request. Engineer shall invoice the contractor upon completion of review and shall be paid by the contractor within 30 days of date of invoice.

### **1.19 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. When electrical work is specified in subsequent sections to be furnished and installed by the Mechanical Contractor, it shall be installed in metallic conduit and in strict and full accordance with the requirements of Division 26.
- B. The power wiring, safety switches, motor starters, combination controllers (indicated on the electrical drawings), circuit breakers, motor-control equipment forming part of motor control centers or switchgear assemblies, and the electrical connections of the mechanical equipment to the electrical power source shall be provided under Division 26.
- C. The electrical components of mechanical equipment including, but not limited to, VFD drives, control or push-button stations, float/pressure switches, solenoid valves, thermostats, junction boxes and other devices functioning to control mechanical equipment shall be provided under Division 23. Interconnecting wiring for packaged equipment shall be provided as an integral part of the equipment.
- D. Control Wiring: Line voltage wiring and conduit controlling mechanical equipment not shown on electrical drawings shall be provided under Division 23. All low voltage wiring and conduit required for controlling mechanical equipment shall be provided under Division 23 of this specification (unless otherwise shown on Electrical Drawings). Installation of these items shall comply with Division 26 and all wiring shall be installed in conduit.

### **1.20 MOTORS**

- A. The Contractor shall furnish and/or align all motors when the equipment is furnished and installed by him. Motors shall be designed to operate at full load continuously in 40 degrees C environment, and for temperature rise in accordance with ANSI/NEMA MG 1

limits for insulation class, service factor, and motor enclosure type and shall be premium energy efficient type for 2 HP and above. The size of all motors shall be the size required by the equipment it drives. Each belt connected motor shall be fitted with base and slide rails. Each motor shall have a sufficient starting torque to start the apparatus driven. Motors shall be fitted with conduit connection boxes, threaded for conduit. Motors shall be wound for the voltage shown on the electrical drawings.

1. Each motor for a belt drive shall be fitted with "V" belt sheaves. These shall be key seated and set screwed to the motor shafts and the combined motor and sheave shall run in perfect balance.
  2. All motors less than 1/2 HP shall have built-in running protection. Motors 1/2 h.p. and larger shall be for 3-phase service unless otherwise scheduled.
  3. Each motor shall have a visible nameplate indicating motor horsepower, voltage, phase, cycles, RPM, full load amps, locked rotor amps, frame size, manufacturer's name and model number, service factor and efficiency.
  4. All motors 2 H.P. and larger shall be premium energy efficient type.
- B. Before order is placed for motors or other electrical devices, the Contractor shall check with the Electrical contractor and verify requirements as to type, mounting, voltage, phase, hertz, and current characteristics as well as to any special delivery instructions.

### **1.21 DRIVES**

- A. The contractor shall allow for each belt driven unit furnished by him a minimum of one drive changes including sheaves/pulleys, belts, etc.
- B. Changes shall be as directed by the Owners Authorized Representative and may be required there conditions warrant an increase/decrease in airflow delivery.

### **1.22 ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS**

- A. Access Doors and Panels.
  1. Wherever volume dampers, fire dampers, smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers, controls, valves or other items or parts of the installation which require periodic inspection or adjustments are concealed by permanent non-removable construction, an access door or panel shall be provided. Doors or panels shall be as manufactured by Milcor, Ruskin or approved equal with slotted head cam locks. Rating of access door or panel shall be determined by rating of wall or ceiling in which door or panel is installed. Types to be as approved and as appropriate for the surface and construction in which it is installed. Furnishing and locating by this Contractor; installation by other Division; verify all locations with Owners Authorized Representative. Submit drawings indicating all access door or panel locations.
  2. Doors or panels shall be a minimum of 16" x 24" in walls and 24" x 24" in ceilings.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 GENERAL**

- A. Products and materials shall be described in the pertinent section of Division 23 - Mechanical.
- B. Products and materials not specified within the specifications but specified on the drawings shall be as described on the drawings.
- C. Materials and equipment: wherever possible, all materials and/or equipment used for similar service shall be of the same manufacturer.

## **2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. All labor shall be carefully skilled for this kind of work, thorough and first class in all respects and under the direction of a competent foreman (HVAC work).
- B. All materials shall be new, in perfect condition. Materials for similar uses shall be of same type and manufacturer.
- C. Equipment shall bear the manufacturer's label showing performance characteristics. Identifying size number shall be given only when it is not practicable or customary to show performance characteristics.
- D. All valves, pipe, fittings, etc., shall bear the manufacturer's name or trademark.
- E. Unless otherwise specified herein, all equipment and fixtures shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, including recommended service and removal clearances.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL**

- A. See Division 31 for additional excavation and backfill requirements.
- B. Underground piping shall be installed with a minimum of 24" cover from finish grade or as noted on drawings.
- C. Excavation for pipes shall be cut a minimum of 6" below the required grade. A 6" bed of sand or other approved material shall then be placed and properly compacted to provide an accurate grade and uniform bearing throughout the length of the pipe.
- D. Backfill of pipes shall include a 6" layer of sand or other approved material over top of the pipe(s), properly compacted. Balance of backfill material and all compaction shall be in compliance with Division 31.
- E. Sand used shall be certified to a resistance of not less than the surrounding soil when wet with distilled water and shall consist of clean, natural, washed sand with particles of size which will pass through a 3/8" screen, 90% will pass through a 1/4" screen and 25% will pass through a No. 50 screen.
- F. Backfilling shall not be placed until the work has been inspected, tested and approved.
- G. Clods or lumps 2" in size or larger shall not be permitted in the backfill. If the excavated material is not suitable, adequate material shall be provided by hauling from other locations.
- H. Surplus earth or material remaining after backfilling shall be removed from the site as indicated in Division 31.

### **3.2 TESTS**

- A. Contractor shall make all tests required by all legally constituted authorities and as follows.
  - 1. All tests shall be made in the presence of the Owner's Authorized Representative and a duly Authorized inspector. The Owner's Authorized Representative shall be notified 5 working days before tests are made.
  - 2. Concealed work and insulated work shall remain uncovered until required testing has been performed and approved by the Owner's Authorized Representative. If work required to be tested is covered before the approval of the Owner's Authorized Representative has been obtained, it shall be uncovered for testing at the Contractor's expense.
  - 3. Obtain all required documents of certification indicating approval, acceptance and compliance with the requirements of all administrative authorities having jurisdiction over the work. No final payment shall be made until all such certificates are delivered to the Owner's Authorized Representative.
  - 4. Furnish labor, materials, instruments and bear other costs in connection with all tests.

5. All piping systems, except as hereinafter specified, shall be given hydrostatic (with water) test of a least 150% of the maximum operating pressure unless otherwise noted.
6. Before making test, remove or valve off from the system, gauges, traps, and other apparatus or equipment which may be damaged by test pressure.
7. Install a calibrated test pressure gauge in the system to observe any loss in pressure. Maintain the required test pressure for a sufficient length of time to enable an inspection to be made of all joints and connections. Perform tests after installation and prior to acceptance.
8. Final pressures at the end of the test period shall be no more or less than that caused by expansion or contraction of the test medium due to temperature changes.
9. After tests have been made and leaks repaired, clean and flush systems as hereinafter specified. Water piping shall be left under supply main pressure for the balance of the construction period.
10. Tests for the following systems are specified within their respective section.

### **3.3 PROTECTION AND CLEAN-UP**

- A. Protection: Provide for the safety and good condition of all materials and equipment until final acceptance of the Owner's Authorized Representative. Protect all materials and equipment from damage from any cause whatever, and provide adequate and proper storage facilities during the progress of the work and replace all damaged and defective material, equipment or work prior to filing application for final acceptance. Equipment, piping and ductwork shall be stored at least six inches off the ground on blocking and kept clean. During construction properly cap all ducts, pipes and equipment and appurtenances to prevent the entrance of sand and dirt.
- B. Cleaning:
  1. Thoroughly clean all piping, ductwork and all parts of the fixtures, apparatus and equipment. Clean all ductwork, piping, apparatus and equipment that is to be insulated prior to installation of insulation. All parts shall be thoroughly cleaned of sand, dirt, cement, plaster, rust, and other materials, and all grease and oil spots removed. Such surfaces shall be carefully wiped and all cracks and corners scraped out. All code stamps and nameplates shall be protected from damage and must be clean and legible before final inspection.
  2. Exposed rough metal work shall be carefully brushed down with steel brushes to remove rust and other spots and left in clean condition to receive painter's finish. Where factory prime coat has been damaged, this Contractor shall be responsible for restoration of same.
  3. All piping shall be flushed out or blown out after pressure testing is complete and before being put into use. All strainer screens shall be removed and cleaned. After start-up and testing, strainer screens shall again be removed and cleaned.

### **3.4 PAINTING OF PIPING, DUCTWORK AND EQUIPMENT**

- A. Painting not herein specified shall be specified under Division 9 Painting.
- B. Paint the surface of ducts visible through supply, return, exhaust or transfer openings flat black.
- C. Paint all bare piping, equipment, ductwork, hangers, supports, etc., exposed to weather and within the mechanical rooms. Colors as selected by Architect.
- D. Touch-up or repaint any factory finished mechanical equipment on which the finish is damaged with colored paint to match the original.

- E. Surface preparation, priming, finish coats application, etc., shall be in accordance with painting section of these specifications.
- F. This Section shall be responsible for painting specified piping, ductwork and equipment (without factory finish) installed in Division 23. This includes painting insulation.

### **3.5 COMMISSIONING AND PRELIMINARY OPERATIONAL TESTS**

- A. Prior to inspection to determine substantial completion, the Contractor shall put all mechanical systems into service and check that work required for that purpose has been done, including but not limited to the following condensed check list:
  - 1. Correct rotation of motors and ratings of overload heaters are verified.
  - 2. Specified filters are installed and spares are on hand when specified.
  - 3. All equipment has been started, checked, lubricated and adjusted in accordance with the manufacturer=s recommendations.
  - 4. All manufacturers certificates of start-up specified have been delivered to the Owners Authorized Representative.
  - 5. All equipment has been cleaned, and damaged painted finishes touched-up
  - 6. Damaged fins on heat exchangers have been combed out. Missing or damaged parts have been replaced.
  - 7. Flushing and chemical treatment of piping systems has been done and water treatment equipment, where specified, is in operation.
  - 8. Equipment labels, pipe marker labels, ceiling markers and valve tags are installed.
  - 9. Valve tag schedules, corrected control diagrams, sequence of operation lists and start-stop instructions have been posted.
  - 10. Test and balance work is complete.
  - 11. Maintenance manuals have been delivered and instructions to the Owners operating personnel have been made.
- B. Prior to the inspection to determine substantial completion, the Contractor shall operate all mechanical systems as required to demonstrate that the installation and performance of these systems conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- C. Before handing over the system to Owner, replace temporary filters with complete new set of filters.
- D. Refer to section 23-0800 "HVAC Commissioning Technical Requirements" for further requirements.

### **3.6 REVIEW OF CONTRACTOR'S TESTS**

- A. All tests made by the Contractor or manufacturer's representatives are subject to observation and review by the Owner's Authorized Representative; the Contractor shall provide timely notices.

### **3.7 TEST LOGS**

- A. The contractor shall maintain test logs listing the tests on all mechanical systems showing dates, items tested, inspector's names, remarks on success or failure of the tests.

### **3.8 CLEANING UP AND REMOVAL OF SCRAP**

- A. For work under all mechanical sections, trash and scrap shall be cleaned up and removed from the site as the work progresses.

### **3.9 DAMAGE RESPONSIBILITY**

- A. Be responsible for damage to the grounds, buildings or equipment, and the loss of refrigerants, fuels or gases, caused by leaks or breaks in pipes for equipment furnished or installed under this Division.

### **3.10 PRELIMINARY OPERATION**

- A. The Owner reserves the right to operate portions of the mechanical system on a preliminary basis without voiding the guarantee.

### **3.11 OPERATIONAL TESTS**

- A. Before operational tests are performed, demonstrate that all systems and components are complete and fully charged with operating fluid and lubricants.
- B. Systems shall be operable and capable of maintaining continuous uninterrupted operation during the operating and demonstration period. After all systems have been completely installed, connections made, and tests completed, operate the systems continuously for a period of five working days during the hours of a normal working day.
- C. Control systems shall be completely operable with settings properly calibrated and adjusted.
- D. Rotating equipment shall be in dynamic balance and alignment.
- E. If the system fails to operate continuously during the test period, the deficiencies shall be corrected and the entire test repeated.

### **3.12 COMPLIANCE TESTS**

- A. Conduct such tests of all portions of the installation as may be required by the various sections of this Division. Tests shall be made in the presence of the Owner's Authorized Representative.
- B. Provide all instruments, equipment, labor and materials to complete the tests. These tests may be required at any time between the installation of the work and the end of the warranty period. Should these tests expose any defective materials, poor workmanship or variance with requirements, make any changes necessary and remedy any defects at no cost to the Owner.

### **3.13 MAINTENANCE, OPERATION INSTRUCTIONS, ETC.**

- A. General: Thoroughly instruct the Owner's operators in every detail of operation of the system. Provide the Owner with a list of all equipment, giving the manufacturer's name, model number, serial number, parts list and complete internal wiring diagrams. All directions for operation furnished by the manufacturer shall be carefully saved and turned over to the Owner, together with written sequence of operation, operating and maintenance instructions for each system and its equipment. Coordinate scheduling of instruction times with Owner's operators.

- B. Specific Data: Submit four (4) complete sets of the following data to the Owner for approval prior to acceptance of the installation, complete and at one time; (partial or separate data will not be accepted) data shall consist of the following:
1. Valve Directory: Indicating valve number, location, function and normal operating position for each.
  2. Piping identification schedule.
  3. Equipment: List of nameplates, including nameplate data.
  4. Manufacturer's Literature: Copies of manufacturer's instructions for operation and maintenance of all mechanical equipment, including replacement parts lists and drawings. Mark or highlight brochure literature indicating the models, sizes, capacities, curve operating points, etc., in a manner to clearly indicate the equipment installed. Remove all pages or sheets from the bulletin and catalogs that do not pertain to equipment installed on the project.
  5. Written Instructions: Typewritten instructions for operation and maintenance of the system composed of OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS, MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS and a MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE.
    - a. OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS shall contain a brief description of the system. Adjustments requiring the technical knowledge of the service agency personnel shall not be included in the operating instructions. The fact such adjustments are required, however, shall be noted.
    - b. MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS shall list each item of equipment requiring inspection, lubrication or service and describe the performance of such maintenance.
    - c. MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE shall list each item of equipment requiring maintenance, shall show the exact type of bearing on every component of each item of equipment, and shall show when each item of equipment should be inspected or serviced.
  6. Instructions: Operating personnel shall be instructed in the operation of the system in accordance with typewritten, approved instructions.
  7. Letters of certification as required under other sections.
- C. Binders: Assemble sets of the above data in loose-leaf ring-type binders with permanent covers, with identification on front and on spline.
- D. The above shall in no way preclude the requirements of other sections of these specifications -- and is to be supplemental to other paragraphs on this subject found in this section and other sections.

### **3.14 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. During the guarantee period and as directed by the Owner, make any additional tests, adjustment, etc., that may be required and correct any defects or deficiencies arising from operation of the systems. Operational tests shall be made during both heating and cooling seasons and on all systems.
- B. Guards: Furnish and install removable guards around all moving parts of all equipment and/or apparatus. Guards shall be securely anchored to floor or equipment, and shall provide protection at ends and sides to prevent contact with sheaves, belts, couplings, etc. Holes in suitable locations shall be provided for measuring speeds.
- C. Completion:
  1. When the installation is complete and adjustments specified herein have been made, the system shall be operated for a period of one week, during which time it shall be demonstrated to the Owner's Authorized Representative as being completed and operating in conformance with these specifications. The Contractor shall schedule all work so that this time period, which is to confirm a

"bug-free" system, will occur before the total project is accepted for substantial completion by Owner.

2. The work hereunder shall not be reviewed for final acceptance until operating and maintenance data, manufacturer's literature, valve directories, piping identification code directory, and nameplates specified herein have been approved and properly posted in the building.

### **3.15 GUARANTEE/WARRANTY**

- A. All materials, apparatus and equipment furnished and installed under the mechanical division of these specifications, shall be new and free from any defects. Should any problems develop within one year from date of acceptance of the work, due to inferior or faulty materials and/or workmanship, the problems shall be corrected by this Contractor without expense to the Owner. Any defective materials or inferior workmanship noticed at the time of installation or during the guarantee period shall be corrected immediately to the entire satisfaction of the Owner.
- B. The work shall be installed of such materials and in such a manner that:
  1. The operation of all parts of the system shall be quiet to the extent that no objectionable sound of operation will be heard outside of the rooms enclosing the apparatus or equipment.
  2. All apparatus or equipment shall operate in accordance with detailed specifications covering each item.
  3. Contractor shall, at his own expense, make any adjustments or changes required to produce a condition of quietness satisfactory to the Architect or his Representative. Such adjustments or changes shall not reduce the performance or quantities called for on the drawings.
  4. Contractor shall guarantee that his installation of all materials and equipment will meet the performance requirements of these specifications and that all equipment will deliver the specified or required capacities.
  5. The Owner reserves the right to make temporary or emergency repairs as necessary to keep equipment in operating condition without voiding the guarantee contained herein nor relieving the Contractor of his responsibilities during the guarantee period.
  6. Contractor shall be responsible for all damage to any part of the premises caused by leaks or break in pipe lines, fixtures or equipment furnished and installed under his contract for a period of one year after date of acceptance of the project by Owner. He shall replace in kind, at his own expense, any and all items so damaged to the complete satisfaction of the Owner.
  7. The above shall be supplemental to and in no way preclude the requirements of other sections of these specifications.
  8. After the operation of any liquid system and if any piping, coils or other components become air bound, this contractor shall make all necessary system modifications including but not limited to repiping (as approved), installation of air vents or fittings at no extra cost to the owner.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 23 00 02

### BASIC HVAC MATERIALS AND METHODS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following basic mechanical materials and methods to complement other Sections.
  - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  - 2. Escutcheons.
  - 3. Dielectric fittings.
  - 4. Flexible connectors.
  - 5. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 6. Equipment nameplate data requirements.
  - 7. Nonshrink grout for equipment installations.
  - 8. Field-fabricated metal and wood equipment supports.
  - 9. Installation requirements common to equipment specification sections.
  - 10. Cutting and patching.
  - 11. Touchup painting and finishing.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawl spaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors, or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in duct shafts. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants, but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

E. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:

1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
2. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
3. NP: Nylon plastic.
4. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
5. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

F. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:

1. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
2. EPDM: Ethylene propylene diene terpolymer rubber.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 for lettering size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices.
- B. Equipment Selection: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics, physical dimensions, capacities, and ratings may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting mechanical and electrical services, circuit breakers, conduit, motors, bases, and equipment spaces are increased. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies of equipment are specified, equipment must meet design and commissioning requirements.

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Protect stored pipes and tubes from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor, if stored inside.
- C. Protect flanges, fittings, and piping specialties from moisture and dirt.
- D. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

#### **1.6 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING**

- A. Coordinate mechanical equipment installation with other building components.
- B. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction to allow for mechanical installations.
- C. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured- in-place concrete and other structural components, as they are constructed.
- D. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of mechanical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installation of large equipment

requiring positioning before closing in building.

- E. Coordinate connection of mechanical systems with exterior underground and overhead utilities and services. Comply with requirements of governing regulations, franchised service companies, and controlling agencies.
- F. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors if mechanical items requiring access are concealed behind finished surfaces.
- G. Coordinate installation of identifying devices after completing covering and painting, if devices are applied to surfaces. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Dielectric Unions:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - c. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
  - 2. Dielectric Flanges:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Epco Sales Inc.
    - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - 3. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
    - a. Calpico, Inc.
    - b. Central Plastics Co.
  - 4. Dielectric Couplings:
    - a. Calpico, Inc.
    - b. Lochinvar Corp.
  - 5. Dielectric Nipples:
    - a. Grinnell Corp.; Grinnell Supply Sales Co.

- b. Perfection Corp.
  - c. Victaulic Co. of America.
6. Metal, Flexible Connectors:
- a. Central Sprink, Inc.
  - b. Grinnell Corp.; Grinnell Supply Sales Co.
  - c. Metraflex Co.
  - d. Proco Products, Inc.
7. Rubber, Flexible Connectors:
- a. General Rubber Corp.
  - b. Mercer Rubber Co.
  - c. Metraflex Co.
  - d. Proco Products, Inc.
8. Mechanical Sleeve Seals:
- a. Calpico, Inc.
  - b. Metraflex Co.
  - c. Thunderline/Link-Seal.

## 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness, unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
  - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Grooved Joint Lubricants: Lubricate gaskets with lubricant supplied by the coupling manufacturer in accordance with published installation instructions. The lubricant shall approved for the gasket elastomer and system media.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32.
  - 1. Alloy Sn95 or Alloy Sn94: Approximately 95 percent tin and 5 percent silver, with 0.10 percent lead content.
  - 2. Alloy E: Approximately 95 percent tin and 5 percent copper, with 0.10 percent maximum lead content.
  - 3. Alloy HA: Tin-antimony-silver-copper zinc, with 0.10 percent maximum lead content.
  - 4. Alloy HB: Tin-antimony-silver-copper nickel, with 0.10 percent maximum lead content.
  - 5. Alloy Sb5: 95 percent tin and 5 percent antimony, with 0.20 percent maximum lead content.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
  - 1. BCuP Series: Copper-phosphorus alloys.
  - 2. BAg1: Silver alloy.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Flanged, Ductile-Iron Pipe Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: AWWA C110, rubber gasket, carbon-steel bolts and nuts.
- I. Couplings: Iron-body sleeve assembly, fabricated to match OD of plain-end, pressure pipes.
  - 1. Sleeve: ASTM A 126, Class B, gray iron.
  - 2. Followers: ASTM A 47 (ASTM A 47M) malleable iron or ASTM A 536 ductile iron.
  - 3. Gaskets: Rubber.
  - 4. Bolts and Nuts: AWWA C111.
  - 5. Finish: Enamel paint.

### **2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS**

- A. General: Assembly or fitting with insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals, to prevent galvanic action and stop corrosion.
- B. Description: Combination of copper alloy and ferrous; threaded, solder, plain, and weld-neck end types and matching piping system materials.
- C. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

- D. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
- E. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric-Flange Insulation Kits: Field-assembled, companion-flange assembly, full-face or ring type. Components include neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
  - 1. Provide separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
- G. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
- H. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
- I. Dielectric Waterway: Copper silicon casting conforming to UNS C87850 with grooved and/or threaded ends. UL classified in accordance with NSF-61 for potable water service, and shall meet the low-lead requirements of NSF-372. Basis of Design: Victaulic Series 647.

## **2.4 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS**

- A. General: Fabricated from materials suitable for system fluid and that will provide flexible pipe connections. Include 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working- pressure rating, unless higher working pressure is indicated, and ends according to the following:
  - 1. 2-Inch NPS and Smaller: Threaded.
  - 2. 2-1/2-Inch NPS and Larger: Flanged.
  - 3. Option for 2-1/2-Inch NPS and Larger: Grooved for use with keyed couplings.
- B. Copper Pipe, Flexible Connectors: Corrugated, bronze, inner tubing covered with bronze wire braid. Include copper-tube ends or bronze flanged ends, braze welded to hose.
- C. Steel Pipe, Flexible Connectors: Corrugated, stainless-steel, inner tubing covered with stainless-steel wire braid. Include steel nipples or flanges, welded to hose.
- D. Three flexible type grooved joint couplings may be used in lieu of flexible connectors at equipment connections in applicable piping systems. The couplings shall be placed in close proximity to the vibration source. Basis of Design: Victaulic Company.

## **2.5 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS**

- A. Description: Modular design, with interlocking rubber links shaped to continuously fill annular space between pipe and sleeve. Include connecting bolts and pressure plates.

## 2.6 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Sleeves: The following materials are for wall, floor, slab, and roof penetrations:
1. Steel Sheet Metal: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness, galvanized, round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
  2. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade A, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
  3. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
    - a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- B. Escutcheons: Manufactured wall, ceiling, and floor plates; deep-pattern type if required to conceal protruding fittings and sleeves.
1. ID: Closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping.
  2. OD: Completely cover opening.
  3. Cast Brass: One piece, with set screw.
    - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plate.
  4. Cast Brass: Split casting, with concealed hinge and set screw.
    - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plate.
  5. Cast-Iron Floor Plate: One-piece casting.

## 2.7 GROUT

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: ASTM C 1107, Grade B.
1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  2. Design Mix: 5000-psig, 28-day compressive strength.
  3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Install piping as described below, unless piping Sections specify otherwise. Individual Division 23 piping Sections specify unique piping installation requirements.
- B. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated, unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping at indicated slope if noted

- D. Install flexible pipe connectors on pipes connected to equipment supported by vibration isolation.
- E. Accomplish structural work and provide equipment required to control expansion and contraction of piping, loops, pipe offsets and swing joints.
- F. Install components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install piping at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited, unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Install piping tight to slabs, beams, joists, columns, walls, and other building elements. Allow sufficient space above removable ceiling panels to allow for ceiling panel removal.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation plus 1-inch clearance around insulation.
- K. Locate groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit valve servicing.
- L. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- M. Install couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- N. Install pipe escutcheons for pipe penetrations of concrete and masonry walls, wall board partitions, and suspended ceilings according to the following:
  - 1. Chrome-Plated Piping: Cast brass, one piece, with set screw, and polished chrome-plated finish. Use split-casting escutcheons if required, for existing piping.
  - 2. Uninsulated Piping Wall Escutcheons: Cast brass or stamped steel, with set screw.
  - 3. Uninsulated Piping Floor Plates in Utility Areas: Cast-iron floor plates.
  - 4. Insulated Piping: Cast brass or stamped steel; with concealed hinge, spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
  - 5. Piping in Utility Areas: Cast brass or stamped steel, with set-screw or spring clips.
- O. Sleeves are not required for core drilled holes.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- Q. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum- board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.



2. Build sleeves into new walls and slabs as work progresses. Install sleeves large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
    - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than 6-inch NPS.
    - b. Steel, Sheet-Metal Sleeves: For pipes 6-inch NPS and larger, penetrating gypsum board partitions.
  3. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using elastomeric joint sealants. Refer to Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials.
    - a. Use Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use O, neutral-curing silicone sealant, unless otherwise indicated.
- R. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall, Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeve for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
  2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches in diameter and larger.
  3. Assemble and install mechanical sleeve seals according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tighten bolts that cause rubber sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- S. Underground, Exterior-Wall, Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeve for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Assemble and install mechanical sleeve seals according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tighten bolts that cause rubber sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- T. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestopping materials. Refer to Division 7 Section "Firestopping" for materials.
- U. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- V. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.
- W. Piping Joint Construction: Join pipe and fittings as follows and as specifically required in individual piping specification Sections:
1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
  3. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Soldering Manual," Chapter "The Soldering of Pipe and Tube"; or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

4. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
  5. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
    - a. Note internal length of threads in fittings or valve ends, and proximity of internal seat or wall, to determine how far pipe should be threaded into joint.
    - b. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads, unless dry seal threading is specified.
    - c. Align threads at point of assembly.
    - d. Tighten joint with wrench. Apply wrench to valve end into which pipe is being threaded.
    - e. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
  6. Grooved Joints: Install in accordance with the manufacturer's latest published installation instructions. Pipe ends shall be clean and free from indentations, projections and roll marks in the area from pipe end to (and including) groove. Gasket shall be manufactured by the coupling manufacturer and verified as suitable for the intended service. A factory trained representative (direct employee) of the coupling manufacturer shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the use of grooving tools, application of groove, and product installation. The representative shall periodically visit the job site and review installation to ensure best practices in grooved joint installation are being followed. Contractor shall remove and replace any improperly installed products.
  7. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, "Recommended Practices and Procedures for Welding Low Carbon Steel Pipe," using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
  8. Flanged Joints: Align flange surfaces parallel. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Assemble joints by sequencing bolt tightening to make initial contact of flanges and gaskets as flat and parallel as possible. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Tighten bolts gradually and uniformly using torque wrench.
- X. Piping Connections: Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping 2-inch NPS and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment with 2-inch NPS or smaller threaded pipe connection.
  2. Install flanges, in piping 2-1/2-inch NPS and larger, adjacent to flanged valves

and at final connection to each piece of equipment with flanged pipe connection.

3. Unions and flanges for servicing and disconnect are not required in installations using grooved mechanical joint couplings. (The couplings shall serve as disconnect points if required.)
4. Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### **3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install equipment to provide maximum possible headroom, if mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment according to approved submittal data. Portions of the Work are shown only in diagrammatic form. Refer conflicts to Architect.
- C. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install mechanical equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- E. Install equipment giving right of way to piping installed at required slope.
- F. Install flexible connectors on equipment side of shutoff valves, horizontally and parallel to equipment shafts if possible.

### **3.3 PAINTING AND FINISHING**

- A. Refer to Division 9 Section "Painting" for paint materials, surface preparation, and application of paint.
- B. Apply paint to exposed piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Interior, Ferrous Piping: Use semigloss, acrylic-enamel finish. Include finish coat over enamel undercoat and primer.
  2. Interior, Galvanized-Steel Piping: Use semigloss, acrylic-enamel finish. Include two finish coats over galvanized metal primer.
  3. Interior, Ferrous Supports: Use semigloss, acrylic-enamel finish. Include finish coat over enamel undercoat and primer.
  4. Exterior, Ferrous Piping: Use semigloss, acrylic-enamel finish. Include two finish coats over rust-inhibitive metal primer.
  5. Exterior, Galvanized-Steel Piping: Use semigloss, acrylic-enamel finish. Include two finish coats over galvanized metal primer.
  6. Exterior, Ferrous Supports: Use semigloss, acrylic-enamel finish. Include two finish coats over rust-inhibitive metal primer.
- C. Do not paint piping specialties with factory-applied finish.
- D. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with

materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

### **3.4 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGE**

- A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor mechanical materials and equipment.
- B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

### **3.5 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGE**

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorage to support and anchor mechanical materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

### **3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING**

- A. Cut, channel, chase, and drill floors, walls, partitions, ceilings, and other surfaces necessary for mechanical installations. Perform cutting by skilled mechanics of trades involved.
- B. Repair cut surfaces to match adjacent surfaces.

### **3.7 GROUTING**

- A. Install nonmetallic, nonshrink, grout for mechanical equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors. Mix grout according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placing of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases to provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 23 05 16

### PIPE EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes pipe expansion fittings and loops for mechanical piping systems, and the following:
  - 1. Pipe bends and loops.
  - 2. Guides and anchors.

##### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products suitable for piping system fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Absorb 200 percent of maximum piping expansion between anchors.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of expansion fitting indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
  - 1. Design Calculations: For thermal expansion of piping systems and selection and design of expansion fittings and loops.
  - 2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly.
  - 3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and anchorage.
- C. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.
- D. Schedule: Indicate manufacturer's number, size, location, and features for each expansion fitting and loop.

##### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Engineering Responsibility: Design and preparation of Shop Drawings and calculations for expansion fittings and loops by a qualified professional engineer.
  - 1. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of expansion fittings and loops that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

- B. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

### **2.2 GUIDES**

- A. Steel, factory fabricated, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for alignment of piping and two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

### **2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel, hex head.
- C. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
- D. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, and tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
  - 1. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
  - 2. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
  - 3. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
- E. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud bonding system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, and tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
  - 1. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
  - 2. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
- G. Concrete: Portland cement mix, 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) minimum. Refer to Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for formwork, reinforcement, and concrete.
- H. Grout: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, factory-mixed and -packaged nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 2. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.

3. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXPANSION FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install expansion fittings according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install expansion fittings in sizes matching pipe size in which they are installed.
- C. Align expansion fittings to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.

#### **3.2 PIPE BEND AND LOOP INSTALLATION**

- A. Install pipe bends and loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Attach pipe bends and loops to anchors.
  1. Steel Anchors: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  2. Concrete Anchors: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.

#### **3.3 SWING CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.
- C. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

#### **3.4 GUIDE INSTALLATION**

- A. Install guides on piping adjoining expansion fittings and loops.
- B. Attach guides to pipe and secure to building structure.

#### **3.5 ANCHOR INSTALLATION**

- A. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- B. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars to piping and to structure. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1.
- C. Construct concrete anchors of poured-in-place concrete of dimensions indicated and include embedded fasteners.
- D. Install pipe anchors according to expansion fitting manufacturer's written instructions if expansion fittings are indicated.

- E. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for expansion fittings, guides, and anchors installed on or in concrete.

### **3.6 PAINTING**

- A. Touching Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touching Up: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 9 Section "Painting."
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 23 05 18

### ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.

- g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
  - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished finish.
  - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
  - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished finish.
  - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
- 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

### **3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 23 05 19

### HVAC METERS AND GAGES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes meters and gages for mechanical systems.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Mechanical equipment Sections that specify meters and gages as part of factory-fabricated equipment.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include scale range, ratings, and calibrated performance curves for each meter, gage, fitting, specialty, and accessory specified.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
    - a. Dresser Industries, Inc.; Instrument Div.; Weksler Instruments Operating Unit.
    - b. Ernst Gage Co.
    - c. Marsh Bellofram.
    - d. Palmer Instruments, Inc.
    - e. Trerice: H. O. Trerice Co.
    - f. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
    - g. Winter's Thermogauges, Inc.
  - 2. Pressure Gages:
    - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge Div.

- b. Dresser Industries, Inc.; Instrument Div.; Ashcroft Commercial Sales Operation.
  - c. Dresser Industries, Inc.; Instrument Div.; Weksler Instruments Operating Unit.
  - d. Ernst Gage Co.
  - e. Marsh Bellofram.
  - f. Noshok, Inc.
  - g. Trerice: H. O. Trerice Co.
  - h. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - i. WKA Instruments Corp.
  - j. Winter's Thermogauges, Inc.
3. Test Plugs:
- a. Flow Design, Inc.
  - b. MG Piping Products Co.
  - c. National Meter.
  - d. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
  - e. Sisco Manufacturing Co.
  - f. Trerice: H. O. Trerice Co.
  - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

## **2.2 THERMOMETERS, GENERAL**

- A. Scale Range: Temperature ranges for services listed are as follows:
  - 1. Hot Water: 30 to 300 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions
- B. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range span or plus or minus one scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range span.

## **2.3 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS**

- A. Description: ASTM E 1.
- B. Case: Die cast and aluminum finished in baked-epoxy enamel, glass front, spring secured, 9 inches (230 mm) long.
- C. Adjustable Joint: Finish to match case, 180-degree adjustment in vertical plane, 360-degree adjustment in horizontal plane, with locking device.
- D. Tube: Red or blue reading, organic-liquid filled with magnifying lens.

- E. Tube: Red or blue reading, mercury filled with magnifying lens.
- F. Scale: Satin-faced nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched markings.
- G. Stem: Copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass for separable socket; of length to suit installation.

## **2.4 SEPARABLE SOCKETS**

- A. Description: Fitting with protective socket for installation in threaded pipe fitting to hold fixed thermometer stem.
  - 1. Material: Brass, for use in copper piping.
  - 2. Material: Steel, for use in steel piping.
  - 3. Extension-Neck Length: Nominal thickness of 2 inches (50 mm), but not less than thickness of insulation. Omit extension neck for sockets for piping not insulated.
  - 4. Insertion Length: To extend to center of pipe.
  - 5. Cap: Threaded, with chain permanently fastened to socket.
  - 6. Heat-Transfer Fluid: Oil or graphite.

## **2.5 THERMOMETER WELLS**

- A. Description: Fitting with protective well for installation in threaded pipe fitting to hold test thermometer.
  - 1. Material: Brass, for use in copper piping.
  - 2. Material: Stainless steel, for use in steel piping.
  - 3. Material: Steel, for use in steel piping.
  - 4. Extension-Neck Length: Nominal thickness of 2 inches (50 mm), but not less than thickness of insulation. Omit extension neck for wells for piping not insulated.
  - 5. Insertion Length: To extend to center of pipe.
  - 6. Cap: Threaded, with chain permanently fastened to socket.
  - 7. Heat-Transfer Fluid: Oil or graphite.

## **2.6 PRESSURE GAGES**

- A. Description: ASME B40.1, phosphor-bronze bourdon-tube type with bottom connection; dry type, unless liquid-filled-case type is indicated.
- B. Case: Drawn steel, brass, or aluminum with 4-1/2-inch- (115-mm-) diameter, glass lens.
- C. Connector: Brass, NPS 1/4 (DN8).
- D. Scale: White-coated aluminum with permanently etched markings.

- E. Accuracy: Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole scale.
- F. Range: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Vacuum: 30 inches Hg of vacuum to 15 psig of pressure (100 kPa of vacuum to 103 kPa of pressure).
  - 2. Fluids under Pressure: Two times the operating pressure.

## **2.7 PRESSURE-GAGE FITTINGS**

- A. Valves: NPS 1/4 brass or stainless-steel needle type.
- B. Syphons: NPS 1/4 coil of brass tubing with threaded ends.
- C. Snubbers: ASME B40.5, NPS 1/4 brass bushing with corrosion-resistant porous-metal disc of material suitable for system fluid and working pressure.

## **2.8 TEST PLUGS**

- A. Description: Nickel-plated, brass-body test plug in NPS 1/2 fitting.
- B. Body: Length as required to extend beyond insulation.
- C. Pressure Rating: 500 psig minimum.
- D. Core Inserts: One or two self-sealing valves, suitable for inserting 1/8-inch OD probe from dial-type thermometer or pressure gage.
- E. Core Material for Water: Minus 30 to plus 275 deg F, ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- F. Test-Plug Cap: Gasketed and threaded cap, with retention chain or strap.
- G. Test Kit: Pressure gage and adapter with probe, two bimetal dial thermometers, and carrying case.
  - 1. Pressure Gage and Thermometer Ranges: Approximately two times the system's operating conditions.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 METER AND GAGE INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Install meters, gages, and accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions for applications where used.

### **3.2 THERMOMETER INSTALLATION**

- A. Install thermometers and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
  - 1. Install with socket extending to one-third of diameter of pipe.
  - 2. Fill sockets with oil or graphite and secure caps.
  - 3. Install with stem extending to one-third of diameter of pipe.

4. Fill wells with oil or graphite and secure caps.

### **3.3 PRESSURE-GAGE INSTALLATION**

- A. Install pressure gages in piping tees with pressure-gage valve located on pipe at most readable position.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions, after installation.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.
- C. Clean windows of meters and gages and clean factory-finished surfaces. Replace cracked and broken windows, and repair scratched and marred surfaces with manufacturer's touchup paint.

**END OF SECTION**





## SECTION 23 05 23

### VALVES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following general-duty valves:
  - 1. Gate
  - 2. Plug
  - 3. Butterfly
  - 4. Ball
  - 5. Check
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 21 fire-suppression piping.
  - 2. Division 23 Section "HVAC Identification" for valve tags and charts.
  - 3. Division 23 Section "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls" for control valves and actuators.
  - 4. Division 23 piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated. Include body, seating, and trim materials; valve design; pressure and temperature classifications; end connections; arrangement; dimensions; and required clearances. Include list indicating valve and its application.

##### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 VALVES, GENERAL

- A. Provide valves of same manufacturer throughout where possible.

- B. Provide valves with manufacturers name and pressure rating clearly marked on outside of body.
- C. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- D. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream pipe, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Valve Actuators:
  - 1. Chainwheel: For attachment to valves, of size and mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article in Part 3.
  - 2. Gear Drive: For quarter-turn valves 8" and larger.
  - 3. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  - 4. Lever Handle: For quarter-turn valves 6" and smaller, except plug valves.
  - 5. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 10 plug valves, for each size square plug head.
- F. Extended Valve Stems: On insulated valves.
- G. Valve Flanges: ASME B16.1 for cast-iron valves, ASME B16.5 for steel valves, and ASME B16.24 for bronze valves.

## **2.2 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Gate Valves:
  - 1. Milwaukee
  - 2. Stockham
  - 3. Nibco
- B. Plug Valves:
  - 1. DeAurik
  - 2. Homestead
- C. Butterfly Valves:
  - 1. Keystone
  - 2. Stockham
  - 3. Nibco
  - 4. Deming
  - 5. Milwaukee
- D. Ball Valves:

1. Stockman
  2. Apollo
  3. Nibco
  4. Milwaukee
- E. Check valves:
1. Stockham
  2. Nibco
  3. Milwaukee

### **2.3 GATE VALVES**

- A. Bronze, rising stem, union bonnet, solid wedge, solder or screwed ends. Stockham B-105.

### **2.4 PLUG VALVES**

- A. Cast iron body, bronze or nickel-plated iron plug, Hycar seal with screwed ends for 2" and smaller, 150# flanges for larger sizes. DeZurik Fig. 425.

### **2.5 BUTTERFLY VALVES**

- A. Class 200, iron body, extended neck, aluminum-bronze disc, field replaceable EPDM seat. Stainless steel disc at copper piping. Memory stop handle, except gear operator for sizes 4" and larger. Stockham LG71(2) 1B(S3)E.

### **2.6 BALL VALVES**

- A. Bronze body, full port, threaded or extended solder cup ends. TFE seat rings, C.P. brass ball, blowout proof stem, brass packing gland, & zinc chrome finished hardened steel handle with plastic grip. Stockham S-216-BRRT.

### **2.7 CHECK VALVES**

- A. Non-slam, wafer body for hydronic service with bronze trim and stainless steel hardware. Mission Figure 12-HMP. Bronze body, ASTM B-62, threaded or solder end, class 125, swing type TFE disc for domestic water service. Stockman B-310.

### **2.8 PRESSURE RATINGS**

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, use valves suitable for 125 psig and 350 degrees F.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 VALVE INSTALLATION**

- A. Use ball valves for air and water service, 2" and smaller.
- B. Use butterfly valves for water service, 2½" and larger.
- C. Use gate valves as an option for shut-off water service.

- D. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- E. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- F. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- G. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- H. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- I. Install chainwheel operators on valves 4" and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor elevation.

### **3.2 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Basic HVAC Materials and Methods" for basic piping joint construction.
- B. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 23 05 29

### HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes hangers and supports for mechanical system piping and equipment.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for materials for attaching hangers and supports to building structure.
  - 2. Division 23 Section "HVAC Vibration Controls" for vibration isolation devices.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society for the Valve and Fittings Industry.
- B. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

##### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design channel support systems for piping to support multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
- B. Design heavy-duty steel trapezes for piping to support multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
- C. Design seismic restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment.

##### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pipe hanger, channel support system component, and thermal-hanger shield insert indicated.

##### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualification."

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Pipe Hangers:
    - a. Carpenter & Patterson, Inc.
    - b. Empire Tool & Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - c. Globe Pipe Hanger Products, Inc.
    - d. Grinnell Corp.
  2. Channel Support Systems:
    - a. Grinnell Corp.; Power-Strut Unit.
    - b. National Pipe Hanger Corp.
    - c. Unistrut Corp.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts:
    - a. Carpenter & Patterson, Inc.
    - b. Pipe Shields, Inc.
    - c. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Value Engineered Products, Inc.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Pipe Hangers, Supports, and Components: MSS SP-58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to "Hanger and Support Applications" Article in Part 3 for where to use specific hanger and support types.
1. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: For piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
  2. Nonmetallic Coatings: On attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- B. Channel Support Systems: MFMA-2, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
1. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish, unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.
  2. Nonmetallic Coatings: On attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: 24-psi (165-kPa) minimum compressive-strength insulation, encased in sheet metal shield.
1. Material for Cold Piping: ASTM D1622, cellular foam with vapor barrier.
  2. Material for Hot Piping: ASTM D1622, cellular foam.
  3. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## **2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Mechanical-Anchor Fasteners: Insert-type attachments with pull-out and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars, black and galvanized.
- C. Grout: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, factory-mixed and -packaged, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post hardening and volume adjusting; recommended for both interior and exterior applications.
  - 2. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 3. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS**

- A. Specific hanger requirements are specified in Sections specifying equipment and systems.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Specification Sections.
- C. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Specification Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes 1/2 to 4".
  - 2. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 5" to NPS 20, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  - 3. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes, NPS 5" to NPS 20, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
- D. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Specification Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.

### **3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Pipe Hanger and Support Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Channel Support System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled channel systems.
  - 1. Field assemble and install according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- C. Heavy-Duty Steel Trapeze Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated, heavy-duty trapezes.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D-1.1.
- D. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Space attachments within maximum piping span length indicated in MSS SP-69. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, guides, strainers, and expansion joints, and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- E. Install mechanical-anchor fasteners in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- H. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- I. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," is not exceeded.
- J. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.9.

### **3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS**

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure above or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.

### **3.4 METAL FABRICATION**

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for heavy-duty steel trapezes and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field-weld connections that cannot be shop-welded because of shipping size limitations.



- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- A. Hanger Adjustment: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

### **3.6 PAINTING**

- A. Touching Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touching Up: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 9 Section "Painting."
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 23 05 48

### HVAC VIBRATION CONTROLS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes vibration isolators, vibration isolation bases, vibration and isolation roof curbs.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports" for pipe hanger restraints.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS (not required)

##### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of vibration isolation with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.
- B. Coordinate size and location of concrete housekeeping and vibration isolation bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into base. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3 Sections.
- C. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 7 Sections.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - 2. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - 3. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - 4. Lord Industrial Products.
  - 5. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - 6. Vibration Isolation Co., Inc.
  - 7. Wagner Products Corp.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install and anchor vibration and sound control products according to manufacturer's written instructions and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Anchor interior mounts, isolators, hangers, and snubbers to vibration isolation bases. Bolt isolator baseplates to structural floors as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Anchor exterior mounts, isolators and hangers to vibration isolation bases. Bolt isolator baseplates to structural supports as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Install pipe connectors at connections for equipment supported on vibration isolators.

### **3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operations.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 23 05 53

### MECHANICAL IDENTIFICATION

#### PART 1- GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes mechanical identification materials and devices.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1, "Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems" for lettering size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices.

##### 1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

#### PART 2- PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 IDENTIFYING DEVICES AND LABELS

- A. General: Products specified are for applications referenced in other Division 15 Sections. If more than single type is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.
- B. Equipment Nameplates: Metal permanently fastened to equipment with data engraved or stamped.
  - 1. Data: Manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and essential data.
  - 2. Location: Accessible and visible.
- C. Stencils: Standard stencils, prepared with letter sizes conforming to recommendations of ASME A13.1. Minimum letter height is 1-1/4 inches (30 mm) for ducts, and 3/4 inch (20 mm) for access door signs and similar operational instructions.
  - 1. Material: Fiberboard.
  - 2. Material: Brass.
  - 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, oil-based, alkyd gloss black enamel, unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  - 4. Identification Paint: Exterior, oil-based, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Snap-On Plastic Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, semirigid, snap-on type. Include color-coding according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Pressure-Sensitive Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, color-coded, pressure-sensitive, vinyl type with permanent adhesive.
- F. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches (150 mm): Full-band pipe markers, extending 360 degrees around pipe at each location.
- G. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches (150 mm) and Larger: Either full-band or strip-type pipe markers, at least 3 times letter height and of length required for label.
- H. Lettering: Manufacturer's standard preprinted captions as selected by Architect.
- I. Lettering: Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.
  - 1. Arrows: Either integrally with piping system service lettering, to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit, on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.
- J. Plastic Duct Markers: Manufacturer's standard laminated plastic, in the following color codes:
  - 1. Green: Cold-air supply.
  - 2. Yellow: Hot-air supply.
  - 3. Blue: Exhaust, outside, return, and mixed air.
  - 4. Hazardous Material Exhausts: Use colors and designs recommended by ASME A13.1.
  - 5. Terminology: Include direction of airflow; duct service such as supply, return, and exhaust.
- K. Plastic Tape: Manufacturer's standard color-coded, pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive, vinyl tape, at least 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick.
  - 1. Width: 1-1/2 inches (40 mm) on pipes with OD, including insulation, less than 6 inches (150 mm); 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) for larger pipes.
  - 2. Color: Comply with ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) sequenced numbers. Include 5/32-inch (4-mm) hole for fastener. Choice of Installer.
  - 1. Material: 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick, polished brass.
  - 2. Material: 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick aluminum.
  - 3. Material: 3/32-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick plastic laminate with 2 black surfaces and a white inner layer.
  - 4. Material: Valve manufacturer's standard solid plastic.
  - 5. Size: 1-1/2-inches (40-mm) diameter, unless otherwise indicated.

6. Shape: As indicated for each piping system.
- M. Access Panel Markers: 1/16-inch- (2-mm-) thick, engraved plastic-laminate markers, with abbreviated terms and numbers corresponding to concealed valve. Provide 1/8-inch (3-mm) center hole for attachment.
- N. Engraved Plastic-Laminate Signs: ASTM D 709, Type I, cellulose, paper-base, phenolic-resin-laminate engraving stock; Grade ES-2, black surface, black phenolic core, with white melamine subcore, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate in sizes required for message. Provide holes for mechanical fastening.
1. Engraving: Engraver's standard letter style, of sizes and with terms to match equipment identification.
  2. Thickness: 1/16 inch (2 mm), for units up to 20 sq. in. (130 sq. cm) or 8 inches (200 mm) in length, and 1/8 inch (3 mm) for larger units.
  3. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type, permanent adhesive.
- O. Plastic Equipment Markers: Manufacturer's standard laminated plastic, in the following color codes:
1. Green: Cooling equipment and components.
  2. Yellow: Heating equipment and components.
  3. Brown: Energy reclamation equipment and components.
  4. Blue: Equipment and components that do not meet criteria above.
  5. Hazardous Equipment: Use colors and designs recommended by ASME A13.1.
  6. Terminology: Match schedules as closely as possible. Include the following:
    - a. Name and plan number.
    - b. Equipment service.
    - c. Design capacity.
  7. Size: 2-1/2 by 4 inches (65 by 100 mm) for control devices, dampers, and valves; 4-1/2 by 6 inches (115 by 150 mm) for equipment.
- P. Plasticized Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with mat finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: 3-1/4 by 5-5/8 inches (85 by 145 mm).
  2. Fasteners: Brass grommets and wire.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as DANGER, CAUTION, or DO NOT OPERATE.
- Q. Lettering and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, and other designations used in mechanical identification with corresponding designations indicated. Use numbers, letters, and terms indicated for proper identification, operation, and maintenance of mechanical systems and equipment.

1. Multiple Systems: Identify individual system number and service if multiple systems of same name are indicated.

## **PART 3- EXECUTION**

### **3.1 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING PIPING SYSTEMS**

- A. Install pipe markers on each system. Include arrows showing normal direction of flow.
- B. Marker Type: Stenciled markers with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles.
- C. Marker Type: Stenciled markers complying with ASME A13.1.
- D. Marker Type: Plastic markers, with application systems. Install on pipe insulation segment where required for hot, noninsulated pipes.
- E. Fasten markers on pipes and insulated pipes smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) OD by one of following methods:
  1. Snap-on application of pretensioned, semirigid plastic pipe marker.
  2. Adhesive lap joint in pipe marker overlap.
  3. Laminated or bonded application of pipe marker to pipe or insulation.
  4. Taped to pipe or insulation with color-coded plastic adhesive tape, not less than 3/4 inch (20 mm) wide, lapped a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (40 mm) at both ends of pipe marker, and covering full circumference of pipe.
- F. Fasten markers on pipes and insulated pipes 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter and larger by one of following methods:
  1. Laminated or bonded application of pipe marker to pipe or insulation.
  2. Taped to pipe or insulation with color-coded plastic adhesive tape, not less than 1-1/2 inches (40 mm) wide, lapped a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) at both ends of pipe marker, and covering full circumference of pipe.
  3. Strapped to pipe or insulation with manufacturer's standard stainless-steel bands.
- G. Locate pipe markers and color bands where piping is exposed in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior nonconcealed locations according to the following:
  1. Near each valve and control device.
  2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Mark each pipe at branch, where flow pattern is not obvious.
  3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, or nonaccessible enclosures.
  4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  6. Spaced at a maximum of 50-foot (15-m) intervals along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.5 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.



7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings, except omit intermediately spaced markers.

### **3.2 VALVE TAGS**

- A. Install on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, plumbing fixture supply stops, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in valve schedule.
- B. Valve Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, color scheme, and with captions similar to those indicated in the following:
- C. Tag Material: Brass.
- D. Tag Size and Shape: According to the following:
  1. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches (40 mm), round.
  2. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches (40 mm), round.
  3. Fire Protection: 2 inches (50 mm), round.
  4. Sprinkler: 2 inches (50 mm), round.
  5. Gas: 2 inches (50 mm), square.
  6. Chilled water 2 inches (50mm), square.
  7. Heating hot water 2 inches (50mm), square.
  8. Condenser water 2 inches (50mm), square.
- E. Install mounted valve schedule in each major equipment room.

### **3.3 EQUIPMENT SIGNS AND MARKERS**

- A. Install engraved plastic-laminate signs or equipment markers on or near each major item of mechanical equipment. Include signs for the following general categories of equipment:
  1. Main control and operating valves, including safety devices and hazardous units such as gas outlets.
  2. Fire department hose valves and hose stations.
  3. Meters, gages, thermometers, and similar units.
  4. Fuel-burning units, including boilers and heaters.
  5. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
  6. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
  7. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
  8. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.

9. Tanks and pressure vessels.
  10. Strainers, filters, water-treatment systems, and similar equipment.
- B. Optional Sign Types: Stenciled signs may be provided instead of engraved plastic, at Installer's option, where lettering larger than 1-inch (25-mm) high is needed for proper identification because of distance from normal location of required identification.
1. Lettering Size: Minimum 1/4 inch (6 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1800 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  2. Terms on Signs: Distinguish between multiple units, indicate operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, warn of hazards and improper operations, and identify units.
- C. Plasticized Tags: Install within concealed space, to reduce amount of text in exposed sign outside concealment, if equipment to be identified is concealed above acoustical ceiling or similar concealment.
1. Identify operational valves and similar minor equipment items located in unoccupied spaces, including machine rooms, by installing plasticized tags.
- D. Duct Systems: Identify air supply, return, exhaust, intake, and relief ducts with duct markers; or provide stenciled signs and arrows showing service and direction of flow.
1. Location: Locate signs near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Relocate mechanical identification materials and devices that have become visually blocked by work of this or other Divisions.
- B. Clean faces of identification devices and glass frames of valve charts.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 23 05 93

### TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes testing, adjusting, and balancing HVAC systems to produce design objectives, including the following:
  1. Balancing airflow and water flow within distribution systems, including submains, branches, and terminals, to indicated quantities according to specified tolerances.
  2. Adjusting total HVAC systems to provide indicated quantities.
  3. Measuring electrical performance of HVAC equipment.
  4. Setting quantitative performance of HVAC equipment.
  5. Reporting results of the activities and procedures specified in this Section.
  6. Verifying that automatic control devices are functioning properly.
  7. Refer to section 23-0800 for additional commissioning requirements.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Certified Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Reports: Submit 2 copies of reports prepared, as specified in this Section, on approved forms certified by the testing, adjusting, and balancing Agent.
- B. Warranty: Submit 2 copies of special warranty specified in the "Warranty" Article below.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Agent Qualifications: Engage a testing, adjusting, and balancing agent certified by either AABC or NEBB.
- B. Certification of Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Reports: Certify the testing, adjusting, and balancing field data reports. This certification includes the following:
  1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified testing, adjusting, and balancing reports.
  2. Certify that the testing, adjusting, and balancing team complied with the approved testing, adjusting, and balancing plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
- C. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Reports: Use testing, adjusting, and balancing Agent's standard forms approved by the Architect.

- D. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, and Accuracy: As described in AABC national standards.
- E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, and Accuracy: As described in NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems," Section II, "Required Instrumentation for NEBB Certification."
- F. Instrumentation Calibration: Calibrate instruments at least every 6 months or more frequently if required by the instrument manufacturer.

## **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate the efforts of HVAC installers, and other mechanics to operate HVAC systems and equipment to support and assist testing, adjusting, and balancing activities.
- B. Notice: If required, provide 7 days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.
- C. Perform testing, adjusting, and balancing after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)**

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine Contract Documents to become familiar with project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems and equipment.
  - 1. Contract Documents are defined in the General and Supplementary Conditions of the Contract.
  - 2. Verify that balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are required by the Contract Documents. Verify that quantities and locations of these balancing devices are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.
- B. Examine approved submittal data of HVAC systems and equipment.
- C. Examine project record documents described in Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents."
- D. Examine equipment performance data, including fan and pump curves. Relate performance data to project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
- E. Examine system and equipment installations to verify that they are complete and that testing, cleaning, adjusting, and commissioning specified in individual Specification Sections have been performed.
- F. Examine system and equipment test reports.
- G. Examine HVAC system and equipment installations to verify that indicated balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices,

balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are properly installed, and their locations are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.

- H. Examine systems for functional deficiencies that cannot be corrected by adjusting and balancing.
- I. Examine air-handling equipment to ensure clean filters have been installed, bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine under floor plenum, utilized for supply air, to verify that they are airtight. Verify that pipe penetrations and other holes are sealed.
- K. Examine strainers for clean screens and proper perforations.
- L. Examine 3-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine equipment for installation and for properly operating safety interlocks and controls.
- N. Examine automatic temperature system components to verify the following:
  - 1. Dampers, valves, and other controlled devices operate by the intended controller.
  - 2. Dampers and valves are in the position indicated by the controller.
  - 3. Integrity of valves and dampers for free and full operation and for tightness of fully closed and fully open positions.
  - 4. Automatic modulating and shutoff valves, including 2-way valves and 3-way mixing and diverting valves, are properly connected.
  - 5. Thermostats are located to avoid adverse effects of sunlight, drafts, and cold walls.
  - 6. Sensors are located to sense only the intended conditions.
  - 7. Sequence of operation for control modes is according to the Contract Documents.
  - 8. Controller set points are set at design values. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from design values.
  - 9. Interlocked systems are operating.
- O. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare a testing, adjusting, and balancing plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system readiness checks and prepare system readiness reports. Verify the following:

1. Permanent electrical power wiring is complete.
2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
8. Windows and doors can be closed so design conditions for system operations can be met.

### **3.3 GENERAL TESTING AND BALANCING PROCEDURES**

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC national standards and this Section.
- B. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and this Section.
- C. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary to allow adequate performance of procedures. After testing and balancing, close probe holes and patch insulation with new materials identical to those removed. Restore vapor barrier and finish according to the insulation Specifications for this Project.
- D. Mark equipment settings with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material, including damper-control positions, valve indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, to show final settings.

### **3.4 FUNDAMENTAL AIR SYSTEMS' BALANCING PROCEDURES**

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct airflow measurements.
- C. Check the airflow patterns from the outside-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers, through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- D. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- E. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- F. Check for airflow blockages.
- G. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- H. Check for proper sealing of air-handling unit components.

- I. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- J. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air duct system.

### 3.5 CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS' BALANCING PROCEDURES

- A. The procedures in this Article apply to constant-volume supply-, return-, and exhaust-air systems. Additional procedures are required for variable-air-volume, and process exhaust-air systems. These additional procedures are specified in other articles in this Section.
- B. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable rpm listed by the fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure fan static pressures to determine actual static pressure as follows:
    - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practicable and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from flexible connection and downstream from duct restrictions.
    - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
  - 2. Compare design data with installed conditions to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Compare actual system effect factors with calculated system effect factors to identify where variations occur. Recommend corrective action to align design and actual conditions.
  - 3. Include ½" filter differential change out pressure drop, adjust fan speed higher or lower than design.
  - 4. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full cooling, full heating, and economizer modes to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- C. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
  - 1. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
    - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pilot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
  - 2. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

- D. Measure terminal outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
  - 1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or the outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- E. Adjust terminal outlets and inlets for each space to design airflows within specified tolerances of design values. Make adjustments using volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at the air terminals.
  - 1. Adjust each outlet in the same room or space to within specified tolerances of design quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
  - 2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

### **3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS**

- A. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a maximum set-point airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
- B. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
  - 1. Set outside-air dampers at minimum and return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.
  - 2. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
  - 3. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
  - 4. Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units as described for constant-volume air systems.
  - 5. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow as described for constant-volume air systems.
    - a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
  - 6. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outside airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets as described for constant-volume air systems.
  - 7. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.



- C. Record the final fan performance data.

### **3.7 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS**

- A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:
  - 1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
  - 2. Check expansion tank liquid level.
  - 3. Check water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
  - 4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation and set at indicated flow.
  - 5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.
  - 6. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
  - 7. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
  - 8. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

### **3.8 PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS**

- A. Measure water flow at pumps. Use the following procedures, except for positive-displacement pumps:
  - 1. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Read pressure differential across the pump. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
  - 2. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until indicated water flow is achieved.
  - 3. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.
  - 4. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 5 percent of design.
- B. Set calibrated balancing valves, if installed, at calculated presettings.

- C. Measure flow at all stations and adjust, where necessary, to obtain first balance.
  - 1. System components that have Cv rating or an accurately cataloged flow-pressure-drop relationship may be used as a flow-indicating device.
- D. Measure flow at main balancing station and set main balancing device to achieve flow that is 5 percent greater than indicated flow.
- E. Adjust balancing stations to within specified tolerances of indicated flow rate as follows:
  - 1. Determine the balancing station with the highest percentage over indicated flow.
  - 2. Adjust each station in turn, beginning with the station with the highest percentage over indicated flow and proceeding to the station with the lowest percentage over indicated flow.
  - 3. Record settings and mark balancing devices.
- F. Measure pump flow rate and make final measurements of pump amperage, voltage, rpm, pump heads, and systems' pressures and temperatures including outdoor-air temperature.
- G. Measure the differential-pressure control valve settings existing at the conclusions of balancing.

### **3.9 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS**

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
  - 1. Manufacturer, model, and serial numbers.
  - 2. Motor horsepower rating.
  - 3. Motor rpm.
  - 4. Efficiency rating.
  - 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  - 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  - 7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass for the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations, including controller manufacturer, model and serial numbers, and nameplate data.

### **3.10 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS**

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

- C. Record compressor data.

### **3.11 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS**

- A. Measure entering- and leaving-water temperatures and water flow.

### **3.12 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS**

- A. Water Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:

1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
2. Water flow rate.
3. Water pressure drop.
4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
6. Airflow.
7. Air pressure drop.

- B. Refrigerant Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

### **3.13 TEMPERATURE TESTING**

- A. During testing, adjusting, and balancing, report need for adjustment in temperature regulation within the automatic temperature-control system.
- B. Measure indoor wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in each separately controlled zone. Measure when the building or zone is occupied if under occupancy.
- C. Measure outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures.

### **3.14 TOLERANCES**

- A. Set HVAC system airflow and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
  1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans: Plus 5 to plus 10 percent.
  2. Air Outlets and Inlets: 0 to minus 10 percent.
  3. Hot water flow rate: 0 to minus 10 percent.

### **3.15 REPORTING**

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: As Work progresses, prepare reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### **3.16 FINAL REPORT**

- A. General: Computer printout in letter-quality font, on standard bond paper, in 3-ring binder, tabulated and divided into sections by tested and balanced systems.
- B. Include a certification sheet in front of binder signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 1. Include a list of the instruments used for procedures, along with date of calibration.
- C. Final Report Contents: In addition to the certified field report data, include the following:
  - 1. Pump curves.
  - 2. Fan curves.
  - 3. Other information relative to equipment performance, but do not include approved Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- D. General Report Data: In addition to the form titles and entries, include the following data in the final report, as applicable:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Name and address of testing, adjusting, and balancing Agent.
  - 3. Project name.
  - 4. Project location.
  - 5. Architect's name and address.
  - 6. Engineer's name and address.
  - 7. Contractor's name and address.
  - 8. Report date.
  - 9. Signature of testing, adjusting, and balancing Agent who certifies the report.
  - 10. Summary of contents, including the following:

- a. Design versus final performance.
  - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
  - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
- 11. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  - 12. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer, type size, and fittings.
  - 13. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from design values.
  - 14. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms, including the following:
    - a. Settings for outside-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Fan drive settings.
    - e. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - f. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- E. Air-Handling Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
- 1. Unit Data: Include the following:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Unit arrangement and class.
    - g. Discharge arrangement.
    - h. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
    - i. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
    - j. Number of belts, make, and size.
    - k. Number of filters, type, and size.
  - 2. Motor Data:
    - a. Make and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.

- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
- f. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
- c. Fan rpm.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
- e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
- f. Preheat coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
- g. Cooling coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
- h. Heating coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
- i. Outside airflow in cfm (L/s).
- j. Return airflow in cfm (L/s).
- k. Outside-air damper position.
- l. Return-air damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil type.
- d. Number of rows.
- e. Fin spacing in fins per inch (mm) o.c.
- f. Make and model number.
- g. Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
- h. Tube size in NPS (DN).
- i. Tube and fin materials.
- j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
- b. Average face velocity in fpm (m/s).
- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg (Pa).
- d. Outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
- f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
- g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
- h. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
- i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- j. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
- k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
- l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig (kPa).
- n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F (deg C).
- o. Inlet steam pressure in psig (kPa).

G. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

- 1. Fan Data:
  - a. System identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Make and type.
  - d. Model number and size.
  - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
  - f. Arrangement and class.
  - g. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
  - h. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
- 2. Motor Data:
  - a. Make and frame type and size.
  - b. Horsepower and rpm.
  - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.

- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
  - f. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
  - g. Number of belts, make, and size.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
  - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
  - c. Fan rpm.
  - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
  - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
- H. Round and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
1. Report Data:
- a. System and air-handling unit number.
  - b. Location and zone.
  - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
  - e. Duct size in inches (mm).
  - f. Duct area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
  - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
  - h. Indicated velocity in fpm (m/s).
  - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
  - j. Actual average velocity in fpm (m/s).
  - k. Barometric pressure in psig (Pa).
- I. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
1. Unit Data:
- a. System and air-handling unit identification.
  - b. Location and zone.
  - c. Test apparatus used.
  - d. Area served.
  - e. Air-terminal-device make.



- f. Air-terminal-device number from system diagram.
  - g. Air-terminal-device type and model number.
  - h. Air-terminal-device size.
  - i. Air-terminal-device effective area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
  - b. Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
  - c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm (L/s).
  - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm (m/s).
  - e. Final airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
  - f. Final velocity in fpm (m/s).
  - g. Space temperature in deg F (deg C).
- J. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
- 1. Unit Data:
    - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Room or riser served.
    - d. Coil make and size.
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - 3. Air-Cooled Condenser Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Refrigerant pressure in psig (kPa).
    - b. Refrigerant temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - c. Entering- and leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - 4. Evaporator Test Reports (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Refrigerant pressure in psig (kPa).

- b. Refrigerant temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - c. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - d. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - e. Entering-water pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
  - f. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
5. Compressor Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Suction pressure in psig (kPa).
  - b. Suction temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - c. Discharge pressure in psig (kPa).
  - d. Discharge temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - e. Oil pressure in psig (kPa).
  - f. Oil temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - g. Voltage at each connection.
  - h. Amperage for each phase.
  - i. Kilowatt input.
  - j. Crankcase heater kilowatt.
  - k. Chilled-water control set point in deg F (deg C).
  - l. Condenser-water control set point in deg F (deg C).
  - m. Refrigerant low-pressure-cutoff set point in psig (kPa).
  - n. Refrigerant high-pressure-cutoff set point in psig (kPa).
6. Refrigerant Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Oil level.
  - b. Refrigerant level.
  - c. Relief valve setting in psig (kPa).
  - d. Unloader set points in psig (kPa).
  - e. Percentage of cylinders unloaded.
  - f. Bearing temperatures in deg F (deg C).
  - g. Vane position.
  - h. Low-temperature-cutoff set point in deg F (deg C).

K. Net positive suction head is important for pumps in open circuits and for pumps handling fluids at elevated temperatures.

- L. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Service.
    - d. Make and size.
    - e. Model and serial numbers.
    - f. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
    - g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - i. Pump rpm.
    - j. Impeller diameter in inches (mm).
    - k. Motor make and frame size.
    - l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
    - m. Voltage at each connection.
    - n. Amperage for each phase.
    - o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - p. Seal type.
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Static head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - c. Actual impeller size in inches (mm).
    - d. Full-open flow rate in gpm (L/s).
    - e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - i. Final water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
    - j. Voltage at each connection.
    - k. Amperage for each phase.

M. Flue-gas analysis is usually not part of TAB procedures but could be added.

N. Boiler Test Reports:

1. Unit Data:
  - a. Unit identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Service.
  - d. Make and type.
  - e. Model and serial numbers.
  - f. Fuel type and input in Btuh (kW).
  - g. Number of passes.
  - h. Ignition type.
  - i. Burner-control types.
  - j. Voltage at each connection.
  - k. Amperage for each phase.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Operating pressure in psig (kPa).
  - b. Operating temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - c. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - d. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - e. Number of safety valves and sizes in NPS (DN).
  - f. Safety valve settings in psig (kPa).
  - g. High-limit setting in psig (kPa).
  - h. Operating-control setting.
  - i. High-fire set point.
  - j. Low-fire set point.
  - k. Voltage at each connection.
  - l. Amperage for each phase.
  - m. Manifold pressure in psig (kPa).

O. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:
  - a. Instrument type and make.

- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

### 3.17 INSPECTIONS

#### A. Initial Inspection:

1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the Final Report.
2. Randomly check the following for each system:
3. Edit random checks to coincide with TAB tests specified.
  - a. Measure airflow of at least 50 percent of air outlets.
  - b. Measure water flow of at least 50 percent of terminals.
  - c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
  - d. Measure sound levels at two locations.
  - e. Measure space pressure of at least 10 percent of locations.
  - f. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
  - g. Note deviations to the Contract Documents in the Final Report.

#### B. Final Inspection:

1. After initial inspection is complete and evidence by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Owner.
2. Owner shall randomly select measurements documented in the final report to be rechecked. The rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded, or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
3. If the rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
4. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

5. TAB firm shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes and resubmit the final report.
6. Request a second final inspection. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner shall contract the services of another TAB firm to complete the testing and balancing in accordance with the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the final payment.

**3.18 ADDITIONAL TESTS**

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional testing and balancing to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional testing, inspecting, and adjusting during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 23 07 13

### DUCT INSULATION

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes semi-rigid and flexible duct and, plenum, insulation; insulating cements; field-applied jackets; accessories and attachments; and sealing compounds.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 7 Section "Firestopping" for firestopping materials and requirements for penetrations through fire and smoke barriers.
  - 2. Division 23 Section "HVAC Pipe Insulation" for insulation for piping systems.
  - 3. Division 23 Section "HVAC Ducts" for duct liner.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Identify thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any), for each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Not Required

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing materials identical to those specified in this Section according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and sealer and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread rating of 25 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread rating of 75 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 150 or less.

##### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Ship insulation materials in containers marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM specification designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for insulation application.

## 1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after testing duct systems. Insulation application may begin on segments of ducts that have satisfactory test results.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Insulation:
    - a. CertainTeed Manson.
    - b. Knauf FiberGlass GmbH.
    - c. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
  - 2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation:
    - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
    - b. Rubatex Corp.

### 2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Board Thermal Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IB, without facing and with all-service jacket manufactured from kraft paper, reinforcing scrim, aluminum foil, and vinyl film.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II, without facing and with all-service jacket manufactured from kraft paper, reinforcing scrim, aluminum foil, and vinyl film.
- C. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.
  - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 2. Ultraviolet-Protective Coating: As recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- D. Calcium Silicate Insulation: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a nonasbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.

### 2.3 ACCESSORIES AND ATTACHMENTS

- A. Glass Cloth and Tape: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I for cloth and Type II for tape. Woven glass-fiber fabrics, plain weave, presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..
  - 1. Tape Width: 4 inches.



- B. Bands: 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide, in one of the following materials compatible with jacket:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304; 0.020 inch thick.
  - 2. Galvanized Steel: 0.005 inch thick.
  - 3. Aluminum: 0.007 inch thick.
  - 4. Brass: 0.010 inch thick.
  - 5. Nickel-Copper Alloy: 0.005 inch thick.
- C. Wire: 0.080-inch, nickel-copper alloy; 0.062-inch, soft-annealed, stainless steel; or 0.062-inch, soft-annealed, galvanized steel.
- D. Weld-Attached Anchor Pins and Washers: Copper-coated steel pin for capacitor-discharge welding and galvanized speed washer. Pin length sufficient for insulation thickness indicated.
  - 1. Welded Pin Holding Capacity: 100 lb for direct pull perpendicular to the attached surface.
- E. Adhesive-Attached Anchor Pins and Speed Washers: Galvanized steel plate, pin, and washer manufactured for attachment to duct and plenum with adhesive. Pin length sufficient for insulation thickness indicated.
  - 1. Adhesive: Recommended by the anchor pin manufacturer as appropriate for surface temperatures of ducts, plenums, and breechings; and to achieve a holding capacity of 100 lb for direct pull perpendicular to the adhered surface.
- F. Self-Adhesive Anchor Pins and Speed Washers: Galvanized steel plate, pin, and washer manufactured for attachment to duct and plenum with adhesive. Pin length sufficient for insulation thickness indicated.

## **2.4 VAPOR RETARDERS**

- A. Mastics: Materials recommended by insulation material manufacturer that are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### **3.3 GENERAL APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Apply insulation materials, accessories, and finishes according to the manufacturer's written instructions; with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; and free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

- B. Refer to schedules at the end of this Section for materials, forms, jackets, and thicknesses required for each duct system.
- C. Use accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Use accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Apply multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- E. Seal joints and seams with vapor-retarder mastic on insulation indicated to receive a vapor retarder.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Apply insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Apply insulation with the least number of joints practical.
- I. Apply insulation over fittings and specialties, with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Hangers and Anchors: Where vapor retarder is indicated, seal penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-retarder mastic. Apply insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
- K. Insulation Terminations: For insulation application where vapor retarders are indicated, seal ends with a compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor retarder.
- L. Apply insulation with integral jackets as follows:
  - 1. Pull jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Joints and Seams: Cover with tape and vapor retarder as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
  - 3. Vapor-Retarder Mastics: Where vapor retarders are indicated, apply mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions to prevent compressing insulation to less than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Install vapor-retarder mastic on ducts and plenums scheduled to receive vapor retarders.
  - 1. Ducts with Vapor Retarders: Overlap insulation facing at seams and seal with vapor-retarder mastic and pressure-sensitive tape having same facing as insulation. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-retarder seal.
  - 2. Ducts without Vapor Retarders: Overlap insulation facing at seams and secure with outward clinching staples and pressure-sensitive tape having same facing as insulation.
- O. Roof Penetrations: Apply insulation for interior applications to a point even with top of roof flashing.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with vapor-retarder mastic.

2. Apply insulation for exterior applications tightly joined to interior insulation ends.
  3. Seal insulation to roof flashing with vapor-retarder mastic.
- P. Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations: Apply insulation continuously through walls and partitions, except fire-rated walls and partitions.
- Q. Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire/smoke damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations.
- R. Floor Penetrations: Terminate insulation at underside of floor assembly and at floor support at top of floor.
1. For insulation indicated to have vapor retarders, taper termination and seal insulation ends with vapor-retarder mastic.

### 3.4 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION APPLICATION

- A. Blanket Applications for Ducts and Plenums: Secure blanket insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per square foot, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  3. Install anchor pins and speed washers on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches. Space 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Apply additional pins and clips to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Anchor pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
  4. Impale insulation over anchors and attach speed washers.
  5. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  6. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation segment with 1/2-inch staples, 1 inch o.c., and cover with pressure-sensitive tape having same facing as insulation.
  7. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. Secure with steel band at end joints and spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.

8. Apply insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation segment for each surface. Apply insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
9. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond the insulation surface with 6-inch wide strips of the same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with anchor pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### **3.5 DUCT SYSTEM APPLICATIONS**

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are specified in schedules at the end of this Section. Line the first 20 feet of all supply and return work duct with acoustical duct liner. All other duct work will be externally wrapped with blanket insulation.
- B. Materials and thicknesses for systems listed below are specified in schedules at the end of this Section.
- C. Insulate the following plenums and duct systems:
  1. Indoor concealed supply-, return-, and outside-air ductwork.
  2. Indoor exposed supply-, return-, and outside-air ductwork.
  3. Outdoor exposed supply and return ductwork.
  4. As indicated on drawings.
- D. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not apply insulation to the following systems, materials, and equipment:
  1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
  2. Metal ducts with duct liner.
  3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
  4. Factory-insulated plenums, casings, terminal boxes, and filter boxes and sections.
  5. Flexible connectors.
  6. Vibration-control devices.
  7. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  8. Nameplates and data plates.
  9. Access panels and doors in air-distribution systems.

### **3.6 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM APPLICATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Service: Round, supply-air ducts, concealed.
  1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket
  2. Thickness 1-1/2 inches
  3. Number of Layers: One.

4. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and paper.
  5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- B. Service: Round, return-air ducts, concealed. (Not required in conditioned areas)
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket
  2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
  3. Number of Layers: One.
  4. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and paper.
  5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- C. Service: Rectangular, supply-air ducts, concealed.
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket
  2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
  3. Number of Layers: One.
  4. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and paper
  5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- D. Service: Rectangular, return-air ducts, concealed. (Not required in conditioned areas)
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket
  2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
  3. Number of Layers: One.
  4. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and paper
  5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- E. Service: Round, supply-air ducts, exposed.
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket
  2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
  3. Number of Layers: One.
  4. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and paper
  5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- F. Service: Round, return-air ducts, exposed. (Not required in conditioned areas)
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket
  2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
  3. Number of Layers: One.

4. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and paper.
  5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- G. Service: Rectangular, supply-air ducts, exposed.
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket.
  2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
  3. Number of Layers: One.
  4. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and paper
  5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- H. Service: Rectangular, return-air ducts, exposed. (Not required in non-conditioned areas)
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket
  2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
  3. Number of Layers: One.
  4. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and paper
  5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.

### **3.7 OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM APPLICATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Service: Rectangular, supply and return air ducts.
1. Material: Flexible elastomeric.
  2. Thickness: 2 inches.
  3. Number of Layers: One.
  4. Field-Applied Jacket: Aluminum.
    - a. Aluminum Thickness: 0.032 inch.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 23 07 17

### EQUIPMENT INSULATION

#### PART 1- GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes blanket, board, and block insulation; insulating cements; field-applied jackets; accessories and attachments; and sealing compounds.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation" for insulation materials and application for ducts and plenums.
  - 2. Division 23 Section "Pipe Insulation" for insulation for piping systems.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing materials identical to those specified in this Section according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and sealer and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread rating of 25 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread rating of 75 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 150 or less.

##### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Ship insulation materials in containers marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM specification designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

##### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for insulation application.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Insulation:
    - a. CertainTeed Manson.
    - b. Knauf FiberGlass GmbH.
    - c. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
    - d. Schuller International, Inc.
  - 2. Cellular-Glass Insulation:
    - a. Pittsburgh-Corning Corp.
  - 3. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation:
    - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
    - b. Rubatex Corp.
  - 4. Calcium Silicate Insulation:
    - a. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
    - b. Pabco.
    - c. Schuller International, Inc.

### **2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- A. Mineral-Fiber Board Thermal Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IB, without facing and with all-service jacket manufactured from kraft paper, reinforcing scrim, aluminum foil, and vinyl film.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II, without facing and with all-service jacket manufactured from kraft paper, reinforcing scrim, aluminum foil, and vinyl film.
- C. Cellular-Glass Insulation: Inorganic, foamed or cellulated glass, annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells, incombustible.
  - 1. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
  - 2. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
  - 3. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
- D. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.
  - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation material manufacturer.



2. Ultraviolet-Protective Coating: As recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- E. Calcium Silicate Insulation: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a nonasbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.

### 2.3 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. General: ASTM C 921, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Foil and Paper Jacket: Laminated, glass-fiber-reinforced, flame-retardant kraft paper and aluminum foil.
- C. Aluminum Jacket: Deep corrugated sheets manufactured from aluminum alloy complying with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), and having an integrally bonded moisture barrier over entire surface in contact with insulation. Metal thickness and corrugation dimensions are scheduled at the end of this Section.
  1. Finish: Smooth finish.
  2. Moisture Barrier: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- D. Stainless-Steel Jacket: Deep corrugated sheets of stainless steel complying with ASTM A 666, Type 304 or 316; 0.10 inch (2.5 mm) thick; and roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming to indicated sizes.
  1. Moisture Barrier: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  2. Jacket Bands: Stainless steel, Type 304, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide.

### 2.4 ACCESSORIES AND ATTACHMENTS

- A. Glass Cloth and Tape: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I for cloth and Type II for tape. Woven glass-fiber fabrics, plain weave, presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (270 g/sq. m).
  1. Tape Width: 4 inches (100 mm).
- B. Bands: 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide, in one of the following materials compatible with jacket:
  1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304; 0.020 inch (0.5 mm) thick.
  2. Galvanized Steel: 0.005 inch (0.13 mm) thick.
  3. Aluminum: 0.007 inch (0.18 mm) thick.
  4. Brass: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) thick.
  5. Nickel-Copper Alloy: 0.005 inch (0.13 mm) thick.
- C. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm), nickel-copper alloy; 0.062-inch (1.6-mm), soft-annealed, stainless steel; or 0.062-inch (1.6-mm), soft-annealed, galvanized steel.
- D. Weld-Attached Anchor Pins and Washers: Copper-coated steel pin for capacitor-discharge welding and galvanized speed washer. Pin length sufficient for insulation thickness indicated.

1. Welded Pin Holding Capacity: 100 lb (45 kg) for direct pull perpendicular to the attached surface.
- E. Adhesive-Attached Anchor Pins and Speed Washers: Galvanized steel plate, pin, and washer manufactured for attachment to duct and plenum with adhesive. Pin length sufficient for insulation thickness indicated.
  1. Adhesive: Recommended by the anchor pin manufacturer as appropriate for surface temperatures of ducts, plenums, and breechings; and to achieve a holding capacity of 100 lb (45 kg) for direct pull perpendicular to the adhered surface.
- F. Self-Adhesive Anchor Pins and Speed Washers: Galvanized steel plate, pin, and washer manufactured for attachment to duct and plenum with adhesive. Pin length sufficient for insulation thickness indicated.

## 2.5 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Mastics: Materials recommended by insulation material manufacturer that are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.3 GENERAL APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Apply insulation materials, accessories, and finishes according to the manufacturer's written instructions; with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; and free of voids throughout the length of equipment.
- B. Refer to schedules at the end of this Section for materials, forms, jackets, and thicknesses required for each equipment system.
- C. Use accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Use accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either the wet or dry state.
- D. Apply multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- E. Seal joints and seams with vapor-retarder mastic on insulation indicated to receive a vapor retarder.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

- G. Apply insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Apply insulation with the least number of joints practical.
- I. Apply insulation over fittings and specialties, with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Hangers and Anchors: Where vapor retarder is indicated, seal penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-retarder mastic. Apply insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
- K. Insulation Terminations: For insulation application where vapor retarders are indicated, seal ends with a compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor retarder.
- L. Apply insulation with integral jackets as follows:
  - 1. Pull jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Joints and Seams: Cover with tape and vapor retarder as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
  - 3. Vapor-Retarder Mastics: Where vapor retarders are indicated, apply mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions to prevent compressing insulation to less than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Install vapor-retarder mastic on equipment scheduled to receive vapor retarders. Overlap insulation facing at seams and seal with vapor-retarder mastic and pressure-sensitive tape having same facing as insulation. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-retarder seal.
- O. Insulate the following indoor equipment:
  - 1. Chilled-water air separators (small tanks).
  - 2. Chilled-water compression tanks (small tanks).
  - 3. Chilled-water centrifugal pump housings.
  - 4. Low-temperature brine tanks.
  - 5. Heating hot-water air separators (small tanks).
  - 6. Heating hot-water compression tanks (small tanks).
  - 7. Heating hot-water heat exchangers.
  - 8. Condensate receivers, not factory insulated.
  - 9. Deaerators, not factory insulated.
- P. Omit insulation from the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.

3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

### **3.4 INDOOR TANK AND VESSEL INSULATION APPLICATION**

- A. Blankets, Board, and Block Applications for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per square foot, for 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
  2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to the equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joint. Stagger end joints.
  3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
  4. Install adhesive-attached or self-adhesive anchor pins and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
    - a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
    - b. On tank and vessel, 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. in both directions.
    - c. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - d. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and dome heads of tanks and vessels.
  5. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
  6. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing
  7. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel bands.
  8. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches (75 mm).
  9. Apply insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors and other elements that require frequent removal for service.
  10. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
  11. Apply vapor-retarder mastic to open joints, breaks, and punctures for insulation indicated to receive vapor retarder.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Applications for Tanks and Vessels: Apply insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels according to the manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

### **3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET APPLICATION**

- A. Apply glass-cloth jacket where indicated, directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
  1. Apply jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
  2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of jacket manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  3. Completely encapsulate insulation with jacket, leaving no exposed raw insulation.
- B. Foil and Paper Jackets: Apply foil and paper jackets where indicated.
  1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
  2. Apply lap or joint strips with the same material as jacket.
  3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  4. Apply jackets with 1-1/2-inch (40-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
  5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-retarder mastic.
- C. PVC Jackets: Apply jacket with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels for horizontal applications. Secure and seal seams and end joints with manufacturer's welding adhesive.
  1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along the seam and joint edge.
- D. Aluminum Jackets: Secure jackets according to jacket manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Stainless-Steel Jackets: Secure jackets according to jacket manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.6 FINISHES**

- A. Glass-Cloth Jacketed Insulation: Paint insulation finished with glass-cloth jacket as specified in Division 9 Section "Painting."
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

### **3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Inspection: Perform the following field quality-control inspections, after installing insulation materials, jackets, and finishes, to determine compliance with requirements:

1. Inspect pumps and tanks randomly selected by Architect.
  2. Remove insulation and covers from two chilled-water pumps or one percent of chilled-water pumps, whichever is greater.
  3. Remove insulation and covers from two small tanks or one percent of small tanks, whichever is greater.
- B. Insulation applications will be considered defective if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements. Remove defective Work and replace with new materials according to these Specifications.
- C. Reinstall insulation and covers on pumps and tanks uncovered for inspection according to these Specifications.

### **3.8 EQUIPMENT APPLICATIONS**

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are specified in schedules at the end of this Section.
- B. Materials and thicknesses for systems listed below are specified in schedules at the end of this Section.

### **3.9 INTERIOR TANK AND VESSEL INSULATION APPLICATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Equipment: Chilled-water air separators and compression tanks.
1. Operating Temperature: 35 to 75 deg F (2 to 24 deg C).
  2. Insulation Material: Cellular foam with jacket
  3. Insulation Thickness:  $\frac{3}{4}$ "
  4. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes
  5. Finish: None.
- B. Equipment: Heating hot-water air separators and compression tanks.
1. Operating Temperature: 100 to 200 deg F (38 to 93 deg C).
  2. Insulation Material: Cellular foam, with jacket
  3. Insulation Thickness: 1"
  4. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and paper.
  5. Vapor Retarder Required: No
  6. Finish: None.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 23 07 19

### HVAC PIPE INSULATION

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes preformed, rigid and flexible pipe insulation; insulating cements; field-applied jackets; accessories and attachments; and sealing compounds.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 7 Section "Firestopping" for firestopping materials and requirements for penetrations through fire and smoke barriers.
  - 2. Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation" for insulation for ducts and plenums.
  - 3. Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports" for pipe insulation shields **and protection saddles**.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS (Not Required)

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing materials identical to those specified in this Section according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and sealer and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread rating of 25 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread rating of 75 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 150 or less.

##### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Ship insulation materials in containers marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM specification designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

##### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for insulation application.

- C. Coordinate installation and testing of steam or electric heat tracing.

## **1.7 SCHEDULING**

- A. Schedule insulation application after testing piping systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat-trace tape. Insulation application may begin on segments of piping that have satisfactory test results.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Insulation:
    - a. CertainTeed Manson.
    - b. Knauf FiberGlass GmbH.
    - c. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
    - d. Schuller International, Inc.
  - 2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation:
    - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
    - b. Rubatex Corp.

### **2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin complying with the following:
  - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 547, Type 1, with factory-applied, all-purpose, vapor-retarder jacket.
  - 2. Blanket Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II, without facing.
  - 3. Fire-Resistant Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C in the following classes and grades:
    - a. Class 1, Grade A for bonding glass cloth and tape to unfaced glass-fiber insulation, for sealing edges of glass-fiber insulation, and for bonding lagging cloth to unfaced glass-fiber insulation.
    - b. Class 2, Grade A for bonding glass-fiber insulation to metal surfaces.
  - 4. Vapor-Retarder Mastics: Fire- and water-resistant, vapor-retarder mastic for indoor applications. Comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
  - 5. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cements: Comply with ASTM C 195.
  - 6. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cements: Comply with ASTM C 196.
  - 7. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449/C 449M.



- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
  - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 2. Ultraviolet-Protective Coating: As recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- C. Prefabricated Thermal Insulating Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 for dimensions used in performing insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.

## **2.3 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS**

- A. General: ASTM C 921, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Foil and Paper Jacket: Laminated, glass-fiber-reinforced, flame-retardant kraft paper and aluminum foil.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact, ultraviolet-resistant PVC; 20 mils thick; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming.
  - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 2. PVC Jacket Color: White or gray.
  - 3. PVC Jacket Color: Color-code piping jackets based on materials contained within the piping system.
- D. Aluminum Jacket: Factory cut and rolled to indicated sizes. Comply with ASTM B 209, 3003 alloy, H-14 temper.

## **2.4 ACCESSORIES AND ATTACHMENTS**

- A. Bands: 3/4 inch wide, in one of the following materials compatible with jacket:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304; 0.020 inch thick.
  - 2. Galvanized Steel: 0.005 inch thick.
  - 3. Aluminum: 0.007 inch thick.
  - 4. Brass: 0.010 inch thick.
  - 5. Nickel-Copper Alloy: 0.005 inch thick.

## **2.5 VAPOR RETARDERS**

- A. Mastics: Materials recommended by insulation material manufacturer that are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry pipe and fitting surfaces. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.3 GENERAL APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Apply insulation materials, accessories, and finishes according to the manufacturer's written instructions; with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Refer to schedules at the end of this Section for materials, forms, jackets, and thicknesses required for each piping system.
- C. Use accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Use accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Apply insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal pipe runs.
- E. Apply multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Seal joints and seams with vapor-retarder mastic on insulation indicated to receive a vapor retarder.
- H. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- I. Apply insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply insulation with the least number of joints practical.
- K. Apply insulation over fittings, valves, and specialties, with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated. Refer to special instructions for applying insulation over fittings, valves, and specialties.
- L. Hangers and Anchors: Where vapor retarder is indicated, seal penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-retarder mastic.
  - 1. Apply insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor retarders are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs at least 12 inches from point of attachment to pipe and taper insulation ends. Seal tapered ends with a compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor retarder.
  - 3. Install insert materials and apply insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect the jacket from tear or puncture by the hanger, support, and shield.

- M. Insulation Terminations: For insulation application where vapor retarders are indicated, taper insulation ends. Seal tapered ends with a compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor retarder.
- N. Apply adhesives and mastics at the manufacturer's recommended coverage rate.
- O. Roof Penetrations: Apply insulation for interior applications to a point even with top of roof flashing.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with vapor-retarder mastic.
  - 2. Apply insulation for exterior applications tightly joined to interior insulation ends.
  - 3. Extend metal jacket of exterior insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
  - 4. Seal metal jacket to roof flashing with vapor-retarder mastic.
- P. Exterior Wall Penetrations: For penetrations of below-grade exterior walls, terminate insulation flush with mechanical sleeve seal. Seal terminations with vapor-retarder mastic.
- Q. Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations: Apply insulation continuously through walls and floors.
- R. Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Apply insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  - 1. Firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers are specified in Division 7 Section "Firestopping."
- S. Floor Penetrations: Apply insulation continuously through floor assembly.
  - 1. For insulation with vapor retarders, seal insulation with vapor-retarder mastic where floor supports penetrate vapor retarder.
- T. Provide aluminum jacket for all exterior piping.

### **3.4 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION APPLICATION**

- A. Apply insulation to straight pipes and tubes as follows:
  - 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire, tape, or bands without deforming insulation materials.
  - 2. Where vapor retarders are indicated, seal longitudinal seams and end joints with vapor-retarder mastic. Apply vapor retarder to ends of insulation at intervals of 15 to 20 feet to form a vapor retarder between pipe insulation segments.
  - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
  - 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by the insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-retarder mastic.
- B. Apply insulation to flanges as follows:
  - 1. Apply preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.

2. Make width of insulation segment the same as overall width of the flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of the pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
  4. Apply canvas jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlapping seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with vapor-retarder mastic.
- C. Apply insulation to fittings and elbows as follows:
1. Apply premolded insulation sections of the same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. When premolded insulation elbows and fittings are not available, apply mitered sections of pipe insulation, or glass-fiber blanket insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire, tape, or bands.
  3. Cover fittings with standard PVC fitting covers.
- D. Apply insulation to valves and specialties as follows:
1. Apply premolded insulation sections of the same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. When premolded insulation sections are not available, apply glass-fiber blanket insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation. For check valves, arrange insulation for access to stainer basket without disturbing insulation.
  3. Apply insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  4. Use preformed standard PVC fitting covers for valve sizes where available. Secure fitting covers with manufacturer's attachments and accessories. Seal seams with tape and vapor-retarder mastic.

### **3.5 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC THERMAL INSULATION APPLICATION**

- A. Apply insulation to straight pipes and tubes as follows:
1. Follow manufacturer's written instructions for applying insulation.
  2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.
- B. Apply insulation to flanges as follows:
1. Apply pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation segment the same as overall width of the flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of the pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of the same thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.
- C. Apply insulation to fittings and elbows as follows:
1. Apply mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.
- D. Apply insulation to valves and specialties as follows:
1. Apply preformed valve covers manufactured of the same material as pipe insulation and attached according to the manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Apply cut segments of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation. For check valves, fabricate removable sections of insulation arranged to allow access to stainer basket.
  3. Apply insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.

### **3.6 FINISHES**

- A. Flexible Elastometric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of the insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

### **3.7 PIPING SYSTEM APPLICATIONS**

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are specified in schedules at the end of this Section.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not apply insulation to the following systems, materials, and equipment:
  1. Flexible connectors.
  2. Vibration-control devices.
  3. Fire-suppression piping.
  4. Below-grade piping, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Air chambers, unions, strainers, check valves, plug valves, and flow regulators.

### **3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Inspection: Perform the following field quality-control inspections, after installing insulation materials, jackets, and finishes, to determine compliance with requirements:
  - 1. Inspect fittings and valves randomly selected by Architect.
  - 2. Remove fitting covers from 20 elbows or 1 percent of elbows, whichever is less, for various pipe sizes.
  - 3. Remove fitting covers from 20 valves or 1 percent of valves, whichever is less, for various pipe sizes.
- B. Insulation applications will be considered defective if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements. Remove defective Work and replace with new materials according to these Specifications.
- C. Reinstall insulation and covers on fittings and valves uncovered for inspection according to these Specifications.

### **3.9 INSULATION APPLICATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

- A. Refer to insulation application schedules for required insulation materials, vapor retarders, and field-applied jackets.
- B. Application schedules identify piping system and indicate pipe size ranges and material, thickness, and jacket requirements.

### **3.10 INTERIOR INSULATION APPLICATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Service: Heating and Chilled Water.
  - 1. Operating Temperature: 120 to 180° F (heating), 42 to 56° F (cooling).
  - 2. Insulation Material: Mineral fiber, with jacket
    - a. Insulation Thickness: 1 ½"
  - 3. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and paper
  - 4. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
  - 5. Finish: None.
- B. Service: Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping.
  - 1. Operating Temperature: 35 to 50 deg F (2 to 10 deg C).
  - 2. Insulation Material: Flexible Elastomeric.
  - 3. Insulation Thickness: Apply the following insulation thicknesses:
    - a. Copper Pipe, ¾" min.
  - 4. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and paper
  - 5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
  - 6. Finish: None.
- C. Condenser-Water Supply and Return:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

- a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
  - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
  - d. Phenolic: 2 inches thick.
  - e. Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches thick.
  - f. Polyolefin: 2 inches thick.
  - g. Polystyrene: 2 inches thick.
- D. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C):
- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch.
    - d. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
    - e. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.
    - f. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

### **3.11 OUTDOOR, UNDERGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Loose-fill insulation, for belowground piping, is specified in Division 33 piping distribution Sections.
- B. Condenser-Water Supply and Return, All Sizes: Cellular glass, 2 inches thick.

### **3.12 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE**

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
  - 1. None.
  - 2. Color-Coded by System: 20 mils thick.
  - 3. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.
  - 4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.
  - 5. Stainless Steel, Type 304, Smooth 2B Finish: 0.010 inch thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. PVC: 20 mils thick.

2. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.
3. Stainless Steel, Type 304, Smooth 2B Finish: 0.010 inch thick.

**3.13 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET**

- A. For underground piping applications, install underground concrete pit with cover jacket over insulation material.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 23 08 00

### COMMISSIONING OF HVAC SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Commissioning is a systematic process of ensuring that selected building systems perform interactively according to the design intent and the owner's operational needs. This is achieved by beginning in the design phase and continuing through construction, acceptance and the warranty period with actual verification of performance. The commissioning process shall encompass and coordinate the traditionally separate functions of system documentation, equipment startup, control system calibration, testing and balancing, performance testing and training.
- B. Commissioning during the construction phase is intended to achieve the following specific objectives according to the Contract Documents:
  - 1. Verify that applicable equipment and systems are installed according to the contract documents, the manufacturer's recommendations and to industry accepted minimum standards and that they receive adequate operational checkout by the Installing Contractor.
  - 2. Verify and document proper performance of equipment and systems.
  - 3. Verify that O&M documentation left on site is complete.
  - 4. Verify that the Owner's operating personnel are trained.
- C. The commissioning process does not take away from or reduce the responsibility of the system designers or Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors to provide a finished and fully functioning product.

##### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Commissioning Team. The members of the commissioning team consist of the Commissioning Authority (CxA), the Owner's Project Manager (PM), the Construction Manager (CM), the design Architects/Engineers (A/E), the HVAC Contractor (HC), the Plumbing Contractor (PC), the Electrical Contractor (EC) and any other Installing Sub-Contractors or suppliers of equipment.
- B. Management. The Owner hires the CxA directly. The CxA directs and coordinates the commissioning activities and is part of the commissioning team. Heapy Engineering shall be the CxA for this project. The CxA is responsible to the Owner and shall have the authority to grant final acceptance of each system commissioned. All members work together to fulfill their contracted responsibilities and meet the objectives of the Contract Documents. Refer to Para. 1.5 for additional management details.
- C. Scheduling. The CxA shall work with the CM according to established protocols to schedule the commissioning activities. The CxA shall provide sufficient notice to the CM for scheduling commissioning activities. The CM shall integrate all commissioning activities into the master schedule. All parties shall address scheduling problems and make necessary notifications in a timely manner in order to expedite the commissioning process.

1. The CM shall provide the initial schedule of primary commissioning events at the commissioning scoping meeting. As construction progresses more detailed schedules are developed by the CxA. The Commissioning Plan also provides a format for detailed schedules.

### **1.3 COMISSIONING PROCESS**

- A. Commissioning Process. The following narrative provides a brief overview of the typical commissioning tasks during construction and the general order in which they occur.
  1. Commissioning during construction begins with a scope meeting conducted by the CxA where the commissioning process is reviewed with the commissioning team members.
  2. Additional meetings shall be required throughout construction, scheduled by the CxA with necessary parties attending, to plan, scope, coordinate, schedule future activities and resolve problems.
  3. Equipment documentation is submitted to the CxA during normal submittals, including detailed startup procedures.
  4. The CxA works with the Contractors/Sub-Contractors in developing startup plans and startup documentation formats, including providing the Contractors/Sub-Contractors with construction and startup checklists to be completed, during the startup process.
  5. In general, the checkout and performance verification proceeds from simple to complex; from component level to equipment to systems and intersystem levels with construction and startup checklists being completed before functional testing.
  6. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors, under their own direction, execute and document the construction and startup checklists. The CxA documents that the checklists were completed according to the contract documents. This may include the CxA witnessing startup of selected equipment. The CxA shall be notified 48 hours in advance of starting up equipment. Where applicable, manufacturers representative executes and documents startup of equipment.
  7. The CxA develops specific equipment and system functional performance test procedures. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors review the procedures.
  8. The procedures are executed by the Contractors/Sub-Contractors, under the direction of, and documented by the CxA.
  9. Items of non-compliance in material, installation or setup are corrected at the Contractors'/Sub-Contractors' expense and the system retested in accordance with paragraphs 3.5 of this section.
  10. The CxA reviews the O&M documentation for completeness.
  11. Commissioning is completed before Substantial Completion is achieved.
  12. The CxA reviews, pre-approves and coordinates the training provided by the Contractors/Sub-Contractors and verifies that it was completed. The CxA shall attend five (5) training sessions.
  13. Deferred testing is conducted, as specified or required.

## 1.4 RELATED WORK

- A. Drawings and general requirements of the Contract, including General Conditions and Requirements, Supplementary Conditions, Revisions and other Specification sections, apply to work in this section.

## 1.5 RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. The responsibilities of various parties in the commissioning process are provided in this section, including the responsibilities of the HVAC Contractor. The responsibilities of the (other) contractors are noted in their specification documents. It is noted that the services for the HVAC, plumbing and electrical engineers, and CxA are not provided for in this contract. That is, the Contractor/Sub-Contractor is not responsible for providing their services. Their responsibilities are listed here to clarify the commissioning process.
- B. All Parties
  - 1. Attend commissioning scoping meeting and additional meetings, as scheduled.
  - 2. Participate in 10-month warranty walk inspection.
- C. Mechanical and Electrical Engineers (A/E)
  - 1. Perform normal submittal review, construction observation, as-built drawing preparation, records, etc., as contracted.
  - 2. Provide any design narrative and sequences documentation requested by the CxA. The designers shall assist (along with the contractors) in clarifying the operation and control of commissioned equipment in areas where the specifications, control drawings or equipment documentation is not sufficient for writing detailed testing procedures.
  - 3. Organize and participate in a control / software review meeting with Owner representative, the HVAC Contractor and automatic temperature controls installer. The meeting is to review system function with the Commissioning Agent.
  - 4. Attend commissioning scoping meetings and other selected commissioning team meetings, as requested.
  - 5. Participate in the resolution of system deficiencies identified during commissioning, according to the contract documents.
  - 6. Review and approve the O&M manuals.
  - 7. Participate in the resolution of non-compliance, non-conformance and design deficiencies identified during commissioning including warranty-period commissioning.
- D. Commissioning Authority (CxA)
  - 1. The CxA is not responsible for design concept, design criteria, compliance with codes, design or general construction scheduling, cost estimating, or construction management, means or methods. The CxA may assist with problem-solving non-conformance or deficiencies, but ultimately that responsibility resides with the CM and the A/E.

2. The primary role of the CxA is to develop and coordinate the execution of a testing plan, observe and document performance - that systems are functioning in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall provide all tools or the use of tools to start, checkout and functionally test equipment and systems.
3. Coordinates and directs the commissioning activities in a logical, sequential and efficient manner using consistent protocols and forms, centralized documentation, clear and regular communications and consultations with all necessary parties, frequently updated timelines and schedules and technical expertise.
4. Coordinate the commissioning work and, with the CM, ensure that commissioning activities are being scheduled into the master schedule.
5. Attend the temperature control system software review meeting software with the Engineer and Contractors/Sub-Contractors. The purpose of the meeting will be to review temperature control submittal with specification sequence of operations and contract drawings.
6. Plan and conduct a commissioning scoping meeting and other commissioning meetings.
7. Request and review additional information required to perform commissioning tasks, including O&M materials, Contractor/Sub-Contractor startup and checkout procedures.
8. Before startup, gather and review the current control sequences and interlocks and work with Contractors/Sub-Contractors and design engineers until sufficient clarity has been obtained, in writing, to be able to write detailed testing procedures.
9. Concurrent with the A/E reviews, the CxA shall review normal Contractors/Sub-Contractors submittals related to the commissioned equipment for conformance to the Contract Documents as it relates to the commissioning process, to the functional performance of the equipment and adequacy for developing test procedures. The CxA shall notify the CM, PM or A/E as requested, of items missing or areas that are not in conformance with Contract Documents and which require resubmission.
10. Write and distribute construction checklists.
11. Review factory startup plan and develop a startup plan and initial systems checkout plan with Contractors/Sub-Contractors.
12. Perform site visits, as necessary, to observe component and system installations. Attends selected progress meetings and job-site meetings to obtain information on construction progress. Review construction meeting minutes for revisions/substitutions relating to the commissioning process. Assist in resolving any discrepancies.
13. Witness all or part of the HVAC piping test and flushing procedure, sufficient to be confident that proper procedures were followed. Include the testing report and cleaning procedures documentation in O&M manuals. Notify owner's representative of any deficiencies in results or procedures.

14. Witness all or part of any ductwork testing and cleaning procedures, sufficient to be confident that proper procedures were followed. Include the testing report and cleaning procedures documentation in O&M manuals. Notify owner's representative of any deficiencies in results or procedures.
  15. Review and approve construction and startup checklists completion in conjunction with selected site observation and spot checking.
  16. Review the air and water balance execution plan.
  17. Oversee sufficient startup and initial testing of the control system and verify it is ready to be used for air and water balancing, before the balancing is executed.
  18. Review air and water systems balancing by spot testing, by reviewing completed reports and by selected site observation.
  19. After balancing is complete and with necessary assistance and review from Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors, write the functional performance test procedures for equipment and systems. This may include direct digital control system trending, stand-alone datalogger monitoring or manual functional testing.
  20. Analyze up to 3 functional performance trend logs and monitoring data to verify performance.
  21. Maintain a master deficiency and resolution log and a separate testing record. Provide the CM and PM with written progress reports and test results with recommended actions.
  22. Review equipment warranties to ensure that the Owner's responsibilities are clearly defined.
  23. Oversee and coordinate the training of the Owner's operating personnel by attending 5 sessions.
  24. Compile and maintain a commissioning record.
  25. Review of the final O&M manuals.
  26. Provide a final commissioning report (as described in this section).
  27. Coordinate and supervise required seasonal or deferred testing and deficiency corrections.
- E. Owner's Project Manager (PM)
1. Manage the contract of the A/E and of the CM.
  2. Arrange the opportunity for facility operating and maintenance personnel to attend various field commissioning activities and field training.
  3. Identify any possible warranty items, document and contact the Contractors/Sub-Contractors for follow-up.
  4. Ensure that any seasonal or deferred testing and any deficiency issues are identified.
- F. Construction Manager (CM)

1. Facilitate the coordination of the commissioning work by the CxA. The CM and CxA ensure that commissioning activities are being scheduled into the master schedule.
2. Furnish a copy of all construction documents, addenda, change orders and approved submittals and shop drawings related to commissioned equipment to the CxA.
3. In each purchase order or subcontract written, include requirements for submittal data, O&M data, commissioning tasks and training.
4. Ensure that all Contractors/Sub-Contractors execute their commissioning responsibilities according to the Contract Documents and schedule.
5. Perform the normal review of Contractors/Sub-Contractors submittals.
6. A representative shall attend the commissioning scope meeting and other necessary meetings scheduled by the CxA to facilitate the Cx process.
7. When necessary, observe and witness construction, construction and startup checklists, startup, and functional testing of selected equipment.
8. Review commissioning progress and deficiency reports.
9. Coordinate the resolution of non-compliance and design deficiencies identified in all phases of commissioning.
10. Coordinate the training of owner personnel.
11. Prepare O&M manuals, according to the Contract Documents, including clarifying and updating the original sequences of operation to as-built conditions.

G. Contractors/Sub-Contractors

1. Coordinate the commissioning work with the CxA.
2. Execute their commissioning responsibilities according to the Contract Documents and schedule.
3. Attend the commissioning scope meeting(s) and other necessary meetings scheduled by the CxA to facilitate the Cmx process.
4. Participate in control software review meeting. The meeting is for walk-thru systems and sequences with the CxA, after the temperature control submittals are approved.
5. When necessary, observe and witness construction, construction and startup checklists, startup, and functional testing of selected equipment.
6. Review commissioning progress and deficiency reports.
7. Resolve the non-compliance and design deficiencies identified in all phases of commissioning.
8. Coordinate the training of Owner personnel for the systems provided under this contract.
9. Prepare O&M manuals, according to the Contract Documents, including clarifying and updating the original sequences of operation to as-built conditions.

- H. Equipment Suppliers
  - 1. Provide all requested submittal data, including detailed startup procedures and specific responsibilities of the Owner to keep warranties in force.
  - 2. Assist in equipment testing per agreements with Contractors/Sub-Contractors.
  - 3. Include all special tools and instruments (only available from vendor, specific to a piece of equipment) required for testing equipment according to these Contract Documents in the base bid price to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors.
  - 4. Provide information requested by CxA regarding equipment sequence of operation and testing procedures.
  - 5. Review test procedures for equipment started up by factory representatives.

## 1.6 DEFINITIONS

- A. Acceptance Phase - phase of construction after startup and initial checkout when functional performance tests, O&M documentation review and training occur.
- B. Approval - acceptance that a piece of equipment or system has been properly installed and is functioning in the tested modes according to the Contract Documents.
- C. Architect / Engineer (A/E) - the prime consultant and sub-consultants who comprise the design team, generally the HVAC mechanical designer/engineer and the electrical designer/engineer.
- D. Commissioning Authority (CxA) - an agent, not otherwise responsible for the design or the construction. The CxA directs and coordinates the day-to-day commissioning activities. The CxA does not take an oversight role like the CM. The CxA is part of the commissioning team and shall report directly to the Owner.
- E. Construction Checklist (CC) and Startup Checklist (SC) - a list of items to inspect and elementary component tests to conduct to verify proper installation of equipment, provided by the CxA to the Contractor/Sub-Contractor. Construction and startup checklists are primarily static inspections and procedures to prepare the equipment or system for initial operation (e.g., belt tension, oil levels OK, labels affixed, gages in place, sensors calibrated, etc.). However, some construction and startup checklist items entail simple testing of the function of a component, a piece of equipment or system (such as measuring the voltage imbalance on a three phase pump motor of a chiller system). Construction and startup checklists augment and are combined with the manufacturer's startup checklist.
- F. Construction Manager (CM) – coordinates, communicates and directs the entire process of construction in terms of scope, quality, time and cost within the authority and responsibility limits of the contract documents.
- G. Contract Documents - the documents binding on parties involved in the construction of this project (drawings, specifications, change orders, amendments, contracts, etc.).
- H. Contractors/Sub-Contractors – Construction Contractors and their Sub-Contractors who are awarded a contract for the construction or some aspect of the construction of the project in accordance with the contract documents.
- I. Control System - the central building direct digital control system.

- J. Deferred Functional Tests - FTs that are performed later, after substantial completion, due to partial occupancy, equipment, seasonal requirements, design or other site conditions that disallow the test from being performed.
- K. Deficiency - a condition in the installation or function of a component, piece of equipment or system that is not in compliance with the Contract Documents (that is, does not perform properly or is not complying with the sequence of operations).
- L. Factory Testing - testing of equipment on-site or at the factory, by factory personnel with an Owner's representative present.
- M. Functional Performance Test (FT)
  - 1. Test of the dynamic function and operation of equipment and systems using manual (direct observation) or monitoring methods. Functional testing is the dynamic testing of systems (rather than just components) under full operation.
  - 2. Systems are tested under various modes, such as during low cooling or heating loads, high loads, component failures, unoccupied, varying outside air temperatures, fire alarm condition, power failure, etc. The systems are run through all the control system's sequences of operation and components are verified to be responding as the sequences state.
  - 3. Traditional air or water test and balancing is not functional testing, in the commissioning sense of the word. The balancer's primary work is setting up the system flows and pressures as specified, while functional testing is verifying that which has already been set up.
  - 4. The CxA develops the functional test procedures in a sequential written form, coordinates, oversees and documents the actual testing, which is usually performed by the installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors or vendor. FTs are performed after construction and startup checklists, and startup are complete.
- N. Construction Manager (CM) - the prime Contractor for this project. Generally refers to all the CM's Sub-Contractors as well. Also referred to as the Contractor in some contexts.
- O. Indirect Indicators - indicators of a response or condition, such as a reading from a control system screen reporting a damper to be 100% closed.
- P. Manual Test - using hand-held instruments, immediate control system readouts or direct observation to verify performance (contrasted to analyzing monitored data taken over time to make the "observation").
- Q. Monitoring - the recording of parameters (flow, current, status, pressure, etc.) of equipment operation using dataloggers or the trending capabilities of control systems.
- R. Non-Compliance - see Deficiency.
- S. Non-Conformance - see Deficiency.
- T. Over-written Value - writing over a sensor value in the control system to see the response of a system (e.g., changing the outside air temperature value from 50F to 75F to verify economizer operation). See also "Simulated Signal."
- U. Project Manager (PM) - the contracting and managing authority for the owner over the construction of the project, a staff position.



- V. Sampling - functionally testing only a fraction of the total number of identical or near identical pieces of equipment. Refer to Part 3.4 for details.
- W. Seasonal Performance Tests - FT that are deferred until the system(s) shall experience conditions closer to their design conditions.
- X. Simulated Condition - condition that is created for the purpose of testing the response of a system (e.g., applying a hair dryer to a space sensor to see the response in a VAV box).
- Y. Simulated Signal - disconnecting a sensor and using a signal generator to send an amperage, resistance or pressure to the transducer and DDC system to simulate a sensor value.
- Z. Specifications - the construction specifications of the Contract Documents.
- AA. Startup - the initial starting or activating of dynamic equipment, including executing startup checklists.
- BB. Subs - the Sub-Contractors to the Contractor who provide and install building components and systems.
- CC. Substantial Completion – Refer to the description defined in the General Conditions.
- DD. Test Procedures - the step-by-step process which must be executed to fulfill the test requirements. The CxA develops the test procedures.
- EE. Test Requirements - requirements specifying what modes and functions, etc. shall be tested. The test requirements are not the detailed test procedures. The test requirements are specified in the Contract Documents.
- FF. Trending - monitoring using the building control system.
- GG. Vendor - supplier of equipment.
- HH. Warranty Period - warranty period for entire project, including equipment components. Warranty begins at Substantial Completion and extends for at least one year, unless specifically noted otherwise in the Contract Documents and accepted submittals. Equipment that does not initially pass seasonal or deferred functional testing shall have the warranty start date adjusted to date of passing test completion.
- II. Warranty Walk – On-site inspection of all commissioned systems to verify proper operation approximately 10 months into the warranty period. As part of this inspection a review will also be conducted of trend log data from the Building Automation System and service/maintenance records.

## **1.7 SYSTEMS TO BE COMISSIONED**

- A. The following systems shall be commissioned in this project.
  1. Air Handling Units
  2. Make-Up Air Systems
  3. Air Terminal Units (VAV Boxes)

4. Fan Coil Units
5. Unit Heater
6. Exhaust Fans
7. CRAC (Computer Room Air Conditioning) Units
8. Water Cooled Chillers
9. Cooling Towers
10. Chilled Water Pumps
11. Condenser Water Pumps
12. Plate and Frame Heat Exchanger
13. Heating Hot Water Boilers
14. Heating Hot Water Pumps
15. Domestic Hot Water Generation
16. Automatic Temperature Controls
17. Kitchen Systems
18. Walk-In Freezers
19. Walk-In Coolers
20. Kitchen Exhaust Hoods
21. Emergency Generators
22. Generator Fuel Oil Systems

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT**

- A. All standard testing equipment required to perform startup and initial checkout and required functional performance testing shall be provided by the Contractors/Sub-Contractors for the equipment being tested.
- B. Special equipment, tools and instruments (only available from vendor, specific to a piece of equipment) required for testing equipment, shall be included in the Contractors/Sub-Contractors bid price.
- C. All testing equipment shall be of sufficient quantity, quality and accuracy to test and/or measure system performance. All equipment shall be calibrated within the last year, and according to the manufacturer's recommended intervals, and when dropped or damaged. Calibration tags shall be affixed or certificates readily available.
- D. Refer to Para. 3.4 for details regarding equipment that may be required to simulate required test conditions.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 MEETINGS**

- A. Orientation Meeting. Within 90 days of commencement of construction, the CxA shall schedule, plan and conduct a commissioning orientation meeting with the entire commissioning team in attendance. The CxA shall provide agenda and distribute meeting minutes to all parties.
- B. Miscellaneous Meetings. Other meetings shall be planned and conducted by the CxA as construction progresses. These meetings shall cover coordination, deficiency resolution and planning issues with particular Contractors/Sub-Contractors. The CxA shall organize these meetings and shall minimize unnecessary time being spent by Contractors/Sub-Contractors. For large projects, these meetings may be held monthly, until the final 3 months of construction when they may be held as frequently as one per week.

### **3.2 REPORTING**

- A. The CxA shall provide regular reports to the CM and PM, with increasing frequency as construction and commissioning progresses.
- B. The CxA shall regularly communicate with all members of the commissioning team, keeping them apprised of commissioning progress and scheduling changes through memos, progress reports, etc.
- C. Testing or review approvals and non-conformance and deficiency reports are made regularly with the review and testing as described in later sections.
- D. A final summary report by the CxA shall be provided to the CM and PM, focusing on evaluating the commissioning process. All acquired documentation, logs, minutes, reports, deficiency lists, communications, findings, unresolved issues, etc., shall be compiled in appendices and provided with the summary report.
  - 1. Construction and startup checklists, functional tests and monitoring reports shall not be part of the final report, but shall be stored as the Commissioning Record in the O&M manuals.

### **3.3 START-UP CHECKLISTS AND INITIAL CHECKOUT**

- A. The following procedures apply to all equipment to be commissioned, according to para. 1.7, Systems to be Commissioned. Some systems that are not comprised of actual dynamic machinery may have very simplified CCs, SCs and startup.
- B. Startup and Initial Checkout Plan. The CxA shall assist the commissioning team members responsible for startup of any equipment in developing detailed startup plans for all equipment. The primary role of the CxA in this process is to ensure that there is written documentation that each of the manufacturer-recommended procedures have been completed. Parties responsible for construction and startup checklists, and startup are identified in the commissioning orientation meeting and in the checklist forms.
  - 1. The CxA provides these checklists and tests to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors determines which trade is responsible for executing and documenting the tests.
  - 2. The Contractor/Sub-Contractor responsible for the purchase of the equipment develops the full startup plan by combining (or adding to) the CxA's checklists

with the manufacturer's detailed startup and checkout procedures from the O&M manual and the normally used field checkout sheets. The plan shall include checklists and procedures with specific boxes or lines for recording and documenting the checking and inspections of each procedure and a summary statement with a signature block at the end of the plan. Where required, the equipment shall be started up by factory representatives. The CxA shall be notified a minimum 48 hours prior to equipment startup.

3. The Contractor/Sub-Contractor submits the full startup plan to the CxA for review.
4. The CxA reviews the procedures and the format for documenting them, noting any procedures that need to be added.

C. Sensor and Actuator Calibration

1. All field-installed temperature, relative humidity, CO, CO<sub>2</sub> and pressure sensors and gages, and all actuators (dampers and valves) on all equipment shall be calibrated using the methods described below. Alternate methods may be used, if approved by the CxA beforehand. All test instruments shall have performed a certified calibration within the previous 12 months. Sensors installed in the unit at the factory with calibration certification provided, need not be field calibrated.
2. All procedures used shall be fully documented on the construction and startup checklists or other suitable forms, clearly referencing the procedures followed and written documentation of initial, intermediate and final results.

3. Sensor Calibration Methods

- a. All Sensors. Verify that all sensor locations are appropriate and away from causes of erratic operation. For sensor pairs that are used to determine a temperature or pressure difference, make sure they are reading within 0.2°F of each other for temperature and within a tolerance equal to 2% of the reading, of each other, for pressure. Tolerances for critical applications may be tighter.
- b. Sensors Without Transmitters--Standard Application. Make a reading with a calibrated test instrument within 6 inches of the site sensor. Verify that the sensor reading (via the permanent meter, gage or direct digital control system (DDCS)) is within the tolerances in the table below of the instrument-measured value. If not, install offset in DDCS, calibrate or replace sensor.
- c. Sensors With Transmitters--Standard Application. Disconnect sensor. Connect a signal generator in place of sensor. Connect ammeter in series between transmitter and DDCS control panel. Using manufacturer's resistance-temperature data, simulate minimum desired temperature. Adjust transmitter potentiometer zero until the ammeter reads 4 mA. Repeat for the maximum temperature matching 20 mA to the potentiometer span or maximum and verify at the DDCS. Record all values and recalibrate controller as necessary to conform to specified control ramps, reset schedules, proportional relationship, reset relationship and P/I reaction. Reconnect sensor. Make a reading with a calibrated test instrument within 6 inches of the site sensor. Verify that

the sensor reading (via the permanent thermostat, gage or DDCS) is within the tolerances in the table below of the instrument-measured value. If not, replace sensor and repeat. For pressure sensors, perform a similar process with a suitable signal generator.

- d. Critical Applications. For critical applications (process, manufacturing, etc.) more rigorous calibration techniques may be required for selected sensors. Describe any such methods used on an attached sheet.

#### 4. Valve and Damper Stroke Setup and Check

- a. DDCS Readout. For all valve and damper actuator positions checked, verify the actual position against the DDCS readout.
- b. Set pumps or fans to normal operating mode. Command valve or damper closed, visually verify that valve or damper is closed and adjust output zero signal as required. Command valve or damper open, verify position is full open and adjust output signal as required. Command valve or damper to a few intermediate positions. If actual valve or damper position doesn't reasonably correspond, replace actuator or adjust.
- c. Closure for heating coil valves (NO): Set heating setpoint 20°F above room temperature. Observe valve open. Remove control power from the valve and verify that the valve stem and actuator position do not change. Restore to normal. Set heating setpoint to 20°F below room temperature. Observe the valve close. Restore to normal.
- d. Closure for cooling coil valves (NC): Set cooling setpoint 20°F above room temperature. Observe the valve close. Remove control power from the valve and verify that the valve stem and actuator position do not change. Restore to normal. Set cooling setpoint to 20°F below room temperature. Observe valve open. Restore to normal.

#### D. Execution of Construction and Startup Checklists, and Startup

1. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors and vendors schedule startup and checkout with the CM, PM and CxA. The performance of the construction and startup checklists, startup and checkout are directed and executed by the Contractors/Sub-Contractors or vendor. When checking off construction and startup checklists, signatures may be required of other Contractors/Sub-Contractors for verification of completion of their work.
2. The CxA shall observe, at minimum, the procedures for each piece of primary equipment. In no case shall the number of units witnessed be less than the contractual agreement on any one building.
3. For lower-level components of equipment, (e.g., VAV boxes, sensors, controllers), the CxA shall observe a sampling of the construction, and startup, and startup procedures.
4. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors and vendors shall execute startup and provide the CxA with a signed and dated copy of the completed startup, and construction and startup tests and checklists.
5. Only individuals that have direct knowledge and witnessed that a line item task on the construction and startup checklist was actually performed shall initial or check that item off. It is not acceptable for supervisors to fill out these forms.

- E. Deficiencies, Non-Conformance and Approval in Checklists and Startup
1. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall clearly list any outstanding items of the initial startup and construction and startup procedures that were not completed successfully, and any completed corrections, at the bottom of the procedures form or on an attached sheet. The procedures form and any outstanding deficiencies are provided to the CxA within two days of test completion.
  2. The CxA reviews the report and submits either a non-compliance report or an approval form to the Contractor/Sub-Contractor or CM. The CxA shall work with the Contractors/Sub-Contractors and vendors to correct and retest deficiencies or uncompleted items. The CxA shall involve the CM and others as necessary. The installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors or vendors shall correct all areas that are deficient or incomplete in the checklists and tests in a timely manner, and shall notify the CxA as soon as outstanding items have been corrected and resubmit an updated startup report and a Statement of Correction on the original non-compliance report. When satisfactorily completed, the CxA recommends approval of the execution of the checklists and start up of each system.
  3. Items left incomplete, which later cause deficiencies or delays during functional testing will result in incidental damages to the responsible party. Refer to Para. 3.5 sub-item B.4 herein for details.

### **3.4 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TESTING (FT)**

- A. This sub-section applies to all commissioning functional testing for all divisions.
- B. The general list of equipment to be commissioned is found in Para. 1.7.
- C. Objectives and Scope. The objective of Functional Performance Testing is to demonstrate that each system is operating according to the Contract Documents. During the testing process, areas of deficient performance are identified and corrected, improving the operation and functioning of the systems.
1. In general, each system should be operated through all modes of operation (seasonal, occupied, unoccupied, warm-up, cool-down, part- and full-load) where there is a specified system response. Verifying each step in the sequences of operation is required. Proper responses to such modes and conditions as power failure, freeze condition, low oil pressure, no flow, equipment failure, etc. shall also be tested.
- D. Development of Test Procedures. Before test procedures are written, the CxA shall obtain all requested documentation and a current list of change orders affecting equipment or systems, including an updated points list, program code, control sequences and parameters. The CxA shall develop specific test procedures and forms to verify and document proper operation of each piece of equipment and system. Each Contractors/Sub-Contractors or vendor responsible to execute a test shall provide limited assistance to the CxA in developing the procedures review. Prior to execution, the CxA shall provide a copy of the test procedures to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors who shall review the tests for feasibility, safety, equipment and warranty protection. When requested, the CxA will submit the tests to the A/E for review.
1. The purpose of any given specific test is to verify and document compliance with the stated criteria of acceptance given on the test form.

2. The test procedure forms developed by the CxA shall include (but not be limited to) the following information:
3. System and equipment or component name(s)
4. Equipment location and ID number
5. Unique test ID number, and reference to unique construction and startup checklist and startup documentation ID numbers for the piece of equipment
6. Date
7. Project name
8. Participating parties
9. A copy of the specific sequence of operations or other specified parameters being verified
10. Required pre-test field measurements
11. Instructions for setting up the test
12. Special cautions, alarm limits, etc.
13. Specific step-by-step procedures to execute the test, in a clear, sequential and repeatable format
14. Acceptance criteria of proper performance with a check box to allow for clearly marking whether or not proper performance of each part of the test was achieved
15. A section for comments
16. Signatures and date block for the CxA

E. Test Methods

1. Functional performance testing and verification may be achieved by manual testing (persons manipulate the equipment and observe performance) or by monitoring the performance and analyzing the results using the control system's trend log capabilities or by stand-alone dataloggers. The CxA may substitute specified methods or require an additional method to be executed, other than what was specified. The CxA shall determine which method is most appropriate for tests that do not have a method specified.
2. Simulated Conditions. Simulating conditions (not by an overwritten value) shall be allowed, though timing the testing to experience actual conditions is encouraged wherever practical.
3. Overwritten Values. Overwriting sensor values to simulate a condition, such as overwriting the outside air temperature reading in a control system to be something other than it really is, shall be allowed, but shall be used with caution and avoided when possible.
4. Simulated Signals. Using a signal generator which creates a simulated signal to test and calibrate transducers and DDC constants is generally recommended

over using the sensor to act as the signal generator via simulated conditions or overwritten values.

5. Altering Setpoints. Rather than overwriting sensor values, and when simulating conditions is difficult, altering setpoints to test a sequence is acceptable.
  6. Indirect Indicators. Relying on indirect indicators for responses or performance shall be allowed only after visually and directly verifying and documenting, over the range of the tested parameters, that the indirect readings through the control system represent actual conditions and responses. These verifications shall be completed during construction and startup testing.
  7. Setup. Each function and test shall be performed under conditions that simulate actual conditions as close as is practically possible. The Contractor/Sub-Contractor executing the test shall provide all necessary materials, system modifications, etc. to produce the necessary flows, pressures, temperatures, etc. necessary to execute the test according to the specified conditions. At completion of the test, the Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall return all affected building equipment and systems, due to these temporary modifications, to their pre-test condition.
  8. Sampling. Multiple identical pieces of non-life-safety or otherwise non-critical equipment may be functionally tested using a sampling strategy. Significant application differences and significant sequence of operation differences in otherwise identical equipment invalidates their common identity. A small size or capacity difference, alone, does not constitute a difference. It is noted that no sampling by Contractors/Sub-Contractors is allowed in construction and startup checklist execution.
- F. Coordination and Scheduling. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall provide sufficient notice to the CxA regarding their completion schedule for the construction and startup checklists and startup of all equipment and systems. The CxA shall schedule functional tests through the CM and affected Contractors/Sub-Contractors. The CxA shall direct, witness and document the functional testing of all equipment and systems. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall execute the tests.
1. In general, functional testing is conducted after construction and startup testing has been satisfactorily completed. The air balancing and water balancing is completed and debugged before functional testing of air-related or water-related equipment or systems. Testing proceeds from components to subsystems to systems. When the proper performance of all interacting individual systems has been achieved, the interface or coordinated responses between systems is checked.
- G. Test Equipment. Refer to Part 2 for test equipment requirements.
- H. Problem Solving. The CxA may recommend solutions to problems found, however the burden of responsibility to solve, correct and retest problems is with the CM, Contractors/Sub-Contractors and A/E.

### **3.5 DOCUMENTATION, NON-CONFORMANCE AND APPROVAL OF TESTS**

- A. Documentation. The CxA shall witness and document the results of all functional performance tests using the specific procedural forms developed for that purpose. Prior to testing, these forms are provided to the CM for review and approval and to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors for review. The CxA shall include the filled out forms in the O&M manuals.



B. Non-Conformance

1. The CxA shall record the results of the functional test on the procedure or test form. All deficiencies or non-conformance issues shall be noted and reported to the CM on a standard non-compliance form.
2. Corrections of minor deficiencies identified may be made during the tests at the discretion of the CxA. In such cases the deficiency and resolution shall be documented on the procedure form.
3. As tests progress and a deficiency is identified, the CxA discusses the issue with the executing Contractors/Sub-Contractors.
  - a. When there is no dispute on the deficiency and the Contractors/Sub-Contractors accepts responsibility to correct it:
    - 1) The CxA documents the deficiency and the Contractors/Sub-Contractors response and intentions and they go on to another test or sequence. After the day's work, the CxA submits the non-compliance reports to the CM for signature, if required. A copy is provided to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors and CxA. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors corrects the deficiency, signs the statement of correction at the bottom of the non-compliance form certifying that the equipment is ready to be retested and sends it back to the CxA.
    - 2) The CxA reschedules the test and the test is repeated. See sub-item 3.5.B.4..
  - b. If there is a dispute about a deficiency, regarding whether it is a deficiency or who is responsible:
    - 1) The deficiency shall be documented on the non-compliance form with the Contractors/Sub-Contractors' response and a copy given to the CM and to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors' representative assumed to be responsible.
    - 2) Resolutions are made at the lowest management level possible. Other parties are brought into the discussions as needed. Final interpretive authority is with the A/E. Final acceptance authority is with the owners representative.
    - 3) The CxA documents the resolution process. The CxA will test equipment once and provide one re-test, additional cost associated with further required re-testing of the same equipment shall be borne by the responsible Contractors/Sub-Contractors.
    - 4) Once the interpretation and resolution have been decided, the appropriate party corrects the deficiency, signs the statement of correction on the non-compliance form and provides it to the CxA. The CxA reschedules the test and the test is repeated until satisfactory performance is achieved.
4. Cost of Retesting
  - a. The cost for the Contractors/Sub-Contractors to retest a construction and startup or functional test, if they are responsible for the deficiency, shall

be theirs. If they are not responsible, any cost recovery for retesting costs shall be negotiated with the CM.

- b. For a deficiency identified, not related to any construction and startup checklist or startup fault, the following shall apply: The CxA and CM shall direct the retesting of the equipment once at no "charge" to the Owner for their time. However, the CxA's and CM's time for a second retest shall be charged to the Contractor/Sub-Contractor, who may choose to recover costs from the responsible Sub-Contractor/vendor.
  - c. The time for the CxA and CM to direct any retesting required because a specific construction and startup checklist or startup test item, reported to have been successfully completed, but determined during functional testing to be faulty, shall be in the form of incidental damages to the CM, who may choose to recover costs from the party responsible for executing the faulty construction and startup test.
  - d. Refer to the sampling section of Para. 3.4 for requirements for testing and retesting identical equipment.
5. The Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall respond in writing to the CxA and Owner at least as often as commissioning meetings are being scheduled concerning the status of each apparent outstanding discrepancy identified during commissioning. Discussion shall cover explanations of any disagreements and proposals for their resolution.
  6. The CxA retains the original non-conformance forms until the end of the project.
  7. The prime Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall not consider any required retesting by any Contractors/Sub-Contractors a justified reason for a claim of delay or for a time extension.
- C. Failure Due to Manufacturer Defect. If 10%, or three, whichever is greater, of identical pieces (size alone does not constitute a difference) of equipment fail to perform to the Contract Documents (mechanically or substantively) due to manufacturing defect, not allowing it to meet its submitted performance spec, all identical units may be considered unacceptable by the PM. In such case, the Contractors/Sub-Contractors shall provide the Owner with the following:
1. Within one week of notification from the CM or PM, the Contractors/Sub-Contractors or manufacturer's representative shall examine all other identical units, making a record of the findings. The findings shall be provided to the CM or PM within two weeks of the original notice.
  2. Within two weeks of the original notification, the Contractors/Sub-Contractors or manufacturer shall provide a signed and dated, written explanation of the problem, cause of failures, etc. and all proposed solutions which shall include full equipment submittals. The proposed solutions shall not significantly exceed the specification requirements of the original installation.
  3. The PM shall determine whether a replacement of all identical units or a repair is acceptable.
  4. Two examples of the proposed solution shall be installed by the Contractors/Sub-Contractors and the CM shall be allowed to test the installations for up to one week, upon which the PM shall decide whether to accept the solution.

5. Upon acceptance, the Contractors/Sub-Contractors and/or manufacturer shall replace or repair all identical items, at their expense and extend the warranty accordingly, if the original equipment warranty had begun. The replacement/repair work shall proceed with reasonable speed beginning within one week from when parts can be obtained.
- D. Approval. The CxA notes each satisfactorily demonstrated function on the test form. Formal approval of the functional test is made later after review by the CxA. The CxA recommends acceptance of each test to the PM using a standard form. The CxA gives final approval on each test using the same form, providing a signed copy to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors.

### **3.6 OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. Standard O&M Manuals
  1. The specific content and format requirements for the standard O&M manuals are detailed in specifications.
  2. CxA Review. Prior to substantial completion, the CxA shall review the O&M manuals, and documentation such as as-builts for systems that were commissioned to verify compliance with the contract documents. The CxA shall communicate deficiencies in the manuals to the CM, PM or A/E, as requested. Upon a successful review of the corrections, the CxA acknowledges completion of the review of these sections of the O&M manuals to the CM, PM or A/E.

### **3.7 TRAINING OF OWNER PERSONNEL**

- A. The CM shall be responsible for training and scheduling and ultimately ensuring that training is completed.
- B. The CxA shall be responsible for overseeing and approving the content and adequacy of the training of Owner personnel for commissioned equipment.
  1. The CxA shall interview the facility manager and design engineer to determine the special needs and areas where training shall be most valuable. The Owner and CxA shall decide how rigorous the training should be for each piece of commissioned equipment. The CxA shall communicate the results to the Contractors/Sub-Contractors and vendors who have training responsibilities.
  2. In addition to these general requirements, the specific training requirements of Owner personnel by Contractors/Sub-Contractors and vendors is specified in Division 23 and 26.
  3. Within 60 days of contract award, each Contractors/Sub-Contractors and vendor responsible for training shall submit a written training plan to the CxA for review and approval prior to training. The plan shall cover the following elements:
    - a. Equipment (included in training)
    - b. Intended audience
    - c. Location of training
    - d. Objectives
    - e. Subjects covered (description, duration of discussion, special methods, etc.)

- f. Duration of training on each subject
  - g. Instructor for each subject
  - h. Methods (classroom lecture, video, site walk-through, actual operational demonstrations, written handouts, etc.)
  - i. Instructor qualifications
4. For the primary HVAC equipment, the HVAC and the automatic temperature controls installer shall provide a short discussion of the control of the equipment during the mechanical or electrical training conducted by others.
  5. The CxA develops an overall training plan and coordinates and schedules, with the CM, the overall training for the commissioned systems. The CxA develops criteria for determining that the training was satisfactorily completed, including attending 2 of the training sessions, etc. The CxA recommends approval of the training to the PM using a standard form. The CM also signs the approval form.

### 3.8 DEFERRED TESTING

- A. Unforeseen Deferred Tests. If any check or test cannot be completed due to the building structure, required occupancy condition or other deficiency, execution of checklists and functional testing may be delayed upon approval of the PM. These tests shall be conducted in the same manner as the seasonal tests as soon as possible. Services of necessary parties shall be negotiated. Equipment that does not initially pass deferred functional testing shall have the warranty start date adjusted to date of passing test completion.
- B. Seasonal Testing. During the warranty period, seasonal testing (tests delayed until weather conditions are closer to the system's design) shall be completed as part of this contract. The CxA shall coordinate this activity. Tests shall be executed, documented and deficiencies corrected by the appropriate Contractors/Sub-Contractors, with facilities staff and the CxA witnessing. Equipment that does not initially pass seasonal functional testing shall have the warranty start date adjusted to date of passing test completion. Any final adjustments to the O&M manuals and as-builts due to the testing shall be made.

### 3.9 WRITTEN WORK PRODUCTS

- A. The commissioning process generates a number of written work products described in various parts of the specifications. In summary, the written products are:

<u>Product</u>	<u>Developed By</u>
1. Final commissioning plan	CxA
2. Cx Meeting minutes	CxA
3. Commissioning schedules	CxA with CM
4. Equipment documentation submittals	Responsible Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors
5. Sequence clarifications	Responsible Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors and A/E as needed
6. Construction and startup checklists	CxA (included in Specifications)

Product

Developed By

7. Startup and initial checkout plan	Responsible Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors and CxA (compilation of existing documents)
8. Startup and initial checkout forms filled out	Responsible Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors/Mfg Rep (where applicable)
9. Final Air and Water Balance Report	HVAC Contractor/Balancer
10. Commissioning Progress Record	CxA
11. Deficiency reports	CxA
12. Functional test forms	CxA
13. Filled out functional tests	CxA
14. O&M manuals	Responsible Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors
15. Commissioning record book	CxA
16. Overall training plan	CxA and CM
17. Specific training agendas	Responsible Installing Contractors/Sub-Contractors
18. Final commissioning report	CxA
19. Misc. approvals	CxA

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 23 09 00

### AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The Building Automation System (BAS) manufacturer shall furnish and install a fully integrated building automation system, incorporating direct digital control (DDC) for energy management, equipment monitoring and control, and subsystems with open communications capabilities as herein specified.
- B. All materials and equipment used shall be standard components, regularly manufactured for this and/or other systems and not custom designed specially for this project. All systems and components shall have been thoroughly tested and proven in actual use for at least two years.
- C. Installing contractor shall be responsible for all BAS and Temperature Control wiring for a complete and operable system. All wiring shall be done in accordance with all local and national codes.

##### 1.2 WORK BY OTHERS

- A. Mechanical contractor installs all wells, valves, taps, dampers, flow stations, etc. furnished.
- B. Electrical Contractor provides:
  - 1. Wiring of all power feeds through all disconnect starters to electrical motor.
  - 2. Wiring of any remote start/stop switches and manual or automatic motor speed control devices not furnished by BAS contractor.
  - 3. Wiring of any electrical sub-metering devices.
- C. Products furnished but not installed under this section
  - 1. Section 23- Hydronic Piping:
    - a. Control Valves
    - b. Flow Switches
    - c. Temperature Sensor Wells and Sockets
    - d. Flow Meters
  - 2. Section 23 - Refrigerant Piping:
    - a. Pressure and Temperature Sensor Wells and Sockets
  - 3. Section 23 - Duct-work Accessories:
    - a. Automatic Dampers
    - b. Air-flow Stations
    - c. Terminal Unit Controls
- D. Products installed but not furnished under this section:
  - 1. Section 23 - Refrigeration Equipment:
    - a. Pressure Transmitters
    - b. Temperature Transmitters
    - c. Power Transmitters
    - d. Refrigerant Leak Detectors

2. Section 23- Air Handling Equipment:
  - a. Thermostats
  - b. Sensors
  - c. Controllers
3. Section 26 - Fire Alarm Systems
  - a. Smoke Detectors

### 1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. Division 1 General and Special Conditions
- B. Division 23 Mechanical
- C. Division 26 Electrical

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The BAS system shall be designed and installed, commissioned and serviced by, factory trained personnel. contractor shall have an in-place support facility within 100 miles of the site with technical staff, spare parts inventory and necessary test and diagnostic equipment.
  1. The installing contractor shall provide full time, on site, experienced project manager for this work, responsible for direct supervision of the design, installation, start up and commissioning of the B.M.S.
  2. The Bidder shall be regularly engaged in the, installation, maintenance of BMS systems and shall have a minimum of ten (10) years of demonstrated technical expertise and experience in the, installation and maintenance of B.M.S. systems similar in size and complexity to this project. A maintained service organization consisting of at least ten (10) competent servicemen for a period of not less than ten years and provide a list of 10 projects, similar in size and scope to this project, completed within the last five years.
- B. Materials and equipment shall be the catalogued products of manufacturers regularly engaged in production and installation of automatic temperature control systems and shall be manufacturer's latest standard design that complies with the specification requirements.
- C. All BAS peer-to-peer network controllers, central system controllers and local user displays shall be UL Listed under Standard UL 916, category PAZX; Standard ULC C100, category UUKL7; and under Standard UL 864, categories UUKL, UDTZ, and QVAX and be so listed at the time of bid. All floor level controllers shall comply, at a minimum, with UL Standard UL 916 category PAZX; Standard UL 864, categories UDTZ, and QVAX and be so listed at the time of Bid.
- D. DDC peer-to-peer controllers shall be compliant with the European EMC Directive, Standards EN 50081-2 and EN 50082-2, at the Industrial Levels. Additionally the equipment shall be compliant with the European LVD Directive and bear the CE mark in order to show compliance to both Directives."
- E. All electronic equipment shall conform to the requirements of FCC Regulation, Part 15, Governing Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Interference and be so labeled.
- F. The manufacturer of the building automation system shall provide documentation supporting compliance with ISO-9002 (Model for Quality Assurance in Production, Installation, and Servicing) and ISO-140001 (The application of well-accepted business management principles to the environment). The intent of this specification requirement is to ensure that the products from the manufacturer are delivered through a Quality System and Framework that will assure consistency in the products delivered for this project.
- G. This system shall have a documented history of compatibility by design for a minimum of 15 years. Future compatibility shall be supported for no less than 10 years. Compatibility



shall be defined as the ability to upgrade existing field panels to current level of technology, and extend new field panels on a previously installed network.

1. Compatibility shall be defined as the ability for any existing field panel microprocessor to be connected and directly communicate with new field panels without bridges, routers or protocol converters.
- H. The building automation system (BAS) shall conform to the following standard for Year 2000 Compliance:
1. The system shall not produce errors when processing date data (including calculating, sorting or displaying) from, into and between the years 1999 and 2000 and leap year calculations in the year 2000, to the extent that date information provided from other systems, is accurate.
  2. The BAS supplier shall provide documentation to support the individual device(s) Year 2000 Compliance. This document shall include a listing of compliance by device and any exceptions to the above definition.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit 10 complete sets of documentation in the following phased delivery schedule:
1. Valve and damper schedules
  2. Equipment data cut sheets
  3. System schematics, including:
    - a. Sequence of operations
    - b. Point names
    - c. Point addresses
    - d. Interface wiring diagrams
    - e. Panel layouts.
    - f. System riser diagrams
  4. Auto-CAD compatible as-built drawings
- B. Upon project completion, submit operation and maintenance manuals, consisting of the following:
1. Index sheet, listing contents in alphabetical order
  2. Manufacturer's equipment parts list of all functional components of the system, Auto-CAD disk of system schematics, including wiring diagrams
  3. Description of sequence of operations
  4. As-Built interconnection wiring diagrams
  5. Operator's Manual
  6. Trunk cable schematic showing remote electronic panel locations, and all trunk data
  7. List of connected data points, including panels to which they are connected and input device (ionization detector, sensors, etc.)
  8. Conduit routing diagrams

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Provide all services, materials and equipment necessary for the successful operation of the entire BAS system for a period of one year after beneficial use.
- B. The adjustment, required testing, and repair of the system includes all computer equipment, transmission equipment and all sensors and control devices.
- C. The on-line support services shall allow the local BAS subcontractor to dial out over telephone lines to monitor and control the facility's building automation system. This remote connection to the facility shall be within 2 hours of the time that the problem is reported. This coverage shall be extended to include normal business hours, after business hours, weekends and holidays.

1. If the problem cannot be resolved on-line by the local office, the national office of the building automation system manufacturer shall have the same capabilities for remote connection to the facility. If the problem cannot be resolved with on-line support services, the BAS manufacturer shall dispatch the appropriate personnel to the job site to resolve the problem within 3 hours of the time that the problem is reported.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

- A. ES2 - Automated Logic, ABS - Automated Building Systems, Alerton (Northwest controls)

### **2.2 NETWORKING COMMUNICATIONS**

- A. The design of the BAS shall network operator workstations and stand-alone DDC Controllers. The network architecture shall consist of multiple levels for communication efficiency, a campus-wide (Management Level Network) Ethernet network based on TCP/IP protocol, high performance peer-to-peer building level network(s) and DDC Controller floor level local area networks with access being totally transparent to the user when accessing data or developing control programs.
- B. The design of BAS shall allow the co-existence of new DDC Controllers with existing DDC Controllers in the same network without the use of gateways or protocol converters.
  1. System shall have the capability to communicate with a BACnet network over Ethernet or BACnet/IP (according to Annex J). The intent is to use the system provided under this contract to communicate with control systems provided by other vendors. A PICS must be provided describing the BACnet, ANSI/ASHRAE 135-95, implementation. Minimum system functionality must include monitoring, commanding, and alarming for daily operator functions from a common workstation.
  2. System shall have the capability to be an OPC Client and Server for dynamic communication with OPC Clients or Servers over an Ethernet network. At a minimum, the following must be supported:
    - a. Data Access 1.0 (96), 1.0A (97) and 2.0 (11/98)
    - b. Alarms & Events 1.0 (1/99)
- C. Peer-to-Peer Building Level Network:
  1. All operator devices either network resident or connected via dial-up modems shall have the ability to access all point status and application report data or execute control functions for any and all other devices via the peer-to-peer network. No hardware or software limits shall be imposed on the number of devices with global access to the network data at any time.
  2. The peer-to-peer network shall support a minimum of 100 DDC controllers and PC workstations
  3. Each PC workstation shall support a minimum of 4 peer to peer networks hardwired or dial up.
  4. The system shall support integration of third party systems (fire alarm, security, lighting, PCL, chiller, boiler) via panel mounted open protocol processor. This processor shall exchange data between the two systems for interprocess control. All exchange points shall have full system functionality as specified herein for hardwired points.
  5. Field panels must be capable of integration with open standards including Modbus, BACnet, and Lonworks as well as with third party devices via existing vendor protocols.

### **2.3 DDC CONTROLLER FLOOR LEVEL NETWORK**

- A. This level communication shall support a family of application specific controllers and shall communicate with the peer-to-peer network through DDC Controllers for transmission of global data.

### **2.4 DDC & HVAC MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT CONTROLLERS**

- A. The DDC & HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers shall reside on the Building Level Network.
- B. DDC & HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers shall use the same programming language and tools. DDC & HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers which require different programming language or tools on a network are not acceptable.
- C. DDC & HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers which do not meet the functions specified in Section 2.4.1 and Section 2.5 for DDC Controllers or Section 2.4.2 and Section 2.5 for HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers are not acceptable.

### **2.5 DDC CONTROLLER**

- A. DDC Controllers shall be a 16-bit stand-alone, multi-tasking, multi-user, real-time digital control processors consisting of modular hardware with plug-in enclosed processors, communication controllers, power supplies and input/output point modules. Controller size shall be sufficient to fully meet the requirements of this specification and the attached point I/O schedule. Each controller shall support a minimum of three (3) Floor Level Application Specific Controller Device Networks.
- B. Each DDC Controller shall have sufficient memory to support its own operating system and databases, including:
  - 1. Control processes
  - 2. Energy management applications
  - 3. Alarm management applications including custom alarm messages for each level alarm for each point in the system.
  - 4. Historical/trend data for points specified
  - 5. Maintenance support applications
  - 6. Custom processes
  - 7. Operator I/O
  - 8. Dial-up communications
  - 9. Manual override monitoring
- C. Each DDC Controller shall support firmware upgrades without the need to replace hardware.
- D. Provide all processors, power supplies and communication controllers so that the implementation of a point only requires the addition of the appropriate point input/output termination module and wiring.
- E. DDC Controllers shall provide a RS-232C serial data communication ports for operation of operator I/O devices such as industry standard printers, operator terminals, modems and portable laptop operator's terminals. DDC Controllers shall allow temporary use of portable devices without interrupting the normal operation of permanently connected modems, printers or terminals.
- F. As indicated in the point I/O schedule, the operator shall have the ability to manually override automatic or centrally executed commands at the DDC Controller via local, point discrete, on-board hand/off/auto operator override switches for digital control type points and gradual switches for analog control type points.
  - 1. Switches shall be mounted either within the DDC Controllers key-accessed enclosure, or externally mounted with each switch keyed to prevent unauthorized overrides.

2. DDC Controllers shall monitor the status of all overrides and inform the operator that automatic control has been inhibited. DDC Controllers shall also collect override activity information for reports.
- G. DDC Controllers shall provide local LED status indication for each digital input and output for constant, up-to-date verification of all point conditions without the need for an operator I/O device. Graduated intensity LEDs or analog indication of value shall also be provided for each analog output. Status indication shall be visible without opening the panel door.
- H. Each DDC Controller shall continuously perform self-diagnostics, communication diagnosis and diagnosis of all panel components. The DDC Controller shall provide both local and remote annunciation of any detected component failures, low battery conditions or repeated failure to establish communication.
- I. Isolation shall be provided at all peer-to-peer network terminations, as well as all field point terminations to suppress induced voltage transients consistent with:
1. RF-Conducted Immunity (RFCl) per ENV 50141 (IEC 1000-4-6) at 3 V
  2. Electro Static Discharge (ESD) Immunity per EN 61000-4-2 (IEC 1000-4-2) at 8 kV air discharge, 4 kV contact
  3. Electrical Fast Transient (EFT) per EN 61000-4-4 (IEC 1000-4-4) at 500 V signal, 1 kV power
  4. Output Circuit Transients per UL 864 (2,400V, 10A, 1.2 Joule max)
  5. Isolation shall be provided at all peer-to-peer panel's AC input terminals to suppress induced voltage transients consistent with:
    - a. IEEE Standard 587-1980
    - b. UL 864 Supply Line Transients
    - c. Voltage Sags, Surge, and Dropout per EN 61000-4-11 (EN 1000-4-11)
- J. In the event of the loss of normal power, there shall be an orderly shutdown of all DDC Controllers to prevent the loss of database or operating system software. Non-volatile memory shall be incorporated for all critical controller configuration data and battery backup shall be provided to support the real-time clock and all volatile memory for a minimum of 60 days.
1. Upon restoration of normal power, the DDC Controller shall automatically resume full operation without manual intervention.
  2. Should DDC Controller memory be lost for any reason, the user shall have the capability of reloading the DDC Controller via the local RS-232C port, via telephone line dial-in or from a network workstation PC.
- K. Provide a separate DDC Controller for each AHU or other HVAC system as indicated in Section 3.02. It is intended that each unique system be provided with its own point resident DDC Controller.

## 2.6 HVAC MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT CONTROLLERS

- A. HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers shall be a 12-bit stand-alone, multi-tasking, multi-user, real-time digital control processors consisting of modular hardware with plug-in enclosed processors.
- B. Each HVAC Mechanical Controller shall have sufficient memory to support its own operating system and databases, including:
1. Control processes
  2. Energy management applications
  3. Alarm management applications including custom alarm messages for each level alarm for each point in the system.
  4. Historical/trend data for points specified
  5. Maintenance support applications
  6. Custom processes
  7. Operator I/O
  8. Remote communications

- C. HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers shall provide a RS-232C serial data communication port for operation of operator I/O devices such as industry standard printers, operator terminals, modems and portable laptop operator's terminals.
- D. HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers shall provide local LED status indication for each digital input and output for constant, up-to-date verification of all point conditions without the need for an operator I/O device.
- E. Each HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller shall continuously perform self-diagnostics, communication diagnosis and diagnosis of all components. The HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller shall provide both local and remote annunciation of any detected component failures, low battery conditions or repeated failure to establish communication.
- F. Isolation shall be provided at all peer-to-peer network terminations, as well as all field point terminations to suppress induced voltage transients consistent with:
  - 1. RF-Conducted Immunity (RFCl) per ENV 50141 (IEC 1000-4-6) at 3 V
  - 2. Electro Static Discharge (ESD) Immunity per EN 61000-4-2 (IEC 1000-4-2) at 8 kV air discharge, 4 kV contact
  - 3. Electrical Fast Transient (EFT) per EN 61000-4-4 (IEC 1000-4-4) at 500 V signal, 1 kV power
  - 4. Output Circuit Transients per UL 864 (2,400V, 10A, 1.2 Joule max)
- G. Isolation shall be provided at all peer-to-peer panel's AC input terminals to suppress induced voltage transients consistent with:
  - 1. IEEE Standard 587-1980
  - 2. UL 864 Supply Line Transients
  - 3. Voltage Sags, Surge, and Dropout per EN 61000-4-11 (EN 1000-4-11)
- H. In the event of the loss of normal power, there shall be an orderly shutdown of all HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers to prevent the loss of database or operating system software. Non-volatile memory shall be incorporated for all critical controller configuration data and battery backup shall be provided to support the real-time clock and all volatile memory for a minimum of 72 hours.
  - 1. Upon restoration of normal power, the HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller shall automatically resume full operation without manual intervention.
  - 2. Should HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller memory be lost for any reason, the user shall have the capability of reloading the HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller via the local RS-232C port, via telephone line dial-in or from a network workstation PC.

## **2.7 DDC & HVAC MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT CONTROLLER RESIDENT SOFTWARE FEATURES**

- A. General:
  - 1. The software programs specified in this Section shall be provided as an integral part of DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers and shall not be dependent upon any higher level computer for execution.
  - 2. All points shall be identified by up to 30 character point name and 16 character point descriptor. The same names shall be used at the PC workstation.
  - 3. All digital points shall have user defined two-state status indication (descriptors with minimum of 8 characters allowed per state (i.e. summer/winter)).
- B. Control Software Description:
  - 1. The DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers shall have the ability to perform the following pre-tested control algorithms:
    - a. Two-position control
      - b. Proportional control
      - c. Proportional plus integral control
      - d. Proportional, integral, plus derivative control
      - e. Automatic tuning of control loops

- C. DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers shall provide the following energy management routines for the purpose of optimizing energy consumption while maintaining occupant comfort.
1. Start-Stop Time Optimization (SSTO) shall automatically be coordinated with event scheduling. The SSTO program shall start HVAC equipment at the latest possible time that will allow the equipment to achieve the desired zone condition by time of occupancy. The SSTO program shall also shut down HVAC equipment at the earliest possible time before the end of the occupancy period, and still maintain desired comfort conditions.
    - a. The SSTO program shall operate in both the heating and cooling seasons.
      - 1) It shall be possible to apply the SSTO program to individual fan systems.
      - 2) The SSTO program shall operate on both outside weather conditions as well as inside zone conditions and empirical factors.
    - b. The SSTO program shall meet the local code requirements for minimum outside air while the building is occupied.
  2. Event Scheduling: Provide a comprehensive menu driven program to automatically start and stop designated points or groups of points according to a stored time.
    - a. It shall be possible to individually command a point or group of points.
    - b. For points assigned to one common load group, it shall be possible to assign variable time delays between each successive start or stop within that group.
    - c. The operator shall be able to define the following information:
      - 1) Time, day
      - 2) Commands such as on, off, auto, and so forth.
      - 3) Time delays between successive commands.
      - 4) There shall be provisions for manual overriding of each schedule by an appropriate operator.
    - d. It shall be possible to schedule events up to one year in advance.
      - 1) Scheduling shall be calendar based.
      - 2) Holidays shall allow for different schedules.
  3. Enthalpy switchover (economizer) .The Energy Management Control Software (EMCS) will control the position of the air handler relief, return, and outside air dampers. If the outside air dry bulb temperature falls below changeover set point the EMCS will modulate the dampers to provide 100 percent outside air. The user will be able to quickly changeover to an economizer system based on dry bulb temperature and will be able to override the economizer cycle and return to minimum outside air operation at any time.
  4. Temperature-compensated duty cycling.
    - a. The DCCP (Duty Cycle Control Program) shall periodically stop and start loads according to various patterns.
    - b. The loads shall be cycled such that there is a net reduction in both the electrical demands and the energy consumed.
  5. Automatic Daylight Savings Time Switchover: The system shall provide automatic time adjustment for switching to/from Daylight Savings Time.
  6. Night setback control: The system shall provide the ability to automatically adjust setpoints for night control.

7. The Peak Demand Limiting (PDL) program shall limit the consumption of electricity to prevent electrical peak demand charges.
  - a. PDL shall continuously track the amount of electricity being consumed, by monitoring one or more electrical kilowatt-hour/demand meters. These meters may measure the electrical consumption (kWh), electrical demand (kW), or both.
  - b. PDL shall sample the meter data to continuously forecast the demand likely to be used during successive time intervals.
  - c. If the PDL forecasted demand indicates that electricity usage is likely to exceed a user preset maximum allowable level, then PDL shall automatically shed electrical loads.
  - d. Once the demand peak has passed, loads that have been shed shall be restored and returned to normal control.
- D. DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers shall be able to execute custom, job-specific processes defined by the user, to automatically perform calculations and special control routines.
  1. A single process shall be able to incorporate measured or calculated data from any and all other DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers on the network. In addition, a single process shall be able to issue commands to points in any and all other DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers on the network. Database shall support 30 character, English language point names, structured for searching and logs.
  2. Processes shall be able to generate operator messages and advisories to operator I/O devices. A process shall be able to directly send a message to a specified device or cause the execution of a dial-up connection to a remote device such as a printer or pager.
  3. DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller shall provide a HELP function key, providing enhanced context sensitive on-line help with task orientated information from the user manual.
  4. DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller shall be capable of comment lines for sequence of operation explanation.
- E. Alarm management shall be provided to monitor and direct alarm information to operator devices. Each DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller shall perform distributed, independent alarm analysis and filtering to minimize operator interruptions due to non-critical alarms, minimize network traffic and prevent alarms from being lost. At no time shall the DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers ability to report alarms be affected by either operator or activity at a PC workstation, local I/O device or communications with other panels on the network.
  1. All alarm or point change reports shall include the point's English language description and the time and date of occurrence.
  2. The user shall be able to define the specific system reaction for each point. Alarms shall be prioritized to minimize nuisance reporting and to speed operator response to critical alarms. A minimum of six priority levels shall be provided for each point. Point priority levels shall be combined with user definable destination categories (PC, printer, DDC Controller, etc.) to provide full flexibility in defining the handling of system alarms. Each DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller shall automatically inhibit the reporting of selected alarms during system shutdown and start-up. Users shall have the ability to manually inhibit alarm reporting for each point.
  3. Alarm reports and messages will be directed to a user-defined list of operator devices or PCs based on time (after hour's destinations) or based on priority.
  4. In addition to the point's descriptor and the time and date, the user shall be able to print, display or store a 200 character alarm message to more fully describe the alarm condition or direct operator response.

5. In dial-up applications, operator-selected alarms shall initiate a call to a remote operator device.
- F. A variety of historical data collection utilities shall be provided to manually or automatically sample, store and display system data for points as specified in the I/O summary.
1. Any point, physical or calculated may be designated for trending. Any point, regardless of physical location in the network, may be collected and stored in each DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers point group. Two methods of collection shall be allowed: either by a pre-defined time interval or upon a pre-defined change of value. Sample intervals of 1 minute to 7 days shall be provided. Each DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller shall have a dedicated RAM-based buffer for trend data and shall be capable of storing a minimum of \_\_\_ data samples. All trend data shall be available for transfer to a Workstation without manual intervention.
  2. DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers shall also provide high resolution sampling capability for verification of control loop performance. Operator-initiated automatic and manual loop tuning algorithms shall be provided for operator-selected PID control loops as identified in the point I/O summary.
- a. Loop tuning shall be capable of being initiated either locally at the DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller, from a network workstation or remotely using dial-in modems. For all loop tuning functions, access shall be limited to authorized personnel through password protection.
- G. DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers shall be capable of automatically accumulating and storing run-time hours for digital input and output points and automatically sample, calculate and store consumption totals for analog and digital pulse input type points, as specified in the point I/O schedule.
- H. The peer to peer network shall allow the DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers to access any data from or send control commands and alarm reports directly to any other DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller or combination of controllers on the network without dependence upon a central or intermediate processing device. DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers shall send alarm reports to multiple workstations without dependence upon a central or intermediate processing device. The peer to peer network shall also allow any DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller to access, edit, modify, add, delete, back up, and restore all system point database and all programs.
- I. The peer to peer network shall allow the DDC and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers to assign a minimum of 50 passwords access and control priorities to each point individually. The logon password (at any PC workstation or portable operator terminal) shall enable the operator to monitor, adjust and control the points that the operator is authorized for. All other points shall not be displayed on the PC workstation or portable terminal (e.g. all base building and all tenant points shall be accessible to any base building operators, but only tenant points shall be accessible to tenant building operators). Passwords and priorities for every point shall be fully programmable and adjustable.

## **2.8 FLOOR LEVEL NETWORK APPLICATION SPECIFIC CONTROLLERS (ASC)**

- A. Each DDC Controller shall be able to extend its performance and capacity through the use of remote application specific controllers (ASCs) through Floor Level LAN Device Networks.
- B. Each ASC shall operate as a stand-alone controller capable of performing its specified control responsibilities independently of other controllers in the network. Each ASC shall be a microprocessor-based, multi-tasking, real-time digital control processor. Each ASC shall be capable of control of the terminal device independent of the manufacturer of the terminal device.



- C. Terminal Equipment Controllers:
  - 1. Provide for control of each piece of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Variable Air Volume (VAV) boxes
    - b. Constant Air Volume (CAV) boxes
    - c. Unit Conditioners
    - d. Room Pressurization
  - 2. Controllers shall include all point inputs and outputs necessary to perform the specified control sequences. Analog outputs shall be industry standard signals such as 24V floating control, 3-15 psi pneumatic, 0-10v, allowing for interface to a variety of modulating actuators.
  - 3. All controller sequences and operation shall provide closed loop control of the intended application. Closing control loops over the FLN, BLN or MLN is not acceptable.

## 2.9 PERSONAL COMPUTER OPERATOR WORKSTATION HARDWARE

- A. Personal computer operator workstation: see drawings
- B. Alarm Display shall list the alarms with highest priority at the top of the display. The alarm display shall provide selector buttons for display of the associated point graphic and message. The alarm display shall provide a mechanism for the operator to sort alarms.

## 2.10 WORKSTATION OPERATOR INTERFACE

- A. Basic Interface Description
  - 1. Operator workstation interface software shall minimize operator training through the use of user-friendly and interactive graphical applications, minimum 30-character English language point identification, on-line help, and industry standard Windows application software. Interface software shall simultaneously communicate with and share data between any combination of dedicated, modem autodial, and Ethernet-connected building level networks. The software shall provide, as a minimum, the following functionality:
    - a. Real-time graphical viewing and control of the BAS environment
    - b. Reporting
    - c. Scheduling and override of building operations
    - d. Collection and analysis of historical data
    - e. Point database editing, storage and downloading of controller databases.
    - f. Utility for combining points into logical Point Groups. The Point Groups shall then be manipulated in Graphics, trend graphs and reports in order to streamline the navigation and usability of the system.
    - g. Alarm reporting, routing, messaging, and acknowledgment
    - h. "Collapsible tree," dynamic system architecture diagram application:
      - 1) Showing the real-time status and definition details of all workstations and devices on a management level network
      - 2) Showing the real-time status and definition details of all DDC and HVAC Mechanical Controllers at the building level
      - 3) Showing the status and definition details of all field-level application controllers
    - i. Definition and construction of dynamic color graphic displays.
    - j. Online, context-sensitive help, including an index, glossary of terms, and the capability to search help via keyword or phrase.
    - k. On-screen access to User Documentation, via online help or PDF-format electronic file.

- l. Automatic database backup at the workstation for database changes initiated at DDC Controller operator interface terminals.
  - m. Display dynamic trend data graphical plot.
    - 1) Must be able to run multiple plots simultaneously
    - 2) Each plot must be capable of supporting 10 pts/plot minimum
    - 3) Must be able to command points directly off dynamic trend plot application.
    - 4) Must be able to plot both real-time and historical trend data
  - n. Program editing
  - o. Transfer trend data to 3<sup>rd</sup> party spreadsheet software
  - p. Scheduling reports
  - q. Operator Activity Log
2. Provide a graphical user interface that shall minimize the use of keyboard through the use of a mouse or similar pointing device, with a "point and click" approach to menu selection and a "drag and drop" approach to inter-application navigation. Selection of applications within the workstation software shall be via a graphical toolbar menu – the application toolbar menu shall have the option to be located in a docked position on any of the four sides of the visible desktop space on the workstation display monitor, and the option to automatically hide itself from the visible monitor workspace when not being actively manipulated by the user.
3. The software shall provide a multi-tasking type environment that allows the user to run several applications simultaneously. BAS software shall run on a current Windows operating system. System database parameters shall be stored within an object-oriented database, which is compliant with the Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) or Structured Query Language (SQL) standards. Standard Windows applications shall run simultaneously with the BAS software. The mouse or Alt-Tab keys shall be used to quickly select and switch between multiple applications. The operator shall be able to work in Microsoft Word, Excel, and other Windows based software packages, while concurrently annunciating on-line BAS alarms and monitoring information
- a. Provide functionality such that any of the following may be performed simultaneously on-line, and in any combination, via adjustable user-sized windows. Operator shall be able to drag and drop information between the following applications, reducing the number of steps to perform a desired function (e.g., Click on a point on the alarm screen and drag it to the dynamic trend graph application to initiate a dynamic trend on the desired point):
    - 1) Dynamic color graphics application
    - 2) Alarm management application
    - 3) Scheduling application
    - 4) Dynamic trend graph data plotter application
    - 5) Dynamic system architecture diagram application
    - 6) Control Program and Point database editing applications
    - 7) Reporting applications
  - b. Report and alarm printing shall be accomplished via Windows Print Manager, allowing use of network printers.
4. Operator-specific password access protection shall be provided to allow the administrator/manager to limit users' workstation control, display and data base manipulation capabilities as deemed appropriate for each user, based upon an assigned password. Operator privileges shall "follow" the operator to any workstation logged onto (up to 999 user accounts shall be supported). The administrator/manager shall be able to grant discrete levels of access and privileges, per user, for each point, graphic, report, schedule, and BAS

workstation application. And each BAS workstation user account shall use a Windows 2000/NT user account as a foundation.

- a. The workstation software shall also include an application to track the actions of each individual operator, such as alarm acknowledgement, point commanding, schedule overriding, database editing, and logon/logoff. The application shall list each of the actions in a tabular format, and shall have sorting capabilities based on parameters such as ascending or descending time of the action, or name of the object on which the action was performed. The application shall also allow querying based on object name, operator, action, or time range.
5. Dynamic Color Graphics application shall include the following:
  - a. Must include graphic editing and modifying capabilities
  - b. A library of standard control application graphics and symbols must be included
  - c. Must be able to command points directly off graphics application
  - d. Graphic display shall include the ability to depict real-time point values dynamically with animation, picture/frame control, symbol association, or dynamic informational text-blocks
  - e. Navigation through various graphic screens shall be optionally achieved through a hierarchical "tree" structure
  - f. Graphics viewing shall include zoom capabilities
  - g. Graphics shall automatically display the HAND status of points that have been overridden by a field HAND switch, for points that have been designed to provide a field HAND override capability.
  - h. Advanced linking within the Graphics application shall provide the ability to navigate to outside documents (e.g., .doc, .pdf, .xls, etc.), internet web addresses, e-mail, external programs, and other workstation applications, directly from the Graphics application window with a mouse-click on a customizable link symbol.
6. Reports shall be generated on demand or via pre-defined schedule, and directed to CRT displays, printers or file. As a minimum, the system shall allow the user to easily obtain the following types of reports:
  - a. A general listing of all or selected points in the network
  - b. List of all points currently in alarm
  - c. List of all points currently in override status
  - d. List of all disabled points
  - e. List of all points currently locked out
  - f. List of user accounts and access levels
  - g. List all weekly schedules and events
  - h. List of holiday programming
  - i. List of control limits and deadbands
  - j. Custom reports from 3<sup>rd</sup> party software
  - k. System diagnostic reports including, list of DDC panels on line and communicating, status of all DDC terminal unit device points
  - l. List of programs
  - m. List of point definitions
  - n. List of logical point groups
  - o. List of alarm strategy definitions
  - p. List of DDC Control panels
  - q. Point totalization report
  - r. Point Trend data listings
  - s. Initial Values report
  - t. User activity report

7. Scheduling and override

- a. Provide a calendar type format for simplification of time and date scheduling and overrides of building operations. Schedule definitions reside in the PC workstation, DDC Controller, and HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller to ensure time equipment scheduling when PC is off-line -- PC is not required to execute time scheduling. Provide override access through menu selection, graphical mouse action or function key. Provide the following capabilities as a minimum:
  - 1) Weekly schedules
  - 2) Zone schedules
  - 3) Event schedules – an event consists of logical combinations of equipment and/or zones
  - 4) Report schedules
  - 5) Ability to schedule for a minimum of up to 365 days in advance
- b. Additionally, the scheduling application shall:
  - 1) Provide filtering capabilities of schedules, based on name, time, frequency, and schedule type (event, zone, report)
  - 2) Provide sorting capabilities of schedules, based on name, time and type of schedule (zone, event, report)
  - 3) Provide searching capabilities of schedules based on name – with wildcarding options

8. Collection and Analysis of Historical Data

- a. Provide trending capabilities that allow the user to easily monitor and preserve records of system activity over an extended period of time. Any system point may be trended automatically at time-based intervals (up to four time-based definitions per point) or change of value, both of which shall be user-definable. Trend data shall be collected stored on hard disk for future diagnostics and reporting. Automatic Trend collection may be scheduled at regular intervals through the same scheduling interface as used for scheduling of zones, events, and reports. Additionally, trend data may be archived to network drives or removable disk media for future retrieval.
- b. Trend data reports shall be provided to allow the user to view all trended point data. Reports may be customized to include individual points or predefined groups of selected points. Provide additional functionality to allow predefined groups of up to 250 trended points to be easily transferred on-line to Microsoft Excel. DDC contractor shall provide custom designed spreadsheet reports for use by the owner to track energy usage and cost, equipment run times, equipment efficiency, and/or building environmental conditions. DDC contractor shall provide setup of custom reports including creation of data format templates for monthly or weekly reports.
- c. Provide additional functionality that allows the user to view real-time trend data on trend graphical plot displays. A minimum of ten points may be plotted, of either real-time or historical data. The dynamic graphs shall continuously update point values. At any time the user may redefine sampling times or range scales for any point. In addition, the user may pause the graph and take "snapshots" of plot screens to be stored on the workstation disk for future recall and analysis. Exact point values may be viewed and the graphs may be printed. A minimum of 8 true graphs shall run simultaneously. Operator shall be able to command points directly on the trend plot by double clicking on the point. Operator shall be able to zoom in on a specific time range within a plot. The dynamic trend plotting

application shall support the following types of graphs, with option to graph in 3D: line graph, area graph, curve graph, area-curve graph, step graph, and scatter graph. Each graph may be customized by the user, for graph type, graph text, titles, line styles and weight, colors, and configurable x- and y-axes.

B. Dynamic Color Graphic Displays

1. Create color graphic floor plan displays and system schematics for each piece of mechanical equipment, including air handling units, chilled water systems and hot water boiler systems, and room level terminal units, shall be provided by the BAS contractor as indicated in the point I/O schedule of this specification to optimize system performance, analysis and speed alarm recognition.
2. The operator interface shall allow users to access the various system schematics and floor plans via a graphical penetration scheme, menu selection, point alarm association, or text-based commands. Graphics software shall permit the importing of AutoCAD or scanned pictures for use in the system.
3. Dynamic temperature values, humidity values, flow values and status indication shall be shown in their actual respective locations within the system schematics or graphic floor plan displays, and shall automatically update to represent current conditions without operator intervention and without pre-defined screen refresh rates.
  - a. Provide the user the ability to display real-time point values by animated motion or custom picture control visual representation. Animation shall depict movement of mechanical equipment, or air or fluid flow. Picture Control shall depict various positions in relation to assigned point values or ranges. A library (set) of animation and picture control symbols shall be included within the workstation software's graphics application. Animation shall reflect, ON or OFF conditions, and shall also be optionally configurable for up to five rates of animation speed.
  - b. Sizable analog bars shall be available for monitor and control of analog values; high and low alarm limit settings shall be displayed on the analog scale. The user shall be able to "click and drag" the pointer to change the setpoint.
  - c. Provide the user the ability to display blocks of point data by defined point groups; alarm conditions shall be displayed by flashing point blocks.
  - d. Equipment state or values can be changed by clicking on the associated point block or graphic symbol and selecting the new state (on/off) or setpoint.
  - e. State text for digital points can be user-defined up to eight characters.
4. Colors shall be used to indicate status and change as the status of the equipment changes. The state colors shall be user definable.
5. The windowing environment of the PC operator workstation shall allow the user to simultaneously view several applications at a time to analyze total building operation or to allow the display of a graphic associated with an alarm to be viewed without interrupting work in progress.
6. Off the shelf graphic software, Microgafx Designer or Corel Draw software, shall be provided to allow the user to add, modify or delete system graphic background displays.
7. A clipart library of HVAC application and automation symbols shall be provided including fans, valves, motors, chillers, AHU systems, standard ductwork diagrams and laboratory symbols. The user shall have the ability to add custom symbols to the clipart library. The clipart library shall include a minimum of 400 application symbols. In addition, a library consisting of a minimum of 700 graphic background templates shall be provided.
8. The Graphics application shall include a set of standard Terminal Equipment controller application-specific background graphic templates. Templates shall provide the automatic display of a selected Terminal Equipment controller's

control values and parameters, without the need to create separate and individual graphic files for each controller.

## 2.11 FIELD DEVICES

A. Provide instrumentation as required for monitoring, control or optimization functions. All devices and equipment shall be approved for installation in the City of New Orleans, Louisiana.

B. Room Temperature Sensors

1. Digital room sensors shall have LCD display, day / night override button, and setpoint slide adjustment override options. The setpoint slide adjustment can be software limited by the automation system to limit the amount of room adjustment.

Temperature monitoring range	+20/120°F -13° to 49°C)
Output signal	Changing resistance
Accuracy at Calibration point	±0.5°F (+/- 0.3°C)
Set Point and Display Range	55° to 95° F (13° to 35°C)

2. Liquid immersion temperature:

Temperature monitoring range	+30/250°F (-1°/121°C)
Output signal	Changing resistance
Accuracy at Calibration point	±0.5°F (+/-0.3°C)

3. Duct (single point) temperature:

Temperature monitoring range	+20/120°F (-7°/49°C)
Output signal	Changing resistance
Accuracy at Calibration point	±0.5°F (+/-0.3°C)

4. Duct Average temperature:

Temperature monitoring range	+20°±120°F(-7°/+49°C)
Output signal	4 – 20 mA DC
Accuracy at Calibration point	±0.5°F (±0.3°C)
Sensor Probe Length	25' L (7.3m)

5. Outside air temperature:

Temperature monitoring range	-58°±122°F(-50°Cto+50°C)
Output signal	4 – 20 mA DC
Accuracy at Calibration point	±0.5°F (+/-0.3°C)

C. Liquid Differential Pressure Transmitter:

	Ranges 0-5/30 inches H2O
	0-25/150 inches H2O
	0-125/750 inches H2O
Output	4 – 20 mA DC
Calibration Adjustments	Zero and span
Accuracy	±0.2% of span
Linearity	±0.1% of span
Hysteresis	±0.05% of span

D. Differential pressure:

1. Unit for fluid flow proof shall be Penn P74.

Differential	Range 8 to 70 psi
Maximum differential pressure	3 psi
Maximum pressure	200 psi
	325 psi

2. Unit for air flow shall be Siemens Building Technologies SW141.

Set point ranges: 0.5" WG to 1.0" WG (124.4 to 248.8 Pa)  
1.0" WG to 12.0" WG (248.8 to 497.6 Pa)

E. Static pressure sensor:

Range

0 to .5" WG (0 to 124.4 Pa)  
0 to 1" WG (0 to 248.8 Pa)  
0 to 2" WG (0 to 497.7 Pa)  
0 to 5" WG (0 to 1.2 kPa)  
0 to 10" WG (0 to 2.5 kPa)

Output Signal

4 – 20 mA VDC

Combined static error

0.5% full range

Operating Temperature

-40° to 175° F (-40C to 79.5°C)

F. Air Pressure Sensor:

Range:

0 to 0.1 in. water (0 to 24.9 Pa)  
0 to 0.25 in. water (0 to 63.2 Pa)  
0 to 0.5 in. water (0 to 124.5 Pa)  
0 to 1.0 in. water (0 to 249 Pa)  
0 to 2.0 in water 90 to 498 Pa)  
0 to 5.0 in. water (0 to 1.25 kPa)  
0 to 10.0 in. water (0 to 2.49 kPa)

Output signal

4 to 20 mA

Accuracy

±1.0% of full scale

G. Humidity Sensors:

Range

0 to 100% RH

Sensing Element

Bulk Polymer

Output Signal

4 – 20 mA DC

Accuracy

At 77°F(25°C) ± 2% RH

H. Flow Meters

½" to 2.5" where 10 pipe diameters of straight, unobstructed pipe is available:

Onicon F-4600 series

1" to 40" where 3 pipe diameters upstream (tees & elbows – valves & expanders is 10 pipe diameters) and 2 pipe diameters downstream of straight, unobstructed pipe is available:

Onicon F 3000 series

1" to 14" where 1.5 diameters up and downstream of straight, unobstructed pipe is available (from the centre of the meter.):

Central Station Steam Co., Cadillac Meter – CMAG

I. Pressure to Current Transducer

Range

3 to 15 psig (21 to 103 kPa) or

Output signal

3 to 30 psig (21 to 207 kPa)  
4 – 20 Ma

Accuracy

± 1% of full scale (± 0.3 psig)

J. Control Valves (all control valves shall have electric actuators).

1. Electric Control

Rangeability

40:1

Flow Characteristics

Modified. Equal percentage

Control Action

Normal open or closed as selected

Medium

Steam, water, glycol

Body Type

Screwed ends 2" and smaller, flanged

Valves 2½" and larger

Body Material

Bronze

Body Trim

Bronze

Stem

Stainless Steel

Actuator

0-10 VDC, 4-20 MA or 2 position

24 VAC/120VAC

2. All automatic temperature control valves in water lines shall be provided with characterized throttling plugs and shall be sized for minimum 25% of the system pressure drop or 5 psi, whichever is less.
  - a. Positive positioning relays shall be provided on pneumatic control when required to provide sufficient power for sequencing.
  - b. Two position valves shall be line size.

K. Damper Actuators:

1. Electric control shall be Siemens Building Technologies OpenAir™ or Belimo direct coupled actuators or approved equal.
2. Damper actuators shall be Brushless DC Motor Technology with stall protection, bi-directional, fail safe spring return, all metal housing, manual override, independently adjustable dual auxiliary switch.
  - a. The actuator assembly shall include the necessary hardware and proper mounting and connection to a standard ½" diameter shaft or damper blade.
3. Actuators shall be designed for mounting directly to the damper shaft without the need for connecting linkages.
4. All actuators having more than 100 lb-in torque output shall have a self-centering damper shaft clamp that guarantees concentric alignment of the actuator's output coupling with the damper shaft. The self-centering clamp shall have a pair of opposed "v" shaped toothed cradles; each having two rows of teeth to maximize holding strength. A single clamping bolt shall simultaneously drive both cradles into contact with the damper shaft.
5. All actuators having more than a 100 lb-in torque output shall accept a 1" diameter shaft directly, without the need for auxiliary adapters.
6. All actuators shall be designed and manufactured using ISO9000 registered procedures, and shall be Listed under Standards UL873 and CSA22.2 No. 24-93



## 2.12 MISCELLANEOUS DEVICES

- A. Thermostats:
  - 1. Room thermostats shall be of the gradual acting type with adjustable sensitivity.
  - 2. They shall have a bi-metal sensing element capable of responding to a temperature change of one-tenth of one degree. (Provide all thermostats with limit stops to limit adjustments as required.)
  - 3. Thermostats shall be arranged for either horizontal or vertical mounting.
  - 4. In the vertical position thermostat shall fit on a mullion of movable partitions without overlap.
  - 5. Mount the thermostat covers with tamper-proof socket head screws.
- B. Freezestats:
  - 1. Install freezestats as indicated on the plans and provide protection for every square foot of coil surface area with one linear foot of element per square foot of coil.
    - a. Upon detection of low temperature, the freezestats shall stop the associated supply fans and return the automatic dampers to their normal position. Provide manual reset.
- C. Firestats:
  - 1. Provide manual reset, fixed temperature line voltage type with a bi-metal actuated switch.
    - a. Switch shall have adequate rating for required load.
- D. Current Sensing Relay:
  - 1. Provide solid-state, adjustable, current operated relay. Provide a relay which changes switch contact state in response to an adjustable set point value of current in the monitored A/C circuit.
  - 2. Adjust the relay switch point so that the relay responds to motor operation under load as an "on" state and so that the relay responds to an unloaded running motor as an "off" state. A motor with a broken belt is considered an unloaded motor.
  - 3. Provide for status device for all fans and pumps.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PROJECT MANAGEMENT

- A. Provide a designated project manager who will be responsible for the following:
  - 1. Construct and maintain project schedule
  - 2. On-site coordination with all applicable trades, subcontractors, and other integration vendors
  - 3. Authorized to accept and execute orders or instructions from owner/architect
  - 4. Attend project meetings as necessary to avoid conflicts and delays
  - 5. Make necessary field decisions relating to this scope of work
  - 6. Coordination/Single point of contact.

### 3.2 SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

- A. AHU:
  - 1. See design documents.
  - 2. Provide a time of day schedule for occupied/unoccupied mode.
- B. Fan Coil Unit(s):
  - 1. See design documents.
  - 2. Provide a time of day schedule for occupied/unoccupied mode.
- C. Chilled Water System – Manufactured Plant:

1. The chilled water system will be enabled when any AHU's are in the occupied mode and the outside air temperature is greater than 53 Degrees F (adjustable). When enabled, the following sequence shall occur:
2. The chilled water pumps will operate in a lead / lag / standby configuration based on runtime. When the chilled water system is enabled, the lead chilled water pump will be enabled. Should be lead pump fail to provide positive run status proof in 30 seconds (adjustable), the lag pump will be started and an alarm will be sent to the operator workstation. Once the lead pump provides positive status, the lag pump will be shut down. The standby pump shall operate only when both lead and lag pumps are being called for and either pump has failed to provide positive run status proof. The chilled water pump lead / lag / standby pump rotation will be alternated based on runtime to equalize runtime on all pumps.
3. The lag pump will be enabled when the lead chilled water pump cannot meet chilled water demand for an adjustable period of time.
4. Once the lead chilled water pump is enabled, the chiller isolation valve shall be opened. Once the isolation valve is opened, the lead chiller shall be enabled. In the event of lead chilled failure (as sensed by the alarm status point), the lag chiller isolation valve shall be opened and the chiller enabled. Once the alarm condition is cleared, the lag chiller will shut down and its isolation valve will close after a 5 minute time delay (adjustable).
5. The lag chiller will be enabled when the lead chiller cannot meet chilled water demand for an adjustable period of time.
6. On shutdown of the chilled water system, the chiller(s) operating will be disabled. The isolation valves for each chiller will be closed and chilled water pumps shut down after a 5 minute time delay (adjustable).
7. The chilled water pumps and chillers will have independent lead lag points to allow any chilled water pumps to operate with any chiller. All lead lag points will alternate based on runtime, with a setpoint of 200 hours (adjustable). Switching of equipment based upon runtime shall happen Monday through Thursday between 11:00 am and 2:00 pm.

D. Hot Water System:

1. The hot water system will be enabled 24/7.
2. The lead boiler and hot water pump will be enabled. Once enabled, the hot water valve will modulate to maintain common leaving water temperature based on the following reset schedule:

Outside Air temperature Temperature	Building Supply Hot Water Temperature
65 Deg F	120 Deg F
20 Deg F	180 Deg F

(reset schedule shall be user adjustable)

3. The hot water pumps and boilers will operate in a lead / lag configuration based on runtime. When the hot water system is enabled, the lead hot water pump and boiler will be enabled. Should be lead pump fail to provide positive run status proof in 30 seconds (adjustable), the lag pump will be started and an alarm will be sent to the operator workstation. To be similar for boiler enable. The hot water pump and boiler lead / lag rotation will be alternated based on runtime. Heating water pumps and boilers to have independent lead lag points to allow any heating water pump to operate with any boiler.
4. The lag pump and boiler will be enabled when the lead hot water pump and boiler cannot meet hot water demand for a period of 30 minutes (adjustable). Once the lag system is called for, it shall remain enabled for the remainder of the day to prevent excessive lag cycling.

### **3.3 START-UP AND COMMISSIONING**

- A. When installation of the system is complete, calibrate equipment and verify transmission media operation before the system is placed on-line. All testing, calibrating, adjusting and final field tests shall be completed by the manufacturer. Verify that all systems are operable from local controls in the specified failure mode upon panel failure or loss of power.
- B. Provide any recommendation for system modification in writing to owner. Do not make any system modification, including operating parameters and control settings, without prior approval of owner.
- C. After manufacturer has completed system start-up and commissioning. Joint commissioning of integrated system segments shall be completed.

### **3.4 ELECTRICAL WIRING AND MATERIALS**

- A. Install, connect and wire the items included under this Section. This work includes providing required conduit, wire, fittings, and related wiring accessories. All wiring shall be installed in conduit.
- B. Provide wiring between thermostats, aquastats and unit heater motors, all control and alarm wiring for all control and alarm devices for all Sections of Specifications.
- C. Provide status function conduit and wiring for equipment covered under this Section.
- D. Provide conduit and wiring between the B.M.S. panels and the temperature, humidity, or pressure sensing elements, including low voltage control wiring in conduit.
- E. Provide conduit and control wiring for devices specified in this Section.
- F. Provide conduit and signal wiring between motor starters in motor control centers and high and/or low temperature relay contacts and remote relays in B.M.S. panels located in the vicinity of motor control centers.
- G. Provide conduit and wiring between the PC workstation, electrical panels, metering instrumentation, indicating devices, miscellaneous alarm points, remotely operated contractors, and B.M.S. panels, as shown on the drawings or as specified.
- H. All wiring to be compliant to local building code and the NEC.
- I. Provide electrical wall box and conduit sleeve for all wall mounted devices.

### **3.5 PERFORMANCE**

- A. Unless stated otherwise, control temperatures within plus or minus 2°F humidity within plus or minus 3% of the set point and static pressure within 10% of set point.

### **3.6 COMMISSIONING, TESTING AND ACCEPTANCE**

- A. Perform a three-phase commissioning procedure consisting of field I/O calibration and commissioning, system commissioning and integrated system program commissioning. Document all commissioning information on commissioning data sheets which shall be submitted prior to acceptance testing. Commissioning work which requires shutdown of system or deviation from normal function shall be performed when the operation of the system is not required. The commissioning must be coordinated with the owner and construction manager to ensure systems are available when needed. Notify the operating personal in writing of the testing schedule so that authorized personnel from the owner and construction manager are present throughout the commissioning procedure.
  - 1. Prior to system program commissioning, verify that each control panel has been installed according to plans, specifications and approved shop drawings. Test, calibrate and bring on line each control sensor and device. Commissioning to include, but not be limited to:
    - a. Sensor accuracy at 10, 50 and 90% of range.
    - b. Sensor range.
    - c. Verify analog limit and binary alarm reporting.

- d. Point value reporting.
  - e. Binary alarm and switch settings.
  - f. Actuator ranges.
  - g. Fail safe operation on loss of control signal, electric power, network communications.
- B. After control devices have been commissioned (i.e. calibrated, tested and signed off), each BMS program shall be put on line and commissioned. The contractor shall, in the presence of the owner and construction manager, demonstrate each programmed sequence of operation and compare the results in writing. In addition, each control loop shall be tested to verify proper response and stable control, within specified accuracy's. System program test results shall be recorded on commissioning data sheets and submitted for record. Any discrepancies between the specification and the actual performance will be immediately rectified and retested.
- C. After all BMS programs have been commissioned, the contractor shall verify the overall system performance as specified. Tests shall include, but not be limited to:
- 1. Data communication, both normal and failure modes.
  - 2. Fully loaded system response time.
  - 3. Impact of component failures on system performance and system operation.
  - 4. Time/Date changes.
  - 5. End of month/ end of year operation.
  - 6. Season changeover.
  - 7. Global application programs and point sharing.
  - 8. System backup and reloading.
  - 9. System status displays.
  - 10. Diagnostic functions.
  - 11. Power failure routines.
  - 12. Battery backup.
  - 13. Smoke Control, stair pressurization, stair, vents, in concert with Fire Alarm System testing.
  - 14. Testing of all electrical and HVAC systems with other division of work.
- D. Submit for approval, a detailed acceptance test procedure designed to demonstrate compliance with contractual requirements. This Acceptance test procedure will take place after the commissioning procedure but before final acceptance, to verify that sensors and control devices maintain specified accuracy's and the system performance does not degrade over time.
- E. Using the commissioning test data sheets, the contractor shall demonstrate each point. The contractor shall also demonstrate all system functions. The contractor shall demonstrate all points and system functions until all devices and functions meet specification.
- F. The contractor shall supply all instruments for testing and turn over same to the owner after acceptance testing.
- 1. All test instruments shall be submitted for approval.
  - 2. Test Instrument Accuracy:
  - 3. Temperature: 1/4F or 1/2% full scale, whichever is less.
  - 4. Pressure: High Pressure (psi): 1/2 psi or 1/2% full scale, whichever is less.
  - 5. Low Pressure (in w.c.): 1/2% of full scale
  - 6. Humidity: 2% RH
  - 7. Electrical: 1/4% full scale
- G. After the above tests are complete and the system is demonstrated to be functioning as specified, a thirty day performance test period shall begin. If the system performs as specified throughout the test period, requiring only routine maintenance, the system shall be accepted. If the system fails during the test, and cannot be fully corrected within eight hours, the owner may request that performance tests be repeated.

### **3.7 TRAINING**

- A. The manufacturer shall provide factory trained instructor to give full instruction to designated personnel in the operation of the system installed. Instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with all aspects of the subject matter they are to teach. The manufacturer shall provide all students with a student binder containing product specific training modules for the system installed. All training shall be held during normal working hours of 8:00 am to 4:30 PM weekdays.
- B. Provide 16 hours of training for Owner's designated operating personnel. Training shall include:
  - 1. Explanation of drawings, operations and maintenance manuals
  - 2. Walk-through of the job to locate control components
  - 3. Operator workstation and peripherals
  - 4. DDC controller and ASC operation/function
  - 5. Operator control functions including graphic generation and field panel programming
  - 6. Operation of portable operator's terminal
  - 7. Explanation of adjustment, calibration and replacement procedures
  - 8. Student binder with training modules
- C. Since the Owner may require personnel to have more comprehensive understanding of the hardware and software, additional training must be available from the Manufacturer. If such training is required by the Owner, it will be contracted at a later date.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 23 09 93

### SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 WORK DESCRIPTION

- A. This Section includes control sequences for HVAC systems, subsystems, and equipment as well as trending and alarming requirements.

##### 1.3 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

- A. Division 23 Section "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls" for control equipment and devices and submittal requirements.

##### 1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. DDC: Direct-digital controls.
- B. VAV: Variable Air Volume
- C. CV: Constant Volume
- D. BAS: Building Automation System
- E. AI: Analog Input
- F. AO: Analog Output
- G. DI: Digital Input
- H. DO: Digital Output
- I. I/O: Input/Output
- J. PID: Proportional-Integral-Derivative

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. Control Parameters:
  - 1. All setpoints and control parameters shall be adjustable both from the desktop workstation and portable workstation primary operator interface software, without any required re-programming of software code. Room temperature setpoint offset (i.e. warmer/cooler) shall be additionally adjustable at the room sensor. Provide graphical remote lockout of each room sensor setpoint adjustment dial.

2. All control loops shall utilize PID control algorithms unless otherwise specified in the sequence of operation.
- B. Interface to Packaged Systems:
1. The intent of all specified interface to packaged controls is that the interface be provided by this section, even if specific terminations for remote inputs or outputs are not provided by the packaged equipment controls. This shall be provided by adding interposing relays, paralleling analog signals or biasing setpoints. The specific means of interface shall be coordinated between the BAS contractor and the packaged equipment vendor. If specific terminations for remote monitoring or control are provided, these shall be utilized.
  2. It is not the intent for this section to provide major components for the packaged controls that do not exist (other than the interface methods listed above). However, the BAS hardware, software, conduit and wire shall be installed for future connection to the interface. For example, if setpoint reset card for a boiler has not been provided with the boiler package, it is not the intent for this section to provide such card.
- C. Alarms:
1. All specified I/O critical and maintenance device alarms shall be stored on-site. Provide alarm messages tailored for the alarm by building, system type and device type (i.e. "Building 1, AH-1 High Discharge Air Temperature").
  2. All system alarms shall be interlocked to only alarm when the associated system is enabled. For example, do not alarm the boiler water supply temperature when the boiler water system is off or do not alarm discharge air temperature when the air handling system is off. Alarms based on room temperature shall always be annunciated.
- D. Trending:
1. Generate simultaneous on-site trending of the following:
    - a. All analog input and output values.
    - b. All digital input and output values.
    - c. All setpoints.
  2. Group the trend values in a logical way.
    - a. Group control loops values together. An example would be an AH discharge air temperature with the analog temperature input, output(s) to the controlled device(s) and PID control loop setpoint on the same trend.
    - b. Group value for "systems" together. An example would be heating water which would have heating water supply, heating water return, heating water supply setpoint and outside air temperature together.
    - c. Group zone temperatures, setpoints and zone dampers together.
  3. Each analog trend shall be trended at 15 minute intervals with a minimum of 288 samples (3 days).
  4. Each digital trend shall be trended based on a change of state.
  5. All trends shall be uploadable to a remote computer.



- E. Safeties:
  - 1. All HVAC safeties shall be hardwired such that the shutdown will occur both in Automatic and Hand modes at the BAS system and the starter.
  - 2. Software safeties are not acceptable.
    - a. Exception: All automatic reset type freeze protection thermostats shall have a separate DDC input and shall shutdown and lockout the system as specified. Provide a freeze alarm reset button on the BAS workstation.
- F. Normal (Fail) positions for dampers and valves are as follows:
  - 1. Outside air damper: Closed (NC)
  - 2. Exhaust air damper: Closed (NC)
  - 3. Return air damper: Open (NO)

### **3.2 SEQUENCES OF OPERATION**

- A. This section provides the sequences of operation for each HVAC system. The organization of the sequences for each system are:
  - 1. Design Intent:
    - a. This contains a brief outline of the purpose and the design engineer's expectations for the system.
  - 2. Sequences:
    - a. The sequences are generally divided into smaller sequences for each component of the larger HVAC "System".
    - b. The concept is that each of these smaller sequences operates essentially independently, although together they integrate into the larger "System".
- B. The number of field devices controlled shall be determined by the sizes of equipment scheduled on the mechanical drawings and the type of components selected by the Building Automation System Contractor. An example is damper actuators, the points lists will identify a single analog output point, the P&ID's may schematically show one or two actuators, but the size of the unit and the actuators dictates that multiple actuators are required.

### **3.3 VAV AHU CONTROL**

#### **3.7 VARIABLE AIR VOLUME TERMINAL UNIT**

- A. In cooling mode: Refer to drawing.
- B. In heating mode (Refer to drawing):

#### **3.8 MISCELLANEOUS MONITORING**

- A. Systems that will be monitored:
  - 1. Electrical Power.
    - a. Monitor each building power (demand and consumption)
    - b. Monitor the associated electrical loads (demand and consumption) for lighting, mechanical, receptacle and house for each building.

2. Fire protection riser room space temperature.
3. Space 110 and 116 Warehouse space temperature.
4. Space 117,119 and 120 Fleet space temperature.
5. Space 100 Mobile Sub-Station space temperature.

### 3.9 **PLUMBING CONTROL**

- A. Monitor and control all domestic hot water circulating pumps.

### 3.10 **POINTS LIST**

- A. Points list: Submit complete point list of devices or elements to be controlled or sensed by DDC system. Include sufficient detail to enable Architect to determine that DDC system can perform control sequence or operations listed on this section. Point count must contain at least:
  1. List of every component to be sensed or controlled, keyed to terminology used in HVAC Control Drawings; that is Value V-1, AHU-1, etc.
  2. List of hardware associated with each point; that is, solenoids, contactors, transducers, etc.
  3. List of analog inputs to be sensed at each point; that is, temperature, relative humidity, etc.
  4. Alarms associated with each point.
  5. Control functions associated with each point; that is, start/stop, setpoint control, etc.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 23 21 13

### HYDRONIC PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes piping, special-duty valves, and hydronic specialties for hot-water heating, chilled-water cooling, and condenser water systems; makeup water for these systems; blowdown drain lines; and condensate drain piping.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of special-duty valve indicated. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for diverting fittings, calibrated balancing valves, and automatic flow-control valves.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, special pipe support assemblies, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and their attachment to the building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
- C. Grooved joint products shall be shown on drawings and product submittals and shall be specifically identified with the applicable Victaulic style or series number.
- D. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.
- E. Field Test Reports: Written reports of tests specified in Part 3 of this Section. Include the following:
  - 1. Test procedures used.
  - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Failed test results and corrective action taken to achieve requirements.
- F. Maintenance Data: For hydronic specialties and special-duty valves to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1.

- C. All grooved joint couplings, fittings, valves, and specialties shall be the products of a single manufacturer. Grooving tools shall be of the same manufacturer as the grooved components.
- D. All castings used for coupling housings, fittings, valve bodies, etc., shall be date stamped for quality assurance and traceability.

## **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of hydronic piping and suspension system components with other construction, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.
- B. Coordinate pipe sleeve installations for foundation wall penetrations.
- C. Coordinate piping installation with roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. Roof specialties are specified in Division 7 Sections.
- D. Coordinate pipe fitting pressure classes with products specified in related Sections.
- E. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into base. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3 Sections.
- F. Coordinate installation of pipe sleeves for penetrations through exterior walls and floor assemblies. Coordinate with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for fire and smoke wall and floor assemblies.

## **1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Water Treatment Chemicals: Furnish sufficient chemicals for initial system startup and for preventive maintenance for one year from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
    - a. Victaulic Company of America.
  - 2. Calibrated Balancing Valves:
    - a. Victaulic Company / IMI TA.
    - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.

- c. Griswold Controls.
  - d. ITT Bell & Gossett; ITT Fluid Technology Corp.
  - e. Hayes
3. Pressure-Reducing Valves:
- a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - b. ITT Bell & Gossett; ITT Fluid Technology Corp.
  - c. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
  - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Watts Regulators.
4. Safety Valves:
- a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. ITT McDonnell & Miller Div.; ITT Fluid Technology Corp.
  - d. Kunkle Valve Division.
  - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
5. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:
- a. Victaulic Company.
  - b. Flow Design, Inc.
  - c. Griswold Controls.
  - d. Hayes
6. Expansion Tanks:
- a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - b. ITT Bell & Gossett; ITT Fluid Technology Corp.
  - c. Wessels
7. Air Separators and Air Purgers:
- a. Spirotherm
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.

c. Wessels

**2.2 PIPING MATERIALS**

- A. General: Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe and fitting materials.

**2.3 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B).
- B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A).
- C. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.
- D. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- E. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- F. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, 95-5 tin antimony.
- G. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, Classification BAg-1 (silver).
- H. Bronze Fittings for Grooved-End, Copper Tubing: ASME B16.22 wrought copper and ASTM B 75 copper tube or ASME B16.18 and ASTM B 584 bronze castings. Manufactured to copper-tube dimensions. (Flaring the adjoining pipe or fitting ends to accommodate alternate sized couplings is not permitted.)
- I. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Couplings: Ductile-iron housings and Grade EHP synthetic rubber gasket of pressure-responsive design and suitable for water temperatures to +250 degrees F; with ASTM A449 electroplated steel nuts. Installation-Ready, for direct stab installation without field disassembly. Victaulic Style 607H.

**2.4 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Steel Pipe, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASTM A 53, Type S (seamless) or Type F (furnace-butt welded), Grade A, Schedule 40, black steel, plain ends.
- B. Steel Pipe, NPS 2-1/2 through NPS 12 (DN 65 through DN 300): ASTM A 53, Type E (electric-resistance welded), Grade A, Schedule 40, black steel, plain ends.
- C. Steel Pipe, NPS 14 through NPS 18 (DN 350 through DN 450): ASTM A 53, Type E (electric-resistance welded) or Type S (seamless), Grade B, Schedule 30, black steel, plain ends.
- D. Steel Pipe, NPS 20 (DN 500): ASTM A 53, Type E (electric-resistance welded) or Type S (seamless), Grade B, Schedule 20, black steel, plain ends.
  - 1. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53, Schedule 40, black steel; seamless for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller and electric-resistance welded for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- E. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250.

- F. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300.
- G. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300.
- H. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced.
- I. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- J. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
  - 1. Material Group: 1.1.
  - 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
  - 3. Facings: Raised face.
- K. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 53, Type F, E, or S, Grade B factory-fabricated steel; or ASTM A 234, Grade WPB steel fittings with grooves or shoulders designed to accept grooved end couplings.
- L. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Couplings: Two ductile iron housings and synthetic rubber gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with ASTM A449 electroplated steel nuts and bolts to secure grooved pipe and fittings. ASTM F-1476 - Standard Specification for Performance of Gasketed Mechanical Couplings for Use in Piping Applications.
  - 1. Rigid: Coupling housings with offsetting, angle-pattern bolt pads shall be used to provide system rigidity and support and hanging in accordance with ANSI B31.1 and B31.9. With grade EHP gasket, suitable for water temperatures to +250 degrees F. Installation-Ready, for direct stab installation without field disassembly. Basis of Design: Victaulic Style 107N.
  - 2. Flexible: Use in locations where vibration attenuation and stress relief are required. Flexible couplings may be used in lieu of flexible connectors at equipment connections. Three couplings, for each connector, shall be placed in close proximity to the vibration source. Basis of Design: Victaulic Style 177 Installation-Ready, and Style 77.
  - 3. AGS series two-segment couplings with lead-in chamfer on housing key and wide-width FlushSeal gasket. Basis of Design: Victaulic Style W07 (rigid) and Style W77 (flexible).
- M. Flexible Connectors: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket; 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working pressure and 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature. Connectors shall have flanged or threaded-end connections to match equipment connected and shall be capable of 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
- N. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors: Fiber-reinforced rubber body with steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges; operating temperatures up to 250 deg F (121 deg C) and pressures up to 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- O. Three flexible type grooved joint couplings may be used in lieu of flexible connectors at equipment connections in applicable piping systems. The couplings shall be placed in

close proximity to the vibration source. Basis of Design: Victaulic Company.

- P. Packed, Slip, Expansion Joints: 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working pressure, steel pipe fitting consisting of telescoping body and slip-pipe sections, packing ring, packing, limit rods, flanged ends, and chrome-plated finish on slip- pipe telescoping section.
- Q. Packless, gasketed, type with grooved end telescoping body, suitable for axial end movement to 3". 350 psi (2410 kPa). Victaulic Style 150 Mover®.
- R. Welding Materials: Comply with Section II, Part C, of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and for chemical analysis of pipe being welded.
- S. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled; and design temperatures and pressures.

## **2.5 STAINLESS STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Stainless Steel Pipe: ASTM A312, Schedule 10S, Type 304/304L stainless steel with plain ends.
- B. Fittings: Precision, cold drawn, austenitic stainless steel with elastomer O-ring seals, suitable for working pressure to 500-psig (3450-kPa).
- C. Basis of Design: Victaulic Vic-Press for Schedule 10S Pipe.

## **2.6 VALVES**

- A. Gate, globe, check, ball, and butterfly valves are specified in Division 23 Section "Valves."
- B. Refer to Part 3 "Valve Applications" Article for applications of each valve.
- C. Calibrated Balancing Valves, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: DZR Brass (Ametal®) globe type or bronze body, ball type, 250-psig (1725-kPa) working pressure, 230 deg F (110 deg C) maximum operating temperature, and having threaded ends. Multiple-turn handwheel for precise balancing. Valves shall have calibrated orifice or venture, connections for portable differential pressure meter with integral seals, and be equipped with a memory stop to retain set position.
  - 1. Victaulic Koil-Kits Series 799, 79V, 79A, and 79B may be used at coil connections. The kit shall include a Series 786/787/78K circuit balancing valve, Series 78Y Strainer-Ball or Series 78T Union-Ball valve combination, Series 78U Union-Port fitting, and required coil hoses. A Style 793 and/or 794 differential pressure controller shall be provided as required. A meter shall be provided by the valve manufacturer that shall remain with the building owner after commissioning.
- D. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Diaphragm-operated, bronze or brass body with low inlet pressure check valve, inlet strainer removable without system shutdown, and noncorrosive valve seat and stem. Select valve size, capacity, and operating pressure to suit system. Valve shall be factory set at operating pressure and have capability for field adjustment.
- E. Safety Valves: Diaphragm-operated, bronze or brass body with brass and rubber, wetted, internal working parts; shall suit system pressure and heat capacity and shall comply with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IV.



- F. Automatic Flow-Control Valves: Gray-iron body, factory set to maintain constant flow with plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations, and equipped with a readout kit including flow meter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case. Each valve shall have an identification tag attached by chain, and be factory marked with the zone identification, valve number, and flow rate. Valve shall be line size and one of the following designs:
  - 1. Gray-iron or brass body, designed for 175 psig (1206 kPa) at 200 deg F (93 deg C) with stainless-steel piston and spring.
  - 2. DZR brass or ferrous-metal body, designed for 300 psig (2068 kPa) at 250 deg F (121 deg C) with corrosion-resistant, tamperproof, self-cleaning, piston-spring assembly easily removable for inspection or replacement.
  - 3. Combination assemblies, including bronze ball valve and brass alloy control valve, with stainless-steel piston and spring, fitted with pressure and temperature test valves, and designed for 300 psig (2067 kPa) at 250 deg F (121 deg C).
- G. Plastic Ball Valves: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure, 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature, full port design, 1- or 2-piece body design, CPVC body and ball, polytetrafluoroethylene seats, EPDM seals, and tee handle; with threaded, socket, union, or flanged connections.
- H. Plastic Butterfly Valves: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure, 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature, PVC wafer body, polytetrafluoroethylene seats, lever lock handle, and wafer style for installation between flanges.

## 2.7 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES

- A. Manual Air Vent: Bronze body and nonferrous internal parts; 150-psig (1035- kPa) working pressure; 225 deg F (107 deg C) operating temperature; manually operated with screwdriver or thumbscrew; with NPS 1/8 (DN 6) discharge connection and NPS 1/2 (DN 15) inlet connection.
- B. Automatic Air Vent: Designed to vent automatically with float principle; bronze body and nonferrous internal parts; 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure; 240 deg F (116 deg C) operating temperature; with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) discharge connection and NPS 1/2 (DN 15) inlet connection.
- C. Expansion Tanks: Welded carbon steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature, with taps in bottom of tank for tank fitting and taps in end of tank for gage glass. Tanks shall be factory tested with taps fabricated and labeled according to the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1. Include the following fittings and accessories:
  - 1. Air-Control Tank Fitting: Cast-iron body, copper-plated tube, brass vent tube plug, and stainless-steel ball check, 100-gal. (379-L) unit only; sized for compression-tank diameter. Design tank fittings for 125-psig (860- kPa) working pressure and 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature.
  - 2. Tank Drain Fitting: Brass body, nonferrous internal parts; 125-psig (860- kPa) working pressure and 240 deg F (116 deg C) maximum operating temperature; designed to admit air to compression tank, drain water, and close off system.

3. Gage Glass: Full height with dual manual shutoff valves, 3/4-inch- (20- mm-) diameter gage glass, and slotted-metal glass guard.
- D. Expansion Tanks: Welded carbon steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature. Separate air charge from system water to maintain design expansion capacity by a flexible bladder securely sealed into tank. Include drain fitting and taps for pressure gage and air-charging fitting. Support vertical tanks with steel legs or base; support horizontal tanks with steel saddles. Factory fabricate and test tank with taps and supports installed and labeled according to the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1.
  - E. Combination dirt Air Separators: Welded black steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 150-psig (860-kPa) minimum working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature; Copper spined or perforated stainless steel full length coalescing media.
  - F. Bypass Chemical Feeder: Welded steel construction; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure; 5-gal. (19-L) capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.
    1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.
  - G. Diverting Fittings: 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure; 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature; cast-iron body with threaded ends, or wrought copper with soldered ends. Indicate flow direction on fitting.
  - H. Y-Pattern Strainers: 300-psig (2065-kPa) working pressure; ductile-iron body (ASTM A 536, grade 65-45-12) or cast-iron body (ASTM A 126, Class B), grooved or flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, threaded connections for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, bolted cover, perforated stainless-steel basket, and bottom drain connection. Basis of Design: Victaulic Style 732 / W732.
  - I. Basket Strainers: 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure; high-tensile cast-iron body (ASTM A 126, Class B), flanged-end connections, bolted cover, perforated stainless-steel basket, and bottom drain connection.
  - J. T-Pattern Strainers: 300-psig (2065-kPa) working pressure; ductile-iron or factory-fabricated steel body, grooved-end connections, stainless-steel basket with 2:1 total free area; removable access coupling and end cap or T-bolt hinged closure for strainer maintenance. Basis of Design: Victaulic Style 730 / W730.
  - K. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors: Fiber-reinforced rubber body with steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges; operating temperatures up to 250 deg F (121 deg C) and pressures up to 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - L. Packed, Slip, Expansion Joints: 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working pressure, steel pipe fitting consisting of telescoping body and slip-pipe sections, packing ring, packing, limit rods, flanged ends, and chrome-plated finish on slip- pipe telescoping section.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS**

- A. Hot and Chilled Water, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Aboveground, use Type L (Type B) drawn-temper copper tubing with soldered joints, Schedule 40 steel pipe with threaded joints, or Schedule 10S stainless steel pipe with Vic-Press joints. Belowground or within slabs, use Type K (Type A) annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints belowground and within floor slabs.
- B. Hot and Chilled Water: Aboveground, use Type L (Type B) drawn-temper copper tubing with soldered joints. Belowground or within slabs, use Type K (Type A) annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints belowground and within slabs.
- C. Hot and Chilled Water, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Schedule 40 steel pipe with grooved, welded, and flanged joints.
- D. Condenser Water, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Aboveground, use Type L (Type B) drawn-temper copper tubing with soldered joints or Schedule 40 steel pipe with threaded joints. Belowground or within slabs, use Type K (Type A) annealed-temper copper tubing with brazed joints.
- E. Condenser Water: Schedule 40 steel pipe with grooved, welded and flanged joints.
- F. Condensate Drain Lines: Type L (Type B) drawn-temper copper tubing with soldered joints or Schedule 40, PVC pipe with solvent-welded joints.

### **3.2 VALVE APPLICATIONS**

- A. General-Duty Valve Applications: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following valve types:
  - 1. Shutoff Duty: Gate, ball, and butterfly valves.
  - 2. Throttling Duty: Globe, ball, and butterfly valves.
- B. Install shutoff duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains, at supply connection to each piece of equipment, unless only one piece of equipment is connected in the branch line. Install throttling duty valves at each branch connection to return mains, at return connections to each piece of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- C. Install calibrated balancing valves in the return water line of each heating or cooling element and elsewhere as required to facilitate system balancing.
- D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- E. Install safety valves on hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install safety-valve discharge piping, without valves, to floor. Comply with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

### **3.3 PIPING INSTALLATIONS**

- A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Basic HVAC Materials and Methods" for basic piping installation requirements.

- B. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- C. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 (DN 20) ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- D. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- E. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the takeoff coming out the bottom of the main pipe. For up- feed risers, install the takeoff coming out the top of the main pipe.
- G. Install strainers on supply side of each control valve, pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, in-line pump, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 (DN 20) nipple and ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2 (DN 50).
- H. Anchor piping for proper direction of expansion and contraction.

### **3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports." Comply with requirements below for maximum spacing of supports.
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
  - 2. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 3. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 4. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- C. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - 2. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 4. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 5. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).

6. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  7. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 14 feet (4.3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  8. NPS 6 (DN 150): Maximum span, 17 feet (5.2 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  9. NPS 8 (DN 200): Maximum span, 19 feet (5.8 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (16 mm).
  10. NPS 10 (DN 250): Maximum span, 20 feet (6.1 m); minimum rod size, 3/4 inch (19 mm).
  11. NPS 12 (DN 300): Maximum span, 23 feet (7 m); minimum rod size, 7/8 inch (22 mm).
  12. NPS 14 (DN 350): Maximum span, 25 feet (7.6 m); minimum rod size, 1 inch (25 mm).
  13. NPS 16 (DN 400): Maximum span, 27 feet (8.2 m); minimum rod size, 1 inch (25 mm).
  14. NPS 18 (DN 450): Maximum span, 28 feet (8.5 m); minimum rod size, 1- 1/4 inches (32 mm).
  15. NPS 20 (DN 500): Maximum span, 30 feet (9.1 m); minimum rod size, 1- 1/4 inches (32 mm).
- D. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 5 feet (1.5 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  2. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 6 feet (1.8 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  3. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  4. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  5. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  6. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- E. Plastic Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
- F. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot (3-m) intervals between floors.

### **3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Basic HVAC Materials and Methods" for joint construction requirements for soldered and brazed joints in copper tubing; threaded, welded, and flanged joints in steel piping.
  
- B. Grooved Joints: Install in accordance with the manufacturer's latest published installation instructions. Pipe ends shall be clean and free from indentations, projections and roll marks in the area from pipe end to (and including) groove. Gasket shall be manufactured by the coupling manufacturer and verified as suitable for the intended service. A factory trained representative (direct employee) of the coupling manufacturer shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the use of grooving tools, application of groove, and product installation. The representative shall periodically visit the job site and review installation to ensure best practices in grooved joint installation are being followed. Contractor shall remove and replace any improperly installed products.

### **3.6 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION**

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install automatic air vents in mechanical equipment rooms only at high points of system piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- C. Install dip-tube fittings in boiler outlet. Install piping to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank. Connect boiler-outlet piping.
- D. Install combination air separator and strainer in pump suction lines. Install piping to compression tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank. Install blowdown piping with gate valve; extend to nearest drain.
- E. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated, in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) above floor. Install feeder in bypass line, off main, using globe valves on each side of feeder and in the main between bypass connections. Pipe drain, with ball valve, to nearest equipment drain.
- F. Install expansion tanks on floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure tank is properly charged with air to suit system design requirements.

### **3.7 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS**

- A. Size for supply and return piping connections shall be same as for equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If multiple, parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- D. Install ports for pressure and temperature gages at coil inlet connections.

### **3.8 CHEMICAL TREATMENT**

- A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine the type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling.
- B. Fill system and perform initial chemical treatment.

### **3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
  - 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
  - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
  - 3. Flush system with clean water. Clean strainers.
  - 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
  - 5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
  - 1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
  - 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release trapped air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of liquid.
  - 3. Check expansion tanks to determine that they are not air bound and that system is full of water.
  - 4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the design pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed either 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times "SE" value in Appendix A of ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
  - 5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
  - 6. Prepare written report of testing.

### **3.10 ADJUSTING**

- A. Mark calibrated nameplates of pump discharge valves after hydronic system balancing has been completed, to permanently indicate final balanced position.
- B. Perform these adjustments before operating the system:
  - 1. Open valves to fully open position. Close coil bypass valves.
  - 2. Check pump for proper direction of rotation.
  - 3. Set automatic fill valves for required system pressure.
  - 4. Check air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
  - 5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
  - 6. Check operation of automatic bypass valves.
  - 7. Check and set operating temperatures of boilers, chillers, and cooling towers to design requirements.
  - 8. Lubricate motors and bearings.

### **3.11 CLEANING**

- A. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water. Remove and clean or replace strainer screens. After cleaning and flushing hydronic piping systems, but before balancing, remove disposable fine-mesh strainers in pump suction diffusers.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 23 21 23

### HYDRONIC PUMPS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 WORK INCLUDED

- A. This Section includes the following categories of hydronic pumps for hydronic systems:
  - 1. Vertical In-line.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include certified performance curves and rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; final impeller dimensions; and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
- B. Submit construction details, pump base, seals and installation details.
- C. Submit motor data, type of winding and efficiencies.
- D. Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drawings indicate size, connections and requirements of pumps and are based on the specific types and models indicated.
- B. Maximum impeller size shall not exceed 85 percent of the maximum impeller diameter.
- C. Pumps shall be non-overloading over the full range of the pump curve for pumps without VFDs. Pumps with VFDs may not operate within less than 15% of an overload condition. Final operation approval of overload condition to be at discretion of the reviewing engineer of record.
- D. Each pump and motor shall have a metal engraved nameplate giving the manufacturer's name, serial number of pump, capacity in GPM and head in feet at design condition, horsepower, voltage, frequency, speed and full load current.
- E. All pumps shall operate without excessive noise or vibration.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Vertical In-Line:

- a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
- b. Bell & Gossett
- c. Taco

## **2.2 VERTICAL IN-LINE**

- A. Description: Vertical, in-line, centrifugal, single-stage, bronze-fitted, split case and closed coupled; rated for 150-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.
  - 1. Casing: Cast Iron
  - 2. Impeller: Bronze and dynamically balanced.
  - 3. Shaft: Stainless steel.
  - 4. Mechanical Seals: Stainless steel outside multi-spring balance seal with factory installed flush line. Flush line shall be provided with a 50 micron cartridge filter, to suit the operating differential pressure. Filters are to be changed, by the installing contractor, after system is flushed and on a monthly basis until turned over to owner.
  - 5. Pumps greater than 20 HP shall split coupled type with rigid spacer. Split coupled assembly shall allow for full access to flush line and ability to change seal the pump seal without removal of the pump motor.
- B. Suction Guide: Angle or straight pattern, 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body, pump-suction fitting; with stainless steel strainer with a free area of no less than 250% of pipe sectional area with a fine mesh disposable inner-strainer for startup cleaning. Suction guide shall provide flow stabilizing vanes.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 GENERAL**

- A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation.
  - 1. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.
  - 2. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.

### **3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION**

- A. Install pumps according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance, including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- C. Support pumps and piping separately so piping is not supported by pumps.

### **3.3 ALIGNMENT**

- A. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.

### **3.4 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are the same size as piping connected to pumps.
- D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
- E. Install check valve and throttling valve on discharge side of in-line circulators.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 23 23 00

### REFRIGERANT PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

##### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-407C:
  - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 230 psig.
  - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 380 psig.
  - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 380 psig.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
  - 1. Thermostatic expansion valves.
  - 2. Solenoid valves.
  - 3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
  - 4. Filter dryers.
  - 5. Strainers.
  - 6. Pressure-regulating valves.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
  - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot
  - 2. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.

- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

## **1.6 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

## **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K ASTM B 88M, Type A.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
  - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
  - 4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
  - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

### **2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; Type, Grade, and wall thickness as selected in Part 3 piping applications articles.
- B. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, for welded joints.

- C. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, steel, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets, bevel-welded end connection, and raised face.
- D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- E. Flanged Unions:
  - 1. Body: Forged-steel flanges for NPS 1 to NPS 1-1/2 and ductile iron for NPS 2 to NPS 3. Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
  - 2. Gasket: Fiber asbestos free.
  - 3. Fasteners: Four plated-steel bolts, with silicon bronze nuts. Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
  - 4. End Connections: Brass tailpiece adapters for solder-end connections to copper tubing.
  - 5. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch- long assembly.
  - 6. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 400 psig.
  - 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 330 deg F.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, stainless-steel-wire-reinforced protective jacket
  - 2. End Connections:
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: With threaded-end connections.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: With flanged-end connections.
  - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch- long assembly.
  - 4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
  - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

### **2.3 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES**

- A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
  - 1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
  - 2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
  - 3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
  - 4. Seat: Nylon.
  - 5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
  - 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- B. Packed-Angle Valves:
1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
  2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
  3. Operator: Rising stem.
  4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
  5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
  6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
  7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- C. Check Valves:
1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
  2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
  3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
  4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
  5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
  6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
  7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
  8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- D. Service Valves:
1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
  2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
  3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  4. End Connections: Copper spring.
  5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
- E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with ARI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
  2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
  3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.



4. End Connections: Threaded.
  5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
  6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
  7. Manual operator.
- F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
  2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  3. Seat Disc: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  4. End Connections: Threaded.
  5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
  6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with ARI 750.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
  2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
  4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
  5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
  6. Superheat: Adjustable.
  7. Reverse-flow option for heat-pump applications.
  8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
  9. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig (4820kPa).
- H. Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
  2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
  4. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
  5. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  6. Equalizer: Internal.
  7. End Connections: Socket.

8. Throttling Range: Maximum 5 psig.
  9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- I. Straight-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
  3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- J. Angle-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
  2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
  3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
  4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- K. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:
1. Body: Forged brass.
  2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
  3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
  4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
  5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- L. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.
1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
  2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
  3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
  4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).

5. End Connections: Socket.
  6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
  7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig (14 kPa).
  8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- M. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.
1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
  2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
  3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
  4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
  5. End Connections: Socket.
  6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
  7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
  8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- N. Mufflers:
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  2. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- O. Receivers: Comply with ARI 495.
1. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
  2. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
  3. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  4. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
  5. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
  6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

- P. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with ARI 495.
  - 1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  - 2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
  - 3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  - 4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

## **2.4 REFRIGERANTS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Atofina Chemicals, Inc.
  - 2. DuPont Company; Fluorochemicals Div.
  - 3. Honeywell, Inc.; Genetron Refrigerants.
  - 4. INEOS Fluor Americas LLC.
- C. ASHRAE 34, R-407C: Difluoromethane/Pentafluoroethane/1,1,1,2-Tetrafluoroethane.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-407C**

- A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- B. Suction Lines NPS 4 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- C. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.
- D. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.
- E. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: irresistible
  - 1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
  - 2. NPS 1 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
  - 4. NPS 4: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

### **3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS**

- A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- C. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- D. Install a full-sized, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- E. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
  - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
  - 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
  - 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- F. Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- G. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- H. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for device being protected:
  - 1. Solenoid valves.
  - 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
  - 3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
  - 4. Compressor.
- I. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.
- J. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
- K. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

### **3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Refer to Division 23 Sections "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and "Sequence of Operation" for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.
- K. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- L. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- N. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- O. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- P. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- Q. Before installation of steel refrigerant piping, clean pipe and fittings using the following procedures:
  - 1. Shot blast the interior of piping.
  - 2. Remove coarse particles of dirt and dust by drawing a clean, lintless cloth through tubing by means of a wire or electrician's tape.
  - 3. Draw a clean, lintless cloth saturated with trichloroethylene through the tube or pipe. Continue this procedure until cloth is not discolored by dirt.

4. Draw a clean, lintless cloth, saturated with compressor oil, squeezed dry, through the tube or pipe to remove remaining lint. Inspect tube or pipe visually for remaining dirt and lint.
  5. Finally, draw a clean, dry, lintless cloth through the tube or pipe.
  6. Safety-relief-valve discharge piping is not required to be cleaned but is required to be open to allow unrestricted flow.
- R. Install pipe sleeves at penetrations in exterior walls and floor assemblies.
  - S. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
  - T. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
  - U. Install sleeves through floors, walls, or ceilings, sized to permit installation of full-thickness insulation.
  - V. Seal pipe penetrations through exterior walls according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and methods.
  - W. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### **3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
  1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
  2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread steel pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
  2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Steel pipe can be threaded, but threaded joints must be seal brazed or seal welded.

- H. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M.
- I. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### **3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
- D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 2. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 3. NPS 3: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 4. NPS 4: Maximum span, 14 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
- E. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.



### **3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

### **3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING**

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
  - 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
  - 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
  - 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
  - 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

### **3.8 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
  - 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
  - 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
  - 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
  - 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.

5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 23 25 00

### HVAC WATER TREATMENT

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following HVAC water-treatment systems:
  - 1. Bypass chemical-feed equipment and controls.
  - 2. Biocide chemical-feed equipment and controls.
  - 3. Chemical treatment test equipment.
  - 4. HVAC water-treatment chemicals.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EEPROM: Electrically erasable, programmable read-only memory.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. TDS: Total dissolved solids.

##### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Water quality for HVAC systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of HVAC equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.
- B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, HVAC system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, chilled water shall have the following water qualities:
  - 1. PH: Maintain a value within 7.8 – 8.4.
  - 2. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
  - 3. Boron: Maintain a value within 100 to 200 ppm.
  - 4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
  - 1. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
  - 2. TDS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
  - 3. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.

4. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
5. Microbiological Limits:
  - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/ml.
  - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
  - c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
  - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.
  - e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for the following products:
  1. Bypass feeders.
  2. Water meters.
  3. Inhibitor injection timers.
  4. pH controllers.
  5. TDS controllers.
  6. Biocide feeder timers.
  7. Chemical solution tanks.
  8. Injection pumps.
  9. Chemical test equipment.
  10. Chemical material safety data sheets.
  11. Water softeners.
  12. Multimedia filters.
  13. Self-cleaning strainers.
  14. Bag- or cartridge-type filters.
  15. Centrifugal separators.
- B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical treatment equipment showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to HVAC systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  1. Wiring Diagrams: Power and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

- E. Other Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in the "Performance Requirements" Article above.
  - 2. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.
  - 3. Passivation Confirmation Report: Verify passivation of galvanized-steel surfaces, and confirm this observation in a letter to Architect.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Scope of Maintenance Service: Provide chemicals and service program to maintain water conditions required above to inhibit corrosion, scale formation, and biological growth for cooling, chilled-water piping heating, hot-water piping, condenser-water piping and equipment. Services and chemicals shall be provided for a period of one year from date of Substantial Completion, and shall include the following:
  - 1. Initial water analysis and HVAC water-treatment recommendations.
  - 2. Startup assistance for Contractor to flush the systems, clean with detergents, and initially fill systems with required chemical treatment prior to operation.
  - 3. Periodic field service and consultation.
  - 4. Customer report charts and log sheets.
  - 5. Laboratory technical analysis.
  - 6. Analyses and reports of all chemical items concerning safety and compliance **with government regulations.**

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ecolab Water Care Services.

## 2.2 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Bypass Feeders: Steel, with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.
1. Capacity: 6 Gallon.
  2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.

## 2.3 AUTOMATIC CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Water Meter:
1. AWWA C700, oscillating-piston, magnetic-drive.
  2. Body: Bronze.
  3. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
  4. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
  5. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
  6. End Connections: Threaded.
  7. Controls: Flow-control switch with normally open contacts; rated for maximum 10 A, 250-V ac; and that will close at adjustable increments of total flow.
- B. Water Meter:
1. AWWA C701, turbine-type, totalization meter.
  2. Body: Bronze.
  3. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 100 psig.
  4. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
  5. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
  6. End Connections: Threaded.
  7. Control: Low-voltage signal capable of transmitting 1000 feet.
- C. Water Meter:
1. AWWA C701, turbine-type, totalization meter.
  2. Body: Bronze.
  3. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
  4. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
  5. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
  6. End Connections: Flanged.

7. Controls: Flow-control switch with normally open contacts; rated for maximum 10 A, 250-V ac; and that will close at adjustable increments of total flow.

D. Inhibitor Injection Timers:

1. Microprocessor-based controller with LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
2. Programmable timers with infinite adjustment over full range, and mounted in cabinet with hand-off-auto switches and status lights.
3. Test switch.
4. Hand-off-auto switch for chemical pump.
5. Illuminated legend to indicate feed when pump is activated.
6. Programmable lockout timer with indicator light. Lockout timer to deactivate the pump and activate alarm circuits.
7. LCD makeup totalizer to measure amount of makeup and bleed-off water from two water meter inputs.

E. pH Controller:

1. Microprocessor-based controller, 1 percent accuracy in a range from zero to 14 units. Incorporate solid-state integrated circuits and digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
2. Digital display and touch pad for input.
3. Sensor probe adaptable to sample stream manifold.
4. High, low, and normal pH indication.
5. High or low pH alarm light, trip points field adjustable; with silence switch.
6. Hand-off-auto switch for acid pump.
7. Internal adjustable hysteresis or deadband.

F. TDS Controller:

1. Microprocessor-based controller, 1 percent accuracy in a range from zero to 5000 micromhos. Incorporate solid-state integrated circuits and digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
2. Digital display and touch pad for input.
3. Sensor probe adaptable to sample stream manifold.
4. High, low, and normal conductance indication.

5. High or low conductance alarm light, trip points field adjustable; with silence switch.
  6. Hand-off-auto switch for solenoid bleed-off valve.
  7. Bleed-off valve activated indication.
  8. Internal adjustable hysteresis or deadband.
  9. Bleed Valves:
    - a. Cooling Systems: Forged-brass body, globe pattern, general-purpose solenoid with continuous-duty coil, or motorized valve.
    - b. Steam Boilers: Motorized ball valve, steel body, and TFE seats and seals.
- G. Biocide Feeder Timer:
1. Microprocessor-based controller with digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
  2. 24-hour timer with 14-day skip feature to permit activation any hour of day.
  3. Precision, solid-state, bleed-off lockout timer and clock-controlled biocide pump timer. Prebleed and bleed lockout timers.
  4. Solid-state alternator to enable use of two different formulations.
  5. 24-hour display of time of day.
  6. 14-day display of day of week.
  7. Battery backup so clock is not disturbed by power outages.
  8. Hand-off-auto switches for biocide pumps.
  9. Biocide A and Biocide B pump running indication.
- H. Chemical Solution Tanks:
1. Chemical-resistant reservoirs fabricated from high-density opaque polyethylene with minimum 110 percent containment vessel.
  2. Molded cover with recess for mounting pump.
  3. Capacity: 50 gal.
- I. Chemical Solution Injection Pumps:
1. Self-priming, positive-displacement; rated for intended chemical with minimum 25 percent safety factor for design pressure and temperature.
  2. Adjustable flow rate.
  3. Metal and thermoplastic construction.
  4. Built-in relief valve.



5. Fully enclosed, continuous-duty, single-phase motor. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
- J. Injection Assembly:
1. Quill: Minimum NPS 1/2 with insertion length sufficient to discharge into at least 25 percent of pipe diameter.
  2. Ball Valve: Three-piece, stainless steel as described in "Stainless-Steel Pipes and Fittings" Article below; and selected to fit quill.
  3. Packing Gland: Mechanical seal on quill of sufficient length to allow quill removal during system operation.
  4. Assembly Pressure/Temperature Rating: Minimum 600 psig at 200 deg F.

## **2.4 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPES AND FITTINGS**

- A. Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ASTM A 269, Type 316.
- B. Stainless-Steel Fittings: Complying with ASTM A 815/A 815M, Type 316, Grade WP-S.
- C. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Stainless-Steel Ball Valves: ASTM A 351, Type 316 stainless-steel body; ASTM A 276, Type 316 stainless-steel stem and vented ball, carbon-filled TFE seats, threaded body design with adjustable stem packing, threaded ends, and 250-psig SWP and 600-psig CWP ratings.
- D. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Stainless-Steel Ball Valves: ASTM A 351, Type 316 stainless-steel body; ASTM A 276, Type 316 stainless-steel stem and vented ball, threaded body design with adjustable stem packing, threaded ends, and 150-psig SWP and 600-psig CWP rating.

## **2.5 CHEMICAL TREATMENT TEST EQUIPMENT**

- A. Test Kit: Manufacturer-recommended equipment and chemicals in a wall-mounting cabinet for testing pH, TDS, inhibitor, chloride, alkalinity, and hardness; sulfite and testable polymer tests for high-pressure boilers, and oxidizing biocide test for open cooling systems.
- B. Sample Cooler:
  1. Tube: Sample.
    - a. Size: NPS 1/4 tubing.
    - b. Material: ASTM A 666, Type 316 stainless steel.
    - c. Pressure Rating: Minimum 2000 psig.
    - d. Temperature Rating: Minimum 850 deg F.
  2. Shell: Cooling water.
    - a. Material: ASTM A 666, Type 304 stainless steel.
    - b. Pressure Rating: Minimum 250 psig.
    - c. Temperature Rating: Minimum 450 deg F.
  3. Capacities and Characteristics:
    - a. Tube: Sample.

- 1) Flow Rate: 0.25 gpm.
  - 2) Entering Temperature: 400 deg F.
  - 3) Leaving Temperature: 88 deg F.
  - 4) Pressure Loss: 6.5 psig.
- b. Shell: Cooling water.
- 1) Flow Rate: 3 gpm.
  - 2) Entering Temperature: 70 deg F.
  - 3) Pressure Loss: 1.0 psig.
- C. Corrosion Test-Coupon Assembly: Constructed of corrosive-resistant material, complete with piping, valves, and mild steel and copper coupons. Locate copper coupon downstream from mild steel coupon in the test-coupon assembly.
1. Two-station rack for closed-loop systems.
  2. Four-station rack for open systems.

## 2.6 CHEMICALS

- A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment, and that can attain water quality specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
- B. Water Softener Chemicals:
1. Mineral: High-capacity, sulfonated-polystyrene ion-exchange resin that is stable over entire pH range with good resistance to bead fracture from attrition or shock. Resin exchange capacity minimum 30,000 grains/cu. ft. of calcium carbonate of resin when regenerated with 15 lb of salt.
  2. Salt for Brine Tanks: High-purity sodium chloride, free of dirt and foreign material. Rock and granulated forms are not acceptable.

## 2.7 FILTRATION EQUIPMENT

- A. Multimedia Filters:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. LAKOS; a div. of Claude Laval Corporation.
    - b. Miami Filter LLC.
    - c. Puroflux Corporation.

4. Description: Factory-fabricated and -tested, simplex, multimedia filter system of filter tank, media, strainer, circulating pump, piping, and controls for removing particles from water.
- a. Filter Tank: Corrosion resistant with distribution system and media.
    - 1) Fabricate and label steel filter tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
    - 2) Fabricate and label FRP filter tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section X, if indicated.
    - 3) Pipe Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
    - 4) Steel Tank Pipe Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Steel, Class 150 flanges according to ASME B16.5 or grooved according to AWWA C606.
    - 5) FRP Tank Pipe Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Type A, integral; Designation E, 125-psig pressure category flanges of grade same as tank material according to ASTM D 5421.
  - b. Motorized Valves: Flanged or grooved-end, ductile-iron butterfly type with EPDM valve seat and stem seal; with ASTM B 148 aluminum bronze disc.
  - c. Strainer: Basket type mounted on pump suction.
  - d. Piping: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type S, F, or E; Grade B, Schedule 40 black steel, with flanged, grooved, or threaded joints and malleable, steel welding, or ductile-iron fittings.
  - e. Piping: ASTM B 88, Type L copper water tube, copper-alloy solder-joint fittings, and brazed, flanged, or grooved joints.
  - f. Safety Valves: Automatic pressure relief.
  - g. Circulating Pump: Overhung impeller, close coupled, single stage, end suction, centrifugal. Comply with UL 778 and with HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
    - 1) Casing: Radially split, cast iron.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
    - 3) Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
    - 4) Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
    - 5) Seal: Mechanical.
    - 6) Motor: ODP motor supported on the pump-bearing frame. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - h. Controls: Automatic control of circulating pump and tank backwash; factory wired for single electrical connection.

- 1) Panel: NEMA 250, Type 4 enclosure with time clock and pressure gages.
  - 2) Pump: Automatic and manual switching; manual switch position bypasses safeties and controls.
  - 3) Backwash: Automatic; with time clock and differential pressure switch.
  - 4) Backwash Valve: Tank mounted with valves interlocked to single actuator.
- i. Support: Skid mounting. Fabricate supports and base and attachment to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist filter movement during a seismic event when filter base is anchored to building structure.
- B. Centrifugal Separators:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 WATER ANALYSIS**

- A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install chemical application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
- B. Install seismic restraints for equipment and floor-mounting accessories and anchor to building structure. Refer to Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for seismic restraints.
- C. Install water testing equipment on wall near water chemical application equipment.
- D. Install interconnecting control wiring for chemical treatment controls and sensors.
- E. Mount sensors and injectors in piping circuits.
- F. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, chilled water and equipped with the following:
1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  2. Install water meter in makeup water supply.
  3. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

4. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below feeder inlet.
  5. Install a swing check on inlet after the isolation valve.
- G. Install automatic chemical-feed equipment for steam boiler and steam condensate systems and include the following:
1. Install water meter in makeup water supply.
  2. Install inhibitor injection pumps and solution tanks with injection timer sensing contacts in water meter.
    - a. Pumps shall operate for timed interval when contacts close at water meter in makeup water supply connection. Injection pump shall discharge into boiler feedwater tank or feedwater supply connection at boiler.
  3. Install test equipment and furnish test-kit to Owner.
  4. Install TDS controller with sensor and bleed valves.
    - a. Bleed valves shall cycle to maintain maximum TDS concentration.
  5. Install inhibitor injection timer with injection pumps and solution tanks.
    - a. Pumps shall operate for timed interval on contact closure at water meter in makeup water supply connection. Injection pump shall discharge into main steam supply header.
- H. Install automatic chemical-feed equipment for [condenser] [fluid-cooler spray] water and include the following:
1. Install makeup water softener.
  2. Install water meter in makeup water supply.
  3. Install inhibitor injection pumps and solution tanks with injection timer sensing contacts in water meter.
    - a. Pumps shall operate for timed interval on contact closure at water meter in makeup water supply connection. Injection pump shall discharge into boiler feedwater tank or feedwater supply connection at boiler.
  4. Install test equipment and provide test-kit to Owner. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  5. Install TDS controller with sensor and bleed valves.
    - a. Bleed valves shall cycle to maintain maximum TDS concentration.
  6. Install pH sensor and controller with injection pumps and solution tanks.
    - a. Injector pumps shall operate to maintain required pH.
  7. Install biocide feeder alternating timer with two sets of injection pumps and solution tanks.
    - a. Injection pumps shall operate to feed biocide on an alternating basis.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for HVAC."
- D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- E. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup water connections to potable-water systems.
- F. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in Division 26 Sections for connecting electrical equipment.
- G. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- H. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
  - 2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
  - 3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of HVAC systems' startup procedures.
  - 4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
  - 5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
  - 7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate

test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.

8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
  - E. Sample boiler water at one-week intervals after boiler startup for a period of five weeks, and prepare test report advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article for each required characteristic. Sample boiler water at four week intervals following the testing noted above to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section.
  - F. At four week intervals following Substantial Completion, perform separate water analyses on hydronic systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - G. Comply with ASTM D 3370 and with the following standards:
    1. Silica: ASTM D 859.
    2. Steam System: ASTM D 1066.
    3. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067.
    4. Iron: ASTM D 1068.
    5. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.

### **3.5 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."
- B. Training: Provide a "how-to-use" self-contained breathing apparatus video that details exact operating procedures of equipment.

**END OF SECTION**





## SECTION 23 31 13

### HVAC DUCTS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes rectangular and round, metal ducts and plenums for heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning systems in pressure classes from minus 2- to plus 2-inch wg.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation" for duct insulation.
  - 2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounted access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.
  - 3. Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
  - 4. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for air balancing and final adjusting of manual-volume dampers.

##### 1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Duct system design, as indicated, has been used to select and size air-moving and -distribution equipment and other components of air system. Changes to layout or configuration of duct system must be specifically approved in writing by Architect. Accompany requests for layout modifications with calculations showing that proposed layout will provide original design results without increasing system total pressure.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For duct liner and sealing materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show details of the following:
  - 1. Hangers and supports, including methods for building attachment, vibration isolation, and duct attachment for ductwork.
  - 2. Duct layout.
- C. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements.
- D. Record Drawings: Indicate actual routing, fitting details, reinforcement, support, and installed accessories and devices.

##### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Standards: Qualify welding procedures and welding personnel to perform welding processes for this Project according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--

Steel," for hangers and supports; AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum," for aluminum supporting members; and AWS D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

- B. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems," unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Comply with NFPA 96, "Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations," Chapter 3, "Duct System," for range hood ducts, unless otherwise indicated.

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver sealant and firestopping materials to site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration period for use, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- B. Store and handle sealant and firestopping materials according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
- C. Deliver and store stainless-steel sheets with mill-applied adhesive protective paper maintained through fabrication and installation.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SHEET METAL MATERIALS**

- A. Galvanized, Sheet Steel: Lock-forming quality; ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; mill-phosphatized finish for surfaces of ducts exposed to view.
- B. Carbon-Steel Sheets: ASTM A 366/A 366M, cold-rolled sheets; commercial quality; with oiled, exposed matte finish.
- C. Tie Rods: Provide "Condu-Lock Tie Rod reinforcement hardware."

### **2.2 DUCT LINER**

- A. General: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and NAIMA's "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
- B. Materials: ASTM C 1071 with coated surface exposed to airstream to prevent erosion of glass fibers.
  - 1. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
  - 2. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  - 3. Fire-Hazard Classification: Maximum flame-spread rating of 25 and smoke-developed rating of 50, when tested according to ASTM C 411.
  - 4. Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and ASTM C 916.
  - 5. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in duct.

- a. Tensile Strength: Indefinitely sustain a 50-lb tensile, dead-load test perpendicular to duct wall.
- b. Fastener Pin Length: As required for thickness of insulation and without projecting more than 1/8 inch into airstream.
- c. Adhesive for Attaching Mechanical Fasteners: Comply with fire-hazard classification of duct liner system.

## **2.3 SEALANT MATERIALS**

- A. Joint and Seam Sealants, General: The term "sealant" is not limited to materials of adhesive or mastic nature but includes tapes and combinations of open-weave fabric strips and mastics.
  1. Provide ductmate industries EZ-Seal industrial grade water based duct sealant.

## **2.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for building materials.
- B. Hanger Materials: Galvanized, sheet steel or round, threaded steel rod.
  1. Hangers Installed in Corrosive Atmospheres: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rod or galvanized rods with threads painted after installation.
  2. Straps and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for sheet steel width and thickness and for steel rod diameters.
- C. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- D. Trapeze and Riser Supports: Steel shapes complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel shapes and plates.

## **2.5 RECTANGULAR DUCT FABRICATION**

- A. General: Fabricate ducts, elbows, transitions, offsets, branch connections, and other construction with galvanized, sheet steel, according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible." Comply with requirements for metal thickness, reinforcing types and intervals, tie-rod applications, and joint types and intervals.
  1. Lengths: Fabricate rectangular ducts in lengths appropriate to reinforcement and rigidity class required for pressure classification.
  2. Materials: Free from visual imperfections such as pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, and discolorations.
- B. Static-Pressure Classifications: Unless otherwise indicated, construct ducts to the following:
  1. Supply Ducts:
    - a. Medium Pressure: 3 inch wg.

- b. Low Pressure: 2 inch wg.
  - 2. Return Ducts: 2-inch wg, negative pressure.
  - 3. Exhaust Ducts: 2-inch wg, negative pressure.
- C. Cross Breaking or Cross Beading: Cross break or cross bead duct sides 19 inches and larger and 0.0359 inch thick or less, with more than 10 sq. ft. of unbraced panel area, unless ducts are lined.

## **2.6 SHOP APPLICATION OF LINER IN RECTANGULAR DUCTS**

- A. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with 90 percent coverage of adhesive at liner contact surface area. Multiple layers of insulation to achieve indicated thickness are prohibited.
- B. Apply adhesive to liner facing in direction of airflow not receiving metal nosing.
- C. Butt transverse joints without gaps and coat joint with adhesive.
- D. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
- E. Do not apply liners in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and standard liner product dimensions make longitudinal joints necessary.
- F. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm).
- G. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely around perimeter; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
- H. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profile or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
  - 1. Fan discharge.
  - 2. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
  - 3. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts.
- I. Terminate liner with duct buildouts installed in ducts to attach dampers, turning vane assemblies, and other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct wall with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds. Terminate liner at fire dampers at connection to fire-damper sleeve.

## **2.7 ROUND DUCT FABRICATION**

- A. General: Diameter as applied to flat-oval ducts in this Article is the diameter of the size of round duct that has a circumference equal to perimeter of a given size of flat-oval duct.
- B. Round Ducts: Fabricate supply ducts of galvanized steel according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible."

## **2.8 ROUND SUPPLY AND EXHAUST FITTING FABRICATION**

- A. 90-Degree Tees and Laterals and Conical Tees: Fabricate to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible," with metal thicknesses specified for longitudinal seam straight duct.
- B. Diverging-Flow Fittings: Fabricate with a reduced entrance to branch taps with no excess material projecting from body onto branch tap entrance.
- C. Elbows: Fabricate in die-formed, gored, pleated, or mitered construction. Fabricate bend radius of die-formed, gored, and pleated elbows one and one-half times elbow diameter.
- D. Low Pressure Duct: Duct run outs for 12 inch diameter and below adjustable elbows.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Provide carbon steel ducts for kitchen exhaust system and as noted on drawings. All remaining duct shall be galvanized steel.
- B. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories.
- C. Construct and install each duct system for the specific duct pressure classification indicated.
- D. Install round ducts in lengths not less than 10', unless interrupted by fittings.
- E. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- F. Install fabricated fittings for changes in directions, changes in size and shape, and connections.
- G. Install couplings tight to duct wall surface with a minimum of projections into duct.
- H. Install ducts, unless otherwise indicated, vertically and horizontally, parallel and perpendicular to building lines; avoid diagonal runs.
- I. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- J. The duct dimensions indicated on the drawings shall be inside clear dimensions of ductwork
- K. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- L. Conceal ducts from view in finished spaces. Do not encase horizontal runs in solid partitions, unless specifically indicated.
- M. If duct can be seen in finished space, provide duct liner in lieu of exterior insulation of similar thickness.
- N. Coordinate layout with suspended ceiling, fire- and smoke-control dampers, lighting layouts, and similar finished work.
- O. Electrical Equipment Spaces: Route ductwork to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment spaces and enclosures.
- P. Non-Fire-Rated Partition Penetrations: Where ducts pass through interior partitions and exterior walls, and are exposed to view, conceal space between construction opening

and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as duct. Overlap opening on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

- Q. Fire-Rated Partition Penetrations: Where ducts pass through interior partitions and exterior walls, install appropriately rated fire damper, sleeve, and firestopping sealant. Fire and smoke dampers are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories." Firestopping materials and installation methods are specified in Division 7 Section "Firestopping."

### **3.2 SEAM AND JOINT SEALING**

- A. General: Seal duct seams and joints according to the duct pressure class indicated and as described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible."
- B. Pressure Classification Less Than 2-Inch wg: Transverse joints.
- C. Seal externally insulated ducts before insulation installation.

### **3.3 HANGING AND SUPPORTING**

- A. Install rigid round, rectangular, and flat-oval metal duct with support systems indicated in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible."
- B. Support horizontal ducts within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- C. Support vertical ducts at a maximum interval of 16 feet and at each floor.
- D. Install upper attachments to structures with an allowable load not exceeding one-fourth of failure (proof-test) load.
- E. Install concrete inserts before placing concrete.

### **3.4 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect equipment with flexible connectors according to Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. For branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections, comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible."

### **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust volume-control dampers in ducts, outlets, and inlets to achieve design airflow.
- B. Refer to Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for detailed procedures.

### **3.6 DUCTWORK PROTOCOL**

- A. Fabrication: Shop fabricated ductwork will be manufactured to "shop" conditions. Ductwork will ship to jobsite assembled.
- B. Shipping: Protect shop fabricated ductwork; accessories are purchased products from damage during shipping. Ductwork will be protected from dirt and moisture during transit.

- C. Storage: Ductwork that is delivered to the site must be installed as soon as reasonably possible. If the ductwork is to be stored at site, it will either be in storage inside structure, 4" above the ground or floor to avoid damage from weather or spills. Cover all stored ductwork to protect from moisture and debris.
- D. Handling: When moving or unloading ductwork shipments, DO NOT place ductwork in dirt, mud or debris. Place ductwork directly inside structure or inside storage facility upon arrival at jobsite. Whenever possible, store the ductwork inside and protect from weather per the storage requirements.
- E. Installation and final cleaning: Clean ductwork internally, unit by unit as installed, remove dust, dirt and debris. Clean external surfaces of foreign substances. Interior surfaces must be dust free prior to installation. At the end of the workday, a designated person shall verify all ends are covered before leaving the jobsite.
- F. Finishes: Prior to installation of grills, registers and diffusers, sheet metal contractor to notify general contractor that all sanding, grinding, painting or any other dust producing activities shall be completed. If this is not possible fur to the schedule, general contractor to approve the proceeding of G, R &D installation.
- G. Terminal Unit: All terminal units to be covered on the ends and any critical components to avoid dust, dirt and debris from entering them during storage or rough-in stages of the project.

**END OF SECTION**





## SECTION 23 33 00

### DUCT ACCESSORIES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Backdraft dampers.
  - 2. Manual-volume dampers.
  - 3. Fire and smoke dampers.
  - 4. Turning vanes.
  - 5. Duct-mounted access doors and panels.
  - 6. Flexible ducts.
  - 7. Flexible connectors.
  - 8. Duct accessory hardware.
  - 9. Duct silencers.
  - 10. Variable air volume terminal units.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Backdraft dampers.
  - 2. Manual-volume dampers.
  - 3. Fire and smoke dampers.
  - 4. Duct silencers.
  - 5. Duct-mounted access doors and panels.
  - 6. Flexible ducts.
  - 7. VAV terminal units.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loadings, required clearances, method of field assembly, and components.

## **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. NFPA Compliance: Comply with the following NFPA standards:
  - 1. NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."
  - 2. NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SHEET METAL MATERIALS**

- A. Galvanized, Sheet Steel: Lock-forming quality; ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; mill-phosphatized finish for surfaces of ducts exposed to view.
- B. Carbon-Steel Sheets: ASTM A 366/A, cold-rolled sheets, commercial quality, with oiled, exposed matte finish.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized, sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

### **2.2 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS**

- A. Description: Suitable for horizontal or vertical installations.
- B. Frame: 0.063-inch thick extruded aluminum, with mounting flange.
- C. Blades: 0.050-inch thick aluminum sheet.
- D. Blade Seals: Vinyl.
- E. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
- F. Blade Axles: Nonferrous.
- G. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- H. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

### **2.3 MANUAL-VOLUME DAMPERS**

- A. General: Fabricated with required hardware and accessories. Stiffen damper blades for stability. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration. Close duct penetrations for damper components to seal duct consistent with pressure class.
  - 1. Pressure Classifications of 3-Inch wg or Higher: End bearings or other seals for ducts with axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- B. Standard Volume Dampers: Multiple- or single-blade, parallel- or opposed-blade design as indicated, standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.

1. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls; and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
  2. Blade Axles: Nonferrous.
  3. Tie Bars and Brackets.
- C. Low-Leakage Volume Dampers: Multiple- or single-blade, parallel- or opposed-blade design as indicated, low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
1. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.063-inch thick, channels; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls; and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
  2. Blades: 0.050-inch thick extruded aluminum.
  3. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
  4. Blade Axles: Nonferrous.
  5. Tie Bars and Brackets.

## **2.4 FIRE DAMPERS**

- A. General: Labeled to UL 555.
- B. Fire Rating: One and one-half hours.
- C. Frame: SMACNA Type B with blades out of airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- D. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed galvanized, sheet steel.
1. Minimum Thickness: 0.052 inch or 0.138 inch thick as indicated, and length to suit application.
  2. Exceptions: Omit sleeve where damper frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor, and thickness of damper frame complies with sleeve requirements.
- E. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- F. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch thick, galvanized, sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch thick, galvanized steel blade connectors.
- G. Horizontal Dampers: Include a blade lock and stainless-steel negator closure spring.
- H. Fusible Link: Replaceable, 165 or 212 deg F rated as indicated.

## **2.5 SMOKE DAMPERS**

- A. General: Labeled to UL 555S. Combination fire and smoke dampers shall be labeled for one-and-one-half-hour rating to UL 555.
- B. Fusible Link: Replaceable, 165 or 212 deg F rated as indicated.

- C. Frame and Blades: 0.064-inch thick, galvanized, sheet steel.
- D. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.052-inch thick, galvanized, sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.
- E. Damper Motors: Provide for two-position action.
  - 1. Two-Position Motor: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.

## **2.6 TURNING VANES**

- A. Fabricate to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible."
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes: Provide sheet metal connectors inc. for turning vanes.

## **2.7 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS**

- A. General: Fabricate doors and panels airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
- B. Frame: Galvanized, sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
- C. Door: Double-wall, galvanized, sheet metal construction with insulation fill and thickness, and number of hinges and locks as indicated for duct pressure class. Include 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
- D. Seal around frame attachment to duct and door to frame with neoprene or foam rubber.
- E. Insulation: 1-inch thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

## **2.8 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS**

- A. General: Flame-retarded or noncombustible fabrics, coatings, and adhesives complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- B. Standard Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a strip of fabric 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch wide, 0.028-inch thick, galvanized, sheet steel or 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) aluminum sheets. Select metal compatible with connected ducts.
- C. Conventional, Indoor System Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with polychloroprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp, and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
- D. Conventional, Outdoor System Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with a synthetic-rubber, weatherproof coating resistant to the sun's ultraviolet rays and ozone environment.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp, and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.

## **2.9 FLEXIBLE DUCTS**

- A. General: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- B. Flexible Ducts, Insulated: Factory-fabricated, insulated, round duct, with an outer jacket enclosing 1-1/2-inch thick, glass-fiber insulation around a continuous inner liner.
  - 1. Reinforcement: Steel-wire helix encapsulated in inner liner.
  - 2. Outer Jacket: Polyethylene film.
  - 3. Inner Liner: Polyethylene film.
- C. Pressure Rating: 6-inch wg positive, 1/2-inch wg negative.

## **2.10 ACCESSORY HARDWARE**

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments, and length to suit duct insulation thickness.
- B. Splitter Damper Accessories: Zinc-plated damper blade bracket; 1/4-inch (6-mm), zinc-plated operating rod; and a duct-mounted, ball-joint bracket with flat rubber gasket and square-head set screw.
- C. Flexible Duct Clamps: Duct Strap the 36" and 48" applications include HVAC duct dtraps and UL 1841B listed.
- D. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## **2.11 VARIABLE AIR VOLUME TERMINAL UNITS**

- A. Units shall be 24 gauge galvanized steel, lined with 1-1/2 pound insulation as required by UL-181 and NFPA-90A. Insulation shall be totally encapsulated to prevent fibers from entering airstream.
- B. Responsibility for the provision of damper actuator, DDC VAV box controller including velocity pressure transducer and control transformer shall be by the Automatic Temperature Controls contractor. Terminal box manufacturer shall include with this bid, costs of mounting the controller on his box and piping the controller's transducer to his flow sensor (in accordance with control manufacturer's instructions).
- C. Boxes shall have multipoint averaging type airflow sensors. Boxes with single point sensors are unacceptable.
- D. Differential static pressure drop of complete assembly shall not exceed 0.20" wg. Damper leak rate shall not exceed 2% of full volume at 3" static pressure rated by ADC. Units shall not deviate from set minimum or maximum flow settings by more than 10% regardless of inlet angle. Inlet velocities shall not exceed 2000 fpm.
- E. Unit's control apparatus shall be compatible with the control system.
- F. The mechanical division contractor shall have complete responsibility for ensuring that the submitted terminal box and VAV DDC controller are compatible with each other, and that they can perform all sequences of operation shown on the control drawings. Contractor shall submit the following items with this shop drawing submittal:

1. The name of the terminal box manufacturer.
  2. The name of the temperature controls manufacturer.
  3. A statement that the mechanical division contractor has contacted both vendors and verified that the terminal box and DDC controller are compatible with each other.
- G. Provide control transformer, associated power wiring and breaker as required from electrical panelboard. Coordinate with electrical contractor, location, number of circuits.
- H. Hot Water Coils (where scheduled)
1. Provide hot water coils with capacities, pressure drops and leaving air temperatures as shown on Drawings.
  2. Coil shall be ½" or 5/8 copper tube expanded mechanically into continuous aluminum fin collars, with copper or bronze headers and galvanized steel casings.
  3. Proof test at 300 psi and leak test at 250 psi air pressure under water. Certify suitability for 200 psi working pressure.
  4. Coil shall meet requirements of ARI 410-74.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details shown in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and NAIMA's "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards" for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install volume dampers in lined duct; avoid damage to and erosion of duct liner.
- C. Provide test holes at fan inlet and outlet and elsewhere as indicated.
- D. Install fire and smoke dampers according to manufacturer's UL-approved written instructions.
1. Install fusible links in fire dampers.
- E. Install duct access panels for access to both sides of duct coils. Install duct access panels downstream from volume dampers, fire dampers, turning vanes, and equipment.
1. Install duct access panels to allow access to interior of ducts for cleaning, inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and terminal units.
  2. Install access panels on side of duct where adequate clearance is available.
- F. Label access doors according to Division 15 Section "Mechanical Identification."

#### **3.2 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust duct accessories for proper settings.
- B. Adjust fire and smoke dampers for proper action.

- C. Final positioning of manual-volume dampers is specified in Division 15 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing."

**END OF SECTION**





## SECTION 23 34 23

### HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Utility set fans.
  - 2. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
  - 3. Ceiling-mounting ventilators.
  - 4. In-line centrifugal fans.

##### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated and include the following:
  - 1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  - 2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
  - 3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
  - 4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
  - 5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
  - 6. Roof curbs.
  - 7. Fan speed controllers.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  - 3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, and base weights.

- C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Roof framing and support members relative to duct penetrations.
  - 2. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Products shall comply with performance requirements and shall be licensed to use the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. NEMA Compliance: Motors and electrical accessories shall comply with NEMA standards.
- D. UL Standard: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705.

### **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver fans as factory-assembled unit, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations, with protective crating and covering.
- B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.

### **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- C. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

### **1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 UTILITY SET FANS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Aerovent; a Twin City Fan Company.
  - 2. Greenheck
  - 3. Carnes Company HVAC.
  - 4. JencoFan; Div. of Breidert Air Products.
  - 5. Loren Cook Company.
  - 6. Penn Ventilation.
- D. Description: Belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, and accessories.
- E. Housing: Fabricated of galvanized steel with side sheets fastened with a deep lock seam or welded to scroll sheets.
  - 1. Housing Discharge Arrangement: Adjustable to eight standard positions.
- F. Fan Wheels: Single-width, single inlet; welded to cast-iron or cast-steel hub and spun-steel inlet cone, with hub keyed to shaft.
  - 1. Blade Materials: Aluminum.
  - 2. Blade Type: Backward inclined.
  - 3. Spark-Resistant Construction: AMCA 99, Type A.
- G. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
- H. Shaft Bearings: Prelubricated and sealed, self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings with ABMA 9, L<sub>50</sub> of 200,000 hours.
- I. Belt Drives: Factory mounted, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.
  - 1. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.2.
  - 2. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
  - 3. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.

4. Belt Guards: Fabricate of steel for motors mounted on outside of fan cabinet.

J. Accessories:

1. Inlet and Outlet: Flanged.
2. Backdraft Dampers: Gravity actuated with counterweight and interlocking aluminum blades with felt edges in steel frame installed on fan discharge.
3. Access Door: Gasketed door in scroll with latch-type handles.
4. Scroll Dampers: Single-blade damper installed at fan scroll top with adjustable linkage.
5. Inlet Screens: Removable wire mesh.
6. Drain Connections: NPS 3/4 threaded coupling drain connection installed at lowest point of housing.
7. Weather Hoods: Weather resistant with stamped vents over motor and drive compartment.
8. Discharge Dampers: Assembly with parallel blades constructed of two plates formed around and to shaft, channel frame, sealed ball bearings, with blades linked outside of airstream to single control lever of same material as housing.
9. Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.

K. Coatings: Thermoplastic vinyl.

## 2.2 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  1. Aerovent; a Twin City Fan Company
  2. Broan Mfg. Co., Inc.
  3. Carnes Company HVAC.
  4. Greenheck.
  5. JencoFan; Div. of Breidert Air Products.
  6. Loren Cook Company.
  7. Penn Ventilation.
- D. Description: Direct- or belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, curb base, and accessories.

- E. Housing: Removable, extruded-aluminum, square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
  - 1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains.
  - 2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.
- F. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- G. Belt-Driven Drive Assembly: Resiliently mounted to housing, with the following features:
  - 1. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
  - 2. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
  - 3. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
  - 4. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- H. Accessories:
  - 1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
  - 2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted outside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
  - 3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
  - 4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
- I. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
  - 1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
  - 2. Overall Height: 12 inches.
  - 3. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
  - 4. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
  - 5. Vented Curb: Unlined with louvered vents in vertical sides.

### **2.3 CEILING-MOUNTING VENTILATORS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Broan Mfg. Co., Inc.
  - 2. Carnes Company HVAC.
  - 3. Greenheck.
  - 4. JencoFan; Div. of Breidert Air Products.
  - 5. Loren Cook Company.
  - 6. Penn Ventilation.
- D. Description: Centrifugal fans designed for installing in ceiling or wall or for concealed in-line applications.
- E. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.
- F. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.
- G. Grille: Aluminum, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.
- H. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.
- I. Accessories:
  - 1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
  - 2. Ceiling Radiation Damper: Fire-rated assembly with ceramic blanket, stainless-steel springs, and fusible link.
  - 3. Filter: Washable aluminum to fit between fan and grille.
  - 4. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.
  - 5. Manufacturer's standard roof jack or wall cap, and transition fittings.

## **2.4 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Carnes Company HVAC.
  - 2. Greenheck.

3. Loren Cook Company.
  4. Penn Ventilation.
- D. Description: In-line, belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, outlet guide vanes, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, mounting brackets, and accessories.
  - E. Housing: Split, spun aluminum with aluminum straightening vanes, inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.
  - F. Direct-Driven Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing; with wheel, inlet cone, and motor on swing-out service door.
  - G. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.
  - H. Fan Wheels: Aluminum, airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.
  - I. Accessories:
    1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
    2. Volume-Control Damper: Manually operated with quadrant lock, located in fan outlet.
    3. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
    4. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.

## **2.5 MOTORS**

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
- B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

## **2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating."

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.

- B. Support units using spring isolators having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration- and seismic-control devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Secure vibration and seismic controls to concrete bases using anchor bolts cast in concrete base.
- C. Install floor-mounting units on concrete bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Install floor-mounting units on concrete bases designed to withstand, without damage to equipment, the seismic force required by code. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- E. Secure roof-mounting fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
- F. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
- G. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration-control devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- H. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- I. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
  - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
  - 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
  - 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.



5. Adjust belt tension.
  6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
  7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
  8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
  9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
  10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
  11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Refer to Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 23 36 00

### AIR TERMINAL UNITS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Shutoff, single-duct air terminal units.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products, including rated capacities, furnished specialties, sound-power ratings, and accessories.
  - 1. Air terminal units.
  - 2. Liners and adhesives.
  - 3. Sealants and gaskets.
  - 4. Seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air terminal units. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 3. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, and vibration isolation.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal:
  - 1. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculations for selecting hangers and supports.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  - 2. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustic tile.
  - 3. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
2. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."

#### **1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Fan-Powered-Unit Filters: Furnish one spare filter(s) for each filter installed.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 SHUTOFF, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  1. Carnes.
  2. Environmental Technologies, Inc.
  3. Krueger.
  4. METALAIRE, Inc.
  5. Nailor Industries Inc.
  6. Price Industries.
  7. Titus.
  8. Trane; a business of American Standard Companies.
- C. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.
- D. Casing: 0.034-inch single wall.
  1. Casing Lining: Adhesive attached, 1/2-inch thick, coated, fibrous-glass duct liner complying with ASTM C 1071, and having a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50, for both insulation and adhesive, when tested according to ASTM E 84.
    - a. Cover liner with nonporous foil.
  2. Casing Lining: Adhesive attached, 1/2-inch thick, polyurethane foam insulation complying with UL 181 erosion requirements, and having a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50, for both insulation and adhesive, when tested according to ASTM E 84.
  3. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
  4. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.

5. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
  6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004.
- E. Regulator Assembly: System-air-powered bellows section incorporating polypropylene bellows for volume regulation and thermostatic control. Bellows shall operate at temperatures from 0 to 140 deg F, shall be impervious to moisture and fungus, shall be suitable for 10-inch wg static pressure, and shall be factory tested for leaks.
- F. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
1. Maximum Damper Leakage: ARI 880 rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
  2. Damper Position: Normally open.
- G. Attenuator Section: 0.034-inch sheet.
1. Lining: Adhesive attached, 1/2-inch thick, coated, fibrous-glass duct liner complying with ASTM C 1071, and having a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50, for both insulation and adhesive, when tested according to ASTM E 84.
    - a. Cover liner with nonporous foil.
  2. Lining: Adhesive attached, 3/4-inch- thick, polyurethane foam insulation complying with UL 181 erosion requirements, and having a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50, for both insulation and adhesive, when tested according to ASTM E 84.
  3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004.
- H. Hydronic Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch, and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain valve.
- I. Electric Controls: Damper actuator and thermostat.
1. Damper Actuator: 24 V, powered closed.
- J. Direct Digital Controls: Single-package unitary controller and actuator specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
- K. Direct Digital Controls: Bidirectional damper operators and microprocessor-based controller and room sensor. Control devices shall be compatible with temperature controls specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and shall have the following features:
1. Damper Actuator: 24 V, powered closed, spring return open.
  2. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, variable-air-volume controller with electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes, and having the following features:
    - a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
    - b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
    - c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
    - d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
  3. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with temperature set-point adjustment and access for connection of portable operator terminal.
- L. Control Sequence:

1. Suitable for operation with duct pressures between 0.25- and 3.0-inch wg inlet static pressure.
2. System-powered, wall-mounted thermostat.

## **2.2 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Steel Cables: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- D. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- E. Air Terminal Unit Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- F. Trapeze and Riser Supports: Steel shapes and plates for units with steel casings; aluminum for units with aluminum casings.

## **2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Factory Tests: Test assembled air terminal units according to ARI 880.
  1. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, coil type, and ARI certification seal.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."
- B. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.
- C. Install wall-mounted thermostats.

### **3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.

3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes and for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes and for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- D. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Install piping adjacent to air terminal unit to allow service and maintenance.
- B. Hot-Water Piping: In addition to requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping," connect heating coils to supply with shutoff valve, strainer, control valve, and union or flange; and to return with balancing valve and union or flange.
- C. Connect ducts to air terminal units according to Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts."
- D. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

### **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, and maximum and minimum factory-set airflows. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

### **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
  1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.

4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.6 STARTUP SERVICE**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
  3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
  4. Verify that control connections are complete.
  5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
  6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

### **3.7 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 23 37 13

### DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes ceiling- and wall-mounted diffusers, registers, and grilles.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 8 Section "Louvers and Vents" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
  - 2. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for balancing diffusers, registers and grilles.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Diffuser: Circular, square, or rectangular air distribution outlet, generally located in the ceiling and comprised of deflecting members discharging supply air in various directions and planes and arranged to promote mixing of primary air with secondary room air.
- B. Grille: A louvered or perforated covering for an opening in an air passage, which can be located in a sidewall, ceiling, or floor.
- C. Register: A combination grille and damper assembly over an air opening.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each model indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Data Sheet: For each type of air outlet and inlet, and accessory furnished; indicate construction, finish, and mounting details.
  - 2. Performance Data: Include throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings for each type of air outlet and inlet.
  - 3. Assembly Drawing: For each type of air outlet and inlet; indicate materials and methods of assembly of components.

##### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings and schedules indicate specific requirements of diffusers, registers, and grilles and are based on the specific requirements of the systems indicated. Other manufacturers' products with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Substitutions."

- B. NFPA Compliance: Install diffusers, registers, and grilles according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Diffusers, registers, and grilles are scheduled on Drawings.

### **2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing: Test performance according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb, according to manufacturer's written instructions, Coordination Drawings, original design, and referenced standards.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practicable. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of the panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connection to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

### **3.4 CLEANING**

- A. After installation of diffusers, registers, and grilles, inspect exposed finish. Clean exposed surfaces to remove burrs, dirt, and smudges. Replace diffusers, registers, and grilles that have damaged finishes.

### **3.5 DIFFUSER SCHEDULE**

- A. Refer to construction drawings.

### **3.6 REGISTER SCHEDULE**

- A. Refer to Construction Drawings.

**3.7 GRILLE SCHEDULE**

A. Refer to Construction Drawings.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 23 51 00

### BREECHINGS, CHIMNEYS, AND STACKS

#### GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Listed double-wall chimneys.
  - 2. Listed grease and dishwasher ducts.

##### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Type B and BW vents.
  - 2. Special gas vents.
  - 3. Building-heating-appliance chimneys.
  - 4. Grease ducts.
- B. Shop Drawings: For vents, breechings, chimneys, and stacks.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

##### 2.2 LISTED TYPE B AND BW VENTS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. American Metal Products; MASCO Corporation.
  - 2. Industrial Chimney Company.
  - 3. Metal-Fab, Inc.
  - 4. Selkirk Inc.; Selkirk Metalbestos and Air Mate.
- B. Description: Double-wall metal vents tested according to UL 441 and rated for 480 deg F continuously for Type B, or 550 deg F continuously for Type BW; with neutral or negative flue pressure complying with NFPA 211 and suitable for certified gas-fired appliances.
- C. Construction: Inner shell and outer jacket separated by at least a 1/4-inch airspace.

- D. Inner Shell: ASTM A 666, Type 430 stainless steel.
- E. Outer Jacket: Galvanized steel.
- F. Accessories: Tees, elbows, increasers, draft-hood connectors, terminations, adjustable roof flashings, storm collars, support assemblies, thimbles, firestop spacers, and fasteners; fabricated from similar materials and designs as vent-pipe straight sections; all listed for same assembly.
  - 1. Termination: Round chimney top designed to exclude 98 percent of rainfall.

### **2.3 LISTED BUILDING-HEATING-APPLIANCE CHIMNEYS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. American Metal Products; MASCO Corporation.
  - 2. FAMCO.
  - 3. Heat-Fab Inc.
  - 4. Industrial Chimney Company.
  - 5. Metal-Fab, Inc.
  - 6. ProTech Systems Inc.
  - 7. Selkirk Inc.; Selkirk Metalbestos and Air Mate.
- B. Description: Double-wall metal vents tested according to UL 103 and rated for 1000 deg F continuously, or 1700 deg F for 10 minutes; with neutral or negative flue pressure complying with NFPA 211 and suitable for dual-fuel boilers, oven vents, water heaters, or exhaust for engines.
- C. Construction: Inner shell and outer jacket separated by at least a 3-inch annular space filled with high-temperature, ceramic-fiber insulation.
- D. Inner Shell: ASTM A 666, Type 304 stainless steel.
- E. Outer Jacket: Galvanized steel.
- F. Accessories: Tees, elbows, increasers, draft-hood connectors, terminations, adjustable roof flashings, storm collars, support assemblies, thimbles, firestop spacers, and fasteners; fabricated from similar materials and designs as vent-pipe straight sections; all listed for same assembly.
  - 1. Termination: Stack cap designed to exclude 90 percent of rainfall.
  - 2. Termination: Round chimney top designed to exclude 98 percent of rainfall.
  - 3. Termination: Exit cone with drain section incorporated into riser.

### **2.4 LISTED GREASE DUCTS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. American Metal Products; MASCO Corporation.
  - 2. Greenheck.
  - 3. Heat-Fab Inc.
  - 4. Industrial Chimney Company.
  - 5. Metal-Fab, Inc.
  - 6. Schebler Co. (The).
  - 7. Selkirk Inc.; Selkirk Metalbestos and Air Mate.

- B. Description: Double-wall metal vents tested according to UL 1978 and rated for 500 deg F continuously, or 2000 deg F for 30 minutes; with positive or negative duct pressure and suitable for Type I, commercial kitchen grease duct.
- C. Construction: Inner shell and outer jacket separated by at least a 1-inch annular space filled with high-temperature, ceramic-fiber insulation.
- D. Inner Shell: ASTM A 666, Type 304 stainless steel.
- E. Outer Jacket: Stainless steel.
- F. Accessories: Tees, elbows, increasers, hood connectors, terminations, adjustable roof flashings, storm collars, support assemblies, thimbles, firestop spacers, and fasteners; fabricated from similar materials and designs as vent-pipe straight sections; all listed for same assembly. Include unique components required to comply with NFPA 96.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION OF LISTED VENTS AND CHIMNEYS**

- A. Locate to comply with minimum clearances from combustibles and minimum termination heights according to product listing or NFPA 211, whichever is most stringent.
- B. Seal between sections of positive-pressure vents according to manufacturer's written installation instructions, using sealants recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Support vents at intervals recommended by manufacturer to support weight of vents and all accessories, without exceeding appliance loading.
- D. Slope breechings down in direction of appliance, with condensate drain connection at lowest point piped to nearest drain.

**END OF SECTION**





## SECTION 23 52 16

### CONDENSING BOILERS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes packaged, factory-fabricated and -assembled, gas-fired, fire-tube condensing boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include performance data, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Design calculations and vibration isolation base details, signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
    - a. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
    - b. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails and equipment mounting frames.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

##### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that boiler, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Include the following:
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
    - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

- B. Source quality-control test reports.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.
- E. Other Informational Submittals:
  - 1. ASME Stamp Certification and Report: Submit "A," "S," or "PP" stamp certificate of authorization, as required by authorities having jurisdiction, and document hydrostatic testing of piping external to boiler.

## **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For boilers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Boilers shall have minimum efficiency according to "Gas and Oil Fired Boilers - Minimum Efficiency Requirements."
- D. DOE Compliance: Minimum efficiency shall comply with 10 CFR 430, Subpart B, Appendix N, "Uniform Test Method for Measuring the Energy Consumption of Furnaces and Boilers."
- E. UL Compliance: Test boilers for compliance with UL 795, "Commercial-Industrial Gas Heating Equipment." Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

## **1.8 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Pulse-Combustion Boilers:
    - a. Heat Exchanger Damaged by Thermal Shock: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. Heat-Exchanger Corrosion: Prorated for five years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Warranty Period for Fire-Tube Condensing Boilers:
    - a. Leakage and Materials: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

- b. Heat Exchanger Damaged by Thermal Stress and Corrosion: Prorated for five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- 3. Warranty Period for Water-Tube Condensing Boilers: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- 4. Warranty Period for Water-Jacketed Condensing Boilers:
  - a. Leakage and Materials: Eight years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - b. Heat Exchanger Damaged by Thermal Stress and Corrosion: Prorated for five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

Fulton Boiler Works, Inc.

2. Gasmaster Industries Incorporated.

3. Camus.

AERCO International.

5. Heat Transfer Products, Inc.

Laars Heating Systems; a division of Waterpik Technologies, Inc.

7. Lochinvar Corporation

### **PULSE-COMBUSTION CONDENSING BOILERS**

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, and -tested, pulse-combustion condensing boiler with heat exchanger sealed pressure tight, built on a steel base; including insulated jacket; flue-gas vent; combustion-air intake connections; water supply, return, and condensate drain connections; and controls.
- B. Heat Exchanger: Type 316L, stainless-steel primary and secondary combustion chamber.
- C. Pressure Vessel: Carbon steel with welded heads and tube connections.
- D. Exhaust Decoupler: Fiberglass composite material in a corrosion-resistant steel box.
- E. Burner: Natural gas, self-aspirating and self-venting after initial start.
- F. Blower: Centrifugal fan to operate only during start of each burner sequence.

1. Motors: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- G. Gas Train: Combination gas valve with manual shutoff and pressure regulator.
- H. Ignition: Spark ignition with 100 percent main-valve shutoff with electronic flame supervision.
- I. Casing:
  1. Jacket: Sheet metal, with snap-in or interlocking closures.
  2. Control Compartment Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1A.
  3. Finish: Baked-enamel protective finish.
  4. Insulation: Minimum 2-inch- thick, mineral-fiber insulation surrounding the heat exchanger.
  5. Draft Hood: Integral.
  6. Combustion-Air Connection: Inlet duct collar and sheet metal closure over burner compartment.
  7. Mounting base to secure boiler to concrete base.
    - a. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting base and attachment to boiler pressure vessel, accessories, and components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" when mounting base is anchored to building structure.
- J. Mufflers: Carbon-steel intake muffler and stainless-steel exhaust.
- K. Condensate Trap: Cast-iron body with stainless-steel internal parts.
- L. Characteristics and Capacities: Refer to drawings.

### **2.3 FIRE-TUBE CONDENSING BOILERS**

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, and -tested, fire-tube condensing boiler with heat exchanger sealed pressure tight, built on a steel base; including insulated jacket; flue-gas vent; combustion-air intake connections; water supply, return, and condensate drain connections; and controls. Water heating service only.
- B. Heat Exchanger: Nonferrous, corrosion-resistant combustion chamber.
- C. Pressure Vessel: Carbon steel with welded heads and tube connections.
- D. Burner: Natural gas, forced draft.
- E. Blower: Centrifugal fan to operate during each burner firing sequence and to prepurge and postpurge the combustion chamber.
  1. Motors: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

- a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- F. Gas Train: Combination gas valve with manual shutoff and pressure regulator.
- G. Ignition: Spark ignition with 100 percent main-valve shutoff with electronic flame supervision.
- H. Casing:
  - 1. Jacket: Sheet metal, with snap-in or interlocking closures.
  - 2. Control Compartment Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1A.
  - 3. Finish: Baked-enamel protective finish.
  - 4. Insulation: Minimum 2-inch- thick, mineral-fiber insulation surrounding the heat exchanger.
  - 5. Combustion-Air Connections: Inlet and vent duct collars.
  - 6. Mounting base to secure boiler.
    - a. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting base and attachment to boiler pressure vessel, accessories, and components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" when mounting base is anchored to building structure.
- I. Characteristics and Capacities: Refer to drawings.

#### **2.4 TRIM**

- A. Include devices sized to comply with ANSI B31.1, "Power Piping."
- B. Aquastat Controllers: Operating, firing rate, and high limit.
- C. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.
- D. Pressure and Temperature Gage: Minimum 3-1/2-inch- diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gage. Gages shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.
- E. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic.
- F. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 hose-end gate valve.
- G. Circulation Pump: Non-overloading, in-line pump with split-capacitor motor having thermal-overload protection and lubricated bearings; designed to operate at specified boiler pressures and temperatures.

#### **2.5 TRIM**

- A. Include devices sized to comply with ANSI B31.1, "Power Piping."
- B. Pressure Controllers: Operating and high limit.
- C. Safety Relief Valve:

1. Size and Capacity: As required for equipment according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
  2. Description: Fully enclosed steel spring with adjustable pressure range and positive shutoff; factory set and sealed.
    - a. Drip-Pan Elbow: Cast iron and having threaded inlet and outlet with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
- D. Pressure Gage: Minimum 3-1/2-inch diameter. Gage shall have normal operating pressure about 50 percent of full range.
- E. Water Column: Minimum 12-inch glass gage with shutoff cocks.
- F. Drain Valves: Minimum NPS 3/4 or nozzle size with hose-end connection.
- G. Blowdown Valves: Factory-installed bottom and surface, slow-acting blowdown valves same size as boiler nozzle.
- H. Stop Valves: Boiler inlets and outlets, except safety relief valves or preheater inlet and outlet, shall be equipped with stop valve in an accessible location as near as practical to boiler nozzle and same size or larger than nozzle. Valves larger than NPS 2 shall have rising stem.
- I. Stop-Check Valves: Factory-installed, stop-check valve and stop valve at boiler outlet with free-blow drain valve factory installed between the two valves and visible when operating stop-check valve.

## 2.6 CONTROLS

- A. Refer to Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
- B. Boiler operating controls shall include the following devices and features:
1. Control transformer.
  2. Set-Point Adjust: Set points shall be adjustable.
  3. Operating Pressure Control: Factory wired and mounted to cycle burner.
  4. Low-Water Cutoff and Pump Control: Cycle feedwater pump(s) for makeup water control.
  5. Sequence of Operation: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to maintain space temperature in response to thermostat with heat anticipator located in heated space.
  6. Sequence of Operation: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to reset supply-water temperature inversely with outside-air temperature. At 0 deg F outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at 200 deg F; at 60 deg F outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at 140 deg F.
  7. Sequence of Operation: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to maintain a constant steam pressure. Maintain pressure set point plus or minus 10 percent.
    - a. Include automatic, alternating-firing sequence for multiple boilers to ensure maximum system efficiency throughout the load range and to provide equal runtime for boilers.

- C. Burner Operating Controls: To maintain safe operating conditions, burner safety controls limit burner operation.
  - 1. High Cutoff: Automatic reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum boiler design temperature.
  - 2. Low-Water Cutoff Switch: Electronic probe shall prevent burner operation on low water. Cutoff switch shall be manual-reset type.
  - 3. Blocked Inlet Safety Switch: Manual-reset pressure switch field mounted on boiler combustion-air inlet.
  - 4. Audible Alarm: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; shall sound alarm for above conditions.
- D. Building Automation System Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable building automation system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.
  - 1. Hardwired Points:
    - a. Monitoring: On/off status, low water level alarm.
    - b. Control: On/off operation, hot water supply temperature set-point adjustment.
  - 2. A communication interface with building automation system shall enable building automation system operator to remotely control and monitor the boiler from an operator workstation. Control features available, and monitoring points displayed, locally at boiler control panel shall be available through building automation system.

## **2.7 ELECTRICAL POWER**

- A. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in electrical Sections.
- B. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.
  - 1. House in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
  - 2. Wiring shall be numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.
  - 3. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a raceway.
  - 4. Field power interface shall be to fused disconnect switch.
  - 5. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls.
  - 6. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

## **2.8 VENTING KITS**

- A. Kit: Complete system, ASTM A 959, Type 29-4C stainless steel, pipe, vent terminal, thimble, indoor plate, vent adapter, condensate trap and dilution tank, and sealant.
- B. Combustion-Air Intake: Complete system, stainless steel, pipe, vent terminal with screen, inlet air coupling, and sealant.

## **2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Burner and Hydrostatic Test: Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.
- B. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Allow Owner access to source quality-control testing of boilers. Notify Architect 14 days in advance of testing.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Before boiler installation, examine roughing-in for concrete equipment bases, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, and piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting boiler performance, maintenance, and operations.
  - 1. Final boiler locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.
- B. Examine mechanical spaces for suitable conditions where boilers will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 BOILER INSTALLATION**

- A. Equipment Mounting: Install boilers on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
  - 2. Construct bases to withstand, without damage to equipment, seismic force required by code.
  - 3. Construct concrete bases 4 inches high and extend base not less than 6 inches in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions of boiler unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic anchor support.
  - 4. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi at 28 days.
  - 5. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - 6. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 7. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 8. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.



- B. Equipment Mounting: Install boilers on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s) using elastomeric pads. Comply with requirements for equipment bases specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch.
  - 2. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
  - 3. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - 4. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 5. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 6. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 7. Install on 4-inch- high concrete base.
- C. Equipment Mounting: Install boilers using elastomeric pads. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch.
- D. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.
- E. Assemble and install boiler trim.
- F. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.
- G. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to boiler to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Install piping from equipment drain connection to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Provide an isolation valve if required.
- D. Connect piping to boilers, except safety relief valve connections, with flexible connectors of materials suitable for service. Flexible connectors and their installation are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- E. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas train connection. Provide a reducer if required.
- F. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tapplings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.

- G. Connect steam and condensate piping to supply-, return-, and blowdown-boiler tappings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.
- H. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.
- I. Install piping from safety valves to drip-pan elbow and to nearest floor drain.
- J. Boiler Venting:
  - 1. Install flue venting kit and combustion-air intake.
  - 2. Connect full size to boiler connections. Comply with requirements in Section 235100 "Breechings, Chimneys, and Stacks."
- K. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- L. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
    - a. Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level and water temperature.
    - b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- D. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
- E. Performance Tests:
  - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect component assemblies and equipment installations, including connections, and to conduct performance testing.

2. Boilers shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as determined by field performance tests. Adjust, modify, or replace equipment to comply.
3. Perform field performance tests to determine capacity and efficiency of boilers.
  - a. Test for full capacity.
  - b. Test for boiler efficiency at low fire 20, 40, 60, 80, 100, 80, 60, 40, and 20 percent of full capacity. Determine efficiency at each test point.
4. Repeat tests until results comply with requirements indicated.
5. Provide analysis equipment required to determine performance.
6. Provide temporary equipment and system modifications necessary to dissipate the heat produced during tests if building systems are not adequate.
7. Notify Architect in advance of test dates.
8. Document test results in a report and submit to Architect.

### **3.5 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain boilers. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 23 64 18.1

### MODULAR CENTRAL PLANT

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SCOPE

- A. Furnish and install where shown on the plans a Modular Central Plant which shall be referred to in this specification section as an "MCP". The MCP shall be factory-fabricated, tested, and delivered to the jobsite by the manufacturer as a complete unit (or in individual shipping sections for field reassembly). Field fabrication of the MCP other than reassembly of the shipping demounts is not acceptable. The MCP shall be complete and fully operational with all equipment, controls, electrical, piping, chemical treatment, weatherproof enclosure, structural steel (for enclosure and condenser water cooler) and all accessories as required. See Section 0 of this specification section for only that work which is required by the "On Site Contractor(s)". The MCP shall be manufactured in strict accordance with these specifications. The MCP and its related equipment shall be designed for the capacities, temperatures, flow rates, total dynamic head and other requirements as noted on the project specific equipment schedule. The MCP must also meet physical dimensions, opening sizes and weights as listed in the schedule or shown on the drawings.

##### 1.2 CERTIFICATIONS

- B. Manufacturer shall provide certified components conforming to the latest codes and standards listed in Section 0 of this specification.

##### 1.3 CODES AND STANDARDS

- C. The MCP shall be assembled with components that conform to the latest edition of the following as applicable:
1. Air Movement and Control Association, Inc. (AMC)
  2. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)
  3. All electrical components and assemblies must comply and be selected with NEMA standards or IEC when specified.
  4. International Plumbing Code (IPC)
  5. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc. (SMACNA)
  6. ETL Testing Laboratories, Inc. (ETL)
  7. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL)
  8. Cooling Tower Institute (CTI)
  9. Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute (ARI)
  10. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
  11. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- D. Provide a complete MCP submittal with all requirements as defined in the GENERAL requirements of these specifications. As a minimum, the Submittal shall include the following:
1. Project Requirements Summary with all power consuming equipment tabulated including an estimated overall MCP system full and part load KW per ton efficiency.
  2. Dimensioned plan and elevation view, including required clearances, weights, location of all piping and electrical connections.
  3. Flow Diagrams indicating equipment and piping configuration for field interface and field connections, accessories and instrumentation.
  4. Control Diagrams indicating control system architecture, sequence of operation and BAS interfacing points list.
  5. Wiring Diagrams indicating field and factory wiring.
  6. Summaries of all auxiliary utility requirements such as: electricity, water, air, etc. Summary shall indicate quality and quantity of each required utility.
  7. Documentation of all major MCP components.
  8. Installation and Start-up Instructions.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 UNIT LABELING

- A. The MCP shall be ETL listed as a complete assembly.
- B. All components used in the construction of the MCP shall be constructed in accordance with UL and/or ETL guidelines.

### 2.2 CONSTRUCTION

- C. General Construction – The MCP shall be factory assembled and shipped in once piece except where (a) otherwise specified and (b) where trailer physical limitations prevent such shipment. If this occurs, the MCP shall be shipped in sections for field re-assembly by others. The design shall be such that all equipment, piping and related components required for system operation shall be contained within and air conditioned (65°F minimum to 85°F maximum inside design temperature) weatherproof enclosure as detailed in this specification section. The only exception to this shall be the factory supplied electrical distribution panels, condenser water cooler and associated piping and supports.
- D. Structural Steel Base, Wall and Roof Frame shall be manufactured of galvanized structural steel and shall be of a welded design. Bolted construction shall be permitted only as required for field assembly of shipping demounts and/or other locations where removal of structural component is necessary for equipment access. All structural steel shall have a galvanized finish. The zinc coating shall be applied by the hot-dip process according to ASTM A123. All critical load bearing points shall be engineered and certified for structural integrity to meet both stationary and shipping thrust inertia. The entire MCP enclosure and CWC support steel shall be designed to meet or exceed the loading (wind, snow/sand, live and dead loading, lifting) as required for the site specific criteria outlined in the relevant parts of this specification.

1. The Structural Steel Base (MCP enclosure) shall be constructed of hot or cold rolled galvanized steel members sized by structural design calculations and reinforced to meet or exceed specified loads. The steel base shall include lifting lugs as required for rigging of entire shipping modules. Structural steel members shall be located to facilitate the mounting of all major equipment. Mounting of this equipment to unsupported deck plate is not permitted. The deck shall be a minimum of 1/4" galvanized diamond plate steel welded to the structural base steel. Bolting of the deck to the base steel is not permitted. The design of the base shall include the installation of drain receptacles at strategic locations as required for water drainage that may occur during routine maintenance functions on equipment and/or pipe systems or to accommodate any spills or leaks that may occur. All drains shall be piped below the "deck" to a single point outside of the perimeter steel and be coordinated with the location of the site drain(s) (site drain is by others). The drain pipe shall terminate over the site drain with a 2" air gap or per local code requirements. Piping spools required for final connection to be provided by the MCP Manufacturer. At all locations where non-ferrous metals used in the drain piping come in contact with the galvanized structural elements proper precautions to prevent galvanic corrosion shall be incorporated into the design.
  2. The Structural Steel Base (MCP enclosure) shall be insulated with a closed cell, polyurethane foam system designed for spray applications. The insulation shall have a minimum R-value of 6.26 per inch. The insulation thermal properties shall be verified by actual test values in accordance with the ASTM C 518 steady state thermal transmission test method. The insulation shall meet or exceed the following physical properties:
    - Compressive Strength: 20-25 psi
    - Core Density: 2.34 pcf
  3. The Wall Frame shall be constructed of hot or cold rolled galvanized steel members sized by structural design calculations and reinforced to meet or exceed specified loads. The Wall Frame shall be a structural "post and beam" design that includes Wall Panels for weatherproofing the MCP enclosure and as detailed in section 0.E.1.a. through 0.E.1.m. below.
  4. The Roof Frame shall be constructed of hot or cold rolled galvanized steel members sized by structural design calculations and reinforced to meet or exceed specified loads. Roof design shall incorporate Roof Panels as detailed in section 0.E.1.a. through 0.E.1.m. below. Waterproofing of roof assembly shall utilize a sloped, high rib, insulated, foam core Roof Panel to allow for proper drainage. Assembly shall include all flashing, counter flashing and gutters as required to properly weatherproof the MCP enclosure. The roof assembly shall be fabricated to allow for easy removal of the entire roof assembly and shall be mechanically fastened to the Wall Frame with the use of no more than four connection points between the Wall Assembly and the Roof Assembly. The Roof Assembly shall be designed so that only simple hand tools and no more than 2 people with the assistance of a lifting apparatus (crane, forklift, etc) are required for the removal of roof structure.
  5. A manual steel gantry or other means of motor removal shall be provided to allow for the removal of pump motors without the need for removing the MCP roof panels for all motors over 100 lbs (beyond lifting capabilities for two people).
- E. All Wall and Roof Panels shall be constructed of a foam core, galvanized steel exterior and interior metal substrate coated with a polyester finish and shall incorporate a double tongue and groove joint that shall be gasketed and mechanically fastened to the Wall and Roof Frame. Required access to equipment within the MCP enclosure shall be accomplished through designated access doors within the Wall Panel sections.

1. The Wall and Roof Panel as a minimum shall meet the following specifications:
  - a. Panel Construction: Galvanized steel exterior and interior substrate with a composite polyester coating covering a continuous CFC-free foamed-in-place polyisocyanurate (polyurethane) foam core.
  - b. Wall Panel Facing (Exterior): Exterior substrate shall be flat with heavy embossing, minimum 26ga G90 galvanized steel with a double tongue and groove off set design.
  - c. Wall Panel Facing (Interior): Interior substrate shall be lightly planked mesa ribs on 2.22" centers, minimum 26ga G90 galvanized steel with a double tongue and groove off set design.
  - d. Roof Panel Facing (Exterior): High rib and lightly planked pattern, minimum 26ga G90 galvanized steel with an overlapping side joint.
  - e. Roof Panel Facing (Interior): Shallow V groove striations on 2.22" centers, minimum 26ga G90 galvanized steel sheet.
  - f. Wall Panel Thickness: 2 inches and shall have an overall R-Value of 16.0. The panel thermal properties shall be verified by actual test values in accordance with the ASTM C 518 steady state thermal transmission test method. Aged K factor shall not exceed 0.14 @ 75°F mean temperature or 0.13 @ 40°F mean temperature.
  - g. Roof Panel Thickness: 2-1/2 inches (53.5 mm) and shall have an overall R-Value of 21.0. The panel thermal properties shall be verified by actual test values in accordance with the ASTM C 518 steady state thermal transmission test method. Aged K factor shall not exceed 0.14 @ 75°F mean temperature or 0.13 @ 40°F mean temperature.
  - h. Panel Core: Foam-in-place panel core shall be Class 1 rigid polyisocyanurate (polyurethane) foam meeting or exceeding the following physical properties:
    - Compressive Strength: 25 psi
    - Density (in-place): 2.1 to 2.5 pcf
    - Shear Strength: 28 to 32 psi
    - Closed Cell Content: 95%
    - Dimensional Stability: 14 day aged (ASTM D 2126)
      - 20°F < 1% change
      - 158°F Dry Heat < 1% change
      - 158°F Humid Heat < 1% change
  - i. The panel shall have a Factory Mutual Class 1 approval for wall and roof construction in accordance with the full scale FM 4880/4471 test program with no height restriction.
  - j. The panel shall have a Factory Mutual Class 1 Exterior Wall System approval for Windstorm in accordance the FM 4881 test program.
  - k. The panel's ability to withstand positive and negative design loads shall be verified by testing in accordance with ASTM E 72 vacuum chamber method with the standard deflection criteria to be L/180.
  - l. The weather-tightness of the installed panels system shall be tested and verified by the ASTM E 283 air infiltration method and the ASTM E 331 water penetration method. Air leakage shall not exceed 0,01 CFM per square foot of wall area at a pressure differential of 12.0 psf. Water leakage shall not be observed at the panel joint at a pressure differential less than 6.27 psf.
  - m. Finish: The interior metal substrate shall include a 20 year polyester coating to a total dry thickness of 1.0 mil including primer. The exterior metal substrate shall include a 30 year



ceramic polyester finish to a total dry thickness of 1.0 mil including primer. Color shall be "Imperial White".

- F. The MCP shall be equipped with a minimum of one (1) insulated man doors for access into the MCP enclosure. The door(s) shall be sized to allow access for maintenance personnel. The door shall include "panic bars" for module exiting in case of emergency. An insulated, double wall, manual roll-up door shall be used for equipment maintenance and replacement. The MCP shall comply with ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 15-2007 Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems and shall include, but is not limited to, refrigerant monitor, sensors, horn/strobes, shunt switches, ventilation fan(s) and make-up air louver(s) as required.
- G. Piping Systems shall be of a quantity and size as required for proper operation of the MCP. Maximum flow rate in piping shall not exceed 10 fps. All piping shall be hydrostatically pressure tested in the factory before shipping and maintain a minimum pressure of 150 PSI for a minimum of one (1) hour without any loss of pressure. Vendor must record the pressure test and include test documentation as part of the Commissioning / Operation and Maintenance manuals. All piping systems shall be complete and installed in the factory. Field fabrication or assembly of piping systems is unacceptable other than the reassembly of demounts required for shipping. Reassembly of these demounts shall utilize grooved, screwed or flanged connections only, welded connections are not permitted. Piping systems and accessories shall be as follows:
  - 1. Heating Hot Water (HHW) Piping shall be as a minimum, standard weight Schedule 40 carbon steel for piping 10" diameter and smaller and standard weight for 12" diameter pipe and larger. All piping shall conform to ASTM Standards A53 B and pipe spools shall have grooved or flanged end connections. At the Manufacturer's option Type L copper or Schedule 10 Type 304 stainless steel can be substituted. All HHW piping within the MCP enclosure shall be insulated at the factory by the MCP Manufacturer with a minimum of 1" elastomeric, self-adhering, thermal insulation for pipe sizes 4" and below and 1-1/2" elastomeric, self-adhering, thermal insulation for pipe sizes over 4". The MCP Manufacturer shall provide pre-cut insulation sections at all bolted joints and couplings that require access. After final hydrostatic pipe testing, the "On Site Contractor" shall install the pre-cut insulation sections per the MCP Manufacturer's instructions. All HHW piping not supplied with the MCP and external to the MCP enclosure shall be field insulated by the "On Site Contractor" with a minimum of 1-1/2" insulation with an aluminum jacket if not specified elsewhere in the Construction Documents.
  - 2. Plumbing Systems Piping (make-up water, drains, system pressure relief and gas) and accessories shall be as follows:
    - a. Make-Up Water (MUW) Piping shall be as a minimum, Type L copper with solder and/or threaded connections.
    - b. Sanitary Drain (SD) Piping shall be as a minimum, galvanized standard weight Schedule 40 carbon steel. All piping shall conform to ASTM Standards A53 B and pipe spools shall have grooved or threaded end connections. At the Manufacturer's option DWV copper with solder end connections can be substituted.
    - c. Gas (G) Piping shall be Schedule 40 seamless black iron with threaded or welded connections.
    - d. Boiler Relief (BR) Piping shall be Type L copper with solder and/or threaded connections.
    - e. Final connections to select vibrating equipment and/or shipping demounts shall be made with flexible hose connections. Flex connections for final natural gas hook up shall be UL listed for such use. Hoses for HHW and make-up water shall have a braided stainless steel outer jacket over a rubber inner hose with stainless steel inlet and outlet connections. Hoses shall be designed for a minimum rating of 1½ times the design pressure of the system(s) for which they are to be used.

- f. Valves  $\frac{3}{4}$ " to 2- $\frac{1}{2}$ " size shall be ball type, two-piece body, full port, bronze trim with blowout-proof stem and soldered connections. Valves  $\frac{1}{4}$ " to  $\frac{1}{2}$ " size shall be ball type, full port, brass body and soldered connections.
3. A bolted, grooved coupling system shall be used to connect piping sections (spools). Couplings shall be either rigid or flexible and shall be rated for a minimum working pressure of 250 psi. Couplings and fittings shall be constructed of ductile iron conforming to ASTM A 395, grade 65-45-15, and ASTM A 536, grade 65-45-12 and enamel coated. Coupling gasket shall be grade "E" EPM for cold and hot water temperature range -30°F to +230°F.
4. The MCP Manufacturer shall provide coalescing type dirt and air separator(s) with flanged connections in sizes noted on plans or schedules, stainless steel coalescing medium, blow-down valve, skim valve, removable end cover and automatic air vent. Dirt and air separator(s) shall be designed and built in accordance with the latest revisions of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code and stamped for 125 psi (862 kPa) working pressure. The dirt and air separator shall be installed by the "On Site Contractor" in piping external to the MCP as shown on the construction documents.
5. It is the responsibility of the "On Site Contractor" to heat trace all CW piping external of the MCP enclosure as required for freeze protection.

## 2.3 ELECTRICAL

- H. Each MCP module shall have a single-point electrical connection for all line voltage power (480 volt, 3 phase, 3 wire) at the MCP main distribution panel within a NEMA-3R enclosure. This main distribution panel shall contain a Main circuit breaker type disconnect switch sized to accommodate all module components including primary heating hot water pump(s), secondary heating hot water pump(s) and boiler(s). This distribution panel shall have a 65,000 AIC interrupt rating and contain individual lockable overload circuit breakers for all equipment for which it serves. All conduit and wire on the load side of this panel shall be factory supplied and wired.
- I. A NEMA-3R 480V – 208Y/120V 3-phase, 4 wire step down transformer connected to the 480V service shall be provided at each module to power all 208/120V equipment within the MCP. The MCP Manufacturer shall provide distribution panels with all necessary lockable breakers as required for all circuits listed above. The distribution panel shall be located on the exterior of the Lead Module adjacent to the 480V panel in a NEMA-3R enclosure. The distribution panel at the lead module shall feed all adjacent lag modules (each module distribution panel feeds the next adjacent module). All conduit and wire on the service and load side of this panel shall be factory supplied and wired.
- J. For each independent module, all installed equipment motors shall be wired to one common NEMA-12 Motor Control Center and/or UL listed Starter/VFD Panel located within the module enclosure, which shall contain all motor starters. Concepts using separate starters, separate enclosures and interconnecting conduits are not acceptable.
  1. Each load connected to the Motor Control Center and/or UL listed NEMA-12 ventilated Starter/VFD Panel shall have a disconnect switch, visible from the equipment it serves and a "Hand-Off-Auto" switch accessible to the operator without opening a panel door.
  2. Motor Control Center and/or UL listed NEMA-12 ventilated Starter/VFD Panel shall be located to meet NEC clearances as required.
  3. Motor Control Center and/or UL listed NEMA-12 ventilated Starter/VFD Panel shall use NEMA-rated magnetic starters with overload protection in each phase for all three-phase motors. IEC starters are an acceptable alternative.
- K. All wiring within the MCP shall be routed in UL listed EMT conduit, raceways, gutters or liquid tight (final connections only) with rain-tight fittings. All wire ways shall be supported to the module Wall

Frame and not interfere with Wall Panels, Roof Assembly and/or equipment removal. Lugged terminal blocks and insulated splice connectors shall be used as the means of disconnect at shipping de-mount locations.

- L. All wiring exterior to the MCP enclosure shall be routed in UL listed EMT conduit, raceways or liquid tight (final connections only) with rain-tight fittings. Control conductors within the MCP enclosure shall be plenum rated (no conduit required).
- M. The above applicable items shall be completely installed and wired at the factory according to NEC code. All electrical components used in the assembly of the MCP shall be constructed in accordance with UL and/or ETL guidelines.
- N. Nameplates or tags shall properly identify all equipment, motor starters, control enclosures, and pilot devices. Nameplates or tags shall be white faced with black lettering.

## **2.4 CONTROLS**

- O. The MCP DDC Controls System shall monitor and control all mechanical equipment and instrumentation directly involved in the production and distribution of heating hot water as specified herein. The MCP Manufacturer shall integrate all necessary controls and control logic as required to independently operate the MCP separately from any "on site" Building Automation System (BAS), but shall have the capabilities to communicate with said BAS if required. This optional communication shall take place through a BACnet IP interface. The Manufacturer's standard MCP control shall include the supply and installation of all materials, wire, raceways, controllers, valves, sensors and human interface (hardware, software and programming) as required for anonymous, MCP stand alone operation and control. Stand alone controls as a minimum shall include the following:
  - 1. Start, Stop & Sequence (lead / lag) boilers.
  - 2. Start, Stop, Sequence (lead / lag) variable flow hot water pumps speed via Variable Frequency Drives (If variable flow pumping is a requirement of the project).
  - 3. Have the capability to tie into the BAS through BACnet IP interface.
  - 4. Have the capability to monitor and log alarms (pump failures, heating hot water temperatures, etc).

## **2.5 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS OF THE MCP**

- P. Daikin Applied or approved equal.
  - 1. Alternative manufacturers which meet these specifications, must be approved in writing, and must submit a request to bid in writing to the owner or owner's consultant at least four weeks prior to bid closing. The manufacturers must provide the following information for consideration prior to entering in bid:
    - a. Equipment selection data and electrical parasitic load summary.
    - b. Control sequence of operation.
    - c. General arrangement drawing of the alternate's package demonstrating compliance with space considerations.
    - d. Piping schematic of the alternate's package.
    - e. List of similar installations with references.

- f. Line item-by-item list of deviations to the specification.

## 2.6 PRODUCTS USED IN THE ASSEMBLY OF THE MCP

- Q. Manufacturers of products used in the assembly of the MCP shall as a minimum meet the criteria as listed in the project specific equipment schedules and information contained within these project specific specifications. The following are to be used as selection criteria: water flow rates, water temperatures and water pressure drops as required inclusive of the MCP. The following are to be equaled or bettered: chiller performance, boiler performance, and pump performance.

### 1. Boiler(s)

- a. Summary of Condensing Hydronic Boiler (Dynaforce)

- 1) Summary:

- a) The heating boiler shall be a CAMUS DYNAFORCE model having an input and output rating per the equipment schedules for hydronic heating. The hydronic heating boiler shall be design certified by CSA International and shall meet the requirements of ANSI Z21.13, and CSA 4.9. The heating boiler shall be vented as a Category II or IV condensing appliance.

- 2) Performance Overview

- a) Boiler shall operate up to 99% thermal efficiency.
- b) Heat exchanger shall be fully condensing primary-secondary cylindrical counter-flow water tube design with 439 grade stainless steel construction and all welded design with constant allowable system return temperature of 40°F.
- c) Fine tuned combustion premix providing homogeneous air and gas combustion mix to a radial burner incorporating a knitted stainless steel wrap ensuring stable light off and efficient clean combustion.
- d) 5:1 gas input turn down ratio with sustained efficient combustion characteristics throughout entire modulating range.
- e) Oxides of Nitrogen (NOx) of 9 ppm corrected to 3% oxygen.
- f) Category II venting certification with Category II and Category IV available.
- g) The boiler shall be fully factory fire tested to obtain optimum combustion characteristics and to establish certified gas input rates.
- h) System safety and operating devices and controls shall be fully configured, calibrated and factory tested.
- i) The boiler shall comply with the energy efficiency requirements of the latest edition of the ASHRAE 90.1 Standard.

- 3) Combustion Chamber

- a) The combustion chamber shall be an all welded stainless steel construction and an integral part of the heat exchanger which shall be an all welded vertical cylindrical stainless steel counter-flow design consisting of an upper burner section for primary heat transfer and a lower section for extracting latent heat from flue

gases. Stainless steel access heat exchanger wraps shall be provided for ease of service and inspection of the external heat exchanger and an easily removable radial fired knitted fiber stainless steel burner to access the internal combustion chamber for inspection, service and cleaning. A window view port shall be provided for visual inspection of the boiler combustion during firing.

4) Heat Exchanger

- a) The stainless steel heat exchanger shall be tested and inspected to A.S.M.E. Section IV requirements. The A.S.M.E. Section IV seal of approval will not be provided as standard for jurisdictions not requiring the A.S.M.E Section IV seal of approval. The stainless steel heat exchanger shall be a 12 pass primary secondary design with a maximum working pressure of 160psig (1100kPa). The heat exchanger shall be of 439 grade stainless steel welded construction with a vertical cylindrical counter-flow water tube design complete with integral 439 grade stainless steel finned heat transfer tube and waterways. The heat exchanger design shall be capable of 40°F constant system return temperatures and have a fully condensing primary and secondary heat exchanger complete with condensate trap and drains. A pressure relief valve shall be furnished with the heater.

5) Gas Train

- a) The gas train shall consist of a pressure regulating electro-hydraulic proportional air/gas main gas actuator providing a slow opening, fast closing shutoff valve and proportional 1:1 air/gas ratio control, a fast closing safety shutoff gas pressure regulator with 1 PSI allowable static pressure, and a low gas pressure switch. Optional high gas pressure switch shall be available. A factory pre-set combination metering valve and orifice shall be provided for setting combustion parameters. Models DR 300 – DR 5000 operate with a 5:1 turndown ratio.

6) Burner/Combustion

- a) The combustion air fan draws gas under negative pressure and mixes it with air to generate a fine tuned air gas mixture which is delivered under positive pressure to the radial knitted stainless steel burner. Combustion modulation is established by either a pulse width modulation signal on models (DR 300 – DR 800) or by a variable frequency drive on models (DR 1000 – DR 5000). The burner shall be a 100% stainless steel vertical mounted radial fired type with stainless knitted metal fiber construction. The burner shall combust a precise amount of premixed combustion air and gas to provide equal distribution of heat for heat transfer throughout the entire heat exchanger. Combustion products are exhausted under minimum back pressure. Combustion operates with a 5:1 turn down ratio while sustaining combustion characteristics throughout the entire modulating range. Operation of up to 99% thermal efficiency and shall be certified for Oxides of Nitrogen (NOx) of 9 ppm corrected to 3% oxygen.

7) Firing Mode

- a) The burner combustion shall operate as proportional modulating with a 5:1 turndown ratio with a minimum 20% firing rate. Multiple boiler “Cascade” firing algorithms are proportional modulation. Light off shall be at no more than 50% input to assure free soft start. Combustion shall be optionally suitable for natural gas, propane and dual fuels operation.

8) Controls

- a) Standard controls include a SOLA electronic proportional integrated combination ignition limit/operator control accurate to 1°F (0.5°C) having a 4-20 mA output signal suitable for control of a variable frequency motor drive or a pulse width modulation signal output for modulating fan speeds. Controls are lead lag "Cascade" ready for control of up to eight boilers c/w Indoor outdoor reset and lead lag control. Control shall be equipped and ready with 4-20 mA remote set point or modulating control, capable with 0-10VDC remote set point and modulating control. Control is BMS Modbus RTU protocol ready and capable of other alternate protocol conversions with additional optional gateway protocol converter. Control shall be supplied with a mounted touch screen mid level display which shall also provide for control system configuration and set up, readouts of boiler target, differential and inlet/outlet temperatures as well as real time data logging and support for up to eight (8) boilers in "Cascade" sequencing application, MODBUS ready. The complete string shall be furnished with controls for low gas pressure, optional high gas pressure, fan air proving, blocked flue, water pressure, high limit, stack limit and flow switch. A flow switch shall be provided loose. Additional control safeties shall include flue gas stack temperature, flame rectification, fan speed and soft high limit.

9) Ignition Module

- a) The ignition module shall employ a proved igniter with 3 tries for ignition followed by lockout for DR 300 – DR 2500. A proven pilot is used on DR 3000 – DR 5000. Trial for ignition shall proceed with 15 seconds between retrievals. Ignition control shall include times for pre-purge, pre-ignition, ignition, and post purge.

10) Venting Options

- a) The following venting options shall be utilized:

- Category II Venting – single or combined vent.
- Category IV Outside Air (Horizontal & Vertical).
- Category IV Through-wall Venting (Horizontal & Vertical).
- Outdoor Venting.
- Category II & IV Direct Venting

- b) The following Category II and IV vent materials shall be utilized:

- Stainless or AL29-4C for all system applications.
- PPE or polypropylene for all system applications.
- PVC for select low temperature systems only – consult factory.
- CPVC for domestic hot water systems and select low temperature systems – consult factory.

11) External Jacket and Fasteners

- a) The external jacket shall be of 430 stainless steel mirror finish panels and a powder paint coated access top cover assembled utilizing interference fit locks and minimal non-strip self tap screws for ease of removal and access to the heat exchanger and combustion air / gas control.

## 2. Split Coupled Vertical In-Line Pumps

a. Summary of Vertical In-Line Pump (Single)

- 1) Provide vertical in-line pumps, single stage, single or double suction type, with pump characteristics which provide rising heads to shut off. Refer to pump schedule for pump flows and heads and motor speed, enclosure, efficiency and power

requirements and other system conditions. Provide Armstrong Series 4300 split-coupled vertical in-line units, with rigid spacer type coupling.

- 2) Pump Construction:
  - a) Pump Casing – Cast iron with 125 psig ANSI/PN16 flanges for working pressure below 175 psig at 150°F and ductile iron with 250 psig ANSI/PN25 flanges for working pressures to 375 psig at 150°F. Suction and discharge connections shall be flanged and the same size and shall be drilled and tapped for seal flush and gauge connections.
  - b) Impeller – Bronze, fully enclosed type. Dynamically balanced. Two-plane balancing is required where installed impeller diameter is less than 6 times the impeller width.
  - c) Shaft – Provide stainless steel pump shaft.
  - d) Coupling – Rigid spacer type of high tensile aluminum alloy. Coupling to be designed to be easily removed on site to reveal a space between the pump and motor shafts sufficient to remove all mechanical seal components for servicing and to be replaced without disturbing the pump or motor.
  - e) Mechanical Seals – Shall be stainless steel multi-spring outside balanced type with Viton secondary seal, carbon rotating face and silicon carbide stationary seat. Provide 316 stainless steel gland plate. Provide factory installed flush line with manual vent.
  - f) All split coupled pumps shall be provided with a lower seal chamber throttle bushing to ensure seals maintain positively cooling and lubrication.
  - g) Each driving motor shall be an industry standard vertical solid shaft, squirrel cage induction type, built to NEMA standards. Motor shall be premium efficiency and shall have an open drip proof enclosure and be suitable for a 60 Hz, 3 Phase, 460 Volt power supply and shall be connected to the pump by means of a rigid split type spacer coupling that permits removal of the mechanical seal without disturbing the pump or motor connections.
- b. Summary of Vertical In-Line Pump (dualARM)
  - 1) Supply and install as shown on the plans Armstrong Series 4302 dualARM split coupled vertical in-line centrifugal pumping unit. The cast casing with equal size suction and discharge flanges, having separate tapped flush line and pressure gauge connections, shall incorporate two radially split, single stage centrifugal pumps. Each pump shall have a cast bronze dynamically balanced impeller, stainless steel shaft, lower seal flush throttle bushing, outside balanced mechanical seal with stainless steel parts, Viton secondary seal, carbon vs. silicone carbide faces and stainless steel gland plate and hardware. Each pump shall be fitted with a factory furnished flush line to the mechanical seal. The flush line is to be fitted with a manual air vent.
  - 2) Each driving motor shall be an industry standard vertical solid shaft, squirrel cage induction type, built to NEMA standards. Motor shall be premium efficiency and shall have an open drip proof enclosure and be suitable for a 60 Hz, 3 Phase, 460 Volt power supply and shall be connected to the pump by means of a rigid split type spacer coupling that permits removal of the mechanical seal without disturbing the pump or motor connections.
  - 3) The inlet and outlet ports on the casing shall be at least one size larger than the single pump size, so that both units may operate in parallel with no loss of single pump efficiency. Each port shall be fitted with an isolation valve that allows the units

to operate in parallel or standby. It may also be used to isolate one pumping unit for servicing or removal, while the other pump remains operational.

c. Suction Guides

- 1) Furnish and install on the suction side of each primary and secondary chilled water pump an Armstrong Model SGG suction guide, with outlet flow stabilizing guide vanes, removable stainless steel strainer and fine mesh start-up strainer.
- 2) Suction guide shall be constructed with a ductile iron body. Suction guide supplied with grooved inlet connection and ANSI-125/PN16 outlet flange. The MCP Manufacturer shall, as part of the start-up procedure, inspect the strainer prior to activating the pump and replace the fine mesh start-up strainer after a short running period (24 hours maximum) and install the stainless steel strainer.

d. Multiple-Purpose Valves

- 1) Furnish and install on the discharge side of each secondary chilled water pump an Armstrong Model FTV Flo-Trex Combination Valve. Each valve is to incorporate the following three functions in one body: Tight shut-off, spring-closure type silent non-slam check valve and effective throttling with flow measurement capability. The body shall have (2) 1/4" NPT connections on each side of the valve seat (pressure and temperature metering ports). Two other connections to be supplied with brass drain plugs. Metering ports are to be interchangeable with drain ports to allow for measurement flexibility when installed in tight locations. The valve disc shall be bronze plug & disc type with high impact engineered resin seat to ensure tight shut-off and silent check operation.
- 2) The valve stem shall be stainless steel with flat surfaces provided for adjustment with open-end wrench.
- 3) The valve shall be selected and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and be suitable for the pressure and temperature specified.

### **3. Bladder Type Expansion Tank**

a. Summary

- 1) Furnish and install as shown on the plans a pre-charged steel expansion tank with a one piece molded heavy duty bladder. The tank shall have NPT system connections and a .302" – 32 charging valve connection (standard tire valve) to facilitate the on-site charging of the tank to meet system requirements. The tank must be constructed in accordance with Section VIII of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

### **4. Panelboards**

a. Summary

- 1) The requirements of the Contract, Division 16 applies to work in this section. Panelboards as Specified and as shown on the contract drawings shall be furnished and installed by the MCP Manufacturer.

b. Submittals

- 1) The manufacturer shall provide the following information for review and evaluation by the Engineer:
  - a) Shop Drawings showing circuit breaker or fusible switch layout, dimensions, voltage, phasing, continuous current capacity, and short circuit rating.



- b) Conduit entry location, cable termination sizes, mounting.
- 2) Manufacturer shall provide final as-built drawings, recording the actual circuiting of panels. Installation, Operation and Maintenance manuals shall be supplied.
- c. Related Standards
  - 1) The panelboards and circuit protection devices shall be manufactured and tested according to the latest applicable standards of the following agencies:
    - a) UL 50, Enclosures for Electrical Equipment
    - b) UL 67, Panelboards
    - c) UL 489, Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures
    - d) UL 943, Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupters
    - e) NEMA PB1-2011, Panelboards
    - f) NEMA PB1.1-2007, General Instructions for Proper Installation, Operation and Maintenance of Panelboards Rated 600 Volts or less
    - g) NEMA AB1, Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded Case Switches, and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures
    - h) Federal Specification W-P-115c, Panel, Power Distribution
    - i) NEC-2008
    - j) ANSI/NEMA KS1-2001, Enclosed and Miscellaneous Distribution Equipment Switches (600V Maximum)
- d. Quality Assurance
  - 1) The Panelboard manufacturer shall also be the manufacturer of the circuit breakers and fusible switches.
  - 2) Manufacturer shall have produced similar electrical equipment for a minimum period of 10 years.
  - 3) Products shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
- e. Delivery, Storage and Handling
  - 1) Handle and store equipment in accordance with manufacturer's Installation and Maintenance Manuals. One (1) copy of this document to be provided with the equipment at time of shipment.
- f. Manufacturers
  - 1) The panelboards shall be P-Series panelboards manufactured by Siemens Energy and Automation or pre-approved equal. Approved manufacturers are as follows:
    - a) Siemens

- b) (Approved Equal)
- g. Components
  - 1) Panelboards
    - a) Panelboards shall be as shown on the drawings. Refer to drawings for details regarding location of components, voltage and current rating of devices and other required details. Suitable for use as Service Entrance given compliance with NEC.
  - 2) Distribution Panels
    - a) Furnish Siemens Energy & Automation Series Distribution Panelboards, Type P1 - P5.
    - b) NEMA PB1, Circuit Breaker.
    - c) Main lug type panels shall be rated as indicated on the drawings.
    - d) Main breaker type panels shall be rated as indicated on the drawings.
    - e) Main switch shall be rated as indicated on the drawings with branch breakers less than or equal to 1200 amps, fusible switches less than or equal to 1200 amps.
  - 3) Bussing
    - a) Bussing shall be copper sized in accordance with UL 67 standards for temperature rise.
  - 4) Ground Bars
    - a) A non-insulated copper equipment ground bar shall be provided.
  - 5) Features
    - a) Standard power distribution panels (P1 - P5) shall be field convertible from Main Lug to Main Breaker with no increase in panel height. Field addable mains (bussed connected) sub-feed breaker or feed-thru lug kits shall also be available, without utilizing any branch circuit space.
    - b) Interior shall be bottom feed type, while maintaining readability of dead front labeling on standard power distribution panels.
  - 6) Enclosure
    - a) Boxes shall be fabricated from galvanized, galvanized steel or protected against corrosion per the requirements of NEMA 250 and UL 50. Box or panel interior shall have adjustable screws to provide easy alignment for flush mounted applications.
    - b) Surfaces of the trim shall be properly cleaned and painted gray ANSI 61.
  - 7) Trims
    - a) Trims for Lighting and Power distribution shall be as indicated on the drawings. It shall be fabricated from cold-rolled steel, painted with an ANSI-61 light gray finish and equipped with concealed hinges, flush lock and circuit directory cardholder. Trim shall have two separate supports designed to engage the box flange to

stabilize and secure the trim during installation. Trim screws to be located behind the lockable door for tamper resistance. Optional trims may be hinged type and door in door type.

- b) Trims for Distribution Panels shall be as indicated on the drawings. It shall be fabricated from cold-rolled steel, painted with an ANSI-61 light gray finish. Optional trims may be hinged type and door in door type.

8) Circuit Breakers

- a) Molded case circuit breakers shall be bolt-on devices. Short circuit rating shall be amperes symmetrical based on an integrated equipment short circuit rating and as shown on the drawings, but not less than 10k AIC at 240 VAC or 65k AIC at 460 VAC.
- b) Molded case circuit breakers shall be thermal-magnetic, quick-make, quick-break, trip free. Multi-pole breakers shall be common trip. Branch connectors to be rated 200 amps for mounting two 100 amp breakers across from each other. Main breakers to be bus-connected to main bus bar and horizontally mounted.
- c) Provide circuit breaker accessories as indicated on the drawings or panel schedules.
- d) Provide UL Listed Type HACR for all air conditioning equipment branch breakers.

9) Transient Voltage Surge Suppression

- a) If indicated on drawings, a TVSS shall be installed with a direct bus connection for low clamping and without utilizing any circuit breaker positions. It shall be listed in accordance with UL 67, 1283 and 1449. Designed and tested in accordance with ANSI/IEEE C62.45 and C62.41.
- b) Surge Capacity shall be 160kA, 240kA per phase for Distribution Panelboards, Type P1 – P4. EMI/RFI filtering shall be Active Tracking up to –50 db from 100 kHz to 100 MHz. Less than 1/2 nanosecond response time. Operating Frequency 47-63 Hz. Operating Temperature –40°C to +65°C.
- c) Factory installed TVSS units shall be available for mounting in unit space on Distribution panels.
- d) 5 year warranty with LED indicators for immediate status monitoring. Audible alarm with silencing switch and test button.

10) Installation

- a) Installed by the MCP Manufacturer

11) Adjustment and Cleaning

- a) Remove debris from panelboards and wipe dust and dirt from all components.
- b) Repaint marred and scratched surfaces with touch up paint to match original finish.

12) Testing

- a) Check tightness of all accessible mechanical and electrical connections to assure they are torqued to the minimum acceptable manufacture's recommendations.

- b) Check all installed panels for proper grounding, fastening and alignment.

13) Warranty

- a) Equipment manufacturer warrants that all goods supplied are free of non-conformities in workmanship and materials for one year from date of initial operation, but not more than eighteen months from date of shipment.

**5. Variable Frequency Drives**

a. Summary

- 1) Variable Frequency Drives shall be furnished and installed by the MCP Manufacturer for condenser water cooler fan(s) and/or pump(s) and where shown on the drawings.

b. References

- 1) NEMA ICS 3.1 - Safety Standards for Construction and Guide for Selection, Installation and Operation of Variable Frequency Drive Systems.
  - a) NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)
  - b) UL, and cUL Approved
  - c) IEEE Standard 444 (ANSI-C343)
  - d) IEEE Standard 519
  - e) IEC: 146A
  - f) UL 508C (Power Conversion)
  - g) CSA 22.2 No. 14-95 (Industrial Control Equipment)
  - h) UL 1995 (Plenum rating)
  - i) EN 50178 (LVD)
  - j) EN 61800-3
  - k) IEC 529
  - l) FCC CFR 47 Part 15 Subpart B

c. Submittals

- 1) Shop Drawings shall include:
  - a) Wiring diagrams, electrical schematics, front and side views of enclosures, overall dimensions, conduit entrance locations and requirements, nameplate legends, physical layout and enclosure details.
- 2) Product Data
  - a) Provide data sheets showing; voltage, ratings of customer use switching and over-current protective devices, short circuit ratings, and weights.
- 3) Manufacturer's Installation Instructions and Technical Manuals

- a) Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency specified under regulatory requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, installation, and starting of adjustable speed drive. Document the sequence of operation, cautions and warnings, trouble shooting procedures, spare parts lists and programming guidance.
- d. Quality Assurance
  - 1) VFD shall have a minimum MTBF (mean time between failure) rating of 28 years (245,280 Hours).
- e. Operation and Maintenance Data
  - 1) Include instructions for starting and operating VFD, and describe operating limits, which may result in hazardous or unsafe conditions.
- f. Qualifications
  - 1) Manufacturer must have a minimum of 25 years of documented experience, specializing in variable frequency drives.
- g. Delivery, Storage and Handling
  - 1) Accept VFD on site in original packing. Inspect for damage.
  - 2) Store in a clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping, or provide an additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover, to protect units from dirt, water, construction debris, and traffic.
  - 3) Handle carefully, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, to avoid damage to components, enclosure, and finish.
- h. Warranty
  - 1) Provide VFD warranty, for three years from date of startup, not to exceed 42 months from date of shipment. Warranty shall include parts, and labor allowance for repair hours.
- i. Manufacturers
  - 1) VFD shall be manufactured by ABB, Yaskawa Electric, Siemens or approved equal.
  - 2) Motors should be inverter duty rated, per NEMA MG1 parts 30 and 31, for motor-drive compatibility.
- j. Description
  - 1) Provide enclosed variable frequency drives suitable for operation at the current, voltage, and horsepower indicated on the schedule. Conform to requirements of NEMA ICS 3.1.
- k. Ratings
  - 1) VFD must operate, without fault or failure, when voltage varies plus 10% or minus 15% from rating, and frequency varies plus or minus 5% from rating.

- 2) VFD shall be 460 volts, 60 Hz, 3 Phase.
- 3) Displacement Power Factor: 0.98 over entire range of operating speed and load.
- 4) Operating Ambient Temperature: -10°C to 40°C (14°F to 104°F).
- 5) Humidity: 0% to 95% non-condensing.
- 6) Altitude: to 3,300 feet, higher altitudes achieved by derating.
- 7) Minimum Efficiency: 96% at half speed; 98% at full speed.
- 8) Starting Torque: 100% starting torque shall be available from 0.5 Hz. to 60 Hz.
- 9) Overload capability: 110% of rated FLA (Full Load Amps) for 60 seconds; 180% of rated FLA, instantaneously.
- 10) The VFD must meet the requirements for Radio Frequency Interference (RFI) above 7 MHz as specified by FCC regulations, part 15, subpart J, Class A devices.
- 11) Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) compliance:
  - a) Given the information provided by the customer's electric power single line diagram and distribution transformer data, the VFD manufacturer shall carry out an analysis of the system. The analysis reviews the potential for the proposed equipment, and any existing equipment, to meet IEEE 519 (tables 10.2 and 10.3) recommendations at the Point of Common Coupling (PCC). The result of the analysis shall determine if additional power quality improvement measures should be included in the proposal to meet the THD recommendations of IEEE 519. The PCC shall be at the primary side of the main distribution transformer.
- 12) VFDs must have a minimum short circuit rating of 65K amps RMS (100K amps RMS with a DC bus reactor) without additional input fusing.

I. Design

- 1) VFD shall employ microprocessor based inverter logic, isolated from all power circuits.
- 2) VFD shall include surface mount technology with protective coating.
- 3) VFD shall employ a PWM (Pulse Width Modulated) power electronic system, consisting of:
  - a) Input Section:
    - VFD input power stage shall convert three-phase AC line power into a fixed DC voltage via a solid state full wave diode rectifier, with MOV (Metal Oxide Varistor) surge protection.
  - b) Intermediate Section:
    - DC bus as a supply to the VFD output Section shall maintain a fixed voltage with filtering and short circuit protection.
    - DC bus shall be interfaced with the VFD diagnostic logic circuit, for continuous monitoring and protection of the power components.
    - 30 HP to 150 HP @ 208 VAC, 30 HP to 150 HP @ 240 VAC, and 40 HP to 500 HP 460 VAC, VFDs shall include a DC bus reactor to minimize reflected harmonics.
  - c) Output Section

- Insulated Gate Bipolar Transistors (IGBTs) shall convert DC bus voltage to variable frequency and voltage.
  - ◊
  - The VFD shall employ PWM sine coded output technology to power the motor.
- 4) The VFD must be selected for operation at carrier frequencies at or above 5 kHz without derating to satisfy the conditions for current, voltage, and horsepower as indicated on the equipment schedule. Exception to this requirement is allowed only for VFDs providing 506 amps or more.
  - 5) VFD shall have an adjustable carrier frequency: The carrier frequency shall have a minimum of six settings to allow adjustment in the field.
  - 6) VFD shall have embedded Building Automation System (BAS) protocols for network communications; Johnson Metasys N2, Siemens System 600 APOGEE, and Modbus/Memobus. These protocols shall be accessible via a RS-422/485 communication port.
  - 7) VFD shall have a quick disconnect, removable control I/O terminal block to simplify control wiring procedures.
  - 8) VFD shall include two independent analog inputs. One shall be 0-10 VDC. The other shall be programmable for either 0-10 VDC or 4-20 mA. Either input shall respond to a programmable bias and gain.
  - 9) VFD shall include a minimum of seven multi-function digital input terminals, capable of being programmed to determine the function on a change of state. These terminals shall provide up to 30 functions, including, but not limited to:
    - Remote/Local operation selection
    - Detection of external fault condition
    - Remote Reset
    - Multi-step speed commands
    - Run Permissive
    - Floating Control
  - 10) VFD shall include two 0-10 VDC or 4-20 mA analog output for monitoring, or "speed tracking" the VFD. The analog output signal will be proportional to output frequency, output current, output power, PI (Proportional & Integral control) feedback or DC bus voltage.
  - 11) VFD shall provide terminals for remote input contact closure, to allow starting in the automatic mode.
  - 12) VFD shall include at least one external fault input, which shall be programmable for a normally open or normally closed contact. These terminals can be used for connection of firestats, freezestats, high pressure limits or similar safety devices.
  - 13) VFD shall include two form "A" contacts and one form "C" contact, capable of being programmed to determine conditions that must be met in order for them to change state. These output relay contacts shall be rated for at least 5A at 120 VAC and shall provide up to 18 functions, including, but not limited to:
    - Speed agree detection
    - Low and high frequency detection
    - Missing frequency reference detection
    - Drive Running

- Drive Faulted
- 14) VFD shall include a power loss ride through of 2 seconds.
  - 15) VFD shall have DC injection braking capability, to prevent fan “wind milling” at start or stop, adjustable, current limited.
  - 16) VFD shall have a motor preheat function to prevent moisture accumulation in an idle motor.
  - 17) VFD shall include diagnostic fault indication in selected language, last 10 faults storage and heatsink cooling fan operating hours.
  - 18) VFD shall have a digital operator with program copy and storage functions to simplify set up of multiple drives. The digital operator shall be interchangeable for all drive ratings.
  - 19) VFD shall include a front mounted, sealed keypad operator, with an English language (or one of 6 additional international languages) illuminated LCD display. The operator will provide complete programming, program copying, operating, monitoring, and diagnostic capability. Keys provided shall include industry standard commands for Hand, Off, and Auto functions.
  - 20) VFD plain language display shall provide readouts of; output frequency in hertz, PI feedback in percent, output voltage in volts, output current in amps, output power in kilowatts, D.C. bus voltage in volts, interface terminal status, heatsink temperature and fault conditions. All displays shall be viewed in an easy-to-read illuminated LCD with International language selectability.
  - 21) VFD unit shall include the following meters to estimate use of energy:
    - Elapsed Time Meter
    - Kilowatt Meter
    - Kilowatt Hour Meter
  - 22) VFD shall include PI control logic, to provide closed loop setpoint control capability, from a feedback signal, eliminating the need for closed loop output signals from a building automation system. The PI controller shall have a differential feedback capability for closed loop control of fans and pumps for pressure, flow or temperature regulation in response to dual feedback signals.
  - 23) An energy saving sleep function shall be available in both open loop (follower mode) and closed loop (PI) control, providing significant energy savings while minimizing operating hours on driven equipment. When the sleep function senses a minimal deviation of a feedback signal from setpoint, or low demand in open loop control, the system reacts by stopping the driven equipment. Upon receiving an increase in speed command signal deviation, the drive and equipment resume normal operation.
  - 24) VFD shall include loss of input signal protection, with a selectable response strategy including speed default to a percent of the most recent speed.
  - 25) VFD shall include electronic thermal overload protection for both the drive and motor. The electronic thermal motor overload shall be approved by UL. If the electronic thermal motor overload is not approved by UL, a separate UL approved thermal overload relay shall be provided in the VFD enclosure.
  - 26) VFD shall include the following program functions:



- Critical frequency rejection capability: 3 selectable, adjustable deadbands.
  - Auto restart capability: 0 to 10 attempts with adjustable delay between attempts.
  - Ability to close fault contact after the completion of all fault restart attempts.
  - Stall prevention capability.
  - "S" curve soft start capability.
  - Bi-directional "Speed search" capability, in order to start a rotating load.
  - 14 preset and 1 custom volts per hertz pattern.
  - Heatsink over temperature speed fold back capability.
  - Terminal status indication.
  - Program copy and storage in a removable digital operator.
  - Current limit adjustment capability, from 30% to 200% of rated full load current of the VFD.
  - Motor pre-heat capability.
  - Input signal or serial communication loss detection and response strategy.
  - Anti "wind-milling" function capability.
  - Automatic energy saving function.
  - Undertorque/Overtorque Detection.
  - Preset speeds.
- 27) VFD shall include factory settings for all parameters, and the capability for those settings to be reset.
- 28) VFD shall include user parameter initialization capability to re-establish project specific parameters.
- 29) VFD shall include the capability to adjust the following functions, while the VFD is running:
- Speed command input.
  - Acceleration adjustment from 0 to 6000 seconds.
  - Deceleration adjustment from 0 to 6000 seconds.
  - Select from 5 preset speeds.
  - Analog monitor display.
  - Removal of digital operator.
- m. VFD with Manual Bypass Enclosure (Single Tower Models) and Two VFD Enclosure (Dual Tower Models)
- 1) VFD and bypass components shall be mounted inside a common NEMA 12 enclosure, fully pre-wired, and ready for installation as a single UL listed device. NEMA 12 Enclosure shall include cooling fans with finger guards and filters covered by a louver along with filtered, louvered exhaust. Fans shall be controlled by a back panel-mounted thermostat. Bypass shall include the following:
- Input, output, and bypass contactors, to disconnect power to the VFD, when the motor is running in the bypass mode.
  - 120 VAC control transformer, with fused primary and secondary.
  - Magnetic overload relay, to protect the motor while operating in the bypass mode.
  - Main fused disconnect with class J, dual element, time delay main fuses. Disconnect handle is padlockable, defeatable and interlocked.
  - Control and safety circuit terminal strip.
  - Single four position selector switch – "Bypass/Off/Test/VFD".
  - Pilot lights (22 mm LEDs) for "Drive Run" and "Bypass Run".

- 2) Four position selector switch shall provide the following operation:
    - "Bypass"- Drive input contactor (DIC) and drive output contactor (DOC) de-energized, bypass contactor (BC) energized, motor runs across the line.
    - "Off"- DIC, DOC and BC de-energized, VFD powered off, motor not running.
    - "Test"- DIC energized, VFD powered, DOC and BC de-energized, motor not running.
    - "VFD"- DIC and DOC energized, VFD powered, motor controlled by VFD, Bypass Contactor de-energized. DOC and BC are electrically interlocked to prevent them from energizing at the same time.
  - 3) In addition to the four position selector switch, the VFD Keypad shall be remotely mounted in the NEMA 12 enclosure door so that programming can be accomplished without opening actual enclosure.
- n. Fabrication
- 1) All standard and optional features shall be included in a single 12, enclosure with a UL certification label.
- o. VFD Source Quality Control
- 1) In-circuit testing of all printed circuit boards shall be conducted, to insure the proper mounting and correct value of all components.
  - 2) All printed circuit boards shall be burned in for 96 hours, at 85°C.
  - 3) Final printed circuit board assemblies shall be functionally tested, via computerized test equipment. All tests and acceptance criteria shall be preprogrammed. All test results shall be stored as detailed quality assurance data.
  - 4) All fully assembled controls shall be functionally tested, with fully loaded induction motors. The combined test data shall then be analyzed, to insure adherence to quality assurance specifications.
  - 5) Inspect and production test, under load, each completed VFD assembly.
- p. Installation in UL Panel Assembly
- 1) Install VFD where indicated, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and NEMA ICS 3.
  - 2) Tighten accessible connections and mechanical fasteners after placing VFD.
  - 3) Provide a nameplate label on each VFD, identifying rated horsepower, full load amperes, model number, service factor and voltage/phase rating.
- q. Field Quality Control
- 1) Field inspection and testing to be performed.
  - 2) Inspect completed installation for physical damage, proper alignment, anchorage, and grounding.
- r. Manufacturer's Field Services
- 1) Prepare and start systems.
- s. Adjusting

- 1) Make final adjustments to installed VFD, to assure proper operation of HVAC systems.

## **6. Chemical Water Treatment Systems**

### **a. Summary**

- 1) The MCP Manufacturer shall install a complete Chemical Water Treatment System for each Piping System (HHW). All required Chemical Water Treatment Systems shall be mounted on compact, movable skid(s). The MCP Manufacturer shall provide all interconnecting piping and tubing between the skid mounted equipment and their associated Piping System. The initial charge of chemicals, start-up and maintenance of the Chemical Water Treatment System shall be by others.

### **b. Eye Wash Station**

- 1) The Eye Wash Station shall be a portable type utilizing a replaceable eyewash water preservative, one-hand operation, gravity fed, with a 15-minute flow time and ANSI Z358.1 compliant. The unit shall not require any plumbing. The water preservative shall be replaced at 90 day intervals.

### **c. Heating Hot Water Piping System (HHW)**

- 1) The MCP Manufacturer shall provide a Chemical Water Treatment System for HHW Piping Systems. The components shall include but are not limited to flat bottom bypass feeder, water meter, valves and all interconnecting piping between the feeder and the Piping System.
- 2) The bypass feeder shall have a five (5) gallon capacity, carbon steel body, 3/4" FNPT inlet and outlet connections and be rated for 200 psi.

### **d. Glycol Feeder**

- 1) The glycol feeder for the HHW piping system shall be fully automated and autonomous. Shall be complete with low level cut-off and alarm arrangement, including a 110V signal for remote alarm, isolation valves, strainer, pressure tank with pressure control, pressure reducing valve and gauge, translucent polyethylene solution container with lid designed to accommodate relief valve piping, magnetic starter, 110V, 60 Hz motor and controls. All shall be mounted on a sturdy steel frame with 1/2" system connection and factory preset 12 psig (field adjustable) discharge.

## **7. Control Valves (Electric)**

### **a. Actuator/Valve Specification**

- 1) Warranty all actuators for a period of five years from the production date.
- 2) Electronic valve and damper actuators shall be as manufactured, brand labeled, or distributed by Belimo or approved equal.
- 3) Electronic control valves, as specified, shall be Belimo or other brands manufactured, brand labeled or distributed by Belimo.

### **b. Industrial Actuators**

- 1) Belimo SY Series Industrial Electric Actuators

- a) The valve actuator shall consist of a thermally protected capacitor-type reversible electric motor, a patented planetary worm combination drive, heater, limit switches and wiring termination blocks, all contained in a die cast aluminum enclosure. The drive system will provide continuous, smooth torque transmission throughout a 90 degree travel. Adjustable stops provide mechanical adjustment of end-of-travel. The transmission shall allow continuous duty operation of a manual override handwheel without the need to remove power, or de-clutch the manual system.
- b) Enclosure shall be designed to meet NEMA 4, 4X (weatherproof) requirements, or CSA approved for non-hazardous locations.
- c) The actuator shall employ ISO5211 mounting standards to provide for a wide range of international applications.
- d) The enclosure will have an industrial quality coating.
- e) Actuator shall have a motor rated for a minimum of 25% duty cycle in modulating applications.
- f) Actuator shall be suitable for operation in ambient temperature ranging from -4°F to +150°F [-20°C to +65°C].
- g) The motor shall be fractional horsepower; permanent split capacitor type designed to operate on 24 VAC, 110 VAC or 220 VAC, 1 pH, 50/60 Hz supply. A self resetting thermal switch shall be imbedded in the motor for overload protection.
- h) Internal terminal blocks shall be clearly marked for field wiring. A wiring diagram shall be permanently attached to the OUTSIDE of the actuator housing.
- i) Actuator will have a suitable sized NPT entry for external connections.
- j) Gears shall be hardened alloy steel, permanently lubricated. The worm drive system negates the need for a brake.
- k) Two adjustable cam actuated end travel limit switches shall be provided to control electrical movement of the actuator.
- l) 2 SPDT auxiliary switches, rated 10A at 250 VAC shall be included. The switches are factory pre-set at 3 degrees and 87 degrees rotation, and may be field adjusted.
- m) Actuator shall be equipped with a hand wheel or shaft for manual override to permit operation of the actuator in the event of electrical power failure or system malfunction. Hand wheel, where applicable, must be permanently attached to the actuator (SY2 and larger).
- n) The handwheel override shall be continuously operational regardless of the powered state of the actuator, without the need to remove electrical power if present during the override phase (SY2 and larger).
- o) The handwheel will not rotate while the actuator is electrically driven.
- p) The actuator shall provide a visual indicator beacon on the top of the housing for position status of the actuator and attached devices.
- q) Actuator shall have an internal heater and thermostat to minimize the build-up of moisture inside the sealed enclosure.

- r) Modulating units shall operate under 2-10 VDC, 4-20mA, and 1-5 VDC control modes. The default shall be 2-10 VDC control.
- c. Electronic Control Valves
- 1) The manufacturer shall be capable of providing individual valve identification tagging on each printed valve label. Valve tag identification shall be documented on the approved, submitted valve schedule.
  - 2) Valves shall be designed and provided with the proper actuators to provide the rated valve close-off.
- d. Butterfly Valves
- 1) Butterfly valves, as specified, shall be by Belimo.
  - 2) Butterfly valves 2" to 12" shall have a fully lugged, drilled and tapped, cast iron body, rated to 200 psi body pressure, with 14" and larger valves having a body pressure rating of 150 psi. Flanges shall meet ANSI 125/150 standards. The one-piece body shall feature an extended neck allowing sufficient clearance for flanges and 2" of piping insulation. The disc shall be Type 304 stainless steel and provide bi-directional bubble-tight close off in either direction for chilled or hot water or 50% glycol applications. The disc shall be polished and contoured to minimize torque and wear. Shaft shall be mechanically retained in valve body using split-thrust washer and internal retaining-ring design for ease of service. The valve body shall employ ISO5211 actuator mounting and shaft connection standards.
  - 3) The disc shall have full 360-degree concentric seating. Valves up through 12" shall utilize an internal spline for the disc-to-stem connection. External mechanical methods to achieve this mechanical connection, such as pins or screws, shall not be employed. Valves 14" and larger will utilize a dual-pin method to prevent the heavy disc from settling onto the liner, causing distortion. A phenolic backed, non-collapsing, EPDM seat shall be field replaceable and shall create a positive seal between flange face and valve body. No gaskets shall be required between the valve and flange faces. The shaft shall be supported at four locations by RPTFE bushings.
  - 4) The flow characteristic shall be modified equal percentage for two-way valves and linear for three-way valves. Valves 2" through 12" shall be rated for standard HVAC service of up to 50 psi close-off, or for heavy commercial service of up to 200 psi close-off. Valves 14" and larger shall be rated for up to 150 psi close-off.
  - 5) A permanent metal tag shall designate manufacturer, series number and materials of construction.
  - 6) Butterfly valves may be used in all two-position applications and modulating applications larger than 2", or where the close off rating of other valve styles does not meet the design requirements.
  - 7) Butterfly valves shall be sized primarily by using velocity calculations to prevent fluid velocities from exceeding 12 feet per second. For modulating applications, CV factors at sixty (60) degrees shall be used for determining delta P once size has been determined by the velocity calculations.
  - 8) High torque industrial valve actuators, >300 in-lb. of rated torque, may be used where low torque actuators are not suitable. High torque actuators shall be as manufactured or provided by Belimo.

## **8. Maintenance**

- a. Maintenance of the MCP, inclusive of all components, shall be the responsibility of the owner.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.1 FACTORY TESTING**

- A. Factory test, inspect and thoroughly clean entire unit after assembly and prior to shipment.

### **3.2 INSPECTIONS / CHECKLISTS**

- B. The MCP manufacturer shall provide within the MCP, a detailed pre-shipping inspection checklist completed at the factory. Also provided will be a pre-start checklist and delivery record which must be completed and faxed back to the manufacturer within 10 working days of start up to validate the factory warranty.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION, START-UP AND TRAINING**

- C. Work to be performed by the "On Site Contractor"
  1. The Contractor shall provide to the MCP manufacturer a final Installation, Start-up and Owner Training schedule 30 days prior to MCP shipment.
  2. Completely flush and clean "house" piping and equipment and provide report of compliance from an independent testing agency that the system(s) has been cleaned to the specified levels. See appropriate specification sections for flushing and cleaning criteria.
  3. Prior to unloading and handling the sections of the equipment the Contractor shall obtain, read and be familiar with the handling and installation instructions.
  4. Removal of protective wrapping such as shrink-wrap, wood crating, and packing as required.
  5. Receiving (including interior and exterior inspection).
  6. Inspect interior and exterior and report any obvious damage or equipment shifting that may have taken place between the time the unit left the factory and arrived at job curb.
  7. Hoisting and rigging the section(s) from the delivery truck(s) into final location as per the instructions supplied with the unit.
  8. Join the modules (if plant shipped in sections) following the instruction supplied with the unit.
  9. Leveling and shimming of modules as needed, and as per Manufacturer's instructions.
  10. Re-install any equipment, pipe, stacks, or enclosure trim shipped loose due to shipping constraints.
  11. Tighten all mechanically fastened connections that may have vibrated loose during shipping.
  12. Insulate all MCP interconnecting piping as required under Section 0.6. per the MCP manufacturer's instructions.

13. Final flushing and filling of the heating water system.
  14. All field connections to the MCP including piping, electrical, and drainage.
  15. Connect all utilities needed for the mechanical system including domestic water, drainage, gas, and electricity.
  16. Make all hydronic connections leading to and away from the MCP and the base building.
  17. Field-installed equipment including pressure/temperature transmitters, flow meters and their associated wiring to the unit (a list field installed equipment will be supplied, along with installation instructions).
  18. Touch up and paint scratches and minor dents occurred during hoisting and rigging and broom clean interior of the MCP.
  19. Permits and inspections needed to start system up.
  20. Assist MCP Manufacturer's authorized startup personnel as required (verify function of equipment and items on the "house" side of the system, open and close valves, bleed air from high points of "house" system, etc).
  21. Water balance as required to verify system flow rates are as listed and/or specified.
  22. Initial chemicals and monthly chemical service that is required to maintain water quality as listed in these specifications and/or to the manufacturers recommendations listed in the operation and maintenance manuals, whichever is more stringent.
  23. Prior to final Owner acceptance, the Contractor shall clean the interior and exterior of the unit. Floor shall be broom clean. All Abrasions shall be touched up to match the existing surfaces.
- D. Work to be performed by the "MCP Manufacturer"
1. The MCP manufacturer shall provide one (1) supervisory personnel for technical information assistance during the entire MCP installation process.
  2. The manufacturer shall start-up the MCP only after items 0.C.1 through 0.C.22 are completed and at a time that has been scheduled and coordinated with the Owner by the Contractor. The manufacturer's start-up technician shall perform and document all start-up functions necessary for MCP operation and compile them into a Start-Up and Warranty Manual that shall be provided to the Contractor for review and distribution to the Owner.
  3. The manufacturer shall provide two (2) O&M manuals and training for designated Owner personnel as necessary for the personnel to properly operate and maintain the MCP.

### **3.4 GUARANTEES AND WARRANTIES**

- E. The MCP Manufacturer shall warrant all material and workmanship provided by the same, for a period of two (2) years from start up or thirty (30) months from date of shipment whichever occurs first. The MCP Manufacturer shall supply replacement parts and labor within the warranty period. The Owner shall be responsible for any and all required refrigerant, chemicals, filters or other consumables.
- F. Warranty validation requires that all the maintenance be performed as recommended in the O&M. Along with those items, it is also necessary to provide the service reports on a monthly, quarterly and yearly basis as referenced on the manufacturer's inspection maintenance forms.

- G. During the warranty period the MCP Manufacturer shall have a qualified service technician available for emergency service during normal building occupancy hours. He shall make such emergency service calls within (8) hours of notification by Owner.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 23 65 00

### CLOSED CIRCUIT COOLERS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes factory assembled and tested, closed circuit mechanical induced-draft vertical discharge closed circuit cooler.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, pressure drop, performance curves with selected points indicated, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Complete set of manufacturer's prints of equipment assemblies, control panels, sections and elevations, and unit isolation. Include the following:

1. Assembled unit dimensions.
2. Weight and load distribution.
3. Required clearances for maintenance and operation.
4. Sizes and locations of piping and wiring connections.
5. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring. Differentiate between manufacturer installed and field installed wiring.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: Each unit to include operation and maintenance manual.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Verification of Performance:

1. The thermal performance shall be certified by the Cooling Technology Institute in accordance with CTI Certification Standard STD-201. Lacking such certification, a field acceptance test shall be conducted within the warranty period in accordance with CTI Acceptance Test Code ATC-105, by a Certified CTI Thermal Testing Agency. The Evaporative Heat Rejection Equipment shall comply with the energy efficiency requirements of ASHRAE Standard 90.1.
2. Unit Sound Performance ratings shall be tested according to CTI ATC-128 standard. Sound ratings shall not exceed specified ratings.

B. Unit shall meet or exceed energy efficiency per ASHRAE 90.1

## **1.5 WARRANTY**

A. Submit a written warranty executed by the manufacturer, agreeing to repair or replace components of the unit that fail in materials and workmanship within the specified warranty period.

1. The Entire Unit shall have a comprehensive five (5) year warranty against defects in materials and workmanship from date of shipment.
2. Fan Motor/Drive System: Warranty Period shall be Five (5) years from date of unit shipment from Factory (fan motor(s), fan(s), bearings, mechanical support, sheaves, bushings and belt(s)).
3. Heat Transfer Coil: Warranty Period shall be One (1) year from date of unit shipment from Factory.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide closed circuit coolers manufactured by one of the following:

1. EVAPCO Model eco-ATWB 20-3N36-Z
2. Approved Substitute

### **2.2 THERMAL PERFORMANCE**

A. Each unit shall be capable to cool 2,200.00 GPM of water entering at 95.00° F leaving at 85.00° F at a design wet bulb of 80.00° F with a pressure drop across the coil not to exceed 24.74 psi.

### **2.3 IBC COMPLIANCE**

A. The unit structure shall be designed, analyzed, and constructed in accordance with the latest edition of International Building Code (IBC) for: IP = 1.0, SDS = 1.6; z/h = 0, P = 288 psf.

### **2.4 COMPONENTS**

A. Description: Factory assembled and tested, induced draft counter flow closed circuit cooler complete with fan, coil, louvers, accessories and rigging supports

B. Materials of Construction

1. All cold water basin components including vertical supports, air inlet louver frames and panels up to rigging seam shall be constructed of Type 316 Stainless Steel. All factory cold water basin seams shall be welded for water tight construction.
2. Casing and fan section, including channels, angle supports, and fan cowl shall be

constructed of Type 316 Stainless Steel. Fan guard shall be constructed of Type 304 Stainless Steel. "Series 300" stainless steel will not be acceptable as equivalent to Type 304 or Type 316 Stainless Steel.

C. Fan(s):

1. Fan(s) shall be high efficiency axial propeller type with aluminum wide chord blade construction. Each fan shall be dynamically balanced and installed in a closely fitted cowl with venturi air inlet for maximum fan efficiency.

D. Drift Eliminators

1. Drift eliminators shall be constructed entirely of Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) in easily handled sections. Design shall incorporate three changes in air direction and limit the water carryover to a maximum of 0.001% of the recirculating water rate.

E. Water Distribution System

1. Spray nozzles shall be zero-maintenance precision molded ABS with large 1-1/4" diameter orifice threaded into branch piping with internal sludge ring to eliminate clogging. Spray header, branches, and riser shall be Schedule 40 Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) for corrosion resistance.

F. Heat Transfer Media

1. Heat transfer coil shall be elliptical tubes of prime surface steel, encased in steel framework with entire assembly hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. All coil rows shall feature extended surface fins designed with sloping tubes for liquid drainage and air pressure tested to 390 psig. ASME/ANSI B31.5.

G. Pump

1. Unit shall have EISA close-coupled centrifugal pump with mechanical seal. The pump shall be installed in a vertical position so that water will drain from the pump when the cold water basin is emptied. Pump motor shall be totally enclosed with protective canopy for outdoor operation.

H. Bleed-off

1. Unit shall have a waste water bleed line with a manual adjustable valve provided.

I. Air Inlet Louvers

1. The air inlet louver screens shall be constructed from UV inhibited polyvinyl chloride (PVC) and incorporate a framed interlocking design that allows for easy removal of louver screens for access to the entire basin area for maintenance. The louver screens shall have a minimum of two changes in air direction and shall be of a non-planar design to prevent splash-out and block direct sunlight & debris from entering the basin.

J. Make up Float Valve Assembly

1. Make up float assembly shall be a mechanical brass valve with an adjustable plastic float.

K. Pan Strainer

1. Pan Strainer(s) shall be all Type 304 Stainless Steel construction with large area removable perforated screens.

**2.5 MOTORS AND DRIVES**

A. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 23 Section "Motors"

B. Fan Motor

1. Fan motor(s) shall be totally enclosed, ball bearing type electric motor(s) suitable for moist air service. Motor(s) are Premium Efficient, Class F insulated, 1.15 service factor design. Inverter rated per NEMA MG1 Part 31.4.4.2 and suitable for variable torque applications and constant torque speed range with properly sized and adjusted variable frequency drives.

2. Fan motor(s) shall include strip-type space heaters with separate leads brought to the motor conduit box.

C. Fan Drive

1. The fan drive shall be multigroove, solid back V-belt type with QD tapered bushings designed for 150% of the motor nameplate power. The belt material shall be neoprene reinforced with polyester cord and specifically designed for evaporative equipment service. Fan sheave shall be aluminum alloy construction. Belt adjustment shall be accomplished from the exterior of the unit.

D. Fan Shaft

1. Fan shaft shall be solid, ground and polished steel. Exposed surface shall be coated with rust preventative.

E. Fan Shaft Bearings

1. Fan Shaft Bearings shall be heavy-duty, self-aligning ball type bearings with extended lubrication lines to grease fittings located on access door frame. Bearings shall be designed for a minimum L-10 life of 100,000 hours.

F. Vibration Switch

1. Unit shall be provided with a Vibration Cutout Switch, operating on 120 VAC feed, to protect the fan and drive assembly from damage in the event of excess vibration. Vibration switch shall be DPDT.

**2.6 MAINTENANCE ACCESS**

A. Fan Section

1. Access door shall be hinged and located in the fan section for fan drive and water distribution

system access.

#### B. Basin Section

1. Framed removable louver panels shall be on all four (4) sides of the unit for pan and sump access.

#### C. Internal Working Platform

1. Internal working platform shall provide easy access to the fans, belts, motors, sheaves, bearings, all mechanical equipment and complete water distribution system. The coil surface shall be an acceptable means of accessing these components.

#### D. External Service Platform with Ladder

1. An external service platform compliant with OSHA shall be provided at the motor access door of the unit extending the full length of the access door. Each platform shall have at least a 36 inch wide walking surface. The platforms shall have galvanized steel grating, supported by galvanized steel framework attached to the unit and surrounded by a handrail, knee rail and toe plate system that is compliant with OSHA. Mounting channels shall be the same material as the casing section (galvanized or stainless steel). A vertical ladder shall be provided from the base of the unit to the platform.

#### E. Motor Davit with Base

1. Unit shall be provided with mechanical external motor davit assembly which facilitates in removal of larger fan section components. Davit arm shall be constructed of aluminum and base shall be galvanized steel.

#### F. Louver Access Door

1. Hinged access door in louver shall be provided.

### **2.7 ACCESSORIES**

#### A. Basin Heater Package

1. Cold water basin shall be fitted with copper element, electric immersion heater(s) with a separate thermostat and low water protection device. Heaters shall be selected to maintain +40° F pan water at 0° F ambient temperature.

2. Electric immersion heater package shall include a factory-supplied NEMA 4x enclosure containing a magnetic contactor with 120 VAC control circuit and main power disconnect. Control package wired by others.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 23 73 13**  
**AIR HANDLING UNIT**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 WORK INCLUDED**

- A. This specification is based on manufactured by Annexair Inc. Manufacturers of alternate equipment must be approved to bid via addendum, in writing by the specifying engineer, at least two weeks prior to bid time in order for their bid to be accepted by the contractor. If the equipment is not pre-approved then under no circumstances shall the contractor invest any time or money in receiving submittals or considering the equipment. Costs associated with dimensional, performance or other deviations from the specified equipment, including engineering costs to evaluate such deviations, shall be paid by the contractor
- B. The units shall be installed in strict accordance with the specifications. Unit(s) shall be complete with all components and accessories as specified. All units shall be factory assembled, internally wired, and 100% run tested to check operation, fan/blower rotation and control sequence before leaving the factory. Wiring internal to the unit shall be numbered for simplified identification. Units shall be ETL listed and labeled, classified in accordance with ANSI-UL 1995 / CAN/CSA C22.2 No.236.
- C. Equipment start-up and project inspection by qualified factory trained representative.

**1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. All units shall be factory run tested before shipping. A proof copy of the test shall be placed in the unit electrical power & control panel.
- B. Unit(s) shall bear the ETL label, tested in accordance to UL 1995. Electrical components shall be UL listed.
- C. Fans shall be tested in an AMCA certified laboratory; insulation shall comply with NFPA 90A.
- D. Coils shall be tested in accordance to AHRI 410.
- E. Energy recovery exchangers shall be in accordance to AHRI 1060, "Rating Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Equipment" and Eurovent standards.
- F. Filters shall be tested in accordance to ASHRAE 52.
  
- G. The unit manufacturers construction shall have an independent testing agency test the air leakage, panel deflection and sound pressure levels for supply airflows of minimum 20,000 CFM. The air leakage of the unit(s) shall not exceed 1% at 8" inches H<sub>2</sub>O positive static pressure and a copy of the report must be submitted upon request. Unit shall be constructed to limit frame and panel deflection to 1/250<sup>th</sup> of the panel length at 8" inches H<sub>2</sub>O positive static pressure and a copy of the report must be submitted upon request. The unit shall also be tested in accordance with ANSI S12.34-1998 and instrumentation used must be in compliance

with the requirements of AMCA 300 for sound readings. The sound tests conducted shall report overall sound power and pressure readings for supply air outlet, return air inlet and casing radiated.

- H. Products shall be supported with a warranty that ensures the product will be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one year after shipment.

### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 15XXX. Include product description, model, dimensions, component sizes, rough-in requirements, service sizes, and finishes. Include rated capacities, operating weights, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.
- C. Submit operation and maintenance data.
- D. Submit coordination drawings. Include unit details, plans, elevations, sections, details of components. Show support locations, type of support, weight and required clearances.
- E. Submit wiring diagrams including power, signal, and control wiring.

### **1.4 WARRANTY**

- A. Annexair warrants each product to be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal and proper use, and will within twelve (12) months from date of start up and not exceed eighteen (18) months from shipment, repair or replace any part which, when returned to our factory transportation charges prepaid, and upon inspection by Annexair, proves to be defective. This warranty does not include any labor or service charges that occur under this warranty. Minimum (5) five year compressor warranty shall be provided, parts only – labor not included
- B. The installing contractor must be responsible for warranty service and maintenance after the equipment is placed into operation.
- C. NOTIFICATION: Any modification to the Annexair equipment, including the controls and sequence of operation, without specific approval in writing by Annexair, will result in a violation of the equipment warranty

### **1.5 REFERENCES**

All components selected for this project shall conform to the following Standards:

- A. AFBMA 9: Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings
- B. AMCA Standard 99: Standards Handbook
- C. AMCA /ANSI Standard 204: Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans
- D. AMCA Standard 210: Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Ratings
- E. AMCA Standard 300: Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans
- F. AMCA 320; Laboratory Method for Sound Testing of Fans Using Sound Intensity
- G. AMCA Standard 500: Test Methods for Louvers, Dampers and Shutters
- H. AHRI Standard 1060: Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Ventilation Equipment
- I. AHRI Standard 410: Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coil
- J. ASHRAE Standard 52: Gravimetric and Dust Spot Procedures for Testing Air Cleaning Devices Used in General Ventilation for Removing Particulate Matter



- K. ASHRAE 52.2: Procedures for Testing Air Cleaning Devices Used for Removing Particulate Matter
- L. ASHRAE 84-91: Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers
- M. ASHRAE/ANSI Standard 111: Practices for Measurement, Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Building Heating, Ventilation, Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Systems
- N. ASTM A-525: Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process
- O. NEMA MG-1: National Electrical Manufacturers Association Motor Standards
- P. NFPA 90A: Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
- Q. SMACNA: Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association
- R. UL Standard 1995: Heating and Cooling Equipment
- S. UL Standard 900: Test Performance of Air Filter Units

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate location and installation of air-handling units. Revise locations and elevations to suit field conditions and to ensure proper operation.
- B. Coordinate location and installation of air handling units with the electrical, mechanical, and plumbing contractors.

## PART II – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HOUSING

- A. THERMO-COMPOSITE PANELS (*with thermal break frame*)
  1. The unit housing shall be no-through metal with 2” Thermo-Composite and foam panel construction - interior and exterior Thermal break construction using a gasket to insulate two panels is not an acceptable equivalent to a no-through metal constructed casing. No-through metal construction will be inherent to all the component construction in the assembly.
  2. All panels and access doors shall be double wall construction with R14 foam insulation for every 2” of construction. All foam insulation must be Greenguard certified®. Any insulation incorporating CFCs or HCFCs in its construction is strictly prohibited from this application.
  3. Unit casing will have no exterior condensation at interior AHU temperatures down to 43F while unit exterior conditions are maintained at 95 F dry bulb / 85 F wet bulb. The air handling unit manufacturer general construction shall be tested to demonstrate the thermal performance of the unit casing. The test shall include placing the entire test unit in a climate controlled environment and exposing the unit to the conditions mentioned previously. If the manufacturer does not have access to such equipment, an independent testing agent must be hired to transport the test unit to a qualified test facility, and perform the test at the expense of the manufacturer. Inability to provide this option to the engineer will make the manufacturer ineligible to bid on this project. The unit housing shall be constructed from a frame, base and panel assembly. Unit shall be completely factory assembled and shipped as shown on drawings.
  4. The panels shall be tested in accordance with SMACNA and ASHRAE 111 to have a deflection of no more than L/1150 at 10” and withstand air pressures up to 8” w.c with less than 1% leakage. Fire resistance of the panel will be in compliance with UL 94 rated at 5VA; and a flame spread / smoke development in compliance with UL 723 ASTM E84 Class 1 rating.
  5. Thermo-Composite or aluminum panels shall be provided for the entire unit construction, including but not limited to, walls, doors, floors, roof, interior partitions, and electrical compartment. Panels shall be non-load bearing type.

6. The frame shall consist of anodized extruded aluminum profiles which incorporates a thermally broken construction; welded together for reinforcement and insulated for superior thermal performance.
7. Base structure shall be fully welded G-90, painted exterior, and have integral lifting lugs which can be removed once the unit is installed.
8. All roof and side wall seams shall be positively sealed to prevent water and air leakage. The OA and EA compartment shall have 1" PVC drains extended to exterior of unit
9. Access doors shall be provided to all major components to facilitate quick and easy access. Access doors will be made from the same material as the unit casing and shall incorporate thermal break construction. Fan access door(s) shall have Allegis type handles, with one handle interlinking multiple latches and threaded insert fastening handles for all remaining doors. If access doors do not open against unit operating pressure, provide safety latches that allow access doors to partially open after first handle movement and fully open after second handle movement. Removable panels provided for equipment pull out for coil(s), and air to air heat exchanger section(s) shall have key tooled threaded insert fasteners. Hinges shall be Nylon hinge type designed to open 180 degrees.
10. Unit shall have the entire exterior finished with a PVDF coating designed for UV resistance. Panels shall be painted Annexair standard color white gray RAL 9002. Panels shall pass ASTM B117 3000-hour salt fog resistance test and ASTM D4585 3000-hour moisture condensation resistance test. In addition, paint must meet AAMA 620-02 standard for color, chalking, gloss retention, and abrasion resistance.
11. The air handler unit casing shall be provided with a lifetime warranty against corrosion resistance under normal use.

#### **B. WEATHER HOODS**

The outdoor intake weather hood shall be completely constructed in aluminum for superior corrosion resistance. The hood shall ship loose for field installation by the installing contractor. Painted galvanized hoods shall not be acceptable due to its susceptibility to corrosion. The outdoor air hood shall be designed with a 4" extruded aluminum louver, bird screen and a plenum enclosure with drain holes. The louver blades shall be drainable type with a maximum 45 degree angle and curved with integral rain baffle. The louver design shall not allow more than 0.03 oz/ft<sup>2</sup> water penetration when tested in accordance to AMCA 500. The pressure drop of the complete hood assembly shall not exceed 0.05"wc at a maximum 500 fpm face velocity. A Pre-filter rack system shall be installed within the weather hood enclosure to prevent outdoor air dust and debris from entering the damper and unit casing plenum. Pre-filters installed inside the unit casing plenum and downstream of the outdoor damper will not be acceptable as this will increase overall maintenance on the damper, reduce indoor air quality and promote mold and bacteria growth. Filter access in the hood shall be accomplished via the louver that is installed with a stainless steel piano hinge and spring loaded latch. No tools or ladders shall be required to access the pre-filters in the weather hood assembly. The hood shall be insulated with header insulation constructed from 304 stainless steel shielding for increased energy efficiency and reduced airstream heat gain. Stainless steel shields to be isolated from distributor using plenum rated synthetic foam strips. Insulation to provide air-gap to minimize conduction and The unit housing

#### **C. EXHAUST AIR LOUVER**

The exhaust air outlet louvers shall be 2" extruded aluminum, with non-restricting blade design and bird screen.

## 2.2 FANS

### A. PLENUM FANS

1. Fans shall be direct drive radial centrifugal fans with free running impeller. No fan belts will be acceptable for this application. Fans shall be compact, optimized and construction made of galvanized sheet steel with backward curved 7-blade high efficiency impeller, protected by an epoxy powder coating.
2. To reduce vibration, the impeller shall be balanced with hub to an admissible vibration severity of less than 2.8 mm/s in conformity with DIN ISO 14694 and proof shall be supplied for each individual impeller. Tests shall be made according to DIN ISO 1940 Part 1, quality of balancing G2.5/6.3.
3. The single inlet shall be mounted onto constant speed direct drive motor, equipped with an air flow optimized inlet cone from galvanized sheet steel.
4. Fans shall be completely certified as per ISO 5801 and in accordance to AMCA standards.

### B. PLUG FANS

1. Wall mounted, direct driven plenum fans (horizontal or vertical) shall be installed with perimeter gasketed isolation.
2. Fans shall be direct drive radial centrifugal fans with free running impeller. Fans shall be compact, optimized and construction made of galvanized sheet steel with backward curved 7-blade high efficiency impeller, protected by an epoxy powder coating.
3. To reduce vibration, the impeller shall be balanced with hub to an admissible vibration severity of less than 2.8 mm/s in conformity with DIN ISO 14694 and proof shall be supplied for each individual impeller. Tests shall be made according to DIN ISO 1940 Part 1, quality of balancing G2.5/6.3.
4. The single inlet shall be mounted onto constant speed direct drive motor, equipped with an air flow optimized inlet cone from galvanized sheet steel.
5. Fans shall be completely certified as per ISO 5801 and in accordance to AMCA standards.

### C. FAN ISOLATIONS

1. The fan housing and motor assembly shall be isolated from the unit cabinetry with a minimum 95% efficient spring isolators or high efficiency rubber isolators or seismic isolators.
2. In addition, fans shall have flexible canvas to reduce vibration transmission.

## 2.3 FAN MOTORS

- A. The fan motors shall meet NEMA standard dimensions and comply with the Energy policy Act of 1997.
- B. Motors shall have premium efficiencies with low noise and vibration output. Motors shall be certified and built in accordance to ISO 9001 quality control system
- C. Motors shall have
- D. Units shall be designed for application. Please refer to the unit schedule for the application type.
- E. Option: A shaft grounding brush kit will be provided to prevent electrical damage to motor bearings by safely channeling harmful shaft currents to ground.

## 2.4 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVE (VFD)

- A. VFDs will be used to set or regulate the fan speed and airflow for these units.
- B. All VFD's shall be ABB model ACH550 units to match owner's existing VFD's installed at other locations.
- C. The VFD shall have PID function for constant flow applications
- D. The VFDs will be installed with integral brake transistor, overload protection, and adjustable pulse-width modulation (PWM).
- E. The VFD shall use Insulated Gate Bipolar Transistor (IGBT) technology to convert three phase input power to coded PWM output and have 4-20mA analog output terminals that are fully programmable for variable flow applications.
- F. The VFD shall be equipped with a keypad with status indicators, easy access functions, and monitoring functions during motor operation.
  
- G. In the event of a momentary power failure or fault the VFD shall read the inverter speed and direction of a coasting motor and shall automatically restart the motor smoothly.
- H. Technical support will be provided by the VFD manufacturer.
- I. VFDs shall be installed as shown on drawings with contactors, relays, and all specified accessories.
- J. VFDs will be installed.

## **2.5 FILTERS**

### **A. PRE-FILTERS**

- 1. Filters shall be factory installed upstream of the heat exchanger and coils,
- 2. The filters shall be MERV 8.
- 3. Each filter shall consist of 100% synthetic media, expanded metal on the downstream and enclosing with high wet-strength beverage board with diagonal support bonded on air entering and air exiting side of each pleat.
- 4. Filters shall be placed in a completely sealed, galvanized holding frame with quick release latches for easy replacement.

## **2.6 DAMPERS**

### **A. NON-INSULATED**

- 1. Dampers shall be installed where shown on the drawings.
- 2. Dampers shall be low leak type with rubber edges, opposed blades, and constructed from extruded aluminum.
- 3. Galvanized dampers will not be acceptable.
- 4. The exhaust air outlet shall have a standard aluminum gravity type damper, unless otherwise noted below.
- 5. Dampers shall be installed in the compartments (as shown on the drawings) with linkage rod for actuators
- 6. Actuators shall be 24V factory installed: two-position or modulating (please refer to the unit schedule).
- 7. All actuators shall have spring return mechanism and auxiliary switches. Dampers will be installed in the failed close positions unless otherwise noted

## 2.7 CONDENSING UNIT

### A. WATER SOURCE HEAT PUMP UNIT WITH VARIABLE SPEED COMPRESSORS

1. Provide integral water source heat pump (WSHP) section(s) where indicated on the schedule. The section shall be contained in the same housing as the rest of the unit (see housing details). The shall be manufacturer by the same manufacturer as the air handling unit. Factory mounting a third parties is not acceptable. The shall be mounted within a framing system that supports all components, independent of the air handling unit casing. An access panel shall be provided to the compressors and adequate clearance shall be provided for the removal and replacement of any refrigeration component without having to remove the entire model. It is not acceptable to have to remove the unit casing or the entire module to replace any refrigeration component. The Section shall include a floor drain as a protective element to remove any water build up in the section. Exterior units shall have a pipe chase located in the same compartment as the Pipe chases exterior to the air handling casing are not acceptable. Exterior units shall also include an auxiliary heater to provide freeze protection to the water circuit. Exterior units without auxiliary heaters are not considered adequately protected for winter conditions and will be rejected. The auxiliary heater shall be on the same electrical circuit as the unit.
2. Compressors shall be variable speed scroll type that can modulate from 30% to 100% capacity per compressor. Variable capacity compressors which do not modulate the speed of the scrolls are not considered equal to a variable speed scroll since they consume more energy at the same capacity output. Mechanically stepped scrolls which are unloaded via a digital signal to a solenoid valve, in a timed sequence, will not be acceptable for this application. The variable speed scrolls shall be operated via a factory supplied variable speed controller per compressor, and all tandem compressors will modulate in unison. Using a single variable speed controller on the lead circuit alone is not efficient during part load conditions, therefore will not be acceptable for this application. Each compressor and controller assembly shall be equipped with the following features: electronic expansion valve, reversing valve (WSHP only), a crankcase heater function, anti-short cycling, built-in phase loss detector, EMC filter, oil return management system, and reverse rotation protection. Compressors shall be mounted on rubber isolators to limit vibration transmission and shall include a vibration eliminator conduit on both the suction and discharge refrigeration lines. Vibration eliminator conduit shall be pressure tested up to 620 psig.

3. A coaxial coil shall be provided for all water to refrigerant heat transfers. Plate type exchangers are not permitted as they require routine maintenance which is not acceptable for this application. The coaxial coil shall be \_\_\_\_\_ in construction and completely insulated. The refrigeration suction line shall also be completely insulated. All water connections (in and out) will be connected by the mechanical contractor. The refrigeration system shall be equipped with a factory programmed and installed controller that will modulate the system based on a 0 -10v signal. Head pressure and suction pressure control logic shall be provided on all \_\_\_\_\_ models. Head pressure and suction pressure control is required in both cooling and heating operations to account for changes in entering water temperature. Systems that do not have head pressure control logic built into the water source heat pump or water cooled condenser shall not be considered for this application as head pressure control is considered a required safety feature. A \_\_\_\_\_ control valve shall be provided and installed by \_\_\_\_\_
4. Hose kits shall be provided as ship loose items. Hose kits to include Belimo valve and actuator, automatic flow control balancing valve, strainer, isolation valve, and all necessary piping and components to provide a one inlet and outlet water connection per coaxial coil.
5. High pressure relief plug with extension to unit exterior will be provided on units where required by code.
6. The entire section shall be factory piped, wired and charged with R-410A. Each refrigeration system shall be factory tested.
7. The following components shall be included in each refrigeration circuit: Liquid line filter dryer, hi and lo pressure switch, hi and lo pressure transducers, suction and liquid lines shutoff valves and suction line accumulators. In addition, refrigeration piping must use Shrader type connections for all components, including but not limited to valves and transducers. Under no circumstances shall the units leave the factory without a complete run test and a copy of the QC report shall be provided upon request.
8. Minimum (5) five year compressor warranties shall be provided.

## 2.8 COILS

### A. DX COILS

1. Coils shall be factory installed in the unit.
2. Coils shall be designed with respective circuits to match the design requirements. All coils shall have a distributor per circuit connection. Coils shall be circuited for counter-flow heat transfer to provide maximum mean effective temperature difference for maximum heat transfer rates.
3. Primary surface shall be round seamless (3/8" O.D.) copper tube staggered in the direction of airflow. Secondary surface shall consist of rippled aluminum plate fins for higher capacity and structural strength. Fins shall have full drawn collars to provide a continuous surface cover over the entire tube for maximum heat transfer. Tubes shall be mechanically expanded into the fins to provide a continuous primary to secondary compression bond over the entire finned length for maximum heat transfer rates. Headers shall have intruded tube holes to provide a large brazing surface for maximum strength and inherent flexibility.
4. Casing shall be constructed of continuous \_\_\_\_\_
5. The complete coil shall be tested with 315 pounds air pressure under warm water and be suitable for operation at 250 psig working pressures. Maximum finned coil height shall be 60" and shall not exceed 500 FPM face velocity.
6. Drain pan shall be provided on cooling coils. Cooling coils shall sit on stainless steel tubular support rails, which shall stand a minimum of (2) two inches above the highest point of the floor drain pan. Stacked coils shall be provided for larger airflows and \_\_\_\_\_

intermediate drain pans shall be provided for each coil bank. Drain pans shall be stainless steel with 1.25" stainless steel drain connections on one side only. Pan shall be sloped in two planes.

7. All coils shall be rated in accordance with AHRI standard 410.

#### B. DX HOT GAS REHEAT

1. Coils shall be factory installed in the unit.
2. The hot gas reheat coil shall be installed at minimum 8" from the moisture producing DX cooling coil. A plexi glass between the two items shall be required to visually inspect the DX cooling coil surface area, and also have the ability to clean the coils when necessary.
3. A modulating valve shall be provided to control air leaving temperature for dehumidification.
4. Coils shall be designed with respective circuits to match the design requirements. Coils shall be circuited for counter-flow heat transfer to provide maximum mean effective temperature difference for maximum heat transfer rates.
5. Primary surface shall be round seamless (3/8" O.D.) copper tube staggered in the direction of airflow. Secondary surface shall consist of rippled aluminum plate fins for higher capacity and structural strength. Fins shall have full drawn collars to provide a continuous surface cover over the entire tube for maximum heat transfer. Tubes shall be mechanically expanded into the fins to provide a continuous primary to secondary compression bond over the entire finned length for maximum heat transfer rates. Headers shall have intruded tube holes to provide a large brazing surface for maximum strength and inherent flexibility.
6. Casing shall be constructed of continuous
7. The complete coil shall be tested with 315 pounds air pressure under warm water and be suitable for operation at 250 psig working pressures.
8. All coils shall be rated in accordance with AHRI standard 410.

### 2.9 POWER AND SAFETY CONTROL

- A. The power and control center shall be integral to the unit housing and rated equivalent to NEMA 3R.
- B. Under no circumstances shall any wiring or parts be field installed. If units show up at the job site without wiring by the manufacturer, the contractor will have to send back units to the manufacturer at the contractors' expense to get them factory wired and re-tested.
- C. Panels that are externally mounted to the unit shall not be accepted, regardless of the NEMA rating they may have. A separate access door shall be provided with an approved locking device.
- D. All electrical components contained in the panel shall be UL/CSA certified and labeled. The unit shall be complete with VFDs, fuses, relays, phase protection for compressorized units, terminals for main ON/OFF and step-down transformer. All components shall be factory wired for single point power connection by the manufacturer of the unit. A safety disconnect switch shall be factory installed for ON/OFF servicing.
- E. An electrical pipe chase for power and control feeding shall be provided next to the control panel.
- F. Any power or control wiring that is field installed shall not be accepted under any circumstances. The Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR) is 5 kA rms symmetrical, 600V Maximum or as noted on schedule.
- G. shall be factory installed and wired to a common junction box. A separate power connection 120V/1 will be required

### 2.10 AIR TEMPERATURE CONTROL PACKAGE

- A. The unit shall be delivered with factory installed control system. Under no circumstances shall control be provided by other than the manufacturer of the equipment. Field installed control package by the ATC will not be acceptable.
- B. The control system shall consist of a microprocessor with LCD display, 7 day time clock, 20 day holiday schedule, occupied/unoccupied mode switch, warm up mode, cool down mode, hi-lo limit discharge control, fan status, temperature and humidity sensors when applicable, scroll buttons to change settings as required and alarm history.
- C. Supply air temperature and humidity sensors shall be provided by Annexair and field mounted in the supply duct and wired by others. Optional - Space temperature and humidity wall mounted sensors shall be field wired and installed by others.
- D. Refer to the Sequence of Operation and control schematic for detailed description and options.
- E. Communication Interface Card: The microprocessor shall be capable of communicating with the following protocol language: Select one of the following:

#### 2.11 ADDITIONAL ACCESSORIES AND UNIT FEATURES (Optional)

- A. Dirty filter switch
- B. Rotation detector (where applicable)
- C. Door interlocking switch (for fan section)
- D. Magnehelic gauges (Dwyer 2000 model)
- E. Condensate overflow switch (for drain pans)
- F. OA Air Flow Monitoring Package –
  - 1. Air Flow Measuring Station shall manufactured by Ebtron. AFMS must be thermal dispersion type.
  - 2. Each measuring device shall consist of one or more multi-point measuring probes and a single microprocessor-based transmitter. Each transmitter shall have an LCD display capable of displaying airflow and temperature. Each transmitter shall operate on 24VAC.
  - 3. Each sensing point shall independently determine the airflow rate and temperature, which shall be equally weighted and averaged by the transmitter prior to output.
  - 4. Each independent airflow sensor shall have a laboratory accuracy of +/-2% of reading over the entire operating airflow range of 0-5000FPM and be wind tunnel calibrated or verified against standards that are traceable to NIST.
  - 5. The transmitter shall be capable of communicating with the host controls using the following interface options:
    - (a) Linear analog output signal: Field selectable, fuse protected and isolated, 0-10VDC and 4-20mA (4 wire)
    - (b) RS-485: Field selectable Johnson Controls N2 Bus
- G. Fan Airflow Monitoring Station Package
- H. The unit shall be delivered with factory installed airflow measuring system. The airflow measuring system, consisting of a piezometer ring and transducer, shall be installed on the fan. The package consists of an inlet port on the fan inlet cone connected with flexible tubing to the transducer.

### PART III - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine ducts, and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.



- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install Air Handling Unit per manufacturers' instructions.
- B. Install with required clearance for service and maintenance.

### 3.3 TESTING & INSPECTION

- A. System verification testing is part of the commissioning process. Verification testing shall be performed by the Contractor and witnessed and documented by the Commissioning Authority. Refer to section 01810, Commissioning, for system verification tests and commissioning requirements.

B. Prior to shipment, Manufacturer will provide travel costs for 3 people made up of representatives from the owner, engineer of record, and installing contractor to visit the factory and inspect the equipment after completion of manufacturing and before shipment. Other groups can be represented, but they will be responsible for their own travel costs.

- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections. Report results in writing.
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### 3.4 TRAINING

- A. Training of the Owner's operation and maintenance personnel is required in cooperation with the Commissioning Authority. Provide competent, factory-authorized personnel to provide instruction to operation and maintenance personnel concerning the location, operation, and troubleshooting of the installed systems. The instruction shall be scheduled in coordination with the Commissioning Authority after submission and approval of formal training plans. Refer to System Demonstrations, section 01670, for contractor training requirements. Refer to section 01810, Commissioning, for further contractor training requirements.
- B. Contact Annexair to request pricing to include factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain humidifiers.
  - 1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining equipment and schedules.
  - 2. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."
  - 3. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."
  - 4. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days advance

notice.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 23 73 13.1

### AIR HANDLING UNIT / DEDICATED OUTDOOR AIR SYSTEM / ENERGY RECOVERY UNIT

#### PART I – GENERAL

##### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. This specification is based on an \_\_\_\_\_ as manufactured by Annexair Inc. Manufacturers of alternate equipment must be approved to bid via addendum, in writing by the specifying engineer, at least two weeks prior to bid time in order for their bid to be accepted by the contractor. If the equipment is not pre-approved then under no circumstances shall the contractor invest any time or money in receiving submittals or considering the equipment. Costs associated with dimensional, performance or other deviations from the specified equipment, including engineering costs to evaluate such deviations, shall be paid by the contractor
- B. The units shall be installed in strict accordance with the specifications. Unit(s) shall be complete with all components and accessories as specified. All units shall be factory assembled, internally wired, and 100% run tested to check operation, fan/blower rotation and control sequence before leaving the factory. Wiring internal to the unit shall be numbered for simplified identification. Units shall be ETL listed and labeled, classified in accordance with ANSI-UL 1995 / CAN/CSA C22.2 No.236.
- C. Equipment start-up and project inspection by qualified factory trained representative.

##### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All units shall be factory run tested before shipping. A proof copy of the test shall be placed in the unit electrical power & control panel.
- B. Unit(s) shall bear the ETL label, tested in accordance to UL 1995. Electrical components shall be UL listed.
- C. Fans shall be tested in an AMCA certified laboratory; insulation shall comply with NFPA 90A.
- D. Coils shall be tested in accordance to AHRI 410.
- E. Energy recovery exchangers shall be in accordance to AHRI 1060, "Rating Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Equipment" and Eurovent standards.
- F. Filters shall be tested in accordance to ASHRAE 52.
- G. The unit manufacturers construction shall have an independent testing agency test the air leakage, panel deflection and sound pressure levels for supply airflows of minimum 20,000 CFM. The air leakage of the unit(s) shall not exceed 1% at 8" inches H<sub>2</sub>O positive static pressure and a copy of the report must be submitted upon request. Unit shall be constructed to limit frame and panel deflection to 1/250<sup>th</sup> of the panel length at 8" inches H<sub>2</sub>O positive static pressure and a copy of the report must be submitted upon request. The unit shall also be tested in accordance with ANSI S12.34-1998 and instrumentation used must be in compliance with the requirements of AMCA 300 for sound readings. The sound tests conducted shall report overall sound power and pressure readings for supply air outlet, return air inlet and casing radiated.

- H. Products shall be supported with a warranty that ensures the product will be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one year after shipment.

### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 15XXX. Include product description, model, dimensions, component sizes, rough-in requirements, service sizes, and finishes. Include rated capacities, operating weights, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.
- C. Submit operation and maintenance data.
- D. Submit coordination drawings. Include unit details, plans, elevations, sections, details of components. Show support locations, type of support, weight and required clearances.
- E. Submit wiring diagrams including power, signal, and control wiring.

### **1.4 WARRANTY**

- A. Annexair warrants each product to be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal and proper use, and will within twelve (12) months from date of start up and not exceed eighteen (18) months from shipment, repair or replace any part which, when returned to our factory transportation charges prepaid, and upon inspection by Annexair, proves to be defective. This warranty does not include any labor or service charges that occur under this warranty. Minimum (5) five year compressor warranty shall be provided, parts only – labor not included
- B. The installing contractor must be responsible for warranty service and maintenance after the equipment is placed into operation.
- C. NOTIFICATION: Any modification to the Annexair equipment, including the controls and sequence of operation, without specific approval in writing by Annexair, will result in a violation of the equipment warranty.

### **1.5 REFERENCES**

All components selected for this project shall conform to the following Standards:

- A. AFBMA 9: Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings
- B. AMCA Standard 99: Standards Handbook
- C. AMCA /ANSI Standard 204: Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans
- D. AMCA Standard 210: Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Ratings
- E. AMCA Standard 300: Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans
- F. AMCA 320; Laboratory Method for Sound Testing of Fans Using Sound Intensity
- G. AMCA Standard 500:Test Methods for Louvers, Dampers and Shutters
- H. AHRI Standard 1060: Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Ventilation Equipment
- I. AHRI Standard 410: Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coil
- J. ASHRAE Standard 52: Gravimetric and Dust Spot Procedures for Testing Air Cleaning Devices Used in General Ventilation for Removing Particulate Matter
- K. ASHRAE 52.2: Procedures for Testing Air Cleaning Devices Used for Removing Particulate Matter
- L. ASHRAE 84-91: Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers
- M. ASHRAE/ANSI Standard 111: Practices for Measurement, Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Building Heating, Ventilation, Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Systems
- N. ASTM A-525: Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process

- O. NEMA MG-1: National Electrical Manufacturers Association Motor Standards
- P. NFPA 90A: Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
- Q. SMACNA: Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association
- R. UL Standard 1995: Heating and Cooling Equipment
- S. UL Standard 900: Test Performance of Air Filter Units

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate location and installation of air-handling units. Revise locations and elevations to suit field conditions and to ensure proper operation.
- B. Coordinate location and installation of air handling units with the electrical, mechanical, and plumbing contractors.

## PART II – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HOUSING

- A. THERMO-COMPOSITE PANELS (*with thermal break frame*)
  1. The unit housing shall be no-through metal with 2" Thermo-Composite and foam panel construction - interior and exterior Thermal break construction using a gasket to insulate two panels is not an acceptable equivalent to a no-through metal constructed casing. No-through metal construction will be inherent to all the component construction in the assembly.
  2. All panels and access doors shall be double wall construction with R14 foam insulation for every 2" of construction. All foam insulation must be Greenguard certified®. Any insulation incorporating CFCs or HCFCs in its construction is strictly prohibited from this application.
  3. Unit casing will have no exterior condensation at interior AHU temperatures down to 43F while unit exterior conditions are maintained at 95 F dry bulb / 85 F wet bulb. The air handling unit manufacturer general construction shall be tested to demonstrate the thermal performance of the unit casing. The test shall include placing the entire test unit in a climate controlled environment and exposing the unit to the conditions mentioned previously. If the manufacturer does not have access to such equipment, an independent testing agent must be hired to transport the test unit to a qualified test facility, and perform the test at the expense of the manufacturer. Inability to provide this option to the engineer will make the manufacturer ineligible to bid on this project he unit housing shall be constructed from a frame, base and panel assembly. Unit shall be completely factory assembled and shipped as shown on drawings.
  4. The panels shall be tested in accordance with SMACNA and ASHRAE 111 to have a deflection of no more than L/1150 at 10" and withstand air pressures up to 8" w.c with less than 1% leakage. Fire resistance of the panel will be in compliance with UL 94 rated at 5VA; and a flame spread / smoke development in compliance with UL 723 ASTM E84 Class 1 rating.
  5. Thermo-Composite or aluminum panels shall be provided for the entire unit construction, including but not limited to, walls, doors, floors, roof, interior partitions, and electrical compartment. Panels shall be non-load bearing type.
  6. The frame shall consist of anodized extruded aluminum profiles which incorporates a thermally broken construction; welded together for reinforcement and insulated for superior thermal performance.
  7. Base structure shall be fully welded G-90, painted exterior, and have integral lifting lugs which can be removed once the unit is installed.
  8. All roof and side wall seams shall be positively sealed to prevent water and air leakage. The OA and EA compartment shall have 1" PVC drains extended to exterior

- of unit
9. Access doors shall be provided to all major components to facilitate quick and easy access. Access doors will be made from the same material as the unit casing and shall incorporate thermal break construction. Fan access door(s) shall have Allegis type handles, with one handle interlinking multiple latches and threaded insert fastening handles for all remaining doors. If access doors do not open against unit operating pressure, provide safety latches that allow access doors to partially open after first handle movement and fully open after second handle movement. Removable panels provided for equipment pull out for coil(s), and air to air heat exchanger section(s) shall have key tooled threaded insert fasteners. Hinges shall be Nylon hinge type designed to open 180 degrees.
  10. Unit shall have the entire exterior finished with a PVDF coating designed for UV resistance. Panels shall be painted Annexair standard color white gray RAL 9002. Panels shall pass ASTM B117 3000-hour salt fog resistance test and ASTM D4585 3000-hour moisture condensation resistance test. In addition, paint must meet AAMA 620-02 standard for color, chalking, gloss retention, and abrasion resistance.
  11. The air handler unit casing shall be provided with a lifetime warranty against corrosion resistance under normal use.

## **B. WEATHER HOODS**

The outdoor intake weather hood shall be completely constructed in aluminum for superior corrosion resistance. The hood shall ship loose for field installation by the installing contractor. Painted galvanized hoods shall not be acceptable due to its susceptibility to corrosion. The outdoor air hood shall be designed with a 4" extruded aluminum louver, bird screen and a plenum enclosure with drain holes. The louver blades shall be drainable type with a maximum 45 degree angle and curved with integral rain baffle. The louver design shall not allow more than 0.03 oz/ft<sup>2</sup> water penetration when tested in accordance to AMCA 500. The pressure drop of the complete hood assembly shall not exceed 0.05"wc at a maximum 500 fpm face velocity. A Pre-filter rack system shall be installed within the weather hood enclosure to prevent outdoor air dust and debris from entering the damper and unit casing plenum. Pre-filters installed inside the unit casing plenum and downstream of the outdoor damper will not be acceptable as this will increase overall maintenance on the damper, reduce indoor air quality and promote mold and bacteria growth. Filter access in the hood shall be accomplished via the louver that is installed with a stainless steel piano hinge and spring loaded latch. No tools or ladders shall be required to access the pre-filters in the weather hood assembly. The hood shall be insulated and header insulation constructed from 304 stainless steel shielding for increased energy efficiency and reduced airstream heat gain. Stainless steel shields to be isolated from distributor using plenum rated synthetic foam strips. Insulation to provide air-gap to minimize conduction and The unit housing

## **C. EXHAUST AIR LOUVER**

The exhaust air outlet louvers shall be 2" extruded aluminum, with non-restricting blade design and bird screen.

## **2.2 HEAT RECOVERY WHEEL**

### **A. ENTHALPY WHEEL (SILICA GEL)**

1. The enthalpy wheel shall recover both sensible and latent heat and be AHRI 1060 certified.
2. The matrix shall be a minimum of 8" thick to achieve optimal performance and be constructed from a corrugated aluminum alloy. The corrugation shall be uniform to obtain minimum pressure drops through the wheel. Wheels with varying flute sizes are

not acceptable. Wheels with non-metallic matrices will not be considered for this application.

3. Wheels with varying flute sizes are not acceptable. Wheels with non-metallic matrices will not be considered for this application.
4. The media shall be specifically treated and coated with Silica Gel desiccant to assist and enhance latent heat transfer. Any other types of desiccants, including 3A or 4A Molecular Sieves will not be considered for HVAC applications.
5. A heavy duty wheel hub will contain the bearings in a closed compartment for wheel sizes up to 96" diameter. These shall be maintenance free while larger sizes require periodic lubrication. In addition, segmented wheel shall be provided on diameter sizes above 96".
6. The seal shall be made from a dual band ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene and be self-lubricating, wear resistant, and air tight against prolonged use. Seals shall be full contact compression type, on both sides of the wheel to ensure minimal leakage. Specially designed stainless steel clips are used to position the seal across the face of the wheel. Any seal that is non-contact is not to be considered a seal and will not be acceptable. Labyrinth type seals do not operate properly under different air stream pressures therefore shall not be acceptable in any circumstances.
7. Drive system shall be operated by a fractional horsepower motor (maximum 1 HP), reducing gear-box, pulley and V-belt. Belts shall be made of multi-link high-tech urethane/polyester composite. An access panel shall be provided for maintenance on the drive system. A double purge sector (2 x 5°) shall be factory installed to reduce cross contamination to under 0.04%. Frost control prevention shall be provided by the unit manufacturer and accounted for if outdoor air temperatures are below 10°F at equal airflows and return relative humidity below 30%. Frost control shall be accomplished by a variable speed drive and controlling the leaving air condition of the exhaust air. Other methods of frost control will not be considered for this application. Wheel speed shall not rotate faster than 20 RPM. Any rotational speed above 20 RPM will be unacceptable since this will reduce the efficiency of the purge section.
8. Media cleaning shall be accomplished with any of the following methods: compressed air, low pressure steam, hot water or light detergent without degrading the latent recovery.

## **2.3 FANS**

### **A. PLENUM FANS**

1. Fans shall be direct drive radial centrifugal fans with free running impeller. No fan belts will be acceptable for this application. Fans shall be compact, optimized and construction made of galvanized sheet steel with backward curved 7-blade high efficiency impeller, protected by an epoxy powder coating.
2. To reduce vibration, the impeller shall be balanced with hub to an admissible vibration severity of less than 2.8 mm/s in conformity with DIN ISO 14694 and proof shall be supplied for each individual impeller. Tests shall be made according to DIN ISO 1940 Part 1, quality of balancing G2.5/6.3.
3. The single inlet shall be mounted onto constant speed direct drive motor, equipped with an air flow optimized inlet cone from galvanized sheet steel.
4. Fans shall be completely certified as per ISO 5801 and in accordance to AMCA standards.

### **B. PLUG FANS**

1. Wall mounted, direct driven plenum fans (horizontal or vertical) shall be installed with perimeter gasketed isolation.
2. Fans shall be direct drive radial centrifugal fans with free running impeller. Fans shall be compact, optimized and construction made of galvanized sheet steel with

backward curved 7-blade high efficiency impeller, protected by an epoxy powder coating.

3. To reduce vibration, the impeller shall be balanced with hub to an admissible vibration severity of less than 2.8 mm/s in conformity with DIN ISO 14694 and proof shall be supplied for each individual impeller. Tests shall be made according to DIN ISO 1940 Part 1, quality of balancing G2.5/6.3.
4. The single inlet shall be mounted onto constant speed direct drive motor, equipped with an air flow optimized inlet cone from galvanized sheet steel.
5. Fans shall be completely certified as per ISO 5801 and in accordance to AMCA standards.

#### C. FAN ISOLATIONS

1. The fan housing and motor assembly shall be isolated from the unit cabinetry with a minimum 95% efficient spring isolators or high efficiency rubber isolators or seismic isolators.
2. In addition, fans shall have flexible canvas to reduce vibration transmission.

### 2.4 FAN MOTORS

- A. The fan motors shall meet NEMA standard dimensions and comply with the Energy policy Act of 1997.
- B. Motors shall have premium efficiencies with low noise and vibration output. Motors shall be certified and built in accordance to ISO 9001 quality control system
- C. Motors shall have
- D. Units shall be designed for application. Please refer to the unit schedule for the application type.
- E. Option: A shaft grounding brush kit will be provided to prevent electrical damage to motor bearings by safely channeling harmful shaft currents to ground.

### 2.5 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVE (VFD)

- A. VFDs will be used to set or regulate the fan speed and airflow for these units.
- B. All VFD's shall be ABB model ACH550 units to match owner's existing VFD's installed at other locations.
- C. The VFD shall have PID function for constant flow applications
- D. The VFDs will be installed with integral brake transistor, overload protection, and adjustable pulse-width modulation (PWM).
- E. The VFD shall use Insulated Gate Bipolar Transistor (IGBT) technology to convert three phase input power to coded PWM output and have 4-20mA analog output terminals that are fully programmable for variable flow applications.
- F. The VFD shall be equipped with a keypad with status indicators, easy access functions, and monitoring functions during motor operation.
- G. In the event of a momentary power failure or fault the VFD shall read the inverter speed and direction of a coasting motor and shall automatically restart the motor smoothly.
- H. Technical support will be provided by the VFD manufacturer.
- I. VFDs shall be installed as shown on drawings with contactors, relays, and all specified accessories.
- J. VFDs will be installed.

### 2.6 FILTERS

#### A. PRE-FILTERS

1. Filters shall be factory installed upstream of the heat exchanger and coils,



2. The filters shall be MERV 8.
3. Each filter shall consist of 100% synthetic media, expanded metal on the downstream and enclosing with high wet-strength beverage board with diagonal support bonded on air entering and air exiting side of each pleat.
4. Filters shall be placed in a completely sealed, galvanized holding frame with quick release latches for easy replacement.

## 2.7 DAMPERS

### A. NON-INSULATED

1. Dampers shall be installed where shown on the drawings.
2. Dampers shall be low leak type with rubber edges, opposed blades, and constructed from extruded aluminum.
3. Galvanized dampers will not be acceptable.
4. The exhaust air outlet shall have a standard aluminum gravity type damper, unless otherwise noted below.
5. Dampers shall be installed in the compartments (as shown on the drawings) with linkage rod for actuators
6. Actuators shall be 24V factory installed: two-position or modulating (please refer to the unit schedule).
7. All actuators shall have spring return mechanism and auxiliary switches. Dampers will be installed in the failed close positions unless otherwise noted

## 2.8 CONDENSING UNIT

### A. WATER SOURCE HEAT PUMP UNIT WITH VARIABLE SPEED COMPRESSORS

1. Provide integral water source heat pump (WSHP) section(s) where indicated on the schedule. The section shall be contained in the same housing as the rest of the unit (see housing details). The \_\_\_\_\_ shall be manufacturer by the same manufacturer as the air handling unit. Factory mounting a third parties \_\_\_\_\_ is not acceptable. The \_\_\_\_\_ shall be mounted within a framing system that supports all components, independent of the air handling unit casing. An access panel shall be provided to the compressors and adequate clearance shall be provided for the removal and replacement of any refrigeration component without having to remove the entire model. It is not acceptable to have to remove the unit casing or the entire module to replace any refrigeration component. The \_\_\_\_\_ Section shall include a floor drain as a protective element to remove any water build up in the section. Exterior units shall have a pipe chase located in the same compartment as the \_\_\_\_\_ Pipe chases exterior to the air handling casing are not acceptable. Exterior units shall also include an auxiliary heater to provide freeze protection to the water circuit. Exterior units without auxiliary heaters are not considered adequately protected for winter conditions and will be rejected. The auxiliary heater shall be on the same electrical circuit as the unit.
2. Compressors shall be variable speed scroll type that can modulate from 30% to 100% capacity per compressor. Variable capacity compressors which do not modulate the speed of the scrolls are not considered equal to a variable speed scroll since they consume more energy at the same capacity output. Mechanically stepped scrolls which are unloaded via a digital signal to a solenoid valve, in a timed sequence, will not be acceptable for this application. The variable speed scrolls shall be operated via a factory supplied variable speed controller per compressor, and all tandem compressors will modulate in unison. Using a single variable speed controller on the lead circuit alone is not efficient during part load conditions, therefore will not be acceptable for this application. Each compressor and controller assembly shall be equipped with the following features: electronic expansion valve, reversing valve

(WSHP only), a crankcase heater function, anti-short cycling, built-in phase loss detector, EMC filter, oil return management system, and reverse rotation protection. Compressors shall be mounted on rubber isolators to limit vibration transmission and shall include a vibration eliminator conduit on both the suction and discharge refrigeration lines. Vibration eliminator conduit shall be pressure tested up to 620 psig.

3. A coaxial coil shall be provided for all water to refrigerant heat transfers. Plate type exchangers are not permitted as they require routine maintenance which is not acceptable for this application. The coaxial coil shall be in construction and completely insulated. The refrigeration suction line shall also be completely insulated. All water connections (in and out) will be connected by the mechanical contractor. The refrigeration system shall be equipped with a factory programmed and installed controller that will modulate the system based on a 0 -10v signal. Head pressure and suction pressure control logic shall be provided on all models. Head pressure and suction pressure control is required in both cooling and heating operations to account for changes in entering water temperature. Systems that do not have head pressure control logic built into the water source heat pump or water cooled condenser shall not be considered for this application as head pressure control is considered a required safety feature. A control valve shall be provided and installed by
4. Hose kits shall be provided as ship loose items. Hose kits to include Belimo valve and actuator, automatic flow control balancing valve, strainer, isolation valve, and all necessary piping and components to provide a one inlet and outlet water connection per coaxial coil.
5. High pressure relief plug with extension to unit exterior will be provided on units where required by code.
6. The entire section shall be factory piped, wired and charged with R-410A. Each refrigeration system shall be factory tested.
7. The following components shall be included in each refrigeration circuit: Liquid line filter dryer, hi and lo pressure switch, hi and lo pressure transducers, suction and liquid lines shutoff valves and suction line accumulators. In addition, refrigeration piping must use Shrader type connections for all components, including but not limited to valves and transducers. Under no circumstances shall the units leave the factory without a complete run test and a copy of the QC report shall be provided upon request.
8. Minimum (5) five year compressor warranties shall be provided

## 2.9 COILS

### A. DX COILS

1. Coils shall be factory installed in the unit.
2. Coils shall be designed with respective circuits to match the design requirements. All coils shall have a distributor per circuit connection. Coils shall be circuited for counter-flow heat transfer to provide maximum mean effective temperature difference for maximum heat transfer rates.
3. Primary surface shall be round seamless (3/8" O.D.) copper tube staggered in the direction of airflow. Secondary surface shall consist of rippled aluminum plate fins for higher capacity and structural strength. Fins shall have full drawn collars to provide a continuous surface cover over the entire tube for maximum heat transfer. Tubes shall be mechanically expanded into the fins to provide a continuous primary to secondary compression bond over the entire finned length for maximum heat transfer rates. Headers shall have intruded tube holes to provide a large brazing surface for maximum strength and inherent flexibility.
4. Casing shall be constructed of continuous
5. The complete coil shall be tested with 315 pounds air pressure under warm water and

be suitable for operation at 250 psig working pressures. Maximum finned coil height shall be 60" and shall not exceed 500 FPM face velocity.

6. Drain pan shall be provided on cooling coils. Cooling coils shall sit on stainless steel tubular support rails, which shall stand a minimum of (2) two inches above the highest point of the floor drain pan. Stacked coils shall be provided for larger airflows and intermediate drain pans shall be provided for each coil bank. Drain pans shall be stainless steel with 1.25" stainless steel drain connections on one side only. Pan shall be sloped in two planes.
7. All coils shall be rated in accordance with AHRI standard 410.

#### B. DX HOT GAS REHEAT

1. Coils shall be factory installed in the unit.
2. The hot gas reheat coil shall be installed at minimum 8" from the moisture producing DX cooling coil. A plexi glass between the two items shall be required to visually inspect the DX cooling coil surface area, and also have the ability to clean the coils when necessary.
3. A modulating valve shall be provided to control air leaving temperature for dehumidification.
4. Coils shall be designed with respective circuits to match the design requirements. Coils shall be circuited for counter-flow heat transfer to provide maximum mean effective temperature difference for maximum heat transfer rates.
5. Primary surface shall be round seamless (3/8" O.D.) copper tube staggered in the direction of airflow. Secondary surface shall consist of rippled aluminum plate fins for higher capacity and structural strength. Fins shall have full drawn collars to provide a continuous surface cover over the entire tube for maximum heat transfer. Tubes shall be mechanically expanded into the fins to provide a continuous primary to secondary compression bond over the entire finned length for maximum heat transfer rates. Headers shall have intruded tube holes to provide a large brazing surface for maximum strength and inherent flexibility.
6. Casing shall be constructed of continuous
7. The complete coil shall be tested with 315 pounds air pressure under warm water and be suitable for operation at 250 psig working pressures.
8. All coils shall be rated in accordance with AHRI standard 410.

### 2.10 POWER AND SAFETY CONTROL

- A. The power and control center shall be integral to the unit housing and rated equivalent to NEMA 3R.
- B. Under no circumstances shall any wiring or parts be field installed. If units show up at the job site without wiring by the manufacturer, the contractor will have to send back units to the manufacturer at the contractors' expense to get them factory wired and re-tested.
- C. Panels that are externally mounted to the unit shall not be accepted, regardless of the NEMA rating they may have. A separate access door shall be provided with an approved locking device.
- D. All electrical components contained in the panel shall be UL/CSA certified and labeled. The unit shall be complete with VFDs, fuses, relays, phase protection for compressorized units, terminals for main ON/OFF and step-down transformer. All components shall be factory wired for single point power connection by the manufacturer of the unit. A safety disconnect switch shall be factory installed for ON/OFF servicing.
- E. An electrical pipe chase for power and control feeding shall be provided next to the control panel.
- F. Any power or control wiring that is field installed shall not be accepted under any circumstances. The Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR) is 5 kA rms symmetrical, 600V Maximum or as noted on schedule.

- G. shall be factory installed and wired to a common junction box. A separate power connection 120V/1 will be required

## 2.11 AIR TEMPERATURE CONTROL PACKAGE

- A. The unit shall be delivered with factory installed control system. Under no circumstances shall control be provided by other than the manufacturer of the equipment. Field installed control package by the ATC will not be acceptable.
- B. The control system shall consist of a microprocessor with LCD display, 7 day time clock, 20 day holiday schedule, occupied/unoccupied mode switch, warm up mode, cool down mode, hi-lo limit discharge control, fan status, temperature and humidity sensors when applicable, scroll buttons to change settings as required and alarm history.
- C. Supply air temperature and humidity sensors shall be provided by Annexair and field mounted in the supply duct and wired by others. Optional - Space temperature and humidity wall mounted sensors shall be field wired and installed by others.
- D. Refer to the Sequence of Operation and control schematic for detailed description and options.
- E. Communication Interface Card: The microprocessor shall be capable of communicating with the following protocol language: Select one of the following:

## 2.12 ADDITIONAL ACCESSORIES AND UNIT FEATURES (Optional)

- A. Dirty filter switch
- B. Rotation detector (where applicable)
- C. Door interlocking switch (for fan section)
- D. Magnehelic gauges (Dwyer 2000 model)
- E. Condensate overflow switch (for drain pans)
- F. OA Air Flow Monitoring Package –
1. Air Flow Measuring Station shall manufactured by Ebtron. AFMS must be thermal dispersion type.
  2. Each measuring device shall consist of one or more multi-point measuring probes and a single microprocessor-based transmitter. Each transmitter shall have an LCD display capable of displaying airflow and temperature. Each transmitter shall operate on 24VAC.
  3. Each sensing point shall independently determine the airflow rate and temperature, which shall be equally weighted and averaged by the transmitter prior to output.
  4. Each independent airflow sensor shall have a laboratory accuracy of +/-2% of reading over the entire operating airflow range of 0-5000FPM and be wind tunnel calibrated or verified against standards that are traceable to NIST.
  5. The transmitter shall be capable of communicating with the host controls using the following interface options:
    - (a) Linear analog output signal: Field selectable, fuse protected and isolated, 0-10VDC and 4-20mA (4 wire)
    - (b) RS-485: Field selectable Johnson Controls N2 Bus
- G. Fan Airflow Monitoring Station Package
- H. The unit shall be delivered with factory installed airflow measuring system. The airflow measuring system, consisting of a piezometer ring and transducer, shall be installed on the fan. The package consists of an inlet port on the fan inlet cone connected with flexible tubing to the transducer.

## PART III - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine ducts, and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install Air Handling Unit per manufacturers' instructions.
- B. Install with required clearance for service and maintenance.

### **3.3 TESTING & INSPECTION**

- A. System verification testing is part of the commissioning process. Verification testing shall be performed by the Contractor and witnessed and documented by the Commissioning Authority. Refer to section 01810, Commissioning, for system verification tests and commissioning requirements.
- B. Prior to shipment, Manufacturer will provide travel costs for 3 people made up of representatives from the owner, engineer of record, and installing contractor to visit the factory and inspect the equipment after completion of manufacturing and before shipment. Other groups can be represented, but they will be responsible for their own travel costs.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections. Report results in writing.
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### **3.4 TRAINING**

- A. Training of the Owner's operation and maintenance personnel is required in cooperation with the Commissioning Authority. Provide competent, factory-authorized personnel to provide instruction to operation and maintenance personnel concerning the location, operation, and troubleshooting of the installed systems. The instruction shall be scheduled in coordination with the Commissioning Authority after submission and approval of formal training plans. Refer to System Demonstrations, section 01670, for contractor training requirements. Refer to section 01810, Commissioning, for further contractor training requirements.
- B. Contact Annexair to request pricing to include factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain humidifiers.
  - 1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining equipment and schedules.
  - 2. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."
  - 3. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."
  - 4. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days advance notice.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 23 82 19

### FAN-COIL UNITS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes fan-coil units and accessories.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include specialties and accessories for each unit type and configuration.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit the following for each fan-coil unit type and configuration:
  - 1. Plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
  - 3. Power, signal, and control wiring diagrams. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
  - 4. Equipment schedules to include rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; and accessories.
- C. Field Test Reports: Written reports of tests specified in Part 3 of this Section.
- D. Maintenance Data: For fan-coil units to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. Include the following:
  - 1. Maintenance schedules and repair parts lists for motors, coils, integral controls, and filters.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

##### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of fan-coil units and suspension system components with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.

##### 1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fan-Coil Unit Filters: Furnish 1 spare filter for each filter installed.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Carrier Corp.
  - 2. York.
  - 3. Trane Company (The); North American Commercial Group.
  - 4. International Environmental. (IEC).

### **2.2 CONFIGURATION**

- A. Horizontal Units: An assembly including filter, chassis, coil, drain pan, fan, and motor in blow-through configuration with hydronic cooling coil and hydronic heating coil.

### **2.3 MATERIALS**

- A. Chassis: Galvanized steel, with flanged edges.
- B. Coil Section Insulation: 1-inch (25-mm) duct liner complying with ASTM C 1071 and attached with adhesive complying with ASTM C 916.
  - 1. Fire-Hazard Classification: Duct liner and adhesive shall have a maximum flame-spread rating of 25 and smoke-developed rating of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
- C. Drain Pans: Galvanized steel, with connection for drain. Drain pan shall have a removable plastic liner and be insulated with polystyrene or polyurethane insulation. Drain pan and liner shall be formed to slope from all directions to drain connection.
- D. Cabinet: Galvanized steel, concealed unit cabinet.
  - 1. Horizontal Unit Side Panels: Fastened to unit with cam fasteners and hinge and attached with safety chain.

### **2.4 WATER COILS**

- A. Primary Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm) and with manual air vent. Coils shall be rated for a minimum working pressure of 300 psig (2068 kPa) and a maximum entering water temperature of 275 deg F (135 deg C).



- B. Auxiliary Heating Coil: One row, copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm) and with manual air vent. Coils shall be rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig (1378 kPa) and a maximum entering water temperature of 220 deg F (104 deg C).
  - 1. Circuit Protection: One-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection and limit controls for overtemperature protection of heaters.
  - 2. Wiring Terminations: Match conductor materials and sizes indicated.

## **2.5 FAN**

- A. Centrifugal, with forward-curved, double-width wheels and fan scrolls made of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.

## **2.6 FAN MOTORS**

- A. Motors for Direct-Drive Units: Permanent-split capacitor, multispeed motor with integral thermal-overload protection and resilient mounts.
- B. Wiring Terminations: Match conductor materials and sizes of connecting power circuit. Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

## **2.7 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Filters: 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, throwaway filters in fiberboard frames.

## **2.8 CONTROL SYSTEMS**

- A. Four-Pipe, Valve Cycle: Wall-mounted thermostat, with deadband and manual fan-speed switch, cycles electric valves.

## **2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Test and rate units according to ARI 440.
- B. Test unit coils according to ASHRAE 33.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas to receive fan-coil units for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before fan-coil unit installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install fan-coil units level and plumb.

- B. Install fan-coil units to comply with NFPA 90A.
- C. Suspend fan-coil units from structure with rubber-in-shear vibration isolators (rubber hangers). Vibration isolators are specified in Division 23 Section "Mechanical Vibration Controls."
- D. Install wall-mounting thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls.

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, install shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.
- C. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- D. Ground equipment.
- E. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing and report results in writing:
  - 1. After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 2. Operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and electrical connections.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
- B. Repair or replace malfunctioning units. Retest as specified above after repairs or replacements are made.

### **3.5 CLEANING**

- A. After installing units, inspect unit cabinet for damage to finish. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. After installing units, clean fan-coil units internally according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Install new filters in each fan-coil unit within two weeks after Substantial Completion.

### **3.6 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Installer is to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fan-coil units.
  - 1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining equipment.
  - 2. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."

3. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."
4. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 23 82 39

### UNIT HEATERS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Wall and ceiling heaters with propeller fans and electric-resistance heating coils.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BAS: Building automation system.
- B. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- C. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.
- D. TFE: Tetrafluoroethylene plastic.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for each product indicated.
- B. LEED Submittal:
  - 1. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."
- C. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 1. Plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
  - 4. Equipment schedules to include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
  - 5. Location and arrangement of piping valves and specialties.
  - 6. Location and arrangement of integral controls.
  - 7. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

- D. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
1. Suspended ceiling components.
  2. Structural members to which unit heaters will be attached.
  3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
  6. Perimeter moldings for exposed or partially exposed cabinets.
- E. Samples for Initial Selection: Finish colors for units with factory-applied color finishes.
- F. Samples for Verification: Finish colors for each type of cabinet unit heater and wall and ceiling heaters indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
- G. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that cabinet unit heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Include the following:
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
    - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- H. Field quality-control test reports.
- I. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cabinet unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

## **1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Cabinet Unit Heater Filters: Furnish one spare filter(s) for each filter installed.

## **PART 2 - NOT APPLICABLE**

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas to receive unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit heater installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install wall boxes in finished wall assembly; seal and weatherproof. Joint-sealant materials and applications are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- B. Install cabinet unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.
- C. Install propeller unit heaters level and plumb.
- D. Suspend cabinet unit heaters from structure with elastomeric hangers. Vibration isolators are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- E. Suspend propeller unit heaters from structure with all-thread hanger rods and elastomeric hangers. Hanger rods and attachments to structure are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Vibration hangers are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- F. Install wall-mounting thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.
- G. Install new filters in each fan-coil unit within two weeks of Substantial Completion.

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to cabinet unit heater's factory, hot-water piping package. Install the piping package if shipped loose.
- D. Connect supply and return ducts to cabinet unit heaters with flexible duct connectors specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- E. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install union and gate or ball valve on supply-water connection and union and calibrated balancing valve on return-water connection of unit heater. Hydronic specialties are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping."
- G. Unless otherwise indicated, install union and gate or ball valve on steam-supply connection and union, strainer, steam trap, and gate or ball valve on condensate-return connection of unit heater. Steam specialties are specified in Division 23 Section "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping."
- H. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- I. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 2. Operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and electrical connections.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

### **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.



### **3.6 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain cabinet unit heaters. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 26 05 19

### LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
  - 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. VFC: Variable frequency controller.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Alcan Products Corporation; Alcan Cable Division.
  - 2. Alpha Wire.
  - 3. Belden Inc.
  - 4. Encore Wire Corporation.
  - 5. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
  - 6. Southwire Incorporated.
- B. Aluminum and Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.
- C. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for Type THW-2, Type THHN-2-THWN-2 and Type XHHW-2.
- D. Multiconductor Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for metal-clad cable, Type MC with ground wire.

E. VFC Cable:

1. Comply with UL 1277, UL 1685, and NFPA 70 for Type TC-ER cable.
2. Type TC-ER with oversized crosslinked polyethylene insulation, spiral-wrapped foil plus 85 percent coverage braided shields and insulated full-size ground wire, and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.

## 2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  2. Gardner Bender.
  3. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
  4. Ideal Industries, Inc.
  5. IlSCO; a branch of Bardes Corporation.
  6. NSi Industries LLC.
  7. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of the EGS Electrical Group.
  8. 3M; Electrical Markets Division.
  9. Tyco Electronics.
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

## 2.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper for feeders smaller than No. 3/0 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 3/0 AWG and larger. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger, except VFC cable, which shall be extra flexible stranded.

### 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- F. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- H. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- I. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- J. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- K. VFC Output Circuits: Type TC-ER cable with braided shield.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

### **3.4 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
  - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.

- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

### **3.5 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

### **3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS**

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

### **3.7 FIRESTOPPING**

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### **3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.
    - a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
    - c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

- D. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
1. Procedures used.
  2. Results that comply with requirements.
  3. Results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
- E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

**END OF SECTION**





## SECTION 26 05 26

### GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
  - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
  - 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
  - 3. Foundation steel electrodes.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

##### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. As-Built Data: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
  - 1. Ground rods.
  - 2. Ground rings.
  - 3. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at ground rings grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NETA MTS.
      - 1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
      - 2) Include recommended testing intervals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
  - 2. Dossert; AFL Telecommunications LLC.
  - 3. ERICO International Corporation.
  - 4. Fushi Copperweld Inc.
  - 5. Galvan Industries, Inc.; Electrical Products Division, LLC.
  - 6. Harger Lightning and Grounding.
  - 7. ILSCO.
  - 8. O-Z/Gedney; A Brand of the EGS Electrical Group.
  - 9. Robbins Lightning, Inc.
  - 10. Siemens Power Transmission & Distribution, Inc.

### 2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

## 2.3 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper or tinned-copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
  - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
  - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
  - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
  - 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
- C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches in cross section, with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

## 2.4 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless exothermic-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.

## 2.5 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by 10 feet.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 3/0 AWG minimum.
  - 1. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.

- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 6 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.
- E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

### **3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE**

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

### **3.3 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS**

- A. Generator: Install grounding electrode(s) at the generator location. The electrode shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor and to the frame of the generator.

### **3.4 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS**

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches above to 6 inches below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- C. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
- D. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches from the foundation.

### 3.5 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
  - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
  - 2. Lighting circuits.
  - 3. Receptacle circuits.
  - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
  - 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.
- H. Metallic Fences: Comply with requirements of IEEE C2.
  - 1. Grounding Conductor: Bare, tinned copper, not less than No. 8 AWG.
  - 2. Gates: Shall be bonded to the grounding conductor with a flexible bonding jumper.
  - 3. Barbed Wire: Strands shall be bonded to the grounding conductor.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.

- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
  - 2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
  
- D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
  - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
  
- E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
  - 1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
  - 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
  - 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
  
- F. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet apart.
  
- G. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column, extending around the perimeter of building.
  - 1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 3/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
  - 2. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches from building's foundation.
  
- H. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; use a minimum of 20 feet of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4 AWG.
  - 1. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
  - 2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building's grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
    - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
    - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
  - 4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- E. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- G. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
  - 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
  - 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
  - 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
  - 4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 1 ohm(s).
- H. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

**END OF SECTION**





## SECTION 26 05 29

### HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
  - 2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- C. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

##### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design supports for multiple raceways, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.
- C. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- D. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

##### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Steel slotted support systems.
  - 2. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
  - 1. Trapeze hangers. Include Product Data for components.
  - 2. Steel slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
  - 3. Nonmetallic slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
  - 4. Equipment supports.

## **1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welding certificates.

## **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

## **1.8 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified together with concrete Specifications.
- B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS**

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
    - c. ERICO International Corporation.
    - d. GS Metals Corp.
    - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
    - f. Unistrut; Atkore International.
    - g. Wesanco, Inc.
  - 3. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 4. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 5. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 6. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

- B. Nonmetallic Slotted Support Systems: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles with 9/16-inch-diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c., in at least 1 surface.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
    - c. Fabco Plastics Wholesale Limited.
    - d. Seasafe, Inc.
  - 2. Fittings and Accessories: Products of channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
  - 3. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as channels and angles, except metal items may be stainless steel.
  - 4. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.
- C. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.
- D. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- E. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.
- F. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- G. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
  - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Hilti, Inc.
      - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
      - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.

2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
  - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.
    - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - 3) Hilti, Inc.
    - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

## **2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 APPLICATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
  1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.
- D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

### **3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
  - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  - 4. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  - 5. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts.
  - 6. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  - 7. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS**

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### **3.4 CONCRETE BASES**

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.
  - 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.5 PAINTING**

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 26 05 33

### RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
2. Nonmetal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Surface raceways.
5. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
6. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
- B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

##### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
  1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
  2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- C. Source quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  2. Allied Tube & Conduit.
  3. Anamet Electrical, Inc.
  4. Electri-Flex Company.
  5. O-Z/Gedney.
  6. Picoma Industries.
  7. Republic Conduit.
  8. Robroy Industries.
  9. Southwire Company.
  10. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  11. Western Tube and Conduit Corporation.
  12. Wheatland Tube Company.
- B. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- D. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
- E. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
- F. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- G. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
- H. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- I. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886 and NFPA 70.
  2. Fittings for EMT:
    - a. Material: Steel or die cast.
    - b. Type: Setscrew or compression.
  3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
- J. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.



## 2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  2. Anamet Electrical, Inc.
  3. Arnco Corporation.
  4. CANTEX Inc.
  5. CertainTeed Corporation.
  6. Condux International, Inc.
  7. Electri-Flex Company.
  8. Kraloy.
  9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
  10. Niedax-Kleinhuis USA, Inc.
  11. RACO; Hubbell.
  12. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
- E. Fittings for RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- F. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
- G. Solvent cements and adhesive primers shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
  2. Hoffman.
  3. Mono-Systems, Inc.
  4. Square D.
- B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- D. Wireway Covers: Hinged type or Screw-cover type unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

## 2.4 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Prime coated, ready for field painting.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Mono-Systems, Inc.
    - b. Panduit Corp.
    - c. Wiremold / Legrand.
- C. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Adalet.
  - 2. Cooper Technologies Company; Cooper Crouse-Hinds.
  - 3. EGS/Appleton Electric.
  - 4. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
  - 5. FSR Inc.
  - 6. Hoffman.
  - 7. Hubbell Incorporated.
  - 8. Kraloy.
  - 9. Milbank Manufacturing Co.
  - 10. Mono-Systems, Inc.
  - 11. O-Z/Gedney.
  - 12. RACO; Hubbell.
  - 13. Robroy Industries.
  - 14. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
  - 15. Stahlin Non-Metallic Enclosures.
  - 16. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  - 17. Wiremold / Legrand.
- D. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- E. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- F. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- G. Metal Floor Boxes:
  - 1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
  - 2. Type: Fully adjustable.
  - 3. Shape: Rectangular.
  - 4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.

- I. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- J. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.
- K. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- L. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep.
- M. Gangable boxes are allowed.
- N. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  - 2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- O. Cabinets:
  - 1. NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  - 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
  - 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
  - 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
  - 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

**2.5 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING**

- A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:
  - 1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
  - 2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Armorcast Products Company.
    - b. Carson Industries LLC.
    - c. NewBasis.
    - d. Oldcastle Precast, Inc.
    - e. Quazite: Hubbell Power System, Inc.
    - f. Synertech Moulded Products.
  - 2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
  - 3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with integral closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
  - 5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.

6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
8. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

## 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
  1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
  2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
  3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
  2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
  3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC.
  4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
  5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
  2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
  3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
    - a. Loading dock.
    - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
  4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
  5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
  6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
  1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.

2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
  3. EMT: Use setscrew or compression, steel or cast-metal fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
  - F. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
  - G. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
  - H. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.
- G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- H. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- I. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
  1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot intervals.
  2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
  3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 1 inch of concrete cover in all directions.
  4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.

- J. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
1. Use EMT or RMC for raceways.
  2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- L. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- M. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- N. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- O. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- P. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- Q. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- R. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- S. Surface Raceways:
1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch radius control at bend points.
  2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- T. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- U. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
  3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- V. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.

W. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
  - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
  - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
  - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
  - d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.
3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

X. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

Y. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

Z. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

AA. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.

BB. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.

CC. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

DD. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

EE. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT**

#### **A. Direct-Buried Conduit:**

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
  - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches on each side of the coupling.
  - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
6. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### **3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES**

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.
- D. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- E. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

### **3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS**

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."



### **3.6 FIRESTOPPING**

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### **3.7 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
  - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 26 05 43

### UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Direct-buried conduit, ducts, and duct accessories.
  - 2. Concrete-encased conduit, ducts, and duct accessories.
  - 3. Handholes and boxes.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Trafficways: Locations where vehicular or pedestrian traffic is a normal course of events.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include duct-bank materials, including separators and miscellaneous components.
  - 2. Include ducts and conduits and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
  - 3. Include accessories for manholes, handholes, boxes, and other utility structures.
  - 4. Include warning tape.

##### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Duct-Bank Coordination Drawings: Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.
  - 1. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.
  - 2. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete handholes, as required by ASTM C 858.
- C. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency responsible for testing nonconcrete handholes and boxes.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR DUCTS AND RACEWAYS**

- A. Comply with ANSI C2.

### **2.2 CONDUIT**

- A. Rigid Steel Conduit: Galvanized. Comply with ANSI C80.1.
- B. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, UL 651, with matching fittings by same manufacturer as the conduit, complying with NEMA TC 3 and UL 514B.

### **2.3 NONMETALLIC DUCTS AND DUCT ACCESSORIES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. ARNCO Corp.
  - 2. Beck Manufacturing.
  - 3. Cantex, Inc.
  - 4. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - 5. Condux International, Inc.
  - 6. ElecSys, Inc.
  - 7. Electri-Flex Company.
  - 8. IPEX Inc.
  - 9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
  - 10. Spiraduct/AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
- B. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: NEMA TC 2, UL 651, ASTM F 512, Type EPC-80, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 by same manufacturer as the duct.
- C. Duct Accessories:
  - 1. Duct Separators: Factory-fabricated rigid PVC interlocking spacers, sized for type and size of ducts with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting ducts during concreting or backfilling.
  - 2. Warning Tape: Underground-line warning tape specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### **2.4 PRECAST CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Christy Concrete Products.
  - 2. Elmhurst-Chicago Stone Co.
  - 3. Oldcastle Precast Group.
  - 4. Rinker Group, Ltd.
  - 5. Riverton Concrete Products.

6. Utility Concrete Products, LLC.
  7. Utility Vault Co.
  8. Wausau Tile Inc.
- B. Comply with ASTM C 858 for design and manufacturing processes.
- C. Description: Factory-fabricated, reinforced-concrete, monolithically poured walls and bottom unless open-bottom enclosures are indicated. Frame and cover shall form top of enclosure and shall have load rating consistent with that of handhole or box.
1. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof cast-iron frame, with cast-iron cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
  2. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
  3. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
  4. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have integral closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Extensions and Slabs: Designed to mate with bottom of enclosure. Same material as enclosure.
    - a. Extension shall provide increased depth of 12 inches.
    - b. Slab: Same dimensions as bottom of enclosure, and arranged to provide closure.
  6. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground-water level at grade.
  7. Windows: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching ducts and duct banks, plus an additional 12 inches vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
    - a. Windows shall be located no less than 6 inches from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or frames and covers of handholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
    - b. Window opening shall have cast-in-place, welded-wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct banks.
    - c. Window openings shall be framed with at least two additional No. 3 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
  8. Duct Entrances in Handhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
    - a. Type and size shall match fittings to duct or conduit to be terminated.
    - b. Fittings shall align with elevations of approaching ducts and be located near interior corners of handholes to facilitate racking of cable.
  9. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.
- D. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes with Polymer Concrete Frame and Cover: Sheet-molded, fiberglass-reinforced, polyester resin enclosure joined to polymer concrete top ring or frame.

## **2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.
- B. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of manholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
  - 1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
  - 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
  - 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification, complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ducts, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field. Notify Architect if there is a conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.
- B. Coordinate elevations of ducts and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of ducts and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct runs drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.
- C. Clear and grub vegetation to be removed, and protect vegetation to remain according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing." Remove and stockpile topsoil for reapplication according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing."

### **3.2 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION**

- A. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Ducts for Electrical Branch Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.3 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION**

- A. Handholes and Boxes for 600 V and Less:
  - 1. Units in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-10 structural load rating.
  - 2. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-20 structural load rating.
  - 3. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-10 structural load rating.
  - 4. Cover design load shall not exceed the design load of the handhole or box.

### 3.4 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
- B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation, and re-establish original grades unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
- C. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" and Section 329300 "Plants."
- D. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground ducts and utility structures according to the "Cutting and Patching" Article in Section 017300 "Execution."

### 3.5 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Install ducts according to NEMA TCB 2.
- B. Slope: Pitch ducts a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope ducts from a high point in runs between two manholes, to drain in both directions.
- C. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 48 inches, both horizontally and vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in ducts and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in same plane.
- E. Installation Adjacent to High-Temperature Steam Lines: Where duct banks are installed parallel to underground steam lines, perform calculations showing the duct bank will not be subject to environmental temperatures above 40 deg C. Where environmental temperatures are calculated to rise above 40 deg C, and anywhere the duct bank crosses above an underground steam line, install insulation blankets listed for direct burial to isolate the duct bank from the steam line.
- F. Duct Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately 10 inches o.c. for 5-inch ducts, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
  - 1. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet from the end bell without reducing duct line slope and without forming a trap in the line.
  - 2. Direct-Buried Duct Banks: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each conduit in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole. Install an expansion fitting near the center of all straight line direct-buried duct banks with calculated expansion of more than 3/4 inch.
  - 3. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.
- G. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to rigid steel conduit at least 10 feet outside the building wall, without reducing duct line slope away from the building, and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for duct-to-conduit transition. Install conduit penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."
- H. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of ducts that have cables pulled. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig hydrostatic pressure.

- I. Pulling Cord: Install 100-lbf-test nylon cord in empty ducts.
- J. Direct-Buried Duct Banks:
  - 1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct bank. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for preparation of trench bottoms for pipes less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
  - 2. Support ducts on duct separators coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
  - 3. Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than four spacers per 20 feet of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent displacement during backfill and yet permit linear duct movement due to expansion and contraction as temperature changes. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches between tiers.
  - 4. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 36 inches below finished grade unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. Set elevation of bottom of duct bank below frost line.
  - 6. Install ducts with a minimum of 3 inches between ducts for like services and 6 inches between power and signal ducts.
  - 7. Elbows: Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment, at building entrances through floor, and at changes of direction in duct run unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
  - 8. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment, at building entrances through floor, and at changes of direction in duct run.
    - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
    - b. For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
  - 9. After installing first tier of ducts, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand place backfill to 4 inches over ducts and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for installation of backfill materials.
    - a. Place minimum 3 inches of sand as a bed for duct bank. Place sand to a minimum of 6 inches above top level of duct bank.
    - b. Place minimum 6 inches of engineered fill above concrete encasement of duct bank.
- K. Warning Tape: Bury warning tape approximately 12 inches above all concrete-encased ducts and duct banks. Align tape parallel to and within 3 inches of centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each 12-inch increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches. Space additional tapes 12 inches apart, horizontally.



### **3.6 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE MANHOLES, HANDHOLES, AND BOXES**

- A. Precast Concrete Handhole Installation:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM C 891 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
  - 3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- B. Elevations:
  - 1. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.
  - 2. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.
- C. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.
- D. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. After ducts have been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, waterproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Waterproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.

### **3.7 GROUNDING**

- A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### **3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground ducts and utility structures.
  - 2. Pull solid aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and adequate bend radii, and test for out-of-round duct. Provide a minimum 6-inch-long mandrel equal to 80 percent fill of duct. If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
- B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

### **3.9 CLEANING**

- A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of ducts. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.
- B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump. Remove foreign material.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 26 05 44

### SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
  - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
  - 4. Grout.
  - 5. Silicone sealants.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves:
  - 1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
  - 2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.
- C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
  - 1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
    - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

## **2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. CALPICO, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Company (The).
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
    - e. Proco Products, Inc.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## **2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS**

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Presealed Systems.

## **2.4 GROUT**

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## **2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS**

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
  - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
  - 2. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
  - 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
    - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
    - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
  - 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  - 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
  - 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
  - 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
  - 1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  - 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

### **3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### **3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 26 05 53

### IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
  - 2. Labels.
  - 3. Bands and tubes.
  - 4. Tapes and stencils.
  - 5. Tags.
  - 6. Signs.
  - 7. Cable ties.
  - 8. Paint for identification.
  - 9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.
- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.
- C. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70E and Division 26 section "Overcurrent Protective Device Arc-Flash Study" requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

### **2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
  - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
  - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
  - 1. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
  - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
    - c. Phase C: Blue.
  - 3. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Brown.
    - b. Phase B: Orange.
    - c. Phase C: Yellow.



4. Color for Neutral: White or gray.
  5. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.
  6. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with Yellow stripe.
- C. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:
1. Black letters on an orange field.
  2. Legend: "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING."
- D. Warning Label Colors:
1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
- E. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
  2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."

## 2.3 LABELS

- A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Champion America.
    - c. emedco.
    - d. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
    - e. HellermannTyton.
    - f. LEM Products Inc.
    - g. Marking Services, Inc.
    - h. Panduit Corp.
    - i. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Snap-around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. HellermannTyton.
    - c. Marking Services, Inc.
    - d. Panduit Corp.
    - e. Seton Identification Products.

- C. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil-thick, polyester flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. A'n D Cable Products.
    - b. Brady Corporation.
    - c. Brother International Corporation.
    - d. emedco.
    - e. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
    - f. Ideal Industries, Inc.
    - g. LEM Products Inc.
    - h. Marking Services, Inc.
    - i. Panduit Corp.
    - j. Seton Identification Products.
  2. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
  3. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
  4. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- D. Self-Adhesive Labels: Polyester, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil-thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. A'n D Cable Products.
    - b. Brady Corporation.
    - c. Brother International Corporation.
    - d. emedco.
    - e. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
    - f. HellermannTyton.
    - g. Ideal Industries, Inc.
    - h. LEM Products Inc.
    - i. Marking Services, Inc.
    - j. Panduit Corp.
    - k. Seton Identification Products.
  2. Minimum Nominal Size:
    - a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches for raceway and conductors.
    - b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches for equipment.
    - c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.4 BANDS AND TUBES

- A. Snap-around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches long, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. HellermannTyton.
    - c. Marking Services, Inc.
    - d. Panduit Corp.
  
- B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameter and shrunk to fit firmly. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of 200 deg F. Comply with UL 224.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Panduit Corp.

## 2.5 TAPES AND STENCILS

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
    - b. Champion America.
    - c. HellermannTyton.
    - d. Ideal Industries, Inc.
    - e. Marking Services, Inc.
    - f. Panduit Corp.
  
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide; compounded for outdoor use.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
    - c. emedco.
    - d. Marking Services, Inc.

- C. Tape and Stencil: 4-inch-wide black stripes on 10-inch centers placed diagonally over orange background and is 12 inches wide. Stop stripes at legends.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. HellermannTyton.
    - b. LEM Products Inc.
    - c. Marking Services, Inc.
    - d. Seton Identification Products.
- D. Underground-Line Warning Tape:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Ideal Industries, Inc.
    - c. LEM Products Inc.
    - d. Marking Services, Inc.
    - e. Reef Industries, Inc.
    - f. Seton Identification Products.
  2. Tape:
    - a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
    - b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
    - c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
  3. Color and Printing:
    - a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
    - b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".
    - c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".
- E. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch.

## 2.6 TAGS

- A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
    - c. emedco.
    - d. Marking Services, Inc.
    - e. Seton Identification Products.

## 2.7 SIGNS

- A. Baked-Enamel Signs:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
    - b. Champion America.
    - c. emedco.
    - d. Marking Services, Inc.
  - 2. Preprinted aluminum signs, high-intensity reflective, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
  - 3. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
  - 4. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches.
- B. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Champion America.
    - c. emedco.
    - d. Marking Services, Inc.
  - 2. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with 0.0396-inch galvanized-steel backing, punched and drilled for fasteners, and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
  - 3. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
  - 4. Nominal Size: 10 by 14 inches.

C. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - c. emedco.
  - d. Marking Services, Inc.
2. Engraved legend.
3. Thickness:
  - a. For signs up to 20 sq. in., minimum 1/16 inch.
  - b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in., 1/8 inch thick.
  - c. Engraved legend with white letters on a dark gray background.
  - d. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
  - e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

## 2.8 CABLE TIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. HellermannTyton.
  2. Ideal Industries, Inc.
  3. Marking Services, Inc.
  4. Panduit Corp.
- B. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
  4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- C. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
  4. Color: Black.

- D. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi.
  - 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
  - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F.
  - 5. Color: Black.

## **2.9 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS**

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.

- H. System Identification for Raceways and Cables over 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- J. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch-high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- K. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- L. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
  - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
  - 2. "POWER."
  - 3. "UPS."
- M. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- N. Snap-around Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- O. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- P. Self-Adhesive Labels:
  - 1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
- Q. Snap-around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- S. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.



- T. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- U. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- V. Underground Line Warning Tape:
  - 1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.
  - 2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
  - 3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- W. Metal Tags:
  - 1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Secure using general-purpose cable ties.
- X. Baked-Enamel Signs:
  - 1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inches high.
- Y. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:
  - 1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
- Z. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
  - 1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
- AA. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:
  - 1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
  - 2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Concealed Raceways, Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Tape and stencil. Stencil legend "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH-VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch-high, black letters on 20-inch centers.
  - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, and at 30-foot maximum intervals.
- D. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than 30 A and 120 V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive raceway labels.
  - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- E. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
  - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
  - 2. "POWER."
  - 3. "UPS."
- F. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use vinyl wraparound labels to identify the phase.
  - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- G. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, More Than 600 V: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use nonmetallic preprinted tags colored and marked to indicate phase, and a separate tag with the circuit designation.
- H. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Marker tape that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
  - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- I. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- J. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.

- K. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive labels.
  - 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
  - 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Power-transfer switches.
    - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- L. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- M. Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels.
- N. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch-high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- O. Equipment Identification Labels:
  - 1. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive label.
  - 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
  - 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
    - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
    - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
    - d. Switchgear.
    - e. Switchboards.
    - f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
    - g. Substations.
    - h. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
    - i. Motor-control centers.
    - j. Enclosed switches.
    - k. Enclosed circuit breakers.
    - l. Enclosed controllers.
    - m. Variable-speed controllers.
    - n. Push-button stations.
    - o. Power-transfer equipment.
    - p. Contactors.
    - q. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
    - r. Battery-inverter units.
    - s. Battery racks.
    - t. Power-generating units.
    - u. Monitoring and control equipment.
    - v. UPS equipment.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 26 05 72

### OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a computer-based, fault-current study to determine the minimum interrupting capacity of circuit protective devices.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. One-Line Diagram: A diagram which shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- B. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.
- C. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- D. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Other Action Submittals: Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.
  - 1. Short-circuit study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
  - 2. Short-circuit study and equipment evaluation report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
    - a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of the distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that the selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.
    - b. Revised single-line diagram, reflecting field investigation results and results of short-circuit study.

## **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For Short-Circuit Study Specialist.
- B. Product Certificates: For short-circuit study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- B. Short-Circuit Study Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- C. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to adjust overcurrent devices and to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. CGI CYME.
  - 2. EDSA Micro Corporation.
  - 3. ESA Inc.
  - 4. Operation Technology, Inc.
  - 5. Power Analytics, Corporation.
  - 6. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 and IEEE 551.
- C. Analytical features of fault-current-study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- D. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output.

### **2.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY REPORT CONTENTS**

- A. Executive summary.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of the computer printout.

- C. One-line diagram, showing the following:
1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
  2. Cable size and lengths.
  3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
  4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
  5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations.
- D. Comments and recommendations for system improvements, where needed.
- E. Protective Device Evaluation:
1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
  2. Tabulations of circuit breaker, fuse, and other protective device ratings versus calculated short-circuit duties.
  3. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
  4. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in the standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
  5. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
- F. Short-Circuit Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article in the Evaluations.
- G. Short-Circuit Study Output:
1. Low-Voltage Fault Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
    - a. Voltage.
    - b. Calculated fault-current magnitude and angle.
    - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
    - d. Equivalent impedance.
  2. Momentary Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
    - a. Voltage.
    - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
    - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
    - d. Calculated asymmetrical fault currents:
      - 1) Based on fault-point X/R ratio.
      - 2) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 1.6.
      - 3) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 2.7.
  3. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
    - a. Voltage.
    - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
    - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
    - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.

- e. Equivalent impedance.
- f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
- g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Obtain all data necessary for the conduct of the study.
  - 1. Verify completeness of data supplied on the one-line diagram. Call any discrepancies to the attention of Architect.
  - 2. For equipment provided that is Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under the provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
- B. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support the short-circuit study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.
  - 1. Product Data for Project's overcurrent protective devices involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
  - 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
  - 3. Power sources and ties.
  - 4. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
  - 5. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.
  - 6. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
  - 7. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
  - 8. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
  - 9. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
  - 10. Cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).

### **3.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY**

- A. Perform study following the general study procedures contained in IEEE 399.
- B. Calculate short-circuit currents according to IEEE 551.
- C. Base study on the device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. The extent of the electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.



- E. Begin short-circuit current analysis at the service, extending down to the system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
  - 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
  - 2. Exclude equipment rated 240-V ac or less when supplied by a single transformer rated less than 125 kVA.
- F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- G. The calculations shall include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and shall apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. The calculations shall also account for the fault-current dc decrement, to address the asymmetrical requirements of the interrupting equipment.
  - 1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- H. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault at each of the following:
  - 1. Electric utility's supply termination point.
  - 2. Incoming switchgear.
  - 3. Unit substation primary and secondary terminals.
  - 4. Low-voltage switchgear.
  - 5. Control panels.
  - 6. Standby generators and automatic transfer switches.
  - 7. Branch circuit panelboards.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit study.

### **3.4 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Train Owner's operating and maintenance personnel in the use of study results.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 26 05 73

### OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes computer-based, overcurrent protective device coordination studies to determine overcurrent protective devices and to determine overcurrent protective device settings for selective tripping.
  - 1. Study results shall be used to determine coordination of series-rated devices.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.
- B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram which shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- C. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.
- D. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- E. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Other Action Submittals: Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.
  - 1. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
  - 2. Study and equipment evaluation reports.

3. Overcurrent protective device coordination study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
  - a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of the distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that the selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

## **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For Coordination Study Specialist.
- B. Product Certificates: For overcurrent protective device coordination study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

## **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For the overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. The following parts from the Protective Device Coordination Study Report:
      - 1) One-line diagram.
      - 2) Protective device coordination study.
      - 3) Time-current coordination curves.
    - b. Power system data.

## **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- B. Coordination Study Software Developer Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
  1. The computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- C. Coordination Study Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

- D. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to adjust overcurrent devices and to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS**

- A. Software Developers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CGI CYME.
    - b. EDSA Micro Corporation.
    - c. ESA Inc.
    - d. Operation Technology, Inc.
    - e. Power Analytics, Corporation.
    - f. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 242 and IEEE 399.
- C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- D. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.
  - 1. Optional Features:
    - a. Arcing faults.
    - b. Simultaneous faults.
    - c. Explicit negative sequence.
    - d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

### **2.2 PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY REPORT CONTENTS**

- A. Executive summary.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms and guide for interpretation of the computer printout.
- C. One-line diagram, showing the following:
  - 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
  - 2. Cable size and lengths.
  - 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.

4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
  5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations.
- D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
- E. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Division 26 section "Overcurrent Protective Device Short-Circuit Study."
- F. Protective Device Coordination Study:
1. Report recommended settings of protective devices, ready to be applied in the field. Use manufacturer's data sheets for recording the recommended setting of overcurrent protective devices when available.
    - a. Phase and Ground Relays:
      - 1) Device tag.
      - 2) Relay current transformer ratio and tap, time dial, and instantaneous pickup value.
      - 3) Recommendations on improved relaying systems, if applicable.
    - b. Circuit Breakers:
      - 1) Adjustable pickups and time delays (long time, short time, ground).
      - 2) Adjustable time-current characteristic.
      - 3) Adjustable instantaneous pickup.
      - 4) Recommendations on improved trip systems, if applicable.
    - c. Fuses: Show current rating, voltage, and class.
- G. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:
1. Device tag and title, one-line diagram with legend identifying the portion of the system covered.
  2. Terminate device characteristic curves at a point reflecting maximum symmetrical or asymmetrical fault current to which the device is exposed.
  3. Identify the device associated with each curve by manufacturer type, function, and, if applicable, tap, time delay, and instantaneous settings recommended.
  4. Plot the following listed characteristic curves, as applicable:
    - a. Power utility's overcurrent protective device.
    - b. Medium-voltage equipment overcurrent relays.
    - c. Medium- and low-voltage fuses including manufacturer's minimum melt, total clearing, tolerance, and damage bands.
    - d. Low-voltage equipment circuit-breaker trip devices, including manufacturer's tolerance bands.
    - e. Transformer full-load current, magnetizing inrush current, and ANSI through-fault protection curves.
    - f. Cables and conductors damage curves.
    - g. Ground-fault protective devices.

- h. Motor-starting characteristics and motor damage points.
  - i. Generator short-circuit decrement curve and generator damage point.
  - j. The largest feeder circuit breaker in each motor-control center and panelboard.
5. Series rating on equipment allows the application of two series interrupting devices for a condition where the available fault current is greater than the interrupting rating of the downstream equipment. Both devices share in the interruption of the fault and selectivity is sacrificed at high fault levels. Maintain selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads.
  6. Provide adequate time margins between device characteristics such that selective operation is achieved.
  7. Comments and recommendations for system improvements.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.
  1. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

### **3.2 PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY**

- A. Comply with IEEE 242 for calculating short-circuit currents and determining coordination time intervals.
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.
- C. The study shall be based on the device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. The extent of the electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.
- E. Begin analysis at the service, extending down to the system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
  1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
  2. Exclude equipment rated 240-V ac or less when supplied by a single transformer rated less than 125 kVA.
- F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.

- G. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:
1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:
    - a. Inrush current when first energized.
    - b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
    - c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.
  2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.
- H. Motor Protection:
1. Select protection for low-voltage motors according to IEEE 242 and NFPA 70.
  2. Select protection for motors served at voltages more than 600 V according to IEEE 620.
- I. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and protection recommendations in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.
- J. Generator Protection: Select protection according to manufacturer's written recommendations and to IEEE 242.
- K. The calculations shall include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and shall apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. The calculations shall also account for the fault-current dc decrement, to address the asymmetrical requirements of the interrupting equipment.
1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- L. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and single line-to-ground fault at each of the following:
1. Electric utility's supply termination point.
  2. Switchgear.
  3. Unit substation primary and secondary terminals.
  4. Low-voltage switchgear.
  5. Motor-control centers.
  6. Standby generators and automatic transfer switches.
  7. Branch circuit panelboards.
- M. Protective Device Evaluation:
1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
  2. Adequacy of switchgear, motor-control centers, and panelboard bus bars to withstand short-circuit stresses.
  3. Any application of series-rated devices shall be recertified, complying with requirements in NFPA 70.



### **3.3 LOAD-FLOW AND VOLTAGE-DROP STUDY**

- A. Perform a load-flow and voltage-drop study to determine the steady-state loading profile of the system. Analyze power system performance two times as follows:
  - 1. Determine load-flow and voltage drop based on full-load currents obtained in "Power System Data" Article.
  - 2. Determine load-flow and voltage drop based on 80 percent of the design capacity of the load buses.
  - 3. Prepare the load-flow and voltage-drop analysis and report to show power system components that are overloaded, or might become overloaded; show bus voltages that are less than as prescribed by NFPA 70.

### **3.4 MOTOR-STARTING STUDY**

- A. Perform a motor-starting study to analyze the transient effect of the system's voltage profile during motor starting. Calculate significant motor-starting voltage profiles and analyze the effects of the motor starting on the power system stability.
- B. Prepare the motor-starting study report, noting light flicker for limits proposed by IEEE 141 and voltage sags so as not to affect the operation of other utilization equipment on the system supplying the motor.

### **3.5 POWER SYSTEM DATA**

- A. Obtain all data necessary for the conduct of the overcurrent protective device study.
  - 1. Verify completeness of data supplied in the one-line diagram on Drawings. Call discrepancies to the attention of Architect.
  - 2. For new equipment, use characteristics submitted under the provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
  - 3. For existing equipment, whether or not relocated obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers. The qualifications of technicians and engineers shall be qualified as defined by NFPA 70E.
- B. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support coordination study. The list below is a guide. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 for the amount of detail required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.
  - 1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
  - 2. Electrical power utility impedance at the service.
  - 3. Power sources and ties.
  - 4. Short-circuit current at each system bus, three phase and line-to-ground.
  - 5. Full-load current of all loads.

6. Voltage level at each bus.
7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
8. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.
9. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
10. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
11. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
12. Maximum demands from service meters.
13. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
14. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
15. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
16. Medium-voltage cable sizes, lengths, conductor material, and cable construction and metallic shield performance parameters.
17. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:
  - a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
  - b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
  - c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
  - d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
  - e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
  - f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
  - g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
  - h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
  - i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
  - j. Panelboards, switchboards, motor-control center ampacity, and SCCR in amperes rms symmetrical.
  - k. Identify series-rated interrupting devices for a condition where the available fault current is greater than the interrupting rating of the downstream equipment. Obtain device data details to allow verification that series application of these devices complies with NFPA 70 and UL 489 requirements.

### **3.6 FIELD ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust relay and protective device settings according to the recommended settings provided by the coordination study. Field adjustments shall be completed by the engineering service division of the equipment manufacturer under the Startup and Acceptance Testing contract portion.
- B. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with protective device coordination studies.

- C. Testing and adjusting shall be by a full-time employee of the Field Adjusting Agency, who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters. Perform NETA tests and inspections for all adjustable overcurrent protective devices.

### **3.7 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage the Coordination Study Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in the following:
  - 1. Acquaint personnel in the fundamentals of operating the power system in normal and emergency modes.
  - 2. Hand-out and explain the objectives of the coordination study, study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpreting the time-current coordination curves.
  - 3. Adjust, operate, and maintain overcurrent protective device settings.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 26 05 74

### OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE ARC-FLASH STUDY

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a computer-based, arc-flash study to determine the arc-flash hazard distance and the incident energy to which personnel could be exposed during work on or near electrical equipment.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.
- B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram which shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- C. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.
- D. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- E. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Study Submittals: Submit the following submittals after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.
  - 1. Arc-flash study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
  - 2. Arc-flash study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
    - a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of the distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that the selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

## **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For Arc-Flash Study Specialist.
- B. Product Certificates: For arc-flash hazard analysis software, certifying compliance with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

## **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data:
  - 1. Maintenance procedures according to requirements in NFPA 70E shall be provided in the equipment manuals.
  - 2. Operation and Maintenance Procedures: In addition to items specified in Division 01 section "Operation and Maintenance Data," provide maintenance procedures for use by Owner's personnel that comply with requirements in NFPA 70E.

## **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- B. Arc-Flash Study Software Developer Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
  - 1. The computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- C. Arc-Flash Study Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study, analyzing the arc flash, and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- D. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to adjust overcurrent devices and to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. CGI CYME.
  - 2. EDSA Micro Corporation.
  - 3. ESA Inc.
  - 4. Operation Technology, Inc.
  - 5. Power Analytics, Corporation.
  - 6. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.
- C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

### **2.2 ARC-FLASH STUDY REPORT CONTENT**

- A. Executive summary.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis and scope.
- C. One-line diagram, showing the following:
  - 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
  - 2. Cable size and lengths.
  - 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
  - 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
  - 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center and panelboard designations.
- D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
- E. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short Circuit Study Output" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Division 26 section "Overcurrent Protective Device Short-Circuit Study."
- F. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Division 26 section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."
- G. Arc-Flash Study Output:
  - 1. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
    - a. Voltage.
    - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.

- c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
- d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
- e. Equivalent impedance.
- f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
- g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

H. Incident Energy and Flash Protection Boundary Calculations:

- 1. Arcing fault magnitude.
- 2. Protective device clearing time.
- 3. Duration of arc.
- 4. Arc-flash boundary.
- 5. Working distance.
- 6. Incident energy.
- 7. Hazard risk category.
- 8. Recommendations for arc-flash energy reduction.

I. Fault study input data, case descriptions, and fault-current calculations including a definition of terms and guide for interpretation of the computer printout.

## 2.3 ARC-FLASH WARNING LABELS

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems" for self-adhesive equipment labels. Produce a 3.5-by-5-inch self-adhesive equipment label for each work location included in the analysis.
- B. The label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:
  - 1. Location designation.
  - 2. Nominal voltage.
  - 3. Flash protection boundary.
  - 4. Hazard risk category.
  - 5. Incident energy.
  - 6. Working distance.
  - 7. Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.
- C. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals. Proceed with arc-flash study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to arc-flash study may not be used in study.



### 3.2 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70E and its Annex D for hazard analysis study.
- B. Preparatory Studies:
  - 1. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Division 26 section "Overcurrent Protective Device Short-Circuit Study."
  - 2. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Division 26 section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."
- C. Calculate maximum and minimum contributions of fault-current size.
  - 1. The minimum calculation shall assume that the utility contribution is at a minimum and shall assume no motor load.
  - 2. The maximum calculation shall assume a maximum contribution from the utility and shall assume motors to be operating under full-load conditions.
- D. Calculate the arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at locations in the electrical distribution system where personnel could perform work on energized parts.
- E. Include medium- and low-voltage equipment locations, except equipment rated 240-V ac or less fed from transformers less than 125 kVA.
- F. Safe working distances shall be specified for calculated fault locations based on the calculated arc-flash boundary, considering incident energy of 1.2 cal/sq.cm.
- G. Incident energy calculations shall consider the accumulation of energy over time when performing arc-flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations shall take into account the changing current contributions, as the sources are interrupted or decremented with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators shall be decremented as follows:
  - 1. Fault contribution from induction motors should not be considered beyond three to five cycles.
  - 2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators should be decayed to match the actual decrement of each as closely as possible (e.g., contributions from permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 per unit to three per unit after 10 cycles).
- H. Arc-flash computation shall include both line and load side of a circuit breaker as follows:
  - 1. When the circuit breaker is in a separate enclosure.
  - 2. When the line terminals of the circuit breaker are separate from the work location.
- I. Base arc-flash calculations on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Cap maximum clearing time at two seconds based on IEEE 1584, Section B.1.2.

### 3.3 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for the conduct of the arc-flash hazard analysis.
1. Verify completeness of data supplied on the one-line diagram on Drawings. Call discrepancies to the attention of Architect.
  2. For new equipment, use characteristics submitted under the provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
  3. For existing equipment, whether or not relocated, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers.
- B. Electrical Survey Data: Gather and tabulate the following input data to support study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.
1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
  2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
  3. Power sources and ties.
  4. Short-circuit current at each system bus, three phase and line-to-ground.
  5. Full-load current of all loads.
  6. Voltage level at each bus.
  7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in per cent, and phase shift.
  8. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating and impedance.
  9. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
  10. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
  11. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
  12. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
  13. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
  14. Medium-voltage cable sizes, lengths, conductor material, and cable construction and metallic shield performance parameters.

### **3.4 LABELING**

- A. Apply one arc-flash label for 600-V ac, 480-V ac, and applicable 208-V ac panelboards and disconnects and for each of the following locations:
  - 1. Motor-control center.
  - 2. Low-voltage switchboard.
  - 3. Switchgear.
  - 4. Medium-voltage switch.
  - 5. Control panel.

### **3.5 APPLICATION OF WARNING LABELS**

- A. Install the arc-fault warning labels under the direct supervision and control of the Arc-Flash Study Specialist.

### **3.6 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage the Arc-Flash Study Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in the potential arc-flash hazards associated with working on energized equipment and the significance of the arc-flash warning labels.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 26 22 00

### LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Distribution, dry-type transformers rated 600 V and less, with capacities up to 1500 kVA.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type and size of transformer.
  - 2. Include rated nameplate data, capacities, weights, dimensions, minimum clearances, installed devices and features, and performance for each type and size of transformer.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

##### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

##### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transformers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

## **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat according to manufacturer's written instructions within the enclosure of each ventilated-type unit, throughout periods during which equipment is not energized and when transformer is not in a space that is continuously under normal control of temperature and humidity.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Acme Electric Corporation.
  - 2. Controlled Power Company; an Emerson company.
  - 3. Eaton.
  - 4. General Electric Company.
  - 5. Hammond Power Solutions Inc.
  - 6. Jefferson Electric, Inc.
  - 7. Lincoln Electric Products Co., Inc.
  - 8. Mag-Tran; a division of Quality Transformer & Electronics.
  - 9. Marcus Transformer LTD.
  - 10. MGM Transformer Company.
  - 11. Micron Industries Corporation.
  - 12. Mirus International Inc.
  - 13. Powersmiths International Corp.
  - 14. Rex Power Magnetics.
  - 15. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
  - 16. Sola/Hevi-Duty; a brand of Emerson Electric Co.
  - 17. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
  - 18. TEMCo Transformers.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each transformer type from single source from single manufacturer.

### **2.2 GENERAL TRANSFORMER REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units for 60-Hz service.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Transformers Rated 15 kVA and Larger: Comply with NEMA TP 1 energy-efficiency levels as verified by testing according to NEMA TP 2.

- D. Cores: Electrical grade, non-aging silicon steel with high permeability and low hysteresis losses.
- E. Coils: Continuous windings without splices except for taps.
  - 1. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
  - 2. Coil Material: Aluminum or Copper.
- F. Encapsulation: Transformers smaller than 30 kVA shall have core and coils completely resin encapsulated.
- G. Shipping Restraints: Paint or otherwise color code bolts, wedges, blocks, and other restraints that are to be removed after installation and before energizing. Use fluorescent colors that are easily identifiable inside the transformer enclosure.

### **2.3 DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS**

- A. Comply with NFPA 70, and list and label as complying with UL 1561.
- B. Cores: One leg per phase.
- C. Enclosure: Ventilated.
  - 1. NEMA 250, Type 2: Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound to seal out moisture and air.
  - 2. KVA Ratings: Based on convection cooling only and not relying on auxiliary fans.
- D. Transformer Enclosure Finish: Comply with NEMA 250.
  - 1. Finish Color: Gray.
- E. Taps for Transformers 25 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent taps above and four 2.5 percent taps below normal full capacity.
- F. Insulation Class: 185 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with a maximum of 115-deg C rise above 40-deg C ambient temperature.  
 K-Factor Rating: Transformers indicated to be K-factor rated shall comply with UL 1561 requirements for nonsinusoidal load current-handling capability to the degree defined by designated K-factor.
  - 1. Unit shall not overheat when carrying full-load current with harmonic distortion corresponding to designated K-factor.
  - 2. Indicate value of K-factor on transformer nameplate.
  - 3. Unit shall meet requirements of NEMA TP 1 when tested according to NEMA TP 2 with a K-factor equal to one.
- H. Electrostatic Shielding: Each winding shall have an independent, single, full-width copper electrostatic shield arranged to minimize interwinding capacitance.
  - 1. Arrange coil leads and terminal strips to minimize capacitive coupling between input and output terminals.
  - 2. Include special terminal for grounding the shield.

## **2.4 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES**

- A. Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-plastic or metal nameplate for each distribution transformer, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## **2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Test and inspect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.01 and IEEE C57.12.91.
  - 1. Resistance measurements of all windings at the rated voltage connections and at all tap connections.
  - 2. Ratio tests at the rated voltage connections and at all tap connections.
  - 3. Phase relation and polarity tests at the rated voltage connections.
  - 4. No load losses, and excitation current and rated voltage at the rated voltage connections.
  - 5. Impedance and load losses at rated current and rated frequency at the rated voltage connections.
  - 6. Applied and induced tensile tests.
  - 7. Regulation and efficiency at rated load and voltage.
  - 8. Insulation Resistance Tests:
    - a. High-voltage to ground.
    - b. Low-voltage to ground.
    - c. High-voltage to low-voltage.
  - 9. Temperature tests.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine conditions for compliance with enclosure- and ambient-temperature requirements for each transformer.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as needed to maintain working clearances required by NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where transformers will be installed.
- D. Verify that ground connections are in place and requirements in Division 26 section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at location of transformer.
- E. Environment: Enclosures shall be rated for the environment in which they are located.
- F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install transformers level and plumb on a concrete base with vibration-dampening supports. Locate transformers away from corners and not parallel to adjacent wall surface.
- B. Construct concrete bases according to Division 03 section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and anchor floor-mounted transformers according to manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in Division 26 section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with actual transformer provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
- C. Secure transformer to concrete base according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Secure covers to enclosure and tighten all bolts to manufacturer-recommended torques to reduce noise generation.
- E. Remove shipping bolts, blocking, and wedges.

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- D. Provide flexible connections at all conduit and conductor terminations and supports to eliminate sound and vibration transmission to the building structure.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS for dry-type, air-cooled, low-voltage transformers. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- F. Remove and replace units that do not pass tests or inspections and retest as specified above.

- G. Infrared Scanning: Two months after Substantial Completion, perform an infrared scan of transformer connections.
  - 1. Use an infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
  - 2. Perform two follow-up infrared scans of transformers, one at four months and the other at 11 months after Substantial Completion.
  - 3. Prepare a certified report identifying transformer checked and describing results of scanning. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and scanning observations after remedial action.
- H. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.

### **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- A. Record transformer secondary voltage at each unit for at least 48 hours of typical occupancy period. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 5 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.
- B. Connect buck-boost transformers to provide nameplate voltage of equipment being served, plus or minus 5 percent, at secondary terminals.
- C. Output Settings Report: Prepare a written report recording output voltages and tap settings.

### **3.6 CLEANING**

- A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

**END OF SECTION**

## **SECTION 26 24 13**

### **SWITCHBOARDS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Service and distribution switchboards rated 600 V and less.
  - 2. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
  - 3. Instrumentation.
  - 4. Control power.
  - 5. Accessory components and features.
  - 6. Identification.

##### **1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

##### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA PB 2.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. Comply with UL 891.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

##### **2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

- B. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible Switchboards:
  - 1. Main Devices: Fixed, individually mounted.
  - 2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
  - 3. Sections front aligned.
- C. Nominal System Voltage: 480Y/277 V.
- D. Main-Bus Continuous: As indicated on drawings.
- E. Enclosure: Steel, NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  - 1. Enclosure Finish: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.
  - 2. Enclosure: Downward, rearward sloping roof; bolt-on rear covers for each section, with provisions for padlocking.
- F. Utility Metering Compartment: Fabricated, barrier compartment and section complying with utility company's requirements. If separate vertical section is required for utility metering, match and align with basic switchboard. Provide service entrance label and necessary applicable service entrance features.
- G. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections: Matched and aligned with basic switchboard.
- H. Hinged Front Panels: Allow access to circuit breaker, metering, accessory, and blank compartments.
- I. Phase and Neutral Buses and Connections: Three phase, four wire unless otherwise indicated. Tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy with tin-plated aluminum circuit-breaker line connections.
  - 1. Ground Bus: 1/4-by-2-inch- minimum size, hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, equipped with pressure connectors for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors.
  - 2. Main Phase Buses and Equipment Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of switchboard's main and distribution sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends.
  - 3. Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with pressure connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables.
- J. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of circuit-breaker compartment.

## 2.2 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
  - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
  - 3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replaceable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
    - a. Instantaneous trip.
    - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    - c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
    - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I<sup>2</sup>t response.
  - 4. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:
    - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    - b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
    - c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.

## 2.3 INSTRUMENTATION

- A. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:
  - 1. Switch-selectable digital display of the following values with maximum accuracy tolerances as indicated:
    - a. Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - b. Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - c. Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - d. Megawatts: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - e. Megavars: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - f. Power Factor: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - g. Frequency: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
    - h. Accumulated Energy, Megawatt Hours: Plus or minus 2 percent; accumulated values unaffected by power outages up to 72 hours.
    - i. Megawatt Demand: Plus or minus 2 percent; demand interval programmable from five to 60 minutes.
  - 2. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.

## 2.4 CONTROL POWER

- A. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from control-power transformer.
  - 1. Control-Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses for current-limiting and overload protection of transformer and fuses for protection of control circuits.
  - 2. Control Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.

## 2.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for switchboards with one or more service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, store and install switchboards and accessories according to NECA 400.
- B. Equipment Mounting: Install switchboards on concrete base, 4-inch nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to switchboards.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchboard units and components.
- D. Install filler plates in unused spaces of panel-mounted sections.
- E. Install overcurrent protective devices, transient voltage suppression devices, and instrumentation.
  - 1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- F. Install spare-fuse cabinet.
- G. Comply with NECA 1.

### **3.2 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Switchboard Nameplates: Label each switchboard compartment with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- C. Device Nameplates: Label each disconnecting and overcurrent protective device and each meter and control device mounted in compartment doors with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each switchboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Switchboard will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies switchboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

**END OF SECTION**





## **SECTION 26 24 16**

### **PANELBOARDS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Distribution panelboards.
  - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

##### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- F. SPD: Surge protective device.
- G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

##### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
  - 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
  - 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.

3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
10. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
11. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

### **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards.

### **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
  2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

### **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

### **1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards: install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NEMA PB 1.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
  - 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
  - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding minus 22 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
    - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.
- B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
  - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
  - 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PANELBOARDS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
    - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  - 2. Height: 84 inches maximum.
  - 3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
  - 4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
  - 5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
  - 6. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.

7. Finishes:
  - a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
  - b. Back Boxes: Same finish as panels and trim.
  
- F. Incoming Mains:
  1. Location: Convertible between top and bottom.
  2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.
  
- G. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
  1. Material: Tin-plated aluminum or Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
    - a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
    - b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.
  2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
  3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
  4. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
  5. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
  6. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction, as suitable for nonlinear loads in electronic-grade panelboards and others designated on Drawings. Connectors shall be sized for double-sized or parallel conductors as indicated on Drawings. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
  
- H. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
  1. Material: Tin-plated aluminum or Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
  3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
  4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
  5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
  6. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
  7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
  8. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.

- I. NRTL Label: Panelboards or load centers shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- J. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
  - 1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: Ten percent.
- K. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.
  - 1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
  - 2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

## 2.2 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Eaton.
  - 2. ESL Power Systems, Inc.
  - 3. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
  - 4. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
  - 5. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
  - 1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker or Lugs only as indicated on drawings.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- G. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.

## 2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Eaton.
  - 2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
  - 3. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
  - 4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only as indicated on drawings.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

## 2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Eaton.
  - 2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
  - 3. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
  - 4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
  - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
    - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
    - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
    - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
  - 3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
    - a. RMS sensing.
    - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
    - c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
    - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
    - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
    - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.

- g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
  - 1) Instantaneous trip.
  - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
  - 3) Long and short time adjustments.
  - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
- 4. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- 5. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- 6. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
- 7. MCCB Features and Accessories:
  - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
  - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
  - d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
  - e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
  - f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
  - g. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent of rated voltage.

## 2.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.
- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.
  - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.

- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install panelboards on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03 section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 2. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
  - 3. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Division 26 section "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
- F. Mount top of trim 90 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- H. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- I. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 5/8 inch in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
- J. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
  - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
  - 2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
- K. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- L. Install filler plates in unused spaces.



- M. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- N. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.

### **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
    - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

c. Instruments and Equipment:

- 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

- E. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

**3.5 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Division 26 section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

**3.6 PROTECTION**

- A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 26 27 26

### WIRING DEVICES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Straight-blade convenience, hospital-grade, isolated-ground, and tamper-resistant receptacles.
  - 2. USB charger devices.
  - 3. GFCI receptacles.
  - 4. Twist-locking receptacles.
  - 5. Pendant cord-connector devices.
  - 6. Cord and plug sets.
  - 7. Toggle switches.
  - 8. Wall plates.
  - 9. Floor service outlets.
  - 10. Prefabricated multioutlet assemblies.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Abbreviations of Manufacturers' Names:
  - 1. Cooper: Cooper Wiring Devices; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Hubbell: Hubbell Incorporated: Wiring Devices-Kellems.
  - 3. Leviton: Leviton Mfg. Company, Inc.
  - 4. Pass & Seymour: Pass& Seymour/Legrand.
- B. BAS: Building automation system.
- C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- D. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.
- H. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

#### **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
  - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
  - 2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.
- D. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
  - 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
  - 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.
- E. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Duplex Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
    - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
    - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
- B. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
    - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
    - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
  2. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
- C. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
    - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
    - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

## 2.3 USB CHARGER DEVICES

- A. Tamper-Resistant, USB Charger Receptacles: 12 V dc, 2.0 A, USB Type A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, UL 1310, and FS W-C-596.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
    - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
    - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

2. Description: Single-piece, rivetless, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap.
3. USB Receptacles: Dual, Type A.
4. Line Voltage Receptacles: Dual, two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.

## **2.4 GFCI RECEPTACLES**

### **A. General Description:**

1. 125 V, 20 A, straight blade, feed-through type.
2. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
3. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned and no longer provides proper GFCI protection.

### **B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
  - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
  - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

### **C. Tamper-Resistant, Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
  - b. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

## **2.5 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES**

### **A. Twist-Lock, Single Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
  - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
  - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

- B. Twist-Lock, Isolated-Ground, Single Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
    - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
    - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
  2. Grounding: Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

## **2.6 PENDANT CORD-CONNECTOR DEVICES**

- A. Description:
1. Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector.
  2. NEMA WD 6 Configurations L5-20P and L5-20R, heavy-duty grade, and FS W-C-596.
  3. Body: Nylon, with screw-open, cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
  4. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength, galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

## **2.7 CORD AND PLUG SETS**

- A. Description:
1. Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
  2. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and ampacity of at least 130 percent of the equipment rating.
  3. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

## 2.8 TOGGLE SWITCHES

- A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
- B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
  - 1. Single Pole:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Eaton (Arrow Hart).
      - 2) Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
      - 3) Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      - 4) Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
  - 2. Two Pole:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Eaton (Arrow Hart).
      - 2) Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
      - 3) Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      - 4) Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
  - 3. Three Way:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Eaton (Arrow Hart).
      - 2) Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
      - 3) Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      - 4) Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
  - 4. Four Way:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Eaton (Arrow Hart).
      - 2) Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
      - 3) Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      - 4) Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).



## **2.9 WALL PLATES**

- A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
  - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
  - 2. Material for Finished Spaces: Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic.
  - 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
  - 4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.
- B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

## **2.10 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS**

- A. Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used.
- B. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.
- C. Service Plate: Round, solid brass with satin finish.
- D. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Data Communication Outlet: Two modular, keyed, color-coded, RJ-45 jacks for twisted pair cable complying with requirements in Division 27 section "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

## **2.11 PREFABRICATED MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
  - 2. Wiremold / Legrand.
- B. Description:
  - 1. Two-piece surface metal raceway, with factory-wired multioutlet harness.
  - 2. Components shall be products from single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.
- C. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish.
- D. Multioutlet Harness:
  - 1. Receptacles: 15-A, 125-V, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-15R receptacles complying with NEMA WD 1, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
  - 2. Receptacle Spacing: 9 inches.
  - 3. Wiring: No. 12 AWG solid, Type THHN copper, two circuit, connecting alternating receptacles.

## 2.12 FINISHES

- A. Device Color:
  - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: As selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
  - 2. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power System: Red.
  - 3. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: As specified above, with orange triangle on face.
- B. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
  - 1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
  - 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
  - 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
  - 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:
  - 1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
  - 2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
  - 3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
  - 4. Existing Conductors:
    - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
    - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
    - c. Pigtailling existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.
2. Install hospital-grade receptacles in patient-care areas with the ground pin or neutral blade at the top.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Dimmers:

1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
2. Verify that dimmers used for fan-speed control are listed for that application.
3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.

H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

### 3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. Install non-feed-through-type GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

### **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Comply with Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
- B. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with recommendations in NFPA 99.
  - 2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
  - 3. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- D. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
  - 1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
  - 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
  - 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
  - 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
  - 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
  - 6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- E. Test straight-blade hospital-grade convenience outlets for the retention force of the grounding blade according to NFPA 99. Retention force shall be not less than 4 oz.
- F. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 26 28 13

### FUSES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:
    - a. Control circuits.
    - b. Enclosed controllers.
    - c. Enclosed switches.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
  - 1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
    - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
    - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
  - 2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
  - 3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
  - 4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse. Submit in PDF format.
  - 5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
  - 6. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

## **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 section "Closeout Procedures," and Division 01 section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
  2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
  3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse used on the Project. Submit in PDF format.
  4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

## **1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F or more than 100 deg F, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Bussmann, an Eaton business.
  2. Edison; a brand of Bussmann by Eaton.
  3. Littelfuse, Inc.
  4. Mersen USA.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

### **2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES**

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.
1. Type RK-1: 250 or 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
  2. Type RK-5: 250 or 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
  3. Type J: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
  4. Type L: 600-V, 601- to 6000-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.

- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS**

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
  - 1. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1 or Class RK5, time delay.
  - 2. Large Motor Branch (601-4000 A): Class L, time delay.
  - 3. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay or Class RK5, time delay.
  - 4. Control Transformer Circuits: Class CC, time delay, control transformer duty.
  - 5. Provide open-fuse indicator fuses or fuse covers with open fuse indication.

#### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

#### **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

**END OF SECTION**





## SECTION 26 28 16

### ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fusible switches.
  - 2. Nonfusible switches.
  - 3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
  - 4. Molded-case switches.
  - 5. Enclosures.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
  - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
  - 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
  - 4. Include evidence of a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) listing for series rating of installed devices.
  - 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
  - 6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.

- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

### **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

### **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
    - b. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.

### **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

### **1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
  - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

### **2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. ABB Inc.
  - 2. Eaton.
  - 3. General Electric Company.
  - 4. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
  - 5. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
  - 1. Single throw.
  - 2. Three or six pole.
  - 3. 240 or 600-V ac.
  - 4. 1200 A and smaller.
  - 5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses.
  - 6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
  - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.

5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: One NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
7. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

### **2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Eaton.
  2. General Electric Company.
  3. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
  4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
  1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
  5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: One NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
  6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
  7. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
  8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

### **2.4 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Eaton.
  2. General Electric Company.
  3. NOARK Electric North America.
  4. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
  5. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Circuit breakers shall be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components shall be completely isolated from the handle and the accessory mounting area.

- C. Circuit breakers shall have a toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. The circuit-breaker handle shall be over center, be trip free, and reside in a tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon shall be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with a push-to-trip button, located on the face of the circuit breaker to mechanically operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.
- D. The maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings shall be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers shall be 100 percent rated.
- E. MCCBs shall be equipped with a device for locking in the isolated position.
- F. Lugs shall be suitable for 140 deg F rated wire on 125-A circuit breakers and below.
- G. Standards: Comply with UL 489 and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- H. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- I. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- J. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
  - 1. Instantaneous trip.
  - 2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
  - 3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
  - 4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response.
- K. Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- L. Ground-Fault Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- M. Features and Accessories:
  - 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  - 2. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
  - 3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
  - 4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.

## 2.5 MOLDED-CASE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Eaton.
  - 2. General Electric Company.
  - 3. NOARK Electric North America.
  - 4. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
  - 5. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Description: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.
- C. Features and Accessories:
  - 1. Standard frame sizes and number of poles.
  - 2. Lugs:
    - a. Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
    - b. Lugs shall be suitable for 140 deg F rated wire on 125-A circuit breakers and below.
  - 3. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; remote-mounted and powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
  - 4. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
  - 5. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
  - 6. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic switch contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of switch contacts.

## 2.6 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1).
- C. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the box, not the cover. The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

### **3.2 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS**

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.
  - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- D. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

### **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- D. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
  - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
    - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
    - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
    - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
    - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
    - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
      - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
        - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
      - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
        - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
    - h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
    - i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
    - j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.
  - 2. Electrical Tests:
    - a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
    - b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.



- c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
- d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
- e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."

E. Tests and Inspections for Molded Case Circuit Breakers:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

- a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
- b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
- d. Verify that the unit is clean.
- e. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
- f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
  - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
    - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
    - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
- g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.
- h. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with the coordination study.

2. Electrical Tests:

- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- b. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.

- c. Perform a contact/pole resistance test. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - d. Perform insulation resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation. Insulation resistance values shall be no less than two megohms.
  - e. Determine the following by primary current injection:
    - 1) Long-time pickup and delay. Pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
    - 2) Short-time pickup and delay. Short-time pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
    - 3) Ground-fault pickup and time delay. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
    - 4) Instantaneous pickup. Instantaneous pickup values shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
  - f. Test functionality of the trip unit by means of primary current injection. Pickup values and trip characteristics shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
  - g. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the shunt trip and close coils shall be as indicated by manufacturer.
  - h. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators; zone interlocking; electrical close and trip operation; trip-free, anti-pump function; and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
  - i. Verify operation of charging mechanism. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
- 3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  - 4. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
    - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - 5. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- F. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
  - 1. Test procedures used.
  - 2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
  - 3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### **3.6 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Division 26 section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 26 29 13.03

### MANUAL AND MAGNETIC MOTOR CONTROLLERS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Manual motor controllers.
  - 2. Combination full-voltage magnetic motor controllers.
  - 3. Enclosures.
  - 4. Accessories.
  - 5. Identification.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CPT: Control power transformer.
- B. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- C. MCP: Motor circuit protector.
- D. NC: Normally closed.
- E. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- G. SCPD: Short-circuit protective device.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of magnetic controller.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Indicate dimensions, weights, required clearances, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Wire Termination Diagrams and Schedules: Include diagrams for signal, and control wiring. Identify terminals and wiring designations and color-codes to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance. Indicate recommended types, wire sizes, and circuiting arrangements for field-installed wiring, and show circuit protection features. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
  - 4. Include features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
  
- C. Product Schedule: List the following for each enclosed controller:
  - 1. Each installed magnetic controller type.
  - 2. NRTL listing.
  - 3. Factory-installed accessories.
  - 4. Nameplate legends.
  - 5. SCCR of integrated unit.
  - 6. For each combination magnetic controller include features, characteristics, ratings, and factory setting of the SCPD and OCPD.
    - a. Listing document proving Type 2 coordination.
  
  - 7. For each series-rated combination state the listed integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating of SCPD and OCPDs by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

## **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For magnetic controllers to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Routine maintenance requirements for magnetic controllers and installed components.
    - b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting circuit breaker and MCP trip settings.
    - c. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.

- d. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate full-load currents.
- e. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor-running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

## **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

## **1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store controllers indoors in clean, dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect controllers from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.
- B. If stored in areas subject to weather, cover controllers to protect them from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers.

## **1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Ambient Environment Ratings: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than 23 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
  - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet for electromagnetic and manual devices.
  - 3. The effect of solar radiation is not significant.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. UL Compliance: Fabricate and label magnetic motor controllers to comply with UL 508 and UL 60947-4-1.
- C. NEMA Compliance: Fabricate motor controllers to comply with ICS 2.

## 2.2 MANUAL MOTOR CONTROLLERS

- A. Motor-Starting Switches (MSS): "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off or on.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Eaton.
    - b. General Electric Company.
    - c. Rockwell Automation, Inc.
    - d. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
    - e. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
  2. Standard: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
  3. Configuration: Nonreversing.
  4. Surface mounting.
  5. Red pilot light.
- B. Fractional Horsepower Manual Controllers (FHPMC): "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Eaton.
    - b. General Electric Company.
    - c. Rockwell Automation, Inc.
    - d. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
    - e. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
  2. Configuration: Nonreversing.
  3. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor; external reset push button; bimetallic type.
  4. Pilot Light: Red.
- C. Integral Horsepower Manual Controllers (IHPMC): "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Eaton.
    - b. General Electric Company.
    - c. Rockwell Automation, Inc.
    - d. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
    - e. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
  2. Configuration: Nonreversing.
  3. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor; external reset push button; bimetallic type.



## 2.3 COMBINATION FULL-VOLTAGE MAGNETIC MOTOR CONTROLLER

- A. Description: Factory-assembled, combination full-voltage magnetic motor controller consisting of the controller described in this article, indicated disconnecting means, SCPD and OCPD, in a single enclosure.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Eaton.
  - 2. General Electric Company.
  - 3. Rockwell Automation, Inc.
  - 4. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
  - 5. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- C. Standard: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
- D. Configuration: Nonreversing.
- E. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type.
  - 1. Operating Voltage: Manufacturer's standard, unless indicated.
- F. Control Power:
  - 1. For on-board control power, obtain from line circuit or from integral CPT. The CPT shall have capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
    - a. Spare CPT Capacity as Indicated on Drawings: 50 VA.
- G. Overload Relays:
  - 1. Solid-State Overload Relay:
    - a. Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
    - b. Sensors in each phase.
    - c. Class 10/20 selectable tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
- H. Class II ground-fault protection shall comply with UL 1053 to interrupt low-level ground faults. The ground-fault detection system shall include circuitry that will prevent the motor controller from tripping when the fault current exceeds the interrupting capacity of the controller. Equip with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting, and a trip indicator.
- I. Digital communication module, using RS-485 Modbus, RTU protocol, 4-wire connection to host devices with a compatible port to transmit the following to the LAN:
  - 1. Instantaneous rms current each phase, and 3-phase average.
  - 2. Voltage: L-L for each phase, L-L 3-phase average, L-N each phase and L-N 3-phase average - rms.
  - 3. Active Energy (kWh): 3-phase total.

- J. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
  - 1. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses.
  - 2. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.

## 2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. Comply with NEMA 250, type designations as indicated on Drawings, complying with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. The construction of the enclosures shall comply with NEMA ICS 6.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. General Requirements for Control Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in controller enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Push Buttons, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: Standard-duty, except as needed to match enclosure type. Heavy-duty or oil-tight where indicated in the controller schedule.
    - a. Push Buttons: As indicated in the controller schedule.
    - b. Pilot Lights: As indicated in the controller schedule.
  - 2. Elapsed Time Meters: Heavy duty with digital readout in hours; resettable.
  - 3. Meters: Panel type, 2-1/2-inch minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale and plus or minus two percent accuracy. Where indicated, provide selector switches with an off position.
- B. Motor protection relays shall be with solid-state sensing circuit and isolated output contacts for hardwired connections.
  - 1. Phase-failure.
  - 2. Phase-reversal, with bicolor LED to indicate normal and fault conditions. Automatic reset when phase reversal is corrected.
  - 3. Under/overvoltage, operate when the circuit voltage reaches a preset value, and drop out when the operating voltage drops to a level below the preset value. Include adjustable time-delay setting.
- C. Sun shields installed on fronts, sides, and tops of enclosures installed outdoors and subject to direct and extended sun exposure.

## 2.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Controller Nameplates: Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as described in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems," for each compartment, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws.

B. Arc-Flash Warning Labels:

1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 section "Overcurrent Protective Device Arc-Flash Study." Produce a 3.5-by-5-inch self-adhesive equipment label for each work location included in the analysis.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems." Produce a 3.5-by-5-inch self-adhesive equipment label for each work location included in the analysis. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.
  - a. The label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:
    - 1) Location designation.
    - 2) Nominal voltage.
    - 3) Flash protection boundary.
    - 4) Hazard risk category.
    - 5) Incident energy.
    - 6) Working distance.
    - 7) Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.
  - b. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and space conditions for compliance with requirements for motor controllers, their relationship with the motors, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wall-Mounted Controllers: Install magnetic controllers on walls with tops at uniform height indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not at walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Division 26 section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Floor-Mounted Controllers: Install controllers on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03 section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.
- E. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

- F. Setting of Overload Relays: Select and set overloads on the basis of full-load current rating as shown on motor nameplate. Adjust setting value for special motors as required by NFPA 70 for motors that are high-torque, high-efficiency, and so on.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Comply with the provisions of NFPA 70B, "Testing and Test Methods" Chapter.
  - 2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Compare equipment nameplate data with drawings and specifications.
    - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
    - d. Verify the unit is clean.
    - e. Inspect contactors:
      - 1) Verify mechanical operation.
      - 2) Verify contact gap, wipe, alignment, and pressure are according to manufacturer's published data.
    - f. Motor-Running Protection:
      - 1) Verify overload element rating is correct for its application.
      - 2) If motor-running protection is provided by fuses, verify correct fuse rating.
    - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
      - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values with values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
      - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12. Bolt-torque levels shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.

- h. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
3. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Insulation-resistance values shall be according to manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.1. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.5. Values of insulation resistance less than those of this table or manufacturer's recommendations shall be investigated and corrected.
  - b. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
  - c. Test motor protection devices according to manufacturer's published data.
  - d. Test circuit breakers as follows:
    - 1) Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
    - 2) For adjustable circuit breakers, adjust protective device settings according to the coordination study. Comply with coordination study recommendations.
  - e. Perform operational tests by initiating control devices.
4. Infrared Inspection: Perform the survey during periods of maximum possible loading. Remove all necessary covers prior to the inspection.
- a. Comply with the recommendations of NFPA 70B, "Testing and Test Methods" Chapter, "Infrared Inspection" Article.
  - b. After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform infrared inspection of the electrical power connections of each motor controller.
  - c. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each motor controller 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
  - d. Report of Infrared Inspection: Prepare a certified report that identifies the testing technician and equipment used, and lists the following results:
    - 1) Description of equipment to be tested.
    - 2) Discrepancies.
    - 3) Temperature difference between the area of concern and the reference area.
    - 4) Probable cause of temperature difference.
    - 5) Areas inspected. Identify inaccessible and unobservable areas and equipment.
    - 6) Load conditions at time of inspection.
    - 7) Photographs and thermograms of the deficient area.
    - 8) Recommended action.
  - e. Act on inspection results and recommended action, and considering the recommendations of NETA ATS, Table 100.18. Correct possible and probable deficiencies as soon as Owner's operations permit. Retest until deficiencies are corrected.
- F. Motor controller will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.5 SYSTEM FUNCTION TESTS**

- A. System function tests shall prove the correct interaction of sensing, processing, and action devices. Perform system function tests after field quality control tests have been completed and all components have passed specified tests.
  - 1. Develop test parameters and perform tests for the purpose of evaluating performance of integral components and their functioning as a complete unit within design requirements and manufacturer's published data.
  - 2. Verify the correct operation of interlock safety devices for fail-safe functions in addition to design function.
  - 3. Verify the correct operation of sensing devices, alarms, and indicating devices.
- B. Motor controller will be considered defective if it does not pass the system function tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.6 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain switchgear.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 26 32 13.13

### DEISEL EMERGENCY ENGINE GENERATORS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes packaged engine-generator sets for emergency and standby power supply with the following features:
  - 1. Diesel engine.
  - 2. Unit-mounted cooling system.
  - 3. Unit-mounted control and monitoring.
  - 4. Performance requirements for sensitive loads.
  - 5. Outdoor enclosure.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.
- B. LP: Liquid petroleum.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of packaged engine generator indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. In addition, include the following:
  - 1. Thermal damage curve for generator.
  - 2. Time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 1. Dimensioned outline plan and elevation drawings of engine-generator set and other components specified.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  - 3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include base weights.
  - 4. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

## **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For installer manufacturer and testing agency.
- B. Source quality-control test reports.
  - 1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report.
  - 2. Certified Test Reports: For components and accessories that are equivalent, but not identical, to those tested on prototype unit.
  - 3. Certified Summary of Performance Tests: Certify compliance with specified requirement to meet performance criteria for sensitive loads.
  - 4. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
  - 5. Report of sound generation.
  - 6. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
  - 7. Certified Torsional Vibration Compatibility: Comply with NFPA 110.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

## **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For packaged engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - 1. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.

## **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
  - 1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than four hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.
  - 2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for vibration isolators and seismic restraints of engine skid mounts, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer. Maintain, within 200 miles of Project site, a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL), and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged generator sets and auxiliary components through one source from a single manufacturer.



- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- F. Comply with ASME B15.1.
- G. Comply with NFPA 37.
- H. Comply with NFPA 70.
- I. Comply with NFPA 99.
- J. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 emergency power supply system.
- K. Comply with UL 2200.
- L. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements.
- M. Noise Emission: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements for maximum noise level at adjacent property boundaries due to sound emitted by generator set including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.

**1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Conditions: Engine-generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
  1. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 40 deg C.
  2. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent.
  3. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet.

**1.9 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for package engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Caterpillar; Engine Div.
  2. Generac Power Systems, Inc.
  3. Kohler Co.
  4. Magnetek, Inc.
  5. Onan/Cummins Power Generation; Industrial Business Group.
  6. Spectrum Detroit Diesel.

## 2.2 ENGINE-GENERATOR SET

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested, engine-generator set.
- B. Mounting Frame: Maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation; and have lifting attachments.
  - 1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and generator-set center of gravity.
- C. Capacities and Characteristics:
  - 1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated.
  - 2. Output Connections: Three-phase, four wire.
  - 3. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.
- D. Generator-Set Performance:
  - 1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 3 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
  - 2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
  - 3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
  - 4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
  - 5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
  - 6. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
  - 7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a 3-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
  - 8. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10, system requirements.
- E. Generator-Set Performance for Sensitive Loads:
  - 1. Oversizing generator compared with the rated power output of the engine is permissible to meet specified performance.
    - a. Nameplate Data for Oversized Generator: Show ratings required by the Contract Documents rather than ratings that would normally be applied to generator size installed.
  - 2. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 1 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
  - 3. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 10 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within 0.5 second.
  - 4. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: Plus or minus 0.25 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.

5. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
6. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 2-Hz variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
7. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to neutral shall not exceed 2 percent total with no slot ripple. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
8. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a 3-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 300 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to winding insulation or other generator system components.
9. Excitation System: Performance shall be unaffected by voltage distortion caused by nonlinear load.
  - a. Provide permanent magnet excitation for power source to voltage regulator.
10. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10, system requirements.

### **2.3 ENGINE**

- A. Fuel: Fuel oil, Grade DF-2.
- B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.
- C. Maximum Piston Speed for Four-Cycle Engines: 2250 fpm.
- D. Lubrication System: The following items are mounted on engine or skid:
  1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
  2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
  3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.
- E. Engine Fuel System:
  1. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine. Pump ensures adequate primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.
  2. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.
  3. Dual Natural Gas with LP-Gas Backup (Vapor-Withdrawal) System:
    - a. Carburetor.
    - b. Secondary Gas Regulators: One for each fuel type.
    - c. Fuel-Shutoff Solenoid Valves: One for each fuel source.
    - d. Flexible Fuel Connectors: One for each fuel source.
- F. Coolant Jacket Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity.
- G. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.

- H. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine-generator-set mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.
1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
  2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
  3. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
  4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
  5. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, ultraviolet-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.
    - a. Rating: 50-psig maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F and noncollapsible under vacuum.
    - b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.
- I. Muffler/Silencer: Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.
1. Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
  2. Sound level measured at a distance of 10 feet from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 85 dBA or less.
- J. Air-Intake Filter: Standard-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.
- K. Starting System: 24-V electric, with negative ground.
1. Components: Sized so they will not be damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in Part 1 "Project Conditions" Article.
  2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
  3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
  4. Battery: Adequate capacity within ambient temperature range specified in Part 1 "Project Conditions" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least twice without recharging.
  5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
  6. Battery Compartment: Factory fabricated of metal with acid-resistant finish and thermal insulation. Thermostatically controlled heater shall be arranged to maintain battery above 10 deg C regardless of external ambient temperature within range specified in Part 1 "Project Conditions" Article. Include accessories required to support and fasten batteries in place.
  7. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
  8. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing and float-charging type. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:
    - a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
    - b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 deg C to plus 60 deg C to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
    - c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.

- d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
- e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
- f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet.

## **2.4 FUEL OIL STORAGE**

- A. Comply with NFPA 30.
- B. Base-Mounted Fuel Oil Tank: Factory installed and piped, complying with UL 142 fuel oil tank. Features include the following:
  - 1. Tank level indicator.
  - 2. Capacity: Fuel for forty eight (48) hours' continuous operation at 100 percent rated power output.
  - 3. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
  - 4. Containment Provisions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## **2.5 CONTROL AND MONITORING**

- A. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of generator set. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, generator set starts. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms. Operation of a remote emergency-stop switch also shuts down generator set.
- B. Manual Starting System Sequence of Operation: Switching on-off switch on the generator control panel to the on position starts generator set. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms. Operation of a remote emergency-stop switch also shuts down generator set.
- C. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the generator set. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from generator-set vibration.
- D. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common wall-mounted control and monitoring panel.
- E. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, engine gages, instrument transformers, generator disconnect switch or circuit breaker, and other indicated components shall be grouped in a combination control and power panel. Control and monitoring section of panel shall be isolated from power sections by steel barriers. Panel features shall include the following:
  - 1. Wall-Mounting Cabinet Construction: Rigid, self-supporting steel unit complying with NEMA ICS 6. Power bus shall be copper. Bus, bus supports, control wiring, and temperature rise shall comply with UL 891.
  - 2. Current and Potential Transformers: Instrument accuracy class.

- F. Indicating and Protective Devices and Controls: As required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 system, and the following:
1. AC voltmeter.
  2. AC ammeter.
  3. AC frequency meter.
  4. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
  5. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
  6. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
  7. Running-time meter.
  8. Ammeter-voltmeter, phase-selector switch(es).
  9. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.
  10. Fuel tank derangement alarm.
  11. Fuel tank high-level shutdown of fuel supply alarm.
  12. Generator overload.
- G. Indicating and Protective Devices and Controls:
1. AC voltmeter.
  2. AC ammeter.
  3. AC frequency meter.
  4. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
  5. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
  6. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
  7. Running-time meter.
  8. Ammeter-voltmeter, phase-selector switch(es).
  9. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.
  10. Start-stop switch.
  11. Overspeed shutdown device.
  12. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
  13. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
  14. Oil low-pressure shutdown device.
  15. Fuel tank derangement alarm.
  16. Fuel tank high-level shutdown of fuel supply alarm.
  17. Generator overload.
- H. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator, unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Connection to Data Link: A separate terminal block, factory wired to Form C dry contacts, for each alarm and status indication is reserved for connections for data-link transmission of indications to remote data terminals. Data system connections to terminals are covered in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
- J. Common Remote Audible Alarm: Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 systems. Include necessary contacts and terminals in control and monitoring panel.
1. Overcrank shutdown.
  2. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
  3. Control switch not in auto position.
  4. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
  5. Battery low-voltage alarm.
- K. Common Remote Audible Alarm: Signal the occurrence of any events listed below without differentiating between event types. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset.
1. Engine high-temperature shutdown.
  2. Lube-oil, low-pressure shutdown.

3. Overspeed shutdown.
4. Remote emergency-stop shutdown.
5. Engine high-temperature prealarm.
6. Lube-oil, low-pressure prealarm.
7. Fuel tank, low-fuel level.
8. Low coolant level.

L. Remote Alarm Annunciator: Comply with NFPA 99. An LED labeled with proper alarm conditions shall identify each alarm event and a common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition. Silencing switch in face of panel shall silence signal without altering visual indication. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset. Cabinet and faceplate are surface- or flush-mounting type to suit mounting conditions indicated.

M. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted, unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

## **2.6 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION**

A. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.

1. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
2. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when generator set is shut down by other protective devices.
4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.

B. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground-fault. Integrate ground-fault alarm indication with other generator-set alarm indications.

## **2.7 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR**

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.

B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.

C. Electrical Insulation: Class H or Class F.

D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required.

E. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.

F. Enclosure: Dripproof.

G. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.

H. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified.

1. Adjusting rheostat on control and monitoring panel shall provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.

I. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.

- J. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.
- K. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

## **2.8 OUTDOOR GENERATOR-SET ENCLOSURE**

- A. Description: Vandal-resistant, weatherproof steel housing, wind resistant up to 100 mph. Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.
- B. Description: Prefabricated or preengineered walk-in enclosure with the following features:
  - 1. Construction: Galvanized-steel, metal-clad, integral structural-steel-framed building erected on concrete foundation.
  - 2. Structural Design and Anchorage: Comply with ASCE 7 for wind loads.
  - 3. Space Heater: Thermostatically controlled and sized to prevent condensation.
  - 4. Louvers: Equipped with bird screen and filter arranged to permit air circulation when engine is not running while excluding exterior dust, birds, and rodents.
  - 5. Hinged Doors: With padlocking provisions.
  - 6. Ventilation: Louvers equipped with bird screen and filter arranged to permit air circulation while excluding exterior dust, birds, and rodents.
  - 7. Thermal Insulation: Manufacturer's standard materials and thickness selected in coordination with space heater to maintain winter interior temperature within operating limits required by engine-generator-set components.
  - 8. Muffler Location: External to enclosure.
- C. Engine Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for 2 hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.
  - 1. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge. Storm-proof and drainable louvers prevent entry of rain and snow.
  - 2. Automatic Dampers: At engine cooling-air inlet and discharge. Dampers shall be closed to reduce enclosure heat loss in cold weather when unit is not operating.

## **2.9 MOTORS**

- A. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in electrical Sections.

## **2.10 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES**

- A. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    - b. California Dynamics Corporation.
    - c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    - d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - e. Mason Industries, Inc.



- f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - g. Vibration Isolation.
  - h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement.
    - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
    - b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
  3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## **2.11 FINISHES**

- A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer.

## **2.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine-generator set using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.
  1. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters and with IEEE 115.
- B. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine-generator set and other system components and accessories manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:
  1. Test components and accessories furnished with installed unit that are not identical to those on tested prototype to demonstrate compatibility and reliability.
  2. Full load run.
  3. Maximum power.
  4. Voltage regulation.
  5. Transient and steady-state governing.
  6. Single-step load pickup.
  7. Safety shutdown.
  8. Provide 14 days' advance notice of tests and opportunity for observation of tests by Owner's representative.
  9. Report factory test results within 10 days of completion of test.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine-generator performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine-generator installation.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with packaged engine-generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.
- B. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.
- C. Install packaged engine generator on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in this section.
- D. Install Schedule 40, black steel piping with welded joints and connect to engine muffler. Install thimble at wall. Piping shall be same diameter as muffler outlet. Flexible connectors and steel piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
  - 1. Install condensate drain piping to muffler drain outlet full size of drain connection with a shutoff valve, stainless-steel flexible connector, and Schedule 40, black steel pipe with welded joints. Flexible connectors and piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- E. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- B. Connect fuel, cooling-system, and exhaust-system piping adjacent to packaged engine generator to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.
- D. Connect fuel piping to engines with a gate valve and union and flexible connector.
  - 1. Diesel storage tanks, tank accessories, piping, valves, and specialties for fuel systems are specified in Division 23 Section "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."
- E. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- F. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify system components according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
- C. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection for "AC Generators and for Emergency Systems" specified in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
  - 3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.
    - a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
    - b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
    - c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
    - d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.
  - 4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
  - 5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine-generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
  - 6. Exhaust-System Back-Pressure Test: Use a manometer with a scale exceeding 40-inch wg. Connect to exhaust line close to engine exhaust manifold. Verify that back pressure at full-rated load is within manufacturer's written allowable limits for the engine.
  - 7. Exhaust Emissions Test: Comply with applicable government test criteria.
  - 8. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
  - 9. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage under 25 percent and at 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.
- E. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.
- F. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the last 12 months, traceable to standards of NIST, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.
- G. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

- H. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
- I. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- J. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations and retest until specified requirements are met.
- K. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
- L. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each power wiring termination and each bus connection. Remove all access panels so terminations and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
  - 1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - 3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies terminations and connections checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### **3.6 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 26 33 53

### STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Three-phase, on-line, double-conversion, static-type, UPS units with the following features:
    - a. Surge suppression.
    - b. Rectifier-charger.
    - c. Inverter.
    - d. Controls and indications.
    - e. Static bypass transfer switch.
    - f. External maintenance bypass/isolation switch.
    - g. Output distribution section.
    - h. Output isolation transformers.
    - i. Remote status and alarm panels.
    - j. Remote monitoring provisions.
    - k. Battery and battery disconnect device.
    - l. Battery monitoring.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GTO: Gate turn-off thyristor.
- C. IGBT: Isolated gate bipolar transistor.
- D. LCD: Liquid-crystal display.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. NiCd: Nickel cadmium.
- G. PC: Personal computer.

- H. SPD: Surge protection device.
- I. THD: Total harmonic distortion.
- J. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of UPS.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for UPS.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For UPS.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Show access, workspace, and clearance requirements; details of control panels; and battery arrangement.
  - 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For power quality specialist.
- B. Product Certificates: For each product, from manufacturer.
- C. Factory Test Reports: Comply with specified requirements.
- D. Product Test Reports: Indicate test results compared with specified performance requirements, and provide justification and resolution of differences if values do not agree.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

#### **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For UPS units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Power Quality Specialist Qualifications: A registered professional electrical engineer or engineering technician, currently certified by the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies, NICET Level 4, minimum, experienced in performance testing UPS installations and in performing power quality surveys similar to that required in "Performance Testing" Article.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special UPS Warranties: Specified form in which manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within special warranty period.
  - 1. Special Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 OPERATIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Automatic operation includes the following:
  - 1. Double Conversion, Standard Efficiency:
    - a. Normal Conditions: Load is supplied with power flowing from the normal power input terminals, through the rectifier-charger and inverter, with the battery connected in parallel with the rectifier-charger output.
    - b. Abnormal Supply Conditions: If normal supply deviates from specified and adjustable voltage, voltage waveform, or frequency limits, the battery supplies energy to maintain constant, regulated inverter power output to the load without switching or disturbance.
    - c. Power Failure: If normal power fails, energy supplied by the battery through the inverter continues supply-regulated power to the load without switching or disturbance.
    - d. supplies energy to re-establish constant, regulated power output to the load.
  - 2. When power is restored at the normal supply terminals of the system, controls shall automatically synchronize the inverter with the external source before transferring the load. The rectifier-charger shall supply power to the load through the inverter and simultaneously recharge the battery.
  - 3. If the battery becomes discharged and normal supply is available, the rectifier-charger shall charge the battery. The rectifier-charger shall automatically shift to float-charge mode on reaching full charge.
  - 4. If any element of the UPS system fails and power is available at the normal supply terminals of the system, the static bypass transfer switch shall switch the load to the normal ac supply circuit without disturbance or interruption.

5. The output power converters shall produce up to 300 percent of rated full-load current for short-circuit clearing. The inverter shall sustain steady-state overload conditions of up to 200 percent of rated full-load current for 60 seconds in normal operation.
6. The inverter shall be capable of sustaining 150 percent of system capacity for 30 seconds while powered from the battery.
7. Should overloads persist past the time limitations, the automatic static transfer switch shall switch the load to the bypass output of the UPS. When the fault has cleared, the static bypass transfer switch shall return the load to the UPS system.
8. If the battery is disconnected, the UPS shall supply power to the load from the normal supply with no degradation of its regulation of voltage and frequency of the output bus.

B. Manual operation includes the following:

1. Turning the inverter off causes the static bypass transfer switch to transfer the load directly to the normal ac supply circuit without disturbance or interruption.
2. Turning the inverter on causes the static bypass transfer switch to transfer the load to the inverter.

C. Maintenance Bypass/Isolation Switch Operation: Switch is interlocked so it cannot be operated unless the static bypass transfer switch is in the bypass mode. Device provides manual selection among the three conditions described below without interrupting supply to the load during switching:

1. Full Isolation: Load is supplied, bypassing the UPS. Normal UPS ac input circuit, static bypass transfer switch, and UPS load terminals are completely disconnected from external circuits.
2. Maintenance Bypass: Load is supplied, bypassing the UPS. UPS ac supply terminals are energized to permit operational checking, but system load terminals are isolated from the load.
3. Normal: Normal UPS ac supply terminals are energized and the load is supplied through the static bypass transfer switch and the UPS rectifier-charger and inverter, or the battery and the inverter.

D. Environmental Conditions: The UPS shall be capable of operating continuously in the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability, except battery performance:

1. Ambient Temperature for Electronic Components: 32 to 104 deg F.
2. Ambient Temperature for Battery: 41 to 95 deg F.
3. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent, noncondensing.
4. Altitude: Sea level to 4000 feet.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. UL Compliance: Listed and labeled by an NRTL to comply with UL 1778.
- B. NFPA Compliance: UPS components shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL as suitable for installation in computer rooms according to NFPA 75. Revise first paragraph below to specify duration of system supply. See the Evaluations for discussion of UPS characteristics.



- C. The UPS shall perform as specified in this article while supplying rated full-load current, composed of any combination of linear and nonlinear load, up to 100 percent nonlinear load with a maximum load crest factor of 3.0, under the following conditions or combinations of the following conditions:
1. Inverter is switched to battery source.
  2. Steady-state ac input voltage deviates up to plus or minus 10 percent from nominal voltage.
  3. Steady-state input frequency deviates up to plus or minus 5 percent from nominal frequency.
  4. THD of input voltage is 15 percent or more with a minimum crest factor of 3.0, and the largest single harmonic component is a minimum of 5 percent of the fundamental value.
  5. Load is 30 percent unbalanced continuously.
- D. Minimum Duration of Supply: If battery is sole energy source supplying rated full-load UPS current at 80 percent power factor, duration of supply is 15 minutes.
- E. Input Voltage Tolerance: System steady-state and transient output performance remains within specified tolerances when steady-state ac input voltage varies plus 10 percent and minus 15 percent from nominal voltage.
- F. Overall UPS Efficiency: Equal to or greater than 94 percent at 100 percent load, 94 percent at 75 percent load, and 93 percent at 25 percent load.
- G. Maximum Energizing Inrush Current: Six times the full-load current.
- H. AC Output-Voltage Regulation for Loads 100 Percent Unbalanced: Maximum of plus or minus 2 percent over the full range of battery voltage.
- I. Output Frequency: 60 Hz, plus or minus 0.1 percent over the full range of input voltage, load, and battery voltage.
- J. Limitation of harmonic distortion of input current to the UPS shall be as follows:
1. Description: Rectifier-charger circuits shall limit THD to 5 percent, maximum, at rated full-load UPS current, for power sources with X/R ratio between 2 and 30. Provide tuned harmonic filter if required to meet harmonic distortion limit.
  2. Description: THD is limited to a maximum of 32 percent, at rated full-load UPS current, for power sources with X/R ratio between 2 and 30.
- K. Maximum Harmonic Content of Output-Voltage Waveform: 5 percent rms total and 3 percent rms for any single harmonic, for 100 percent rated nonlinear load current with a load crest factor of 3.0.
- L. Minimum Overload Capacity of UPS at Rated Voltage: 125 percent of rated full load for 10 minutes, 200 percent for 60 seconds in normal operation, and 150 percent for 30 seconds in battery operating mode.

- M. Maximum Output-Voltage Transient Excursions from Rated Value: For the following instantaneous load changes, stated as percentages of rated full UPS load, voltage shall remain within stated percentages of rated value and recover to, and remain within, plus or minus 2 percent of that value within 50 ms:
  - 1. 50 Percent: Plus or minus 3 percent.
  - 2. 100 Percent: Plus or minus 5 percent.
  - 3. Loss of AC Input Power: Plus or minus 1 percent.
  - 4. Restoration of AC Input Power: Plus or minus 1 percent.
- N. Input Power Factor: A minimum of 0.95 lagging when supply voltage and current are at nominal rated values and the UPS is supplying rated full-load current without additional filters.
- O. Output Power Factor Rating: Loads with power factor of 0.9 leading to 0.8 lagging shall not require derating of the UPS. For loads with power factors outside this range, derate the UPS output as follows:
  - 1. Derate the UPS a maximum of 5 percent for 0.7 PF lagging.
  - 2. Derate the UPS a maximum of 10 percent for 0.6 PF lagging.
  - 3. Derate the UPS a maximum of 15 percent for 0.5 PF lagging.
  - 4. Derate the UPS a maximum of 20 percent for a range of 0.4 to 0.1 PF lagging.
- P. EMI Emissions: Comply with FCC rules and regulations and with 47 CFR 15 for Class A equipment.

## **2.3 UPS SYSTEMS**

- A. Description: Self-contained, battery backup device and accessories that provides three-phase electrical power in the event of failure or sag in the normal power system.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. APC by Schneider Electric.
  - 2. Eaton.
  - 3. GE Electrical Distribution & Control.
  - 4. Liebert; a brand of Emerson Electric Co.
  - 5. Mitsubishi Electric Automation, Inc.
  - 6. Toshiba International Corporation.
- C. Electronic Equipment: Solid-state devices using hermetically sealed, semiconductor elements. Devices include rectifier-charger, inverter, static bypass transfer switch, and system controls.
- D. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA 250, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Configuration: Field-assembled, multicabinet modular style units.
- F. Control Assemblies: Mount on modular plug-ins, readily accessible for maintenance.
- G. Maintainability Features: Mount rectifier-charger and inverter sections and the static bypass transfer switch on modular plug-ins, readily accessible for maintenance.

- H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- I. Capacity Upgrade Capability: Arrange wiring, controls, and modular component plug-in provisions to permit future 25 percent increase in UPS capacity.
- J. UPS Cabinet Ventilation: Redundant fans or blowers draw in ambient air near the bottom of cabinet and discharge it near the top rear.
- K. Output Circuit Neutral Bus, Conductor, and Terminal Ampacity: Rated phase current times a multiple of 1.73, minimum.

## **2.4 RECTIFIER-CHARGER**

- A. Description: Voltage source converter, 12-pulse IGBT rectifier.
- B. Capacity: Adequate to supply the inverter during rated full output load conditions and simultaneously recharge the battery from fully discharged condition to 95 percent of full charge within 10 times the rated discharge time for duration of supply under battery power at full load.
- C. Output Ripple: Limited by output filtration to less than 0.5 percent of rated current, peak to peak.
- D. Control Circuits: Immune to frequency variations within rated frequency ranges of normal and emergency power sources.
  - 1. Response Time: Field adjustable for maximum compatibility with local generator-set power source.
- E. Battery Float-Charging Conditions: Comply with battery manufacturer's written instructions for battery terminal voltage and charging current required for maximum battery life. The battery charger shall be matched to the battery type supplied.
- F. NiCd Battery Charger: Sense full charge by measuring the rate of temperature increase. Battery charging shall be terminated when the rate of temperature rise reaches 1.8 deg F per minute. If the battery reaches 140 deg F prior to reaching this rate of temperature rise, charging shall terminate. Chargers that determine full charge by voltage measurement to sense a 10-mV drop per cell when reaching full charge are also acceptable.

## **2.5 INVERTER**

- A. Description: Pulse-width modulated, IGBT with sinusoidal output.

## **2.6 CONTROLS AND INDICATIONS**

- A. Description: Group displays, indications, and basic system controls on a common control panel on front of UPS enclosure.
- B. Minimum displays, indicating devices, and controls include those in lists below. Provide sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and wiring required to support listed items. Alarms include audible signals and visual displays.

- C. Indications: Plain-language messages on a digital LCD.
1. Quantitative indications shall include the following:
    - a. Input voltage, each phase, line to line.
    - b. Input current, each phase, line to line.
    - c. Bypass input voltage, each phase, line to line.
    - d. Bypass input frequency.
    - e. System output voltage, each phase, line to line.
    - f. System output current, each phase.
    - g. System output frequency.
    - h. DC bus voltage.
    - i. Battery current and direction (charge/discharge).
    - j. Elapsed time discharging battery.
  2. Basic status condition indications shall include the following:
    - a. Normal operation.
    - b. Load-on bypass.
    - c. Load-on battery.
    - d. Inverter off.
    - e. Alarm condition.
  3. Alarm indications shall include the following:
    - a. Bypass ac input overvoltage or undervoltage.
    - b. Bypass ac input overfrequency or underfrequency.
    - c. Bypass ac input and inverter out of synchronization.
    - d. Bypass ac input wrong-phase rotation.
    - e. Bypass ac input single-phase condition.
    - f. Bypass ac input filter fuse blown.
    - g. Internal frequency standard in use.
    - h. Battery system alarm.
    - i. Control power failure.
    - j. Fan failure.
    - k. UPS overload.
    - l. Battery-charging control faulty.
    - m. Input overvoltage or undervoltage.
    - n. Input transformer overtemperature.
    - o. Input circuit breaker tripped.
    - p. Input wrong-phase rotation.
    - q. Input single-phase condition.
    - r. Approaching end of battery operation.
    - s. Battery undervoltage shutdown.
    - t. Maximum battery voltage.
    - u. Inverter fuse blown.
    - v. Inverter transformer overtemperature.
    - w. Inverter overtemperature.
    - x. Static bypass transfer switch overtemperature.
    - y. Inverter power supply fault.
    - z. Inverter transistors out of saturation.
    - aa. Identification of faulty inverter section/leg.
    - bb. Inverter output overvoltage or undervoltage.

- cc. UPS overload shutdown.
  - dd. Inverter current sensor fault.
  - ee. Inverter output contactor open.
  - ff. Inverter current limit.
4. Controls shall include the following:
- a. Inverter on-off.
  - b. UPS start.
  - c. Battery test.
  - d. Alarm silence/reset.
  - e. Output-voltage adjustment.
- D. Dry-form "C" contacts shall be available for remote indication of the following conditions:
- 1. UPS on battery.
  - 2. UPS on-line.
  - 3. UPS load-on bypass.
  - 4. UPS in alarm condition.
  - 5. UPS off (maintenance bypass closed).
- E. Emergency Power off Switch: Capable of local operation and operation by means of activation by external dry contacts.

## **2.7 STATIC BYPASS TRANSFER SWITCH**

- A. Description: Solid-state switching device providing uninterrupted transfer with a contactor or electrically operated circuit breaker to automatically provide electrical isolation for the switch.
- B. Switch Rating: Continuous duty at the rated full-load UPS current, minimum.
- C. Input SPD: 160 kA.

## **2.8 MAINTENANCE BYPASS/ISOLATION SWITCH**

- A. Description: Manually operated switch or arrangement of switching devices with mechanically actuated contact mechanism arranged to route the flow of power to the load around the rectifier-charger, inverter, and static bypass transfer switch.
  - 1. Switch shall be electrically and mechanically interlocked to prevent interrupting power to the load when switching to bypass mode.
  - 2. Switch shall electrically isolate other UPS components to permit safe servicing.
  - 3. Switch shall electrically isolate the rectifier-charger, inverter, and static bypass transfer switch from the load, but shall allow primary power to the UPS for testing.
- B. Comply with NEMA PB 2 and UL 891.
- C. Switch Rating: Continuous duty at rated full-load UPS current.
- D. Mounting Provisions: Separate wall- or floor-mounted unit.

- E. Key interlock with key that is released only when the rectifier-charger and inverter are bypassed by the static bypass transfer switch. Key shall be required to unlock maintenance bypass/isolation switch before switching from open (normal) position to closed position. Lock shall be designed specifically for mechanical and electrical component interlocking.

## **2.9 REMOTE STATUS AND ALARM PANEL**

- A. Description: Labeled LEDs on panel faceplate indicating five basic status conditions. Audible signal indicates alarm conditions. Silencing switch in face of panel silences signal without altering visual indication.
  - 1. Cabinet and Faceplate: Surface or flush mounted to suit mounting conditions indicated.

## **2.10 BATTERY**

- A. Description: Valve-regulated, recombinant, lead-calcium units, factory assembled in an isolated compartment of UPS cabinet, complete with battery disconnect switch.
  - 1. Arrange for drawout removal of battery assembly from cabinet for testing and inspecting.
- B. Description: Flooded cell, heavy-duty, industrial, NiCd units in polypropylene containers. Mount on three-tier, acid-resistant, painted steel racks, complete with battery disconnect switch and intercell connectors.
- C. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. C&D Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Eaton.
  - 3. EnerSys.
  - 4. Exide Technologies.
  - 5. GE Electrical Distribution & Control.
  - 6. Panasonic Corporation of North America; Industrial Devices.
- D. Description: Flooded cell, heavy-duty, industrial, NiCd units in polypropylene containers. Mount on three-tier, acid-resistant, painted steel racks, complete with battery disconnect switch and intercell connectors.

## **2.11 BASIC BATTERY MONITORING**

- A. Description: Continuous, real-time capture of battery performance data.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Alber.
  - 2. APC by Schneider Electric.
  - 3. BTECH, Inc.
  - 4. Canara.
  - 5. Eaton.
  - 6. Emerson Network Power Connectivity Solutions.

7. Midtronics, Inc.
  8. Power Systems Specialists, Inc.
  9. Staco Energy Products Co.
- C. Battery Ground-Fault Detector: Initiates alarm when resistance to ground of positive or negative bus of battery is less than 5000 ohms.
  - D. Battery compartment high-temperature detector initiates an alarm when smoke or a temperature greater than 167 deg F occurs within the compartment.
  - E. Battery compartment smoke/high-temperature detector initiates an alarm when smoke or a temperature greater than 167 deg F occurs within the compartment.
  - F. Annunciation of Alarms: At UPS control panel and remotely.

## **2.12 BATTERY-CYCLE WARRANTY MONITORING**

- A. Description: Electronic device, acceptable to battery manufacturer as a basis for warranty action, for monitoring of charge-discharge cycle history of batteries covered by cycle-life warranties.
- B. Performance: Automatically measure and record each discharge event, classify it according to duration category and total discharges according to warranty criteria, and display remaining warranted battery life on front panel display.
- C. Additional monitoring functions and features shall include the following:
  1. Measuring and Recording: Total voltage at battery terminal. Initiate an alarm for excursions outside the proper float-voltage level.
  2. Monitoring: Ambient temperature at battery; initiate an alarm if temperature deviates from normally acceptable range.
  3. Keypad on Device Front Panel: Provide access to monitored data using front panel display.
  4. Alarm Contacts: Arrange to initiate local alarm for battery discharge events.
  5. Memory: Store recorded data in nonvolatile electronic memory.
  6. Ethernet Port: Permits downloading of data to a PC.

## **2.13 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Factory test complete UPS system before shipment. Use actual batteries that are part of final installation. Include the following:
  1. Test and demonstration of all functions, controls, indicators, sensors, and protective devices.
  2. Full-load test.
  3. Transient-load response test.
  4. Overload test.
  5. Power failure test.
- B. Observation of Test: Give 14 days' advance notice of tests and provide opportunity for Owner's representative to observe tests at Owner's choice.

- C. Report test results. Include the following data:
  - 1. Description of input source and output loads used. Describe actions required to simulate source load variation and various operating conditions and malfunctions.
  - 2. List of indications, parameter values, and system responses considered satisfactory for each test action. Include tabulation of actual observations during test.
  - 3. List of instruments and equipment used in factory tests.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of the UPS.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. Verify installation conditions are representative of the conditions used in the coordination studies for the electrical system. Provide fuse protection according to Division 26 Section "Fuses" if required for coordination with UPS overcurrent protective device requirements.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
  - 2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- E. Equipment Mounting: Install UPS on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base 6 inches from the outer edge of the base.
  - 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.



3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- F. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.
- G. Connections: Interconnect system components. Make connections to supply and load circuits according to manufacturer's wiring diagrams unless otherwise indicated. Apply oxide inhibitor on battery terminals.

### **3.3 GROUNDING**

- A. Separately Derived Systems: If not part of a listed power supply for a data-processing room, comply with NFPA 70 requirements for connecting to grounding electrodes and for bonding to metallic piping near isolation transformer. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Separately Derived Systems: If part of a listed power supply for a data-processing room, comply with manufacturer's written instructions that include grounding requirements in excess of NFPA 70 requirements for connecting to grounding electrodes and for bonding to metallic piping near isolation transformer. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Identify each battery cell individually.

### **3.5 BATTERY EQUALIZATION**

- A. Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual-cell voltages.

### **3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
1. Inspect interiors of enclosures, including the following:
    - a. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
    - b. Component type and labeling verification.
    - c. Ratings of installed components.

2. Test electrical and mechanical interlock systems for correct operation and sequencing.
3. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one or more of the following methods:
  - a. Use of low-resistance ohmmeter according to Section 7.22.2.2 of NETA ATS.
  - b. Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data or Table 100.12 of NETA ATS.
  - c. Perform thermographic survey according to Section 9 of NETA ATS.
4. Test static transfer from inverter to bypass and back. Use normal load, if possible.
5. Test dc undervoltage trip level on inverter input breaker. Set according to manufacturer's published data.
6. Verify synchronizing indicators for static switch and bypass switches.
7. Test insulated-case and molded-case breakers.
  - a. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with the circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 of NETA ATS.
  - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring for ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid-state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation.
  - c. Use primary current injection to determine long time and short time, ground fault, and instantaneous pickup, Use secondary current injection to test trip functions.
  - d. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils according to manufacturer's published data.
  - e. Verify operation of charging mechanism.
  - f. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators, zone interlocking, electrical close and trip operation, trip-free, antipump function, and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators.
8. Test automatic transfer switches.
  - a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter, if applicable, according to Section 7.22.3.1 of NETA ATS.
  - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring for ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid-state components or for control devices that cannot tolerate the applied voltage, follow manufacturer's recommendation.
  - c. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test.
  - d. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
  - e. Calibrate and set all relays and timers according to Section 7.9 of NETA ATS.
  - f. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
  - g. Perform automatic transfer tests.
    - 1) Simulate loss of normal power.
    - 2) Return to normal power.
    - 3) Simulate loss of emergency power.
    - 4) Simulate all forms of single-phase conditions.

- h. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:
    - 1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
    - 2) Time delay on transfer.
    - 3) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
    - 4) Automatic transfer operation.
    - 5) Interlocks and limit switch function.
    - 6) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
9. Test direct current system's batteries.
- a. Verify adequacy of battery support racks, mounting, anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
  - b. Inspect spill containment installation. Measure charger float and equalizing voltage levels. Adjust to battery manufacturer's recommended settings.
  - c. Verify all charger functions and alarms.
  - d. Measure each cell voltage and total battery voltage with charger energized and in float mode of operation.
  - e. Perform a load test according to manufacturer's published data or IEEE 450.
  - f. Measure charger float and equalizing voltage levels. Adjust to battery manufacturer's recommended settings.
  - g. Test values.
    - 1) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
    - 2) Charger float and equalize voltage levels shall be according to battery manufacturer's published data.
    - 3) The results of charger functions and alarms shall be according to manufacturer's published data.
    - 4) Cell voltages shall be within 0.05 V of each other or according to manufacturer's published data.
    - 5) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
    - 6) Cell internal ohmic values (resistance, impedance, or conductance) shall not vary by more than 25 percent between identical cells that are in a fully charged state.
    - 7) Results of load tests shall be according to manufacturer's published data or IEEE 450.
10. Test communication of status and alarms to remote monitoring equipment.
11. Load the system using a variable-load bank to simulate kilovolt amperes, kilowatts, and power factor of loads for unit's rating. Use instruments calibrated within the previous six months according to NIST standards.
- a. Simulate malfunctions to verify protective device operation.
  - b. Test duration of supply on emergency, low-battery voltage shutdown, and transfers and restoration due to normal source failure.
  - c. Test harmonic content of input and output current at 25, 50, and 100 percent of rated loads.
  - d. Test output voltage under specified transient-load conditions.
  - e. Test efficiency at 50, 75, and 100 percent of rated loads.
  - f. Test remote status and alarm panel functions.
  - g. Test battery-monitoring system functions.

- D. The UPS system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Record of Tests and Inspections: Maintain and submit documentation of tests and inspections, including references to manufacturers' written instructions and other test and inspection criteria. Include results of tests, inspections, and retests.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.7 PERFORMANCE TESTING**

- A. Engage the services of a qualified power quality specialist to perform tests and activities indicated for each UPS system.
- B. Monitoring and Testing Schedule: Perform monitoring and testing in a single 10-day period.
  - 1. Schedule monitoring and testing activity with Owner, through Architect, with at least 14 days' advance notice.
  - 2. Schedule monitoring and testing after Substantial Completion, when the UPS is supplying power to its intended load.
- C. Monitoring and Testing Instruments: Three-phase, recording, power monitors. Instruments shall provide continuous simultaneous monitoring of electrical parameters at UPS input terminals and at input terminals of loads served by the UPS. Instruments shall monitor, measure, and graph voltage current and frequency simultaneously and provide full-graphic recordings of the values of those parameters before and during power-line disturbances that cause the values to deviate from normal beyond the adjustable threshold values. Instruments shall be capable of recording either on paper or on magnetic media and have a minimum accuracy of plus or minus 2 percent for electrical parameters. Parameters to be monitored include the following:
  - 1. Current: Each phase and neutral and grounding conductors.
  - 2. Voltage: Phase to phase, phase to neutral, phase to ground, and neutral to ground.
  - 3. Frequency transients.
  - 4. Voltage swells and sags.
  - 5. Voltage Impulses: Phase to phase, phase to neutral, phase to ground, and neutral to ground.
  - 6. High-frequency noise.
  - 7. Radio-frequency interference.
  - 8. THD of the above currents and voltages.
  - 9. Harmonic content of currents and voltages above.
  - 10. Battery cell temperature during charging.
  - 11. Ambient temperature.
- D. Monitoring and Testing Procedures:
  - 1. Exploratory Period: For the first two days, make recordings at various circuit locations and with various parameter-threshold and sampling-interval settings. Make these measurements with the objective of identifying optimum UPS, power system, load, and instrumentation setup conditions for subsequent test and monitoring operations.

2. Remainder of Test Period: Perform continuous monitoring of at least two circuit locations selected on the basis of data obtained during exploratory period.
  - a. Set thresholds and sampling intervals for recording data at values selected to optimize data on performance of the UPS for values indicated, and to highlight the need to adjust, repair, or modify the UPS, distribution system, or load component that may influence its performance or that may require better power quality.
  - b. Perform load and UPS power source switching and operate the UPS on generator power during portions of test period according to directions of Owner's power quality specialist.
  - c. Operate the UPS and its loads in each mode of operation permitted by UPS controls and by the power distribution system design.
  - d. Using loads and devices available as part of the facility's installed systems and equipment, create and simulate unusual operating conditions, including outages, voltage swells and sags, and voltage, current, and frequency transients. Maintain normal operating loads in operation on system to maximum extent possible during tests.
  - e. Using temporarily connected resistive/inductive load banks, create and simulate unusual operating conditions, including outages, voltage swells and sags, and voltage, current, and frequency transients. Maintain normal operating loads in operation on system to maximum extent possible during tests.
  - f. Make adjustments and repairs to UPS, distribution, and load equipment to correct deficiencies disclosed by monitoring and testing; repeat appropriate monitoring and testing to verify success of corrective action.
  
- E. Coordination with Specified UPS Monitoring Functions: Obtain printouts of built-in monitoring functions specified for the UPS and its components in this Section that are simultaneously recorded with portable instruments in this article.
  1. Provide the temporary use of an appropriate PC and printer equipped with required connections and software for recording and printing if such units are not available on-site.
  2. Coordinate printouts with recordings for monitoring performed according to this article, and resolve and report any anomalies in and discrepancies between the two sets of records.
  
- F. Monitoring and Testing Assistance by Contractor:
  1. Open UPS and electrical distribution and load equipment and wiring enclosures to make monitoring and testing points accessible for temporary monitoring probe and sensor placement and removal as requested.
  2. Observe monitoring and testing operations; ensure that UPS and distribution and load equipment warranties are not compromised.
  3. Perform switching and control of various UPS units, electrical distribution systems, and load components as directed by power quality specialist. Specialist shall design this portion of monitoring and testing operations to expose the UPS to various operating environments, conditions, and events while response is observed, electrical parameters are monitored, and system and equipment deficiencies are identified.
  4. Engage the services of the UPS manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative periodically during performance testing operations for repairs, adjustments, and consultations.

- G. Analysis of Recorded Data and Report: Review and analyze test observations and recorded data and submit a detailed written report. Include the following in report:
1. Descriptions of corrective actions performed during monitoring and survey work and their results.
  2. Recommendations for further action to provide optimum performance by the UPS and appropriate power quality for non-UPS loads. Include a statement of priority ranking and a cost estimate for each recommendation that involves system or equipment revisions.
  3. Copies of monitoring summary graphics and graphics illustrating harmonic content of significant voltages and currents.
  4. Copies of graphics of power disturbance recordings that illustrate findings, conclusions, and recommendations.
  5. Recommendations for operating, adjusting, or revising UPS controls.
  6. Recommendations for alterations to the UPS installation.
  7. Recommendations for power distribution system revisions.
  8. Recommendations for adjusting or revising electrical loads, their connections, or controls.
- H. Interim and Final Reports: Provide an interim report at the end of each test period and a final comprehensive report at the end of final test and analysis period.

### **3.8 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the UPS.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 36 00**  
**TRANSFER SWITCHES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes automatic transfer switches rated 600 V and less, including the following:
  - 1. Remote annunciator system.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for transfer switches.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, and installed features and devices.
  - 2. Include material lists for each switch specified.
  - 3. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, power sources, and load; and show interlocking provisions for each combined transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch.
  - 4. Riser Diagram: Show interconnection wiring between transfer switches, bypass/isolation switches, annunciators, and control panels.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer-authorized service representative.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

## **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
    - b. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications:
  - 1. Member company of NETA.
    - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 99.
- D. Comply with NFPA 110.
- E. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.
- F. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Short-Circuit Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.
  - 1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
  - 2. Short-time withstand capability for three cycles.
- H. Repetitive Accuracy of Solid-State Controls: All settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.



- I. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.62. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- J. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism. Switches for emergency or standby purposes shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions to prevent simultaneous connection to both power sources unless closed transition.
- K. Neutral Switching: Where four-pole switches are indicated, provide neutral pole switched simultaneously with phase poles.
- L. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Heater: Equip switches exposed to outdoor temperatures and humidity, and other units indicated, with an internal heater. Provide thermostat within enclosure to control heater.
- N. Battery Charger: For generator starting batteries.
  - 1. Float type, rated 10 A.
  - 2. Ammeter to display charging current.
  - 3. Fused ac inputs and dc outputs.
- O. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels shall have communication capability matched with remote device.
- P. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable with printed markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable markers are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
  - 2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
  - 3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
  - 4. Accessible via front access.
- Q. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 1, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.2 CONTACTOR-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cummins Power Generation.
  - 2. Eaton.
  - 3. Emerson.
  - 4. GE Zenith Controls.
  - 5. Generac Power Systems, Inc.
  - 6. General Electric Company.

7. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
  8. Kohler Power Systems.
  9. Russelectric, Inc.
- B. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- C. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are unacceptable.
  2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
  3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Contactor-style automatic transfer-switch units, rated 600 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
  4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
  5. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  6. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
  7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
  8. Ground bar.
  9. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.
- D. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
- E. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- F. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.
- G. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.
- H. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:
1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
  2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
  3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
  4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
  5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
  6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.

7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
    - a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
    - b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
  8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
  9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
  10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
  11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
  12. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
  13. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
    - a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
    - b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
    - c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.
- I. Large-Motor-Load Power Transfer:
1. In-Phase Monitor: Factory-wired, internal relay controls transfer so contacts close only when the two sources are synchronized in phase and frequency. Relay shall compare phase relationship and frequency difference between normal and emergency sources and initiate transfer when both sources are within 15 electrical degrees, and only if transfer can be completed within 60 electrical degrees. Transfer shall be initiated only if both sources are within 2 Hz of nominal frequency and 70 percent or more of nominal voltage.
  2. Motor Disconnect and Timing Relay Controls: Designated starters in loss of power scenario shall disconnect motors before transfer and reconnect them selectively at an adjustable time interval after transfer. Control connection to motor starters shall be through wiring external to automatic transfer switch. Provide adjustable time delay between 1 and 60 seconds for reconnecting individual motor loads. Provide relay contacts rated for motor-control circuit inrush and for actual seal currents to be encountered.
  3. Programmed Neutral Switch Position: Switch operator with programmed neutral position arranged to provide a midpoint between the two working switch positions, with an intentional, time-controlled pause at midpoint during transfer. Adjustable pause from 0.5 to 30 seconds minimum, and factory set for 0.5 second unless otherwise indicated. Time delay occurs for both transfer directions. Disable pause unless both sources are live.

## 2.3 TRANSFER SWITCH ACCESSORIES

- A. Remote Annunciator System:
  - 1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
  - 2. Functional Description: Remote annunciator panel shall annunciate conditions for indicated transfer switches.
  - 3. Annunciation panel display shall include the following indicators:
    - a. Sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
    - b. Switch position.
    - c. Switch in test mode.
    - d. Failure of communication link.
  - 4. Annunciator Panel: LED-lamp type with audible signal and silencing switch.
    - a. Indicating Lights: Grouped for each transfer switch monitored.
    - b. Label each group, indicating transfer switch it monitors, location of switch, and identity of load it serves.
    - c. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Lamp Test: Push-to-test or lamp-test switch on front panel.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment according to UL 1008. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.
  - 1. For each of the tests required by UL 1008, performed on representative devices, for emergency systems. Include results of test for the following conditions:
    - a. Overvoltage.
    - b. Undervoltage.
    - c. Loss of supply voltage.
    - d. Reduction of supply voltage.
    - e. Alternative supply voltage or frequency is at minimum acceptable values.
    - f. Temperature rise.
    - g. Dielectric voltage-withstand; before and after short-circuit test.
    - h. Overload.
    - i. Contact opening.
    - j. Endurance.
    - k. Short circuit.
    - l. Short-time current capability.
    - m. Receptacle withstand capability.
    - n. Insulating base and supports damage.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.
  - 1. Install transfer switches on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03 section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
  - 3. Provide workspace and clearances required by NFPA 70.
- B. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Identify components according to Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.
- E. Comply with NECA 1.

### **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to generator sets, motor controls, control, and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within electrical enclosures. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 section "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
- D. Ground equipment according to Division 26 section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Division 26 section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- F. Connect twisted pair cable according to Division 26 section "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- G. Connect twisted pair cable according to Division 27 section "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."
- H. Route and brace conductors according to manufacturer's written instructions and Division 26 section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems." Do not obscure manufacturer's markings and labels.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. After installing equipment, test for compliance with requirements according to NETA ATS.
  - 2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
    - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
    - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
    - e. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
    - f. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
    - g. Verify tightness of all control connections.
    - h. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods, or both:
      - 1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
      - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.
    - i. Perform manual transfer operation.
    - j. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.
    - k. Perform visual and mechanical inspection of surge arresters.
    - l. Inspect control power transformers.
      - 1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
      - 2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit-breaker ratings match Drawings.
      - 3) Verify correct functioning of drawout disconnecting contacts, grounding contacts, and interlocks.
  - 3. Electrical Tests:
    - a. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground.
    - b. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test. Compare measured values with manufacturer's acceptable values.
    - c. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
    - d. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.
    - e. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation.
    - f. Perform automatic transfer tests.
    - g. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:
      - 1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
      - 2) Engine start sequence.
      - 3) Time delay on transfer.
      - 4) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.

- 5) Automatic transfer operation.
  - 6) Interlocks and limit switch function.
  - 7) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
  - 8) Engine cool-down and shutdown feature.
4. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.
    - a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
    - b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
    - c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
    - d. Perform manual transfer operation.
  5. After energizing circuits, perform each electrical test for transfer switches stated in NETA ATS and demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
    - a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and retransfer from emergency source with normal source available.
    - b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
    - c. Verify time-delay settings.
    - d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
    - e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
    - f. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for one pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
    - g. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
  6. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.
    - a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.
- D. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
  - E. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
  - F. Transfer switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  - G. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
  - H. Prepare test and inspection reports.

- I. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
  1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
  3. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

### **3.4 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment.
- B. Training shall include testing ground-fault protective devices and instructions to determine when the ground-fault system shall be retested. Include instructions on where ground-fault sensors are located and how to avoid negating the ground-fault protection scheme during testing and circuit modifications.
- C. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 26 41 13

### LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes lightning protection for structures and structure elements.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air terminals and mounting accessories.
  - 1. Layout of the lightning protection system, along with details of the components to be used in the installation.
  - 2. Include indications for use of raceway, data on how concealment requirements will be met, and calculations required by NFPA 780 for bonding of grounded and isolated metal bodies.

##### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and manufacturer. Include data on listing or certification by UL.
- B. Certification, signed by Contractor, that roof adhesive is approved by manufacturer of roofing material.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Comply with recommendations in NFPA 780, Annex D, "Inspection and Maintenance of Lightning Protection Systems," for maintenance of the lightning protection system.
- E. Other Informational Submittals: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features, including the following:
  - 1. Ground rods.
  - 2. Ground loop conductor.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Certified by UL, trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. System Certificate:
  - 1. UL Master Label.
  - 2. UL Master Label Recertification.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 780, "Definitions" Article.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of lightning protection with installation of other building systems and components, including electrical wiring, supporting structures and building materials, metal bodies requiring bonding to lightning protection components, and building finishes.
- B. Coordinate installation of air terminals attached to roof systems with roofing manufacturer and Installer.
- C. Flashings of through-roof assemblies shall comply with roofing manufacturers' specifications.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with UL 96 and NFPA 780.
- B. Roof-Mounted Air Terminals: NFPA 780, Class I, aluminum unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. East Coast Lightning Equipment Inc.
    - b. ERICO International Corporation.
    - c. Harger.
    - d. Heary Bros. Lightning Protection Co. Inc.
    - e. Independent Protection Co.
    - f. Preferred Lightning Protection.
    - g. Robbins Lightning, Inc.
    - h. Thompson Lightning Protection, Inc.
  - 2. Air Terminals More than 24 Inches Long: With brace attached to the terminal at not less than half the height of the terminal.
  - 3. Single-Membrane, Roof-Mounted Air Terminals: Designed specifically for single-membrane roof system materials. Comply with requirements in roofing Sections.
- C. Main and Bonding Conductors: Copper.

- D. Ground Loop Conductor: The same size and type as the main conductor except tinned.
- E. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch in diameter by 10 feet long.
- F. Heavy-Duty, Stack-Mounted, Lightning Protection Components: Stainless steel.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install lightning protection components and systems according to UL 96A and NFPA 780.
- B. Install conductors with direct paths from air terminals to ground connections. Avoid sharp bends.
- C. Conceal the following conductors:
  - 1. System conductors.
  - 2. Down conductors.
  - 3. Interior conductors.
  - 4. Conductors within normal view of exterior locations at grade within 200 feet of building.
- D. Cable Connections: Use crimped or bolted connections for all conductor splices and connections between conductors and other components. Use exothermic-welded connections in underground portions of the system.
- E. Cable Connections: Use exothermic-welded connections for all conductor splices and connections between conductors and other components.
  - 1. Exception: In single-ply membrane roofing, exothermic-welded connections may be used only below the roof level.
- F. Air Terminals on Single-Ply Membrane Roofing: Comply with roofing membrane and adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Bond extremities of vertical metal bodies exceeding 60 feet in length to lightning protection components.
- H. Ground Loop: Install ground-level, potential equalization conductor and extend around the perimeter of structure.
  - 1. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches from building foundation.
  - 2. Bond ground terminals to the ground loop.
  - 3. Bond grounded building systems to the ground loop conductor within 12 feet of grade level.
- I. Bond lightning protection components with intermediate-level interconnection loop conductors to grounded metal bodies of building at 60-foot intervals.

### **3.2 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS**

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

### **3.3 CORROSION PROTECTION**

- A. Do not combine materials that can form an electrolytic couple that will accelerate corrosion in the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from junction of such materials.
- B. Use conductors with protective coatings where conditions cause deterioration or corrosion of conductors.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Notify Architect at least 48 hours in advance of inspection before concealing lightning protection components.
- B. UL Inspection: Meet requirements to obtain a UL Master Label for system.
- C. LPI System Inspection: Meet requirements to obtain an LPI System Certificate.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 26 51 19

### LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

#### PART 1 - PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following types of LED luminaires:
  - 1. Cylinder.
  - 2. Downlight.
  - 3. Linear industrial.
  - 4. Recessed linear.
  - 5. Strip light.
  - 6. Surface mount, linear.
  - 7. Suspended, linear.
  - 8. Suspended, nonlinear.
  - 9. Materials.
  - 10. Finishes.
  - 11. Luminaire support.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 26 section "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
  - 2. Division 26 section "Relay-Based Lighting Controls" for manual or programmable control systems with low-voltage control wiring or data communication circuits.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.

- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
  - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
  - 4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
  - 5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy efficiency data.
  - 6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project.
    - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
    - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
  - 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For each luminaire and for each color and texture with standard factory-applied finish.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of luminaire with custom factory-applied finishes.
  - 1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories involving color and finish selection.
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of luminaire.
  - 1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.
- F. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

## **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Luminaires.
  - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
  - 3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of the plane of the luminaires.
  - 4. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
  - 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    - a. Other luminaires.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
    - f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- E. Sample warranty.

## **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

## **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.
- C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

- E. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
  - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
  - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## **1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

## **1.9 WARRANTY**

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Standards:
  - 1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  - 2. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
  - 3. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
  - 4. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
  - 5. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.
- C. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3500 K.
- D. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
- E. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- F. Internal driver.
- G. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac or 277 V ac.



- H. Housings:
  - 1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
  - 2. Clear anodized finish.

## **2.2 CYLINDER**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Albeo Technologies, Inc; A GE Company.
  - 2. Amerlux.
  - 3. Architectural Lighting Works.
  - 4. Axis Lighting, Inc.
  - 5. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
  - 6. Edge Lighting.
  - 7. Edison Price Lighting.
  - 8. Eureka.
  - 9. Focal Point.
  - 10. GE Lighting Solutions.
  - 11. Juno Lighting Group by Schneider Electric.
  - 12. Lighting Science Group.
  - 13. Lightolier; a Philips group brand.
  - 14. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  - 15. MP Lighting.
  - 16. OSRAM SYLVANIA.
  - 17. Pure Lighting.
  - 18. Sea Gull Lighting.
  - 19. Selux Corporation.
  - 20. Specialty Lighting Industries, Inc.
  - 21. Tech Lighting.
- B. Minimum 1000 lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lumens per watt.
- C. With integral mounting provisions.

## **2.3 DOWNLIGHT**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Amerlux.
  - 2. Architectural Lighting Works.
  - 3. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
  - 4. Edge Lighting.
  - 5. Edison Price Lighting.
  - 6. Elite Lighting Corporation.
  - 7. Eureka.
  - 8. Focal Point LLC.
  - 9. Gallium Lighting, LLC.
  - 10. GE Lighting Solutions.
  - 11. Juno Lighting Group by Schneider Electric.
  - 12. Lighting Science Group.

13. Lighting Services Inc.
14. Lightolier; a Philips group brand.
15. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
16. MP Lighting.
17. OSRAM SYLVANIA.
18. Peerless: Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
19. Pure Lighting.
20. RAB Lighting.
21. Sea Gull Lighting.
22. Specialty Lighting Industries, Inc.
23. Tech Lighting.

- B. Minimum 1,000 lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lumens per watt.
- C. Universal mounting bracket.
- D. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

#### **2.4 LINEAR INDUSTRIAL**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Albeo Technologies, Inc; A GE Company.
  2. Axlen LED Lighting.
  3. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
  4. GE Lighting Solutions.
  5. Lighting Science Group.
  6. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  7. OSRAM SYLVANIA.
  8. RAB Lighting.
- B. Minimum 5,000 lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lumens per watt.

#### **2.5 RECESSED LINEAR**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Albeo Technologies, Inc; A GE Company.
  2. Architectural Lighting Works.
  3. Axis Lighting, Inc.
  4. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
  5. Elite Lighting Corporation.
  6. Finelite.
  7. Focal Point LLC.
  8. GE Lighting Solutions.
  9. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  10. Lumen Pulse.
  11. ON-Q Lighting Systems.
  12. OSRAM SYLVANIA.
  13. RAB Lighting.
  14. Selux Corporation.

- B. Minimum 3,000 lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lumens per watt.
- C. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

## **2.6 STRIP LIGHT**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
  - 2. GE Lighting Solutions.
  - 3. Lighting Science Group.
  - 4. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  - 5. OSRAM SYLVANIA.
  - 6. Philips Lighting Company.
  - 7. Stile Lighting.
- B. Minimum 1000 lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lumens per watt.
- C. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

## **2.7 SURFACE MOUNT, LINEAR**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Albeo Technologies, Inc; A GE Company.
  - 2. Architectural Lighting Works.
  - 3. Axis Lighting, Inc.
  - 4. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
  - 5. Elite Lighting Corporation.
  - 6. Finelite.
  - 7. Focal Point LLC.
  - 8. GE Lighting Solutions.
  - 9. Lighting Science Group.
  - 10. Lightolier; a Philips group brand.
  - 11. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  - 12. Lumen Pulse.
  - 13. MP Lighting.
  - 14. OSRAM SYLVANIA.
  - 15. Pure Lighting.
  - 16. Specialty Lighting Industries, Inc.
  - 17. Stile Lighting.
  - 18. Tech Lighting.
  - 19. The Lighting Quotient.
- B. Minimum 750 lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lumens per watt.
- C. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

## **2.8 SUSPENDED, LINEAR**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Architectural Lighting Works.
  2. Axis Lighting, Inc.
  3. Axlen LED Lighting.
  4. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
  5. Edge Lighting.
  6. Elite Lighting Corporation.
  7. Finelite.
  8. Focal Point LLC.
  9. Gallium Lighting, LLC.
  10. GE Lighting Solutions.
  11. Lightolier; a Philips group brand.
  12. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  13. Lumen Pulse.
  14. MP Lighting.
  15. ON-Q Lighting Systems.
  16. OSRAM SYLVANIA.
  17. Pure Lighting.
  18. Selux Corporation.
  19. Specialty Lighting Industries, Inc.
  20. Stile Lighting.
  21. Tech Lighting.
- B. Minimum 3,000 lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lumens per watt.

## **2.9 SUSPENDED, NONLINEAR**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Architectural Lighting Works.
  2. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
  3. Edge Lighting.
  4. Elite Lighting Corporation.
  5. Eureka.
  6. Focal Point LLC.
  7. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
- B. Minimum 3,000 lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lumens per watt.
- C. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

## **2.10 MATERIALS**

- A. Metal Parts:
1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
  2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- C. Diffusers and Globes:
  - 1. Prismatic acrylic.
  - 2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
- D. Housings:
  - 1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
  - 2. Clear anodized finish.
- E. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
  - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
    - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
    - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

## **2.11 METAL FINISHES**

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## **2.12 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING**

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
  - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  - 4. Luminaire mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Secured to outlet box.
  - 2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
  - 3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
  - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- G. Ceiling-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Ceiling mount with two 5/32-inch-diameter aircraft cable supports with length as needed.

H. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

I. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

J. Comply with requirements in Division 26 section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Division 26 section "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."

### **3.7 ADJUSTING**

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
  2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 26 52 19

### EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Emergency lighting units.
  - 2. Exit signs.
  - 3. Luminaire supports.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
- D. Fixture: See "Luminaire" Paragraph.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
  - 1. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - 2. Include physical description of the unit and dimensions.
  - 3. Battery and charger for light units.
  - 4. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
  - 5. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES LM-45, for each luminaire type.

- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

## **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Luminaires.
  - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
  - 3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of the plane of the luminaires.
  - 4. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
  - 5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Other luminaires.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
    - e. Sprinklers.
    - f. Access panels.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

## **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

## **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.

- C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- D. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
  - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires and signs in mockups before starting installations.
  - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## **1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

## **1.9 WARRANTY**

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to comply with UL 924.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.
- D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- E. Comply with UL 1598 for fluorescent luminaires.
- F. Lamp Base: Comply with ANSI C81.61.
- G. Bulb Shape: Complying with ANSI C79.1.

- H. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body.
1. Emergency Connection: Operate one lamp continuously at an output of 1100 lumens each upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
  2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  3. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Ambient Temperature: Less than 0 deg F or exceeding 104 deg F, with an average value exceeding 95 deg F over a 24-hour period.
    - b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F and not exceeding 140 deg F.
    - c. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).
    - d. Altitude: Exceeding 3300 feet.
    - e. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    - f. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
  5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
  6. Remote Test: Switch in handheld remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
  7. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

## 2.2 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units.
- B. Emergency Luminaires:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Amerlux.
    - b. Architectural Lighting Works.
    - c. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
    - d. Dual-Lite.
    - e. GE Lighting Solutions.
    - f. Juno Lighting Group by Schneider Electric.

- g. Lightolier; a Philips group brand.
  - h. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  - i. Philips Lighting Company.
2. Emergency Luminaires: As indicated on Drawings, with the following additional features:
- a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V ac or 277 V ac.
  - b. Internal emergency power unit.
  - c. Rated for installation in damp locations, and for sealed and gasketed luminaires in wet locations.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Amerlux.
  - b. Architectural Lighting Works.
  - c. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
  - d. Dual-Lite.
  - e. Evenlite, Inc.
  - f. GE Lighting Solutions.
  - g. Lighting Services, Inc.
  - h. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  - i. Ruud Lighting Direct.
2. Emergency Lighting Unit: As indicated on Drawings.
3. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V ac or 277 V ac.
4. UV stable thermoplastic housing, rated for damp locations as needed.
5. Two LED lamp heads.
6. Internal emergency power unit.

### 2.3 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Amerlux.
  - b. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
  - c. Evenlite, Inc.
  - d. Hubbell Industrial Lighting; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - e. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  - f. Philips Lighting Company.
  - g. Ruud Lighting Direct.
2. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V ac or 277 V ac.
3. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
4. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.

C. Self-Luminous Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
  - b. Dual-Lite.
  - c. Evenlite, Inc.
  - d. Isolite Corporation.
  - e. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  - f. LSI Industries.
  - g. Merit Lighting, LLC.
2. Powered by tritium gas, with universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting. Signs shall be guaranteed by manufacturer to maintain the minimum brightness requirements in UL 924 for 20 years.
3. Use strontium oxide aluminate compound to store ambient light and release the stored energy when the light is removed. Include universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:

1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear anodized finish.

E. Conduit: Electrical metallic tubing or Flexible metallic conduit, minimum 3/4 inch in diameter.

## 2.5 METAL FINISHES

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## **2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Support Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire and emergency power unit weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
  - 3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
  - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

F. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

G. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

### **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.5 STARTUP SERVICE**

- A. Perform startup service:
1. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour discharge test.



### **3.6 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjustments: Within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site visit to do the following:
  - 1. Inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps, emergency power units, batteries, signs, or luminaires that are defective.
    - a. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  - 2. Conduct short-duration tests on all emergency lighting.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 26 56 13

### LIGHTING POLES AND STANDARDS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Poles and accessories for support of luminaires.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPA: Equivalent projected area.
- B. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture.
- C. Pole: Luminaire-supporting structure, including tower used for large-area illumination.
- D. Standard: See "Pole."

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each pole, accessory, and luminaire-supporting and -lowering device, arranged as indicated.
  - 1. Include data on construction details, profiles, EPA, cable entrances, materials, dimensions, weight, rated design load, and ultimate strength of individual components.
  - 2. Include finishes for lighting poles and luminaire-supporting devices.
  - 3. Anchor bolts.
  - 4. Manufactured pole foundations.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Detail fabrication and assembly of poles and pole accessories.
  - 4. Foundation construction details, including material descriptions, dimensions, anchor bolts, support devices, and calculations, signed and sealed by a professional engineer licensed in the state of installation.

5. Anchor bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.
  6. Method and procedure of pole installation. Include manufacturer's written installations.
- C. Samples: For each exposed lighting pole, standard, and luminaire-supporting device and for each color and texture specified.

### **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements according to AASHTO LTS-6-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations signed and sealed by a professional engineer.
- B. Material Test Reports:
1. For each foundation component, by a qualified testing agency.
  2. For each pole, by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranty: Manufacturer's standard warranty.
- F. Soil test reports

### **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For poles to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include pole inspection and repair procedures.

### **1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Pole repair materials.

### **1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1093 for foundation testing.

### **1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.
- B. Store poles on decay-resistant skids at least 12 inches above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.

- C. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design pole foundation and pole power system.
- B. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- C. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- D. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf distributed according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- E. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft., applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M for applicable areas on the Ice Load Map.
- F. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire, calculated and applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
  - 1. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet high or less is 100 mph.
    - a. Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
    - b. Minimum Design Life: 25 years.
    - c. Velocity Conversion Factor: 1.0.
- G. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual EPA of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the EPA to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
- H. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.

### **2.2 STEEL POLES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. American LitePole.
  - 2. Bridgewell Resources.
  - 3. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
  - 4. E-conolight.
  - 5. EGS/Appleton Electric.
  - 6. H.E. Williams.
  - 7. Hapco.
  - 8. Hubbell Incorporated.
  - 9. KIM Lighting.
  - 10. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  - 11. LSI Industries.
  - 12. Millerbernd Manufacturing Company.

13. NAFCO International.
  14. Ruud Lighting Direct.
  15. Union Metal Corporation.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain poles from single manufacturer or producer.
  - C. Source Limitations: For poles, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of pole from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
  - D. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 500/A 500M, Grade B carbon steel with a minimum yield of 46,000 psig; one-piece construction up to 40 feet in height with access handhole in pole wall.
    1. Shape: Square, straight.
    2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
  - E. Steel Mast Arms: Single-arm type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish same as plate.
  - F. Fasteners: Galvanized steel, size and type as determined by manufacturer. Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.
    1. Materials: Compatible with poles and standards as well as the substrates to which poles and standards are fastened and shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
    2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
  - G. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch threaded lug, complying with requirements in Division 26 section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size indicated, and accessible through handhole.
  - H. Handhole: Oval shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches, with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.
  - I. Cable Support Grip: Wire-mesh type with rotating attachment eye, sized for diameter of cable and rated for a minimum load equal to weight of supported load multiplied by a 5.0 safety factor.
  - J. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
    1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces according to SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
    2. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
    3. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
      - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## **2.3 POLE ACCESSORIES**

- A. Duplex Receptacle: Ground-fault circuit interrupter type, 120 V ac, 20 A in a weatherproof assembly. Comply with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
  - 1. Recessed 12 inches above finished grade.
    - a. NEMA 250, Type 3R, nonmetallic polycarbonate plastic or reinforced fiberglass, enclosure with cover; color to match pole.
    - b. Lockable hasp and latch complying with OSHA lockout and tag-out requirements.
- B. Minimum 1800-W transformer, protected by replaceable fuses, mounted behind access cover.
- C. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, finished same as pole, and arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts.

## **2.4 MOUNTING HARDWARE**

- A. Anchor Bolts: Manufactured to ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, with a minimum yield strength of 55,000 psi.
  - 1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153, Class C.
  - 2. Threading: Uniform National Coarse, Class 2A.
- B. Nuts: ASTM A 563, Grade A, Heavy-Hex
  - 1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153, Class C.
  - 2. Two nuts provided per anchor bolt, shipped with nuts pre-assembled to the anchor bolts.
- C. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1.
  - 1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153, Class C.
  - 2. One washers provided per anchor bolt.

## **2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine poles, luminaire-mounting devices, lowering devices, and pole accessories before installation. Components that are scratched, dented, marred, wet, moisture damaged, or visibly damaged are considered defective.
- C. Examine roughing-in for foundation and conduit to verify actual locations of installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 POLE FOUNDATION**

- A. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123 M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03 section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Anchor Bolts: Install plumb using manufacturer-supplied steel template, uniformly spaced.

### **3.3 POLE INSTALLATION**

- A. Alignment: Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on pole.
- B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on drawing.
  - 1. Fire Hydrants and Water Piping: 60 inches.
  - 2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communications, and Sewer Lines: 10 feet.
  - 3. Trees: 15 feet from tree trunk.
- C. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Division 03 section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts and tighten top nuts to torque level according to pole manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use anchor bolts and nuts selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
  - 2. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrink or expanding concrete grout firmly packed to fill space.



3. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Use a short piece of 1/2 -inch diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
- E. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete-Paved Areas: Install poles with a minimum 6-inch-wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of the adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel. Insert material to a level 1 inch below top of concrete slab.
- F. Raise and set pole using web fabric slings (not chain or cable) at locations indicated by manufacturer.

### **3.4 CORROSION PREVENTION**

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum using insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with requirements in Division 26 section "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch-thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50-percent overlap.

### **3.5 GROUNDING**

- A. Ground Metal Poles and Support Structures: Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.
- B. Ground Nonmetallic Poles and Support Structures: Comply with requirements in Division 26 section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
1. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
  2. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
  3. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundation.

### **3.6 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### **3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  - 1. Inspect poles for nicks, mars, dents, scratches, and other damage.
  - 2. System function tests.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 26 56 19

### LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
  - 2. Luminaire supports.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 26 section "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
  - 2. Division 26 section "Lighting Poles and Standards" for poles and standards used to support exterior lighting equipment.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color rendering index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.
  - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
  - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
  - 4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
  - 5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project.
    - a. Manufacturer's Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
    - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
  - 6. Wiring diagrams for power, control, and signal wiring.
  - 7. Photoelectric relays.
  - 8. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable for components involved.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
  - 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For each luminaire and for each color and texture indicated with factory-applied finish.
- D. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For luminaire supports.
  - 1. Include design calculations for luminaire supports.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Luminaires.
  - 2. Structural members to which equipment and luminaires will be attached.
  - 3. Underground utilities and structures.
  - 4. Existing underground utilities and structures.
  - 5. Above-grade utilities and structures.

- 6. Existing above-grade utilities and structures.
  - 7. Building features.
  - 8. Vertical and horizontal information.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
  - C. Product Certificates: For each type of the following:
    - 1. Luminaire.
    - 2. Photoelectric relay.
  - D. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
  - E. Source quality-control reports.
  - F. Sample warranty.

## **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
  - 2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project; use manufacturers' codes.

## **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products and complying with applicable IES testing standards.
- C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- E. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- F. Mockups: For exterior luminaires, complete with power and control connections.
  - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
  - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed work.

3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## **1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

## **1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.
- B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

## **1.10 WARRANTY**

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
    - b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  2. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.
- E. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.

- F. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C79.1.
- G. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
- H. L70 lamp life of 50,000 hours.
- I. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- J. Internal driver.
- K. Nominal Operating Voltage: 277 V ac or 480 V ac.
- L. In-line Fusing: On the primary for each luminaire.
- M. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use.
- N. Source Limitations: Obtain luminaires from single source from a single manufacturer.
- O. Source Limitations: For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

## 2.2 LUMINAIRE TYPES

- A. Area and Site:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Architectural Area Lighting.
    - b. Atlas Lighting Products.
    - c. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
    - d. Deco Lighting.
    - e. Gallium Lighting, LLC.
    - f. GE Lighting Solutions.
    - g. H.E. Williams.
    - h. Howard Lighting Products.
    - i. INITIAL-LED.
    - j. Juno Lighting Group by Schneider Electric.
    - k. KIM Lighting.
    - l. Lightolier; a Philips group brand.
    - m. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
    - n. Luraline Lighting.
    - o. OSRAM SYLVANIA.
    - p. RAB Lighting.
    - q. Selux Corporation.
  - 2. Luminaire Shape: Square.
  - 3. Mounting: Pole or Building with extruded-aluminum rectangular arm, 11 inches in length.
  - 4. Distribution: As indicated on Drawings.

B. Bollard:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Architectural Area Lighting.
  - b. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
  - c. GE Lighting Solutions.
  - d. H.E. Williams.
  - e. Howard Lighting Products.
  - f. KIM Lighting.
  - g. Lightolier; a Philips group brand.
  - h. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  - i. Luraline Lighting.
  - j. OSRAM SYLVANIA.
  - k. RAB Lighting.
  - l. Selux Corporation.
2. Shape: Round.
3. Height Above Finished Grade: 30 inches.
4. Overall Height: 42 inches.
5. Diameter: 6 inches.
6. Mounting: 3 point cast aluminum base.

## 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- B. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.
- D. Diffusers and Globes:
  1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
  2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
  3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.



- G. Housings:
  - 1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
  - 2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
  
- H. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
  - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
    - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage and coating.
    - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

## **2.4 FINISHES**

- A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
  
- B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
  
- C. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
  - 2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## **2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, roofs, canopy ceilings, and overhang ceilings for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.
- E. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
  - 3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
  - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
- G. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.
- H. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.
- J. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming.
- K. Comply with requirements in Division 26 section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Division 26 section "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

### **3.3 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION**

- A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.
  - 1. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03 section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### **3.4 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTED LUMINAIRES**

- A. Aim as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03 section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### **3.5 CORROSION PREVENTION**

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Division 26 section "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch-thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

### **3.6 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### **3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
  - 2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- C. Illumination Tests:
  - 1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IES testing guide(s):
    - a. IES LM-5.
    - b. IES LM-50.
    - c. IES LM-52.

- d. IES LM-64.
  - e. IES LM-72.
2. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
- D. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

### **3.8 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires.

### **3.9 ADJUSTING**

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
- 1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
  - 2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  - 3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

**END OF SECTION**

SECTION 283111 - DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE ALARM AND EMERGENCY  
COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications Control Unit.
2. Manual fire alarm boxes.
3. System smoke detectors.
4. Heat detectors.
5. Notification appliances.
6. Magnetic door holders.
7. Remote annunciator.
8. Addressable interface device.
9. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.
10. Local Operating Console

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.
- B. EVAC: Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications Control Unit.
- C. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel.
- D. HLI: High Level Interface.
- E. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For all types of products, including furnished options and accessories.
  1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
  2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire alarm system.
  1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
  2. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
4. Detail assembly and support requirements.
5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
6. Include battery-size calculations.
7. Include input/output matrix and address/point list with description, type and location.
8. Include statement from manufacturer that all equipment and components have been tested as a system and meet all requirements in this Specification and in NFPA 72.
9. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
10. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
11. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
12. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.
13. Include a riser diagram with address and description of each addressable device.

C. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Submittals shall be forward to authorities having jurisdiction after submitting them to Architect.
2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
  - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire alarm system design.
  - b. NICET-certified, fire alarm technician; Level III minimum.
  - c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For notification appliances and smoke and heat detectors, in addition to submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the NICET-certified, fire alarm technician.

1. Drawings showing the location of each notification appliance and smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the device.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72. Calculate spacing and intensities for strobe signals and sound-pressure levels for audible appliances. Design for intelligibility in accordance with NFPA 72 or specifically required by the AHJ, unless noted otherwise on the drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports. Include certificates and testing printout from FACP of acceptance testing.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following and deliver copies to authorities having jurisdiction:
    - a. Comply with the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
    - b. Provide "Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" according to the "Completion Documents" Article in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
    - c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment. Each conductor shall be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
    - d. Riser diagram.
    - e. Device addresses, point list.
    - f. Record copy of site-specific software.
    - g. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" according to the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:
      - 1) Equipment tested.
      - 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
      - 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
      - 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
      - 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
    - h. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
    - i. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire alarm control unit and each annunciator unit.
    - j. Printout from FACP documenting acceptance testing and any re-acceptance testing.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
  2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
  3. Device address list.
  4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked or tamper-proofed components.
  2. Fuses: Two of each type installed in the system. Provide in a box or cabinet with compartments marked with fuse types and sizes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire alarm Level III technician.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Use of Devices during Construction: Protect devices during construction unless devices are placed in service to protect the facility during construction.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire alarm system equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Extent: All equipment and components not covered in the Maintenance Service Agreement.
  - 2. Warranty Period: One (1) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Noncoded, addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and voice/strobe evacuation. Panel shall be listed as a releasing panel.
- B. All components provided shall be listed for use with the selected system.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and systems:
  - 1. Manual stations.
  - 2. Heat detectors.
  - 3. Smoke detectors.
  - 4. Duct smoke detectors.
  - 5. Clean Agent Fire Suppression Control Panel (FSCP)
  - 6. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
  - 7. Preaction system.
  - 8. Fire-extinguishing system operation.



9. Preaction system pressure flow switch.
10. As shown on the Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Input/Output Matrix.

B. Fire alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:

1. Refer to Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Input/Output Matrix.

C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Refer to Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Input/Output Matrix..

D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Refer to Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Input/Output Matrix.

E. System Supervisory Signal Actions:

1. Refer to Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Input/Output Matrix.

### 2.3 FIRE ALARM AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL UNIT

A. General Requirements for Fire Alarm Control Unit and Emergency Communications Control Unit:

1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864.
  - a. System software and programs shall be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
  - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
  - c. Provide communication between the FACP and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.
  - d. The FACP shall be listed for connection to a remote-station signaling system service.
  - e. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. The system shall require no manual input to initialize in the event of a complete power down condition. The FACP shall provide a minimum 500-event history log.
2. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: The FACP shall indicate which communication zones have been silenced and shall provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.
3. Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: The FACP shall be listed for releasing service.

4. Provide secure operator console for initiating recorded messages, strobes, and displays; and for delivering live voice messages. Provide the ability to automatically repeat pre-recorded messages. Provide a secure microphone for delivering live messages. Provide adequate discrete outputs to temporarily deactivate fire alarm audible notification, and initiate/synchronize strobes. Provide a complete set of self-diagnostics for controller and appliance network. Provide local diagnostic information display and local diagnostic information and system event log file.
- B. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, three line(s) of 40 characters, minimum.
  2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands and to indicate control commands to be entered into the system for control of smoke-detector sensitivity and other parameters.
- C. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:
1. Pathway Class Designations: NFPA 72, Class B.
  2. Pathway Survivability: Level 1.
  3. Install no more than 100 addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.
  4. Serial Interfaces:
    - a. One dedicated RS 485 port for remote station operation using point ID DACT.
    - b. One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface module (printer port).
    - c. One USB port for PC configuration.
    - d. One RS 232 port for aspirating smoke detector connection.
    - e. One RS 232 port for Building voice evacuation interface.
- D. Notification-Appliance Circuit:
1. The audible notification system shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 72 for Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications System requirements ISO 7240-16, IEC 60268-16, and shall have additional features as specified herein. The system shall be one-way multi-channel voice notification system incorporating user selectability of a minimum eight distinct sounds for tone signaling, and the incorporation of a voice module for delivery of prerecorded messages.
  2. Audible appliances shall sound in a three-pulse temporal pattern for three cycles followed by a voice message that is repeated until the control panel is reset or silenced. Automatic messages shall be broadcast through speakers throughout the building but not in stairs or elevator cabs. a live voice message shall override the automatic audible output through use of a microphone input at the control panel or the LOC.
  3. Visual alarm appliances shall flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in the same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.”

4. Emergency Communication function shall take precedence over all other functions performed by the Audible Notification system. Messages shall utilize a female voice and shall be similar to the following:
  - a. FIRE: “May I have your attention, please. My I have your attention, please. A fire emergency has been reported in the building. Please evacuate the building using the nearest exit. Do not use the elevators.”
  - b. WEATHER: “May I have your attention, please. My I have your attention, please. The National Weather Service has issued a severe weather warning for this area. Take appropriate action and tune in to the local radio or television stations for the latest updates.”
  - c. NATURAL DISASTER: “May I have your attention, please. My I have your attention, please. A natural disaster has occurred or is expected shortly that will impact in this area. Take appropriate action and tune in to the local radio or television station for the latest updates.”
  - d. SHELTER IN PLACE: “May I have your attention, please. My I have your attention, please. A threat has been received for this building or area. Everyone should remain calm and stay where you are. Please wait for further instructions.”
  - e. EVACUATE: “May I have your attention, please. My I have your attention, please. A threat alert has been issued for this building. Please evacuate the building using the nearest exit. Further instructions will be issued outside of the building by emergency response teams.”
  - f. TEST: “May I have your attention, please. My I have your attention, please. This is a test of the emergency communications system. I repeat this is only a test.”
  - g. ALL CLEAR: “May I have your attention, please. My I have your attention, please. The building emergency has now ended and all clear has been given. Please resume normal activities. Thank you for your cooperation.”
- E. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on system printer.
- F. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.
- G. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided in a separate cabinet adjacent to the FACP or as a special module that is part of fire alarm control unit.
  1. Amplifiers shall comply with UL 1711.
    - a. Programmable tone and message sequence selection.

- b. Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
    - c. Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification-appliance circuits of fire alarm control unit.
  - 2. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators shall automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure, unless otherwise permitted by their listing.
  - H. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitters shall be powered by 24-V dc source.
    - 1. Alarm current draw of entire fire alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.
  - I. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
    - 1. Batteries: Sealed lead acid.
  - J. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.
- 2.4 MANUAL FIRE ALARM BOXES
- A. General Requirements for Manual Fire Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
    - 1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire alarm control unit.
    - 2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
- 2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS
- A. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:
    - 1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
    - 2. Detectors shall be two-wire type.
    - 3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire alarm control unit.
    - 4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.

5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be digital-addressable type, individually monitored at fire alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition.

B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
  - a. Primary status.
  - b. Device type.
  - c. Present average value.
  - d. Present sensitivity selected.
  - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

C. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
  - a. Primary status.
  - b. Device type.
  - c. Present average value.
  - d. Present sensitivity selected.
  - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

## 2.6 HEAT DETECTORS

A. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.

1. Temperature sensors shall test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.

- B. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 135 deg F.
  - 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
  - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire alarm control unit.

## 2.7 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification-appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
  - 1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- B. Visible Notification Appliances: Fire Alarm/Emergency Communication Appliances shall be xenon strobe lights complying with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate with the word "ALERT" engraved in minimum 1-inch-height letters.
  - 1. Rated Light Output: Selectable in the field. Per NFPA 72 layout spacing requirements.
    - a. 15 30 75 110 177 cd.
    - b. 15/30/75/110/177 cd, selectable in the field.
  - 2. Mounting: Ceiling mounted unless otherwise indicated on drawings.
  - 3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
  - 4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
  - 5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
  - 6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, white.
- C. Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:
  - 1. Comply with UL 1480.
  - 2. Speakers for Voice Notification: Locate speakers for voice notification to provide the intelligibility requirements of the "Notification Appliances" and "Emergency Communications Systems" chapters in NFPA 72.
  - 3. High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W.
  - 4. Low-Range Units: Rated 1/4 to 2 W.
  - 5. Mounting: surface mounted and bidirectional.
  - 6. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.
  - 7. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, white.

2.8 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
  - 1. Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

2.9 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. General:
  - 1. Include address-setting means on the module.
  - 2. Store an internal identifying code for control panel use to identify the module type.
  - 3. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.
- B. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- C. Control Module and Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal.
  - 1. Allow the control panel to switch the relay contacts on command.
  - 2. Have a minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.
- D. Releasing Module:
  - 1. Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.

2.10 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

- A. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632.
- B. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire alarm control unit and automatically capture two telephone line(s) and dial a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.

- C. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:
  - 1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
  - 2. Programming device.
  - 3. LED display.
  - 4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
  - 5. Communications failure with the central station or fire alarm control unit.
  
- D. Digital data transmission shall include the following:
  - 1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
  - 2. Address of the supervisory signal.
  - 3. Address of the trouble-initiating device.
  - 4. Loss of ac supply.
  - 5. Loss of power.
  - 6. Low battery.
  - 7. Abnormal test signal.
  - 8. Communication bus failure.
  
- E. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.
  
- F. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.
  
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
  
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire alarm equipment. Install all electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."
  - 1. Fire alarm system wiring shall be installed in metallic conduit throughout facility.



2. Devices placed in service before all other trades have completed cleanup shall be replaced.
  3. Devices installed but not yet placed in service shall be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage according to manufacturer's written storage instructions.
- B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inches above the finished floor.
- C. Manual Fire Alarm Boxes:
1. Install manual fire alarm box in the normal path of egress within 60 inches of the exit doorway.
  2. Mount manual fire alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.
  3. The operable part of manual fire alarm box shall be between 42 inches and 48 inches above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
1. Comply with the "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
  2. Comply with the "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
  3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet.
  4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Annex A in NFPA 72.
  5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 36 inches from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
  6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.
- E. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.
- F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and IMC 2009. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inches long shall be supported at both ends.
1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.
- G. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in a visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.

- H. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install ceiling-mounted devices in center of tile +/- 6 inches. Install wall-mounted devices so the height to the top of the device is not less than 90 inches and not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install speakers on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install ceiling-mounted devices in center of tile +/- 6 inches. Install wall-mounted devices such that the entire lens is not less than 80 inches and not greater than 96 inches above the finished floor and at least 6 inches below the ceiling. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Combination Audible/Visual alarm-Indicating Devices: Install ceiling-mounted devices in center of tile +/- 6 inches. Install wall-mounted devices so the heights to the top of the device is not less than 90 inches and not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install speakers on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

### 3.3 PATHWAYS

- A. Pathways shall be installed in EMT.
- B. Exposed EMT shall be painted red enamel or shall have red bands painted at 10' intervals and on each side of walls.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 36 inches from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
  - 1. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
  - 2. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
  - 3. Supervisory connections at low-air-pressure switch of each preaction sprinkler system.
  - 4. Data communication circuits for connection to emergency communications system.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals.
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire alarm control unit.

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. Ground fire alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire alarm control unit.
- B. Ground shielded cables at the control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests shall be witnessed by Architect/Engineer and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide minimum 7 days notice before testing. Include point list with addresses and legends, etc. with notice of testing. System shall be pretested and fully functional before testing is scheduled.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
    - a. Inspection shall be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by the "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
    - b. Comply with the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Inspection" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
  - 2. System Testing: Comply with the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  - 3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
  - 4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 5. Intelligibility shall be satisfaction to AHJ and Architect/Engineer. Minimum CIS values in spaces with audible notification devices shall be an average of 0.70 CIS (0.50 STI).
  - 6. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 7. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72. Records shall be complete and correct, and include results of comprehensive acceptance testing.
- E. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing in presence of Architect/Engineer and AHJ to verify the proper operation of failed, added, or replaced devices and appliances. Include results in revised report.

- F. Fire alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
- I. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

### 3.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  - 1. Include visual inspections according to the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  - 2. Perform tests in the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  - 3. Perform tests per the "Testing Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

### 3.9 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
  - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

### 3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire alarm system.

END OF SECTION 283111